



KALAVINKA BUDDHIST CLASSICS



# THE TEN BODHISATTVA GROUNDS

*The Avataṃsaka Sūtra*

Chapter 26



*The Ten Highest Levels of Practice  
On the Bodhisattva's Path to Buddhahood*



As Translated from Sanskrit by Śikṣānanda (699 CE)



An Annotated English Translation by Bhikṣu Dharmamitra



Including the Entire P. L. Vaidya Sanskrit Text  
And Sanskrit Section Headings Inset in the English Translation



KALAVINKA PRESS





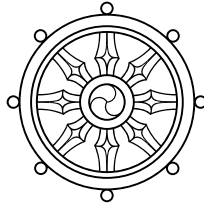
# THE TEN BODHISATTVA GROUNDS

*The Avataṃsaka Sūtra*

Chapter 26

To refrain from doing any manner of evil,  
to respectfully perform all varieties of good,  
and to purify of one's own mind—  
This is the teaching of all buddhas.

The Ekottara Āgama Sūtra  
(T02 n.125 p.551a 13–14)



#### **A NOTE ON THE PROPER CARE OF DHARMA MATERIALS**

Traditional Buddhist cultures treat books on Dharma as sacred. Hence it is considered disrespectful to place them in a low position, to read them when lying down, or to place them where they might be damaged by food or drink.

# THE TEN BODHISATTVA GROUNDS

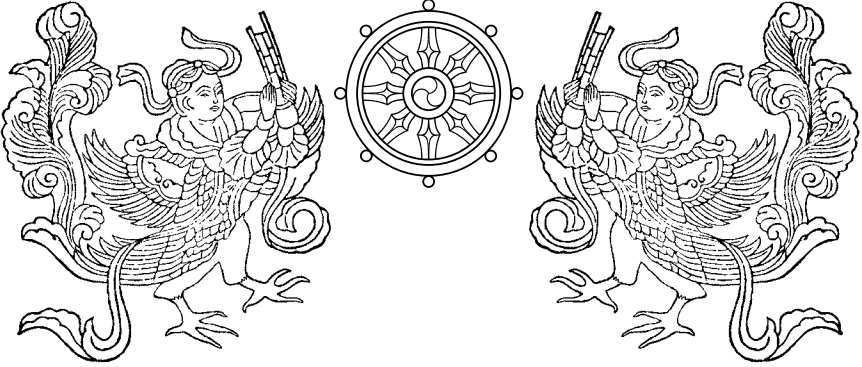
## *The Avataṃsaka Sūtra*

### Chapter 26

#### *The Ten Highest Levels of Practice On the Bodhisattva's Path to Buddhahood*

As Translated From Sanskrit by Tripiṭaka Master Śikṣānanda  
(699 CE)

An Annotated English Translation by Bhikshu Dharmamitra  
Including the Entire P. L. Vaidya Sanskrit Text



**KALAVINKA PRESS**  
SEATTLE, WASHINGTON  
[WWW.KALAVINKAPRESS.ORG](http://WWW.KALAVINKAPRESS.ORG)

**KALAVINKA PRESS**  
**8603 39TH AVE SW**  
**SEATTLE, WA 98136 USA**  
**(WWW.KALAVINKAPRESS.ORG)**

Kalavinka Press is associated with the Kalavinka Dharma Association, a non-profit organized exclusively for religious educational purposes as allowed within the meaning of section 501(c)3 of the Internal Revenue Code. Kalavinka Dharma Association was founded in 1990 and gained formal approval in 2004 by the United States Internal Revenue Service as a 501(c)3 non-profit organization to which all donations are tax deductible.

Donations to KDA are accepted by mail and on the Kalavinka website where numerous free Dharma translations and excerpts from Kalavinka publications are available in digital format.

Edition: 10GSIK-EO-1019-1.0-English/Sanskrit  
 Kalavinka Buddhist Classics Book 12b  
 © 2019 Bhikshu Dharmamitra  
 ISBN: 978-1-935413-12-7

Library of Congress Control Number: 2019029483

### Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Śikṣānanda, 652-710, translator. | Dharmamitra, Bhikshu, translator.

Title: The ten Bodhisattva grounds : the Avataṃsaka Sūtra, chapter 26 : the ten highest levels of practice on the Bodhisattva's path to Buddhahood / as translated from Sanskrit by Tripiṭaka Master Śikṣānanda (699 ce) ; an annotated English translation by Bhikshu Dharmamitra including the entire P. L. Vaidya Sanskrit text.

Description: 10gsik-EO-1019-1.0-english/sanskrit. | Seattle, Washington : Kalavinka Press, 2019. | Series: Kalavinka buddhist classics; book 12b | Includes bibliographical references. | Summary: ""The Ten Bodhisattva Grounds"" is an annotated English Translation by Bhikshu Dharmamitra of Tripitaka Master Śikṣānanda's circa 699 ce Sanskrit-to-Chinese translation of the Avataṃsaka Sūtra, Chapter 26. This text describes in great detail the ten highest levels of bodhisattva practice on the path to buddhahood as taught in that sutra. This edition of the translation includes the P. L. Vaidya Sanskrit text. The Sanskrit section headings are inset in the English translation to facilitate easy correlation of the English translation with the Sanskrit text"-- Provided by publisher.

Identifiers: LCCN 2019029483 | ISBN 9781935413127 (paperback)

Subjects: LCSH: Tripiṭaka. Sūtrapiṭaka. Avataṃsakasūtra.--Criticism, interpretation, etc. | Bodhisattva stages (Mahayana Buddhism)

Classification: LCC BQ1622.A1 D432 2019 | DDC 294.3/55--dc23

LC record available at <https://lccn.loc.gov/2019029483>

Kalavinka Press books are printed on acid-free paper.  
 Cover and interior designed by Bhikshu Dharmamitra.  
 Printed in the United States of America

## **DEDICATION**

Dedicated to the memory of the selfless and marvelous life of the Venerable Dhyāna Master Hsuan Hua, the Guiyang Ch'an Patriarch and the very personification of the bodhisattva's six perfections.

**DHYĀNA MASTER HSUAN HUA**

宣化禪師

**1918-1995**

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The accuracy and readability of this translation have been greatly improved by many corrections, preview comments, and editorial suggestions generously contributed by Bhikkhu Bodhi, Feng Ling, and Nicholas Weeks.

Expenses incurred in bringing forth this publication were underwritten by generous donations from Craig and Karen Neyman, Madalena Lew, Shuyu Yang, Jiajing Li, Kam Chung Wong, Loritta Chan, David Fox, Upasaka Guo Ke, Yuen-Lin Tan, the BDK English Tripiṭaka Project, and others. Sponsorship of Adobe Indesign book layout was provided by Anagarika Mahendra.

Use of the digital Sanskrit texts is by the kind permission of Dr. Miroj Shakya, Project Coordinator of the Digital Sanskrit Buddhist Canon Project.

Were it not for the ongoing material support provided by my late guru's Dharma Realm Buddhist Association and the serene translation studio provided by Seattle's Bodhi Dhamma Center, creation of this translation would have been impossible.

Additionally, it would have been impossible for me to produce this translation without the Dharma teachings and personal inspiration provided to me by my late guru, the awesomely wise and compassionate Dhyāna Master Hsuan Hua, the Guiyang Ch'an patriarch, Dharma teacher, and exegete.

Finally, I owe an immense debt of gratitude to the members of the liver care and transplant teams at Seattle's University of Washington Medical Center who cured me of liver cancer in 2010 and gave me a liver transplant several months later. In particular, if it weren't for over a decade of wonderfully attentive and compassionate care by Dr. Renuka Bhattacharya, medical director of UW's liver transplant program, the kindness and skill in three major surgeries by my transplant surgeon, Dr. Jorge Reyes, and the marvelous generosity of an anonymous liver donor, I would have died a half dozen years ago and thus never could have completed the scriptural translations I have produced in the last eight years.

## OUTLINING IN THIS WORK

The ten chapter titles in this work are from the Taisho Chinese text. All other outline headings originate with the translator. Buddhist canonical texts are often so structurally dense that they are best navigated with the aid of at least a simple outline structure such as I have supplied here.



## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

AN	Aṅguttara Nikāya
BB	Buddhabhadra (T278)
BCSD	Hirakawa's <i>Buddhist Chinese-Sanskrit Dictionary</i>
BDK	Bukkyo Dendo Kyokai English Tripiṭaka
BHSD	Edgerton's <i>Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit Dictionary</i>
BR	Bodhiruci (T1522)
CBETA	Chinese Buddhist Electronic Text Association's digital edition of the Taisho Chinese Buddhist canon.
DN	<i>Dīgha Nikāya</i>
DR	Dharmarakṣa (T278)
DSBC	Digital Sanskrit Buddhist Canon's digitized edition of <i>Daśabhūmikasūtram</i> , edited by P. L. Vaidya.
HH	Venerable Hsuan Hua
KB	Kumārajīva assisted by Buddhayaśas (T286)
KJ	Kumārajīva
LTX	Li Tongxuan (李通玄)
MDPL	<i>Materials for a Dictionary of the Prajñāpāramitā Literature</i>
MLDB	<i>The Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha</i>
MN	<i>Majjhima nikāya</i>
Mppu	<i>Mahāprajñāpāramitā upadeśa</i>
MW	Monier Williams' <i>A Sanskrit-English Dictionary</i>
N	Nāgārjuna
PDB	Princeton Dictionary of Buddhism
QL	Qing Liang (唐清涼山大華嚴寺沙門澄觀)
QLSC	Qing Liang's <i>Huayan Shuchao</i> (大方廣佛華嚴經疏鈔會本. L130 no. 1557)
SYMG	The Song, Yuan, Ming, Gong editions of the Chinese Buddhist canon.
SA	Śiṅśānanda (T279)
SD	Śīladharma (T287)
T	Taisho Chinese Buddhist Canon via CBETA (Version 2004. ed.) Taipei)
VB	Venerable Bhikkhu Bodhi
XHYJL	<i>Xin huayanjing lun</i> (新華嚴經論 – T36, no. 1739) by Li Tongxuan.



## GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Acknowledgements</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>Outlining in This Work</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>List of Abbreviations</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Directory to Chapter Subsections</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>The Translator's Introduction</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>The Translation: The Ten Bodhisattva Grounds</b>	<b>29</b>
Part 1 : The Joyfulness Ground	45
Part 2 : The Stainlessness Ground	69
Part 3 : The Shining Light Ground	83
Part 4 : The Blazing Brilliance Ground	97
Part 5 : The Difficult-to-Conquer Ground	108
Part 6 : The Direct Presence Ground	123
Part 7 : The Far-Reaching Ground	139
Part 8 : The Immovability Ground	155
Part 9 : The Excellent Intelligence Ground	175
Part 10: The Dharma Cloud Ground	195
<b>Translation Endnotes</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>255</b>
<b>Appendix: The P.L. Vaidya Sanskrit Text</b>	<b>257</b>
<b>About the Translator</b>	<b>415</b>
<b>Kalavinka Buddhist Classics: Current Title List</b>	<b>417</b>



## DIRECTORY TO CHAPTER SUBSECTIONS

<b>I. THE INTRODUCTORY SECTION</b>	<b>31</b>
A. THE SETTING AND AUDIENCE	31
B. THE GREAT BODHISATTVAS AND THEIR QUALITIES	31
C. THE NAMES OF THE BODHISATTVAS IN ATTENDANCE	32
D. VAJRAGARBHA ENTERS SAMĀDHI AND COUNTLESS BUDDHAS MANIFEST	33
E. THE BUDDHAS PRAISE HIM AND ENCOURAGE HIM TO TEACH THE TEN GROUNDS	33
F. THE BUDDHAS BESTOW QUALITIES AND ABILITIES ON VAJRAGARBHA	35
G. VAJRAGARBHA EMERGES FROM SAMĀDHI AND SPEAKS OF THE TEN GROUNDS	36
1. VAJRAGARBHA SETS FORTH THE NAMES OF THE TEN GROUNDS	36
2. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA FALLS SILENT	37
H. THE CONGREGATION IS CAUSED TO WONDER WHY THERE IS NO EXPLANATION	37
I. LIBERATION MOON BODHISATTVA'S FIRST REQUEST FOR DHARMA TEACHING	37
J. VAJRAGARBHA EXPLAINS HIS SILENCE	38
K. LIBERATION MOON BODHISATTVA'S SECOND REQUEST FOR DHARMA TEACHING	39
L. VAJRAGARBHA FURTHER EXPLAINS HIS RETICENCE TO TEACH THIS DHARMA	39
M. LIBERATION MOON BODHISATTVA'S THIRD REQUEST FOR DHARMA TEACHING	40
N. THE BODHISATTVA CONGREGATION JOINS IN REQUESTING THIS TEACHING	41
O. ¶ THE BUDDHA EMITS BRILLIANT LIGHT FROM BETWEEN HIS EYEBROWS	42
P. ALL BUDDHAS EMIT LIGHT THAT UTTERS VERSES REQUESTING DHARMA	42
Q. VAJRAGARBHA'S PRELIMINARY VERSES ON THE DIFFICULTY OF THIS EXPLANATION	43
<b>II. THE MAIN DOCTRINAL TEACHING SECTION</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>A. THE FIRST GROUND: THE JOYFULNESS GROUND</b>	<b>45</b>
1. VAJRAGARBHA LISTS THE FIRST GROUND'S QUALIFICATIONS & MOTIVATIONS	45
2. THE QUALITIES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S RESOLVE	45
3. THE CONSEQUENCES OF GENERATING THE BODHISATTVA VOW	46
4. THE BASES FOR THE FIRST GROUND BODHISATTVA'S JOYFULNESS	47
5. THE FIRST GROUND BODHISATTVA'S FIVE KINDS OF FEARLESSNESS	48
6. THE BODHISATTVA'S GROUNDS PURIFYING PRACTICES	48
7. THE BODHISATTVA'S TEN GREAT VOWS	50
8. THE MENTAL QUALITIES & FAITH GAINED BY THE 1ST GROUND BODHISATTVA	54
9. THE BODHISATTVA'S REFLECTIVE CONTEMPLATION ON DHARMA AND BEINGS	55
10. THE BODHISATTVA'S RESOLVE, RENUNCIATION, & GROUNDS PURIFICATION	57
11. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS	58
12. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF MEANS OF ATTRACTION AND PĀRAMITĀS	59
13. THE BODHISATTVA'S GROUNDS PURIFICATION COMPARED TO REFINING GOLD	59
14. THE BODHISATTVA'S ACQUISITION OF FURTHER KNOWLEDGE OF THE GROUNDS	60
15. THE BODHISATTVA'S PATH KNOWLEDGE COMPARED TO A CARAVAN GUIDE	61
16. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE FIRST GROUND BODHISATTVA	62
a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE	62
b. THE BODHISATTVA'S FOUR MEANS OF ATTRACTION AND MINDFULNESS	62
c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS	63

d. THE RESULT OF THE BODHISATTVA'S LEAVING THE HOUSEHOLD LIFE	63
17. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES	63
<b>B. THE SECOND GROUND: THE STAINLESSNESS GROUND</b>	69
1. THE SECOND GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST	69
2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE SECOND GROUND'S EXPLANATION	69
3. THE TEN RESOLUTE INTENTIONS AS BASES FOR ENTERING THE SECOND GROUND	69
4. THE BODHISATTVA'S OBSERVANCE OF 10 COURSES OF GOOD KARMIC ACTION	70
a. AVOIDANCE OF KILLING	70
b. AVOIDANCE OF TAKING WHAT IS NOT GIVEN	70
c. AVOIDANCE OF SEXUAL MISCONDUCT	70
d. AVOIDANCE OF FALSE SPEECH	71
e. AVOIDANCE OF DIVISIVE SPEECH	71
f. AVOIDANCE OF HARSH SPEECH	71
g. AVOIDANCE OF FRIVOLOUS SPEECH	72
h. AVOIDANCE OF COVETOUSNESS	72
i. AVOIDANCE OF ILL WILL	72
j. AVOIDANCE OF WRONG VIEWS	72
5. THE BODHISATTVA'S REFLECTIONS ON 10 GOOD AND BAD KARMIC ACTIONS	73
a. REFLECTIONS ON THEIR GENERATION OF THE SIX REBIRTH DESTINIES	73
b. REFLECTIONS ON GENERATION OF THE FRUITS OF THE 3 VEHICLES' PATHS	73
c. REFLECTIONS ON THE 10 TRANSGRESSIONS' 10 KARMIC RETRIBUTION	74
d. RENUNCIATION OF 10 BAD ACTIONS & ROUSING OF 10 ALTRUISTIC MINDS	75
6. HIS REFLECTIONS ON THE PLIGHT OF BEINGS & RESOLVE TO RESCUE THEM	76
7. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS	78
8. THE BODHISATTVA'S GROUNDS PURIFICATION COMPARED TO REFINING GOLD	79
9. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF MEANS OF ATTRACTION AND PĀRAMITĀS	79
10. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 2ND GROUND BODHISATTVA	80
a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE	80
b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS	80
c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS	80
d. THE RESULT OF THE BODHISATTVA'S LEAVING THE HOUSEHOLD LIFE	80
11. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES	81
<b>C. THE THIRD GROUND: THE SHINING LIGHT GROUND</b>	83
1. THE THIRD GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST	83
2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE THIRD GROUND'S EXPLANATION	83
3. THE TEN RESOLUTE INTENTIONS AS BASES FOR ENTERING THE THIRD GROUND	83
4. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONTEMPLATION OF ALL CONDITIONED DHARMAS	84
5. THE BODHISATTVA'S RENUNCIATION & QUEST FOR BUDDHA'S KNOWLEDGE	85
6. THE BODHISATTVA'S TEN SYMPATHETIC MENTAL INTENTIONS TOWARD BEINGS	85
7. THE BODHISATTVA'S GENERATION AND PRACTICE OF GREAT VIGOR	86
8. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONQUEST OF THE MEDITATIVE ABSORPTIONS	88
9. THE BODHISATTVA'S DEVELOPMENT OF THE FOUR IMMEASURABLES	89
10. THE BODHISATTVA'S DEVELOPMENT OF THE SPIRITUAL SUPERKNOWLEDGES	89
11. THE BODHISATTVA'S HEAVENLY EAR	90
12. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF OTHERS' THOUGHTS	90

13. THE BODHISATTVA'S RECALL OF PAST LIVES	91
14. THE BODHISATTVA'S HEAVENLY EYE	91
15. THE BODHISATTVA'S VOW-DETERMINED REBIRTH APART FROM THE DHYĀNAS	92
16. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS	92
17. THE BODHISATTVA'S PURIFICATION AND ITS COMPARISON TO REFINING GOLD	92
18. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF MEANS OF ATTRACTION AND PĀRAMITĀS	93
19. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 3RD GROUND BODHISATTVA	93
a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE	93
b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS	93
c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS	94
d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS	94
20. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES	94
<b>D. THE FOURTH GROUND: THE BLAZING BRILLIANCE GROUND</b>	<b>97</b>
1. THE FOURTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST	97
2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE FOURTH GROUND'S EXPLANATION	97
3. 10 GATEWAYS TO DHARMA LIGHT AS BASES FOR ENTERING THE 4TH GROUND	97
4. TEN KNOWLEDGE-MATURING DHARMAS FOR BIRTH IN THE BUDDHAS' CLAN	98
5. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF THE 37 ENLIGHTENMENT FACTORS	99
a. THE FOUR STATIONS OF MINDFULNESS	99
b. THE FOUR RIGHT EFFORTS	99
c. THE FOUR BASES OF PSYCHIC POWER	100
d. THE FIVE ROOTS	100
e. THE FIVE POWERS	100
f. THE SEVEN LIMBS OF ENLIGHTENMENT	100
g. THE EIGHTFOLD PATH	101
h. THE BODHISATTVA'S TEN AIMS IN PRACTICING THE 37 FACTORS	101
6. THE BODHISATTVA'S LEAVING OF WRONG VIEWS, ATTACHMENTS, AND ACTIONS	101
7. MENTAL AND PERSONAL QUALITIES GAINED IN PATH CULTIVATION	102
8. THE BODHISATTVA'S ACQUISITION OF TEN KINDS OF VIGOR	103
9. OTHER QUALITIES DEVELOPED IN THE BODHISATTVA'S 4TH GROUND PRACTICE	103
10. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS	103
11. THE BODHISATTVA'S PURIFICATION & ITS COMPARISON TO REFINING GOLD	104
12. THE RADIANCE OF THIS BODHISATTVA'S ROOTS LIKE THAT OF A MAṆI JEWEL	104
13. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF MEANS OF ATTRACTION AND PĀRAMITĀS	104
14. VAJRAGARBHA'S STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 4TH GROUND BODHISATTVA	104
a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE	104
b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS	105
c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS	105
d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS	105
15. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES	105
<b>E. THE FIFTH GROUND: THE DIFFICULT-TO-CONQUER GROUND</b>	<b>108</b>
1. THE FIFTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST	108
2. VAJRAGARBHA BEGINS THE FIFTH GROUND'S EXPLANATION	109
3. TEN IMPARTIAL RESOLUTE INTENTIONS ENABLING 5TH GROUND ACCESS	109
4. THE BODHISATTVA'S BASES FOR THE IRREVERSIBLE BODHI RESOLVE	110

5. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE TRUTHS	110
6. THE BODHISATTVA'S RESULTANT GENERATION OF COMPASSION & KINDNESS	111
7. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONTEMPLATION OF CAUSALITY IN BEINGS' PLIGHT	112
8. THE BODHISATTVA'S COMPASSIONATE DEDICATION OF ROOTS OF GOODNESS	113
9. THE FIFTH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S QUALITIES AND THEIR BASES	113
10. THE METHODS USED BY THE BODHISATTVA IN HIS TEACHING OF BEINGS	114
11. THE BODHISATTVA'S ADOPTION OF AN ARRAY OF MEANS TO BENEFIT BEINGS	115
12. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS	116
13. THE BODHISATTVA'S PURIFICATION OF HIS ROOTS OF GOODNESS	116
14. GOOD ROOTS PURIFICATION LIKE REFINING GOLD & CELESTIAL PHENOMENA	117
15. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF THE PĀRAMITĀS	117
16. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 5TH GROUND BODHISATTVA	117
a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE	117
b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS	118
c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS	118
d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS	118
17. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES	118
<b>F. THE SIXTH GROUND: THE DIRECT PRESENCE GROUND</b>	<b>123</b>
1. THE SIXTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST	123
2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE SIXTH GROUND'S EXPLANATION	124
3. THE TEN DHARMAS OF IDENTITY ENABLING ACCESS TO THE SIXTH GROUND	124
4. SIXTH GROUND ENTRY, ACQUIESCENT PATIENCE & PRIMACY OF COMPASSION	124
5. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONTEMPLATION OF CAUSALITY IN CYCLIC EXISTENCE	125
a. CONTEMPLATION OF THE SEQUENTIAL CONTINUITY OF THE CAUSAL FACTORS	125
b. THE BODHISATTVA CONTEMPLATES THE DEFINITIONS OF CAUSAL LINKS	126
c. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONTEMPLATION OF MIND AS THE BASIS OF EXISTENCE	127
d. THE CONTEMPLATION OF 2 FUNCTIONS OF EACH CAUSAL CHAIN LINK	127
e. THE CONTEMPLATION OF CAUSAL CHAIN PRODUCTION AND DESTRUCTION	128
f. CONTEMPLATION OF THE 12 LINKS' ASSOCIATION WITH INSEPARABILITY.	128
g. THE TWELVE LINKS AS CONSTITUENTS OF THREE PATHS	129
h. THE TWELVE LINKS' CORRELATION WITH THE THREE PERIODS OF TIME	129
i. THE TWELVE LINKS' CORRELATION WITH THE THREE KINDS OF SUFFERING	129
j. CONTEMPLATION OF THEIR ARISING & CEASING BY CAUSES AND CONDITIONS	129
k. CONTEMPLATION OF THEIR CREATION AND DESTRUCTION OF THE BONDS	130
l. CONTEMPLATION OF "UTTER NONEXISTENCE" AND "UTTER CESSATION"	130
m. A SUMMARY LISTING OF 10 CONTEMPLATIONS OF THE 12 CAUSAL FACTORS	130
6. THE BODHISATTVA'S ACQUISITION OF THE THREE GATES TO LIBERATION	131
7. THE BODHISATTVA'S COMPASSIONATE RELUCTANCE TO ENTER FINAL NIRVĀṆA	131
8. THE BODHISATTVA'S SAMĀDHIS RELATED TO THE 3 GATES TO LIBERATION	132
9. THE BODHISATTVA'S TEN TYPES OF RESOLUTE INTENTIONS	132
10. 10 CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S 10 TYPES OF RESOLUTE INTENTIONS	133
11. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ PRACTICE AND PATIENCE ACQUISITION	133
12. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS	133
13. PURIFYING GOOD ROOTS LIKE POLISHING GOLD & MOONLIGHT'S COOLNESS	134
14. THE BODHISATTVA'S SPECIALIZATION IN THE PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ	134



15. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 6TH GROUND BODHISATTVA	135
a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE	135
b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS	135
c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS	135
d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS	135
16. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES	135
<b>G. THE SEVENTH GROUND: THE FAR-REACHING GROUND</b>	<b>139</b>
1. THE SEVENTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST	139
2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE SEVENTH GROUND'S EXPLANATION	140
3. 10 TYPES OF SKILLFUL MEANS & WISDOM ENABLING 7TH GROUND ACCESS	140
4. THE BODHISATTVA'S TWENTY KINDS OF PENETRATING COMPREHENSION	141
5. HIS ADOPTION OF EFFORTLESSNESS, NON-DISCRIMINATION & MEDITATION	143
6. HIS PRACTICE OF 10 PĀRAMITĀS & OTHER DHARMAS LEADING TO BODHI	143
7. VIMUKTICANDRA ASKS ABOUT PERFECTION OF BODHYAṄGA DHARMAS	144
8. VAJRAGARBHA ON THE PERFECTION OF BODHYAṄGAS ON ALL GROUNDS	144
9. VIMUKTICANDRA ASKS ABOUT TRANSCENDENCE OF AFFLICTIONS	145
10. VAJRAGARBHA EXPLAINS THE TRANSCENDENCE OF AFFLICTIONS	145
11. VAJRAGARBHA'S CAKRAVARTIN SAGE KING ANALOGY	145
12. THE CONQUEST OF SAMĀDHIS AND UNPRODUCED-DHARMAS PATIENCE	147
13. VIMUKTICANDRA: "DOESN'T THE 1ST GROUND SURPASS THE TWO VEHICLES?"	148
14. VAJRAGARBHA: "IN ASPIRATION, YES. BY VIRTUE OF PRACTICE, NOT YET"	148
15. VAJRAGARBHA'S ANALOGY OF A PRINCE NOT YET ASCENDED TO POWER	148
16. THIS BODHISATTVA'S UNIQUE PRACTICE & RESTRAINT FROM FINAL NIRVĀṆA	149
17. VIMUKTICANDRA: "WHEN CAN ONE ENTER THE CESSATION SAMĀDHI?"	149
18. VAJRAGARBHA: "FROM THE 6TH GROUND; NOW HE ENTERS & ARISES AT WILL"	149
19. VAJRAGARBHA LIKENS PRACTICE TO SAILING ON THE OPEN OCEAN	149
20. 10 PARADOXICAL ASPECTS OF THE 7TH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE	150
21. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS	150
22. GOOD ROOTS PURIFICATION LIKENED TO GOLD INLAY AND SUNLIGHT	151
23. THE 7TH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S FOCUS ON SKILLFUL MEANS PĀRAMITĀ	151
24. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 7TH GROUND BODHISATTVA	152
a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE	152
b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS	152
c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS	152
d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS	152
25. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES	152
<b>H. THE EIGHTH GROUND: THE IMMOVABILITY GROUND</b>	<b>155</b>
1. THE EIGHTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST	155
2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE EIGHTH GROUND'S EXPLANATION	156
3. TEN ACCOMPLISHMENTS ASSOCIATED WITH ENTERING THE EIGHTH GROUND	156
4. TEN TYPES OF COMPREHENSION ASSOCIATED WITH 8TH GROUND ACCESS	156
5. THE UNPRODUCED DHARMAS PATIENCE BASIS FOR "PROFOUND PRACTICE"	157
6. "PROFOUND PRACTICE" LIKE A MONK WITH SUPERKNOWLEDGES & DHYĀNAS	157
7. 8TH GROUND LIKENED TO AWAKENING FROM A RIVER-FORDING DREAM	158
8. 8TH GROUND LIKENED TO THE BRAHMA WORLD'S ABSENCE OF AFFLICTIONS	158

9. THE BUDDHAS' MANIFESTATION BEFORE THE 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA	158
10. THE BUDDHAS' PRAISE & INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA	158
11. THE IMPORTANCE OF BUDDHAS' APPEARING TO 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVAS	160
12. WHY 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICES ARE SO MEASURELESS	160
13. THIS BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICES LIKENED TO SAILING OUT ONTO THE OCEAN	160
14. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONTEMPLATION OF BUDDHA'S ALL-KNOWLEDGE	161
15. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THE ARISING AND DESTRUCTION OF WORLDS	161
16. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THE FOUR ELEMENTAL PHASES	161
17. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF ATOMS' MANIFESTATIONS IN WORLDS AND BEINGS	162
18. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THE THREE REALMS OF EXISTENCE	162
19. HIS APPLICATION OF KNOWLEDGE IN ADAPTIVE BIRTHS TO TEACH BEINGS	162
20. HIS TRANSCENDENCE OF DISCRIMINATIONS & KNOWLEDGE OF 10 BODY TYPES	164
a. THE BODHISATTVA'S MANIFESTATION OF DIFFERENT BODIES FOR BEINGS	164
b. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF BEINGS' BODIES	165
c. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE BODIES OF LANDS	165
d. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF RETRIBUTION, 2-VEHICLES, AND BODHISATTVA BODIES	165
e. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF TATHĀGATAS' BODIES	165
f. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE KNOWLEDGE BODY	166
g. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE DHARMA BODY	166
h. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE EMPTY SPACE BODY	166
21. THE BODHISATTVA'S ACQUISITION OF TEN KINDS OF SOVEREIGN MASTERY	166
22. TEN CHARACTERISTIC ASPECTS OF THIS EIGHTH GROUND BODHISATTVA	167
23. TEN TYPES OF POWER IN WHICH THIS BODHISATTVA IS WELL ESTABLISHED	167
24. THE TEN NAMES OF THIS EIGHTH BODHISATTVA GROUND	168
25. ADDITIONAL 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA QUALITIES AND PRACTICE ASPECTS	169
26. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS	169
27. THE BODHISATTVA'S FURTHER ACQUISITION OF BUDDHAS' DHARMA LIGHT	170
28. THE RADIANCE OF GOOD ROOTS LIKENED TO A SAGE KING'S CROWN	170
29. THIS BODHISATTVA'S RADIANCE LIKE THAT OF A BRAHMA HEAVEN KING	170
30. THE 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S FOCUS ON THE SKILLFUL MEANS PĀRAMITĀ	171
31. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA	171
a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE	171
b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS	171
c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS	171
d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS	171
32. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES	172
<b>I. THE NINTH GROUND: THE EXCELLENT INTELLIGENCE GROUND</b>	<b>175</b>
1. THE NINTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST	175
2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE NINTH GROUND'S EXPLANATION	176
3. TEN EARNESTLY PURSUED ENDEAVORS ENABLING NINTH GROUND ACCESS	176
4. THIS BODHISATTVA'S TEN TYPES OF REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF KARMA	177
5. HIS TEN TYPES OF REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF ENTANGLING THICKETS	177
6. TEN TYPES OF REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF BEINGS' MENTAL ASPECTS	177
7. HIS REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF THE AFFLICTIONS' CHARACTERISTICS	178
8. HIS REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF CHARACTERISTICS OF KARMIC ACTIONS	179

9. HIS REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF CHARACTERISTICS OF BEINGS' FACULTIES	179
10. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF BELIEFS, SENSE REALMS, AND RESOLUTE INTENTIONS	180
11. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THE LATENT TENDENCIES' CHARACTERISTICS	180
12. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THE CHARACTERISTICS ASSOCIATED WITH BIRTHS	181
13. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF CHARACTERISTICS OF HABITUAL KARMIC PROPENSITIES	181
14. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THOSE FIXED IN RIGHT, IN WRONG, OR UNFIXED	182
15. HIS KNOWLEDGE-BASED ADAPTIVE TEACHING AND LIBERATION OF BEINGS	183
16. THE BODHISATTVA'S COMMAND OF FOUR TYPES OF UNIMPEDED KNOWLEDGE	183
a. TEN PERMUTATIONS OF EXPERTISE IN THE FOUR UNIMPEDED KNOWLEDGES	184
17. HIS ACQUISITION OF DHĀRAṆĪS & FURTHER RECEIPT OF BUDDHAS' DHARMA	186
18. HIS EXPOUNDING ON DHARMA THROUGHOUT A GREAT TRICHILICOSM	187
19. THIS BODHISATTVA'S 10 TYPES OF VOICE-LIKE EXPRESSION IN TEACHING	187
20. HIS INDEPENDENT COMMAND OF COUNTLESS SIMULTANEOUS VOICES	188
21. THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR IN QUEST OF THE LIGHT OF KNOWLEDGE	188
22. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS	189
23. HIS GOOD ROOTS' PURITY LIKE THE GOLD OF A CAKRAVARTIN'S CROWN	189
24. HIS GOOD ROOTS' PURITY LIKE A BRAHMA HEAVEN KING'S RADIANCE	189
25. THE NINTH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S FOCUS ON THE POWERS PĀRAMITĀ	190
26. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 9TH GROUND BODHISATTVA	190
a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE	190
b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS	190
c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS	190
d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS	191
27. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES	191
<b>J. THE TENTH GROUND: THE DHARMA CLOUD GROUND</b>	<b>195</b>
1. THE TENTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST	195
2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE TENTH GROUND'S EXPLANATION	196
3. THE TEN CATEGORIES OF PRACTICE BEFORE ENTERING THE TENTH GROUND	196
4. THIS BODHISATTVA'S SUBSEQUENT ACQUISITION OF SAMĀDHIS	197
5. THIS FINAL SAMĀDHI'S MANIFESTATION OF AN IMMENSE RADIANT LOTUS	198
6. THIS BODHISATTVA SITS ATOP A LOTUS ENCIRCLED BY RETINUE BODHISATTVAS	198
7. HIS BODY EMANATES LIGHT ILLUMINATING TEN REALMS OF BEINGS	199
8. THE LIGHT RAYS FORM A CANOPY THAT MAKES OFFERINGS TO ALL BUDDHAS	200
9. THE LIGHT RAYS CIRCLE AROUND ALL BUDDHAS AND ENTER THEIR FEET	200
10. THE 10 REGIONS' BODHISATTVAS COME, MAKE OFFERINGS & ENTER SAMĀDHI	200
11. THEY EMANATE LIGHT FROM THEIR CHESTS THAT ENTERS HIS CHEST	201
12. ALL BUDDHAS SEND FORTH LIGHT THAT ENTERS THIS BODHISATTVA'S CROWN	201
13. THIS BODHISATTVA ACQUIRES SAMĀDHIS AND ALL BUDDHAS' CONSECRATION	202
14. THE SIMILE OF THE CONSECRATION OF THE WHEEL TURNING SAGE KING'S SON	202
15. THE CAPACITIES ARISING FROM THIS BODHISATTVA'S CONSECRATION	202
16. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF ATTAINMENTS	202
17. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF TRANSFORMATION	203
18. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF SUSTAINING BASES	204
19. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF SUBTLITIES OF PRACTICE	204
20. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE TATHĀGATAS' SECRETS	205

21. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE INTERPENETRATION OF KALPAS	205
22. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWING OF THE BUDDHA'S PENETRATING KNOWLEDGE	206
23. THIS BODHISATTVA'S ACQUISITION OF COUNTLESS LIBERATIONS	207
24. THIS BODHISATTVA'S SAMĀDHIS, DHĀRAṆĪS, AND SUPERKNOWLEDGES	207
25. THIS BODHISATTVA'S LIMITLESS MEMORY POWER	207
26. HIS LIMITLESS MEMORY COMPARED TO THE OCEAN'S LIMITLESS CAPACITY	208
27. VIMUKTICANDRA ASKS ABOUT THE LIMITS OF THIS BODHISATTVA'S MEMORY	208
28. VAJRAGARBHA'S ANALOGY DESCRIBING THIS BODHISATTVA'S MEMORY POWER	208
29. THE DHARMA CLOUD BODHISATTVA'S GREAT DHARMA RAIN	209
30. THIS BODHISATTVA'S USE OF SPIRITUAL POWERS IN TRANSFORMING WORLDS	210
31. HIS USE OF POWERS IN MANIFESTING BODIES & SUPERNATURAL PHENOMENA	211
32. THE CONGREGANTS WONDER: "WHAT MORE COULD EVEN A BUDDHA DO?"	213
33. LIBERATION MOON ASKS VAJRAGARBHA FOR AN EXPLANATION	213
34. VAJRAGARBHA ENTERS "THE NATURE OF ALL BUDDHA LANDS' SAMĀDHI"	213
35. LIBERATION MOON ASKS ABOUT THIS SAMĀDHI'S NAME AND CAPACITY	214
36. HE ASKS: "WHAT MORE MIGHT A BUDDHA'S POWERS ACCOMPLISH?"	215
37. VAJRAGARBHA CONTRASTS A FEW CLUMPS OF EARTH TO ALL WORLDS	215
38. VAJRAGARBHA COMPARES MANY BODHISATTVAS' WISDOM TO ONE BUDDHA'S	215
39. THE NATURE OF THIS BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE AND WISDOM LIGHT	216
40. THE LIGHT OF HIS WISDOM COMPARED TO THAT OF REAL GOLD	216
41. THIS BODHISATTVA'S WISDOM LIGHT COMPARED TO MAHEŚVARA'S LIGHT	217
42. THE BUDDHAS' ONGOING TEACHING OF THIS BODHISATTVA	217
43. THE TENTH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S FOCUS ON THE KNOWLEDGES PĀRAMITĀ	217
44. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 10TH GROUND BODHISATTVA	217
45. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE	217
46. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS	218
47. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS	218
48. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS	218
<b>III. THE FINAL SUMMARIZING DISCUSSION OF THE TEN GROUNDS</b>	<b>218</b>
A. HIS EVENTUAL ALL-KNOWLEDGE LIKENED TO RIVERS' FLOW INTO THE SEA	218
B. THE 10 GROUNDS' DIFFERENCES LIKENED TO THOSE OF 10 MOUNTAIN KINGS	219
1. THE FIRST GROUND COMPARED TO THE SNOW MOUNTAIN KING	219
2. THE SECOND GROUND COMPARED TO THE FRAGRANCE MOUNTAIN KING	219
3. THE THIRD GROUND COMPARED TO THE VAIDHARĪ MOUNTAIN KING	219
4. THE FOURTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE RISHI MOUNTAIN KING	220
5. THE FIFTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE YUGAMDHARA MOUNTAIN KING	220
6. THE SIXTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE HORSE EAR MOUNTAIN KING	220
7. THE SEVENTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE NIMINDHARA MOUNTAIN KING	220
8. THE EIGHTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE CAKRAVĀDA MOUNTAIN KING	221
9. THE NINTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE KETUMAT MOUNTAIN KING	221
10. THE TENTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE SUMERU MOUNTAIN KING	221
11. THE TEN GROUNDS IN ALL-KNOWLEDGE LIKENED TO MOUNTAINS IN THE SEA	221
C. THE TEN GROUNDS COMPARED TO TEN ASPECTS OF THE GREAT OCEAN	221
D. THE TEN GROUNDS COMPARED TO A LARGE MAṆI JEWEL	223
E. THE PREREQUISITE CONDITIONS FOR HEARING THE TEN GROUNDS TEACHINGS	224

---

F. LIBERATION MOON ASKS: "HOW MUCH MERIT BY HEARING THIS TEACHING?"	224
G. VAJRAGARBHA EXPLAINS MERIT AND IMPORTANCE TEN GROUNDS TEACHING	224
H. THE AUSPICIOUS SIGNS OCCURRING WHEN THIS SUTRA'S TEACHING ENDED	224
I. THE 10 DIRECTIONS' BODHISATTVAS ATTEST TO THE TEACHING'S UNIVERSALITY	225
J. VAJRAGARBHA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES AUGMENTED BY THE BUDDHA'S POWERS	225



## TRANSLATOR'S INTRODUCTION

Continuing my focus on translating bodhisattva path texts important in the history of Classic Indian and Chinese Mahāyana Buddhism, I present here my English translation of "The Ten Grounds" chapter of the *Greatly Expansive Buddha's Flower Adornment Sutra* (*Mahāvaiṣṭya-buddha-avatamsaka-sūtra*) as translated by Tripiṭaka Master Śikṣānanda some time between 695 and 699 CE. The subject of this six-fascicle 26<sup>th</sup> chapter, "The Ten Grounds," is the bodhisattva's ascent through ten "grounds," "planes," or "levels" of spiritual path cultivation transited by the bodhisattva as he progresses from the state of a common person toward that of a fully enlightened buddha.

There have been two relatively complete Chinese translations of the *Avatamsaka Sutra* itself from Sanskrit, the first of which was an edition in 34 chapters and 60 fascicles completed by Tripiṭaka Master Buddhahadra in 421 (T 278) and the second of which was an edition in 39 chapters and 80 fascicles completed by Tripiṭaka Master Śikṣānanda in 699 (T 280). My reasons for drawing this "Ten Grounds" chapter from the Śikṣānanda edition rather than the Buddhahadra edition were two-fold. First, the Śikṣānanda edition is more complete and, outside of Japan, it has generally now regarded as the "standard" edition ever since the middle of the Tang Dynasty. Secondly, I had already been introduced to the Śikṣānanda edition by my guru, the Venerable Hsuan Hua, this in the context of his lectures on it which started in San Francisco in 1970 or '71.

In order to encourage a better understanding of these ten bodhisattva grounds and the bodhisattva path in general, I have also translated three other closely related works:

Kumārajīva's 4-fascicle *Ten Grounds Sutra* (T 286);

Nāgārjuna's 17-fascicle *Treatise on the Ten Grounds* (T 1521);

Śikṣānanda's 80-fascicle *Flower Adornment Sutra* (T 279).

The first two of these three related works are Kalavinka Press publications. Even though I finished the first draft of my *Flower Adornment Sutra* translation in early 2014, due to the inevitable delay imposed by editing, revising, and incorporating recommended improvements from colleagues, it could easily be a few more years before I release it to publication.

Regarding this “Ten Grounds” text itself, because it also circulated as an independent scripture known as the *Ten Grounds Sutra* (*Daśabhūmika-sūtra*), it does not exist only as a chapter of the *Avataṃsaka Sutra*. There is no real consensus on whether this text was, per the tradition, originally integral to the *Avataṃsaka Sutra* or was instead an independently circulating scripture later incorporated into the *Avataṃsaka Sutra*. In any case, in addition to the later Sanskrit, Tibetan, and Mongolian editions of this text, there are six relatively early surviving Chinese editions as follows:

- Dharmarakṣa (c. 297 CE), T 283;
- Kumārajīva assisted by Buddhayaśas (c. 408–412 CE),<sup>1</sup> T 286;
- Buddhabhadra (c. 418–20 CE), as *Avataṃsaka Sutra* Ch. 22, T 278;
- Bodhiruci (c. 508–511 CE), in Vasubhandu’s commentary, T 1522;
- Śikṣānanda (c. 695–699 CE), as *Avataṃsaka Sutra* Ch. 26, T 279;
- Śīladharma (c. 790 CE), T 287.

In English, there have been several translations, as follows:

- Megumu Honda from the Sanskrit of the *Daśabhūmika-sūtra*;<sup>2</sup>
- Buddhist Text Translation Society (partial) of the Śikṣānanda edition’s Chapter 26;
- Thomas Cleary, supposedly (but not really) from Śikṣānanda’s edition of the *Avataṃsaka Sutra*, this in Ch. 26 of his *Flower Ornament Scripture*.<sup>3</sup>

The Megumu Honda translation was done in 1961–62 when he was still a student at Yale, and, although perhaps useful for beginning students of Sanskrit, its utility is diminished by the author’s early difficulties with both Sanskrit and English.

The BTTS translation is so far only a partial translation consisting of a translation of the first four of the ten grounds. I have been advised by a member of that translation team that, as of July, 2018, the tentative publication date for the remainder of the BTTS translation is still 2 or more years away.

Regarding this “Ten Grounds Chapter” itself, Thomas Cleary’s translation is represented as a translation from the Chinese of the Śikṣānanda edition of the *Avataṃsaka Sutra*. However, it is no such thing. His translation of Chapter 26 which he calls “The Ten Stages” chapter appears to instead be a loose translation of the P. L. Vaidya Sanskrit edition of the *Daśabhūmika Sūtra*. Hence his supposed translation of this chapter has little if any relation to Śikṣānanda’s Chinese edition.



Although there are other schemas describing the levels of cultivation through which one passes in cultivating the bodhisattva path, the “ten grounds” arrangement described in this text is really quite standard for the Classic Indian Mahāyana tradition. As listed in the introductory section of this chapter, these ten levels of progress along the bodhisattva path are as follows:

- 1) The Ground of Joyfulness (*pramuditā*);
- 2) The Ground of Stainlessness (*vimalā*);
- 3) The Ground of Shining Light (*prabhākarī*);
- 4) The Ground of Blazing Brilliance (*arciṣmati*);<sup>4</sup>
- 5) The Difficult-to-Conquer Ground (*sudurjayā*);
- 6) The Ground of Direct Presence (*abhimukhī*);
- 7) The Far-Reaching Ground (*dūraṅgamā*);
- 8) The Ground of Immovability (*acalā*);
- 9) The Ground of Excellent Intelligence (*sādhumatī*);<sup>5</sup>
- 10) The Ground of the Dharma Cloud (*dharma-megha*).

Each of these grounds is correlated with the practice of one of these ten perfections:

- The perfection of giving (*dāna-pāramitā*);
- The perfection of moral virtue (*śīla-pāramitā*);
- The perfection of patience (*kṣānti-pāramitā*);
- The perfection of vigor (*vīrya-pāramitā*);
- The perfection of *dhyāna* meditation (*dhyāna-pāramitā*);
- The perfection of wisdom (*prajñā-pāramitā*);
- The perfection of skillful means (*upāya-pāramitā*);
- The perfection of vows (*prañidhāna-pāramitā*);
- The perfection of powers (*bala-pāramitā*);
- The perfection of knowledge (*jñāna-pāramitā*).

There are also other correlations between particular grounds and important bodhisattva skills and capacities. Examples include:

- The four means of attraction on the first four grounds;
- The thirty-seven enlightenment factors on the fourth ground;
- The four truths on the fifth ground;
- The twelve links of conditioned arising on the sixth ground;
- The unproduced-dharmas patience on the eighth ground;
- The four unimpeded knowledges on the ninth ground.

According to this text, as the bodhisattva moves from one level to another in his cultivation of the ten grounds, he sees more and more buddhas, manifests more and more bodhisattva transformation bodies attended by bodhisattva retinues, and appears as a bodhisattva king in higher and higher stations of existence. This bodhisattva kingship phenomenon begins with his appearance as a king over the continent of Jambudvīpa on the first ground after which he appears as a king over all four continents on the second ground, appears as a king of the Trāyastriṃśa Heaven on the third ground, and so forth, finally culminating with his appearance as a king of the Akaniṣṭha Heaven on the tenth ground.

There are a few technical difficulties that I encountered in translating this text from Chinese, most of which involve ambiguities in meaning introduced by the limitations of Chinese language in accurately reflecting Sanskrit technical term nuances. This problem is well evidenced by the particular Chinese-language technical term translations chosen by Śikṣānanda. (The challenges I encountered in translating Kumārajīva's *Ten Grounds Sutra* were nearly identical.)

Fortunately, because I could consult the surviving Sanskrit edition, it was for the most part possible to trace the antecedent Sanskrit terms and then choose somewhat more accurate English technical term translations than would have resulted from simply trying to translate Śikṣānanda's terms directly from Chinese. Relative clarity in this matter was aided somewhat by J. Rahder's *Glossary*.<sup>6</sup> Even though the P. L. Vaidya Sanskrit edition dates from roughly a millennium after the Śikṣānanda and Kumārajīva editions, I think it is still mostly valid to rely on it for this purpose because, even as aspects of meaning at the sentence and paragraph level of the Sanskrit manuscript morph over time with each recopying or transcription from memory, technical terms still tend to remain unchanged. The same cannot be said for the actual text of the scripture because we can readily observe very obvious differences between the Sanskrit edition and the very early Śikṣānanda and Kumārajīva editions.

The first and most obvious problem is the difficulty which the Chinese translations have in reliably reflecting the difference between technical terms such as *jñāna* (knowledge, cognition, etc.) and *prajñā* (wisdom). In an ideal translation world, Śikṣānanda and Kumārajīva would have very rigorously stuck with simply *zhi* (智)

for “*jñāna* / knowledge” and *zhihui* (智慧) for “*prajñā* / wisdom,” but this is not the case, especially in the translation of verse lines where the need for extreme economy in composing Chinese 5- or 7-character verse lines where it often became necessary to shorten *zhihui* (智慧) to simply *zhi* (智), thereby accidentally obscuring for the Chinese reader the difference between “wisdom” and “knowledge.” I found that this problem was fairly easily overcome through consulting the Sanskrit.

Other technical terms which initially produced difficulties due to the widely varying and sometimes deceptive Chinese translations were *adhyāsaya* (usually “higher aspirations,” etc.), *āśaya* (usually “intentions,” “resolute intentions,” “dispositions,” “inclinations,” etc.), and *adhimukti* (usually “resolute beliefs,” “resolute faith,” “convictions,” etc.). Had I not closely tracked the Sanskrit text, it would have been nearly impossible to accurately translate these terms and preserve their distinctions.

Due to the particular need of specialists and advanced students to closely track and distinguish technical terms and other issues such as these, at least in the multilingual editions of my translation, I am including under the same cover not only the facing-page Chinese simplified and traditional texts, but also (in the back of the book) the Sanskrit text.

Use of the digital Sanskrit text is by the kind permission of Dr. Miroj Shakya, Project Coordinator of the Digital Sanskrit Buddhist Canon Project. The Sanskrit text itself is the edition edited by P. L. Vaidya and published by The Mithila Institute of Post-Graduate Studies and Research in Sanskrit learning. To ease the reader’s correlation of the Sanskrit text with both the English translation and the facing-page Chinese, I have embedded the alphabetical Sanskrit section headings within all versions of the text (Chinese, English, and Sanskrit).

These very helpful alphabetical section markers originate with Johannes Rahder who embedded them in his 1923 and 1926 editions of the *Daśabhūmika-Sūtra*.<sup>7</sup> In all cases I have placed these alphabetical section headings within the texts in bolded reduced-font “curly brackets” or “braces” as follows: {A}, {B}, {AA}, etc.

In bringing forth this translation, I making no claims to absolute accuracy. Though I have been assisted by critical comments from about a half dozen colleagues and have gone through the manuscript many times, there is probably room for improvement. I hope

that readers who notice errors or infelicities will favor me with constructive email criticism via the Kalavinka website. I hope that this edition will at least serve to encourage a deeper study of this text by students of the Dharma.

Bhikshu Dharmamitra

Seattle,

July 9, 2018

## Introduction Endnotes

1. Citing Kusugai, Richard Robinson (*Early Mādhyamika in India and China*, p. 76) says that Kumārajīva is said to have “procrastinated about starting work on the *Daśabhūmika* until Buddhayaśas joined him in the undertaking.” Buddhayaśas arrived in Chang’an in 408, so the translation must date from around that time.
2. Sinor, D., Raghu Vira, Honda, Megumu, & Permanent International Altaistic Conference. (1968). *Studies in South, East, and Central Asia : Presented as a memorial volume to the late Professor Raghu Vira* (Śata-piṭaka series ; v. 74). New Delhi: International Academy of Indian Culture.
3. Cleary, T. (1984). *The Flower Ornament Scripture : A Translation of the Avatamsaka Sutra*. Boulder : [New York]: Shambhala Publications ; Distributed in the U.S. by Random House.
4. SA,SD, and Prajñā all translate the name of this *bhūmi* as “the Ground of Blazing Intelligence” (焰慧地). This appears to be the result of an error arising from misinterpreting the Sanskrit name (*arciṣmatī*) by mistaking a suffix indicating possession (-*mat* modified to agree with the feminine noun *bhūmi* to become -*matī*) for a completely unrelated word that means “intelligence,” “intellect,” “mind” (*matī*). (BB, BR, KB, and the Tibetan all recognize -*matī* as a possessive suffix and hence accord with the Sanskrit meaning.) I have chosen to “bridge” the problem by translating the name of this ground as “the Ground of Blazing Brilliance” in order to allow both meanings the be reflected in the word “blazing” and thus more or less accurately translate both the (seemingly erroneous) SA translation and the correct meaning of the Sanskrit.
5. There seem to be two distinctly different understandings of the meaning of this ground:  
DR, SA, BB, BR, SD, and Prajñā all translate the name of this *bhūmi* as “the Ground of Excellent Intelligence” (善慧地). DR translates that same meaning slightly differently: (善哉意). The Tibetan translation also corresponds to this with “the Ground of Excellent Insight” (*legs pa'i blo gros*). Strictly speaking, one could infer that most of these renderings appear be the result of an error arising from misinterpreting the Sanskrit name (*sādhumatī*) by mistaking a suffix indicating possession (-*mat* modified to agree with the feminine noun *bhūmi* to become -*matī*) for a completely unrelated word that means “intelligence,” “intellect,” or “mind” (*matī*).

Of all the Chinese and Tibetan translators, it appears that the Kumārajīva-Buddhayaśas translation team may have been the only one to render the name of this *bhūmi* more or less in accordance with the above-referenced “strictly correct” interpretation of the Sanskrit term as “the Ground of Sublime Goodness” (妙善地). The KB edition only employs the possibly erroneous Chinese and Tibetan default rendering once (in its initial listing of the ten bodhisattva grounds), but otherwise accords with the strictly grammatically correct interpretation of the term throughout its detailed discussion of the ninth *bhūmi* itself.

6. Glossary of the Sanskrit, Tibetan, Mongolian, and Chinese Versions of the Daśabhūmika-Sūtra. Compiled by J. Rahder. (Buddhica, Documents et Travaux pour l’Étude du Bouddhisme publiés sous la direction de J. Przyluski; Deuxième Série; Documents—Tome I). Paris: Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geuthner, 1928.
7. On page vii in his Introduction to his *Glossary of the Sanskrit, Tibetan, Mongolian and Chinese Versions of the Daśabhūmika-Sūtra*, Rahder says, “capital letters between brackets refer to the sections of the chapters as indicated in my edition (1926).” (They are also present in his 1923 edition of the *Daśabhūmikasūtra* that was published together with the *Bodhisattvabhūmi* with only the minor oversight of having left out “A” and “B” at the very beginning of the first *bhūmi*.)

# THE TEN BODHISATTVA GROUNDS

## *The Avataṃsaka Sūtra*

### Chapter 26: The Ten Grounds

(Taisho T10, no. 279, Fascicles 34–39, pp. 178b25–210c25)

Translated under Imperial Auspices by  
Tripiṭaka Master Śikṣānanda from the State of Khotan<sup>1</sup>

Chinese to English Translation by Bhikshu Dharmamitra





# PART ONE

## The Joyfulness Ground<sup>2</sup>

### I. THE INTRODUCTORY SECTION

#### A. THE SETTING AND AUDIENCE

(A) At that time, the Bhagavat was residing in the Maṇi Jewel Treasury Palace of the Paranirmīta Vaśavartin Heaven King, together with an assembly of great bodhisattvas. All of those bodhisattvas had already achieved irreversibility in their progression toward *anuttarasamyaksambodhi*. They had all come to assemble there from the worlds of other regions.

#### B. THE GREAT BODHISATTVAS AND THEIR QUALITIES

They dwelt in the realm of knowledge possessed by all bodhisattvas. They were tirelessly diligent in entering those places entered by the knowledge of all *tathāgatas*. They were well able to manifest many different sorts of endeavors accomplished by the spiritual superknowledges. They taught and trained all beings and, in doing so, never erred in their timing.

In order to fulfill all of the great vows of the bodhisattva, they remained diligent in the cultivation of all practices, doing so in all worlds, in all kalpas, and in all lands, never desisting even briefly. They had become completely equipped with the bodhisattva's merit and knowledge, the provisions assisting realization of the path, and were never deficient in benefitting beings everywhere. They had achieved the most ultimate perfection in all bodhisattvas' wisdom and skillful means.

They manifested entry into *saṃsāra* as well as *nirvāṇa*, and yet they still refrained from neglecting their cultivation of the bodhisattva practices. They were skillful in entering all of the bodhisattva's *dhyaṇa* concentrations, liberations, *samādhis*, *samāpattis*, spiritual superknowledges, and clear knowledges.<sup>3</sup>

They achieved sovereign mastery in all of their undertakings. They had already garnered all of the freely exercised spiritual powers of the bodhisattva such that, in but a moment, without moving in the slightest, they were all able to go forth to join the assemblies gathered at the *bodhimaṇḍas*<sup>4</sup> of all *tathāgatas* to serve therein

as leaders for those congregations, and to request that the Buddhas expound the Dharma.

They served there as guardians of the wheel of the right Dharma<sup>5</sup> of all buddhas. With expansively magnanimous minds, they made offerings to and served all buddhas and were always diligent in their cultivation and implementation of all works performed by all bodhisattvas. Their bodies appeared everywhere in all worlds. Their voices reached everywhere throughout the ten directions of the Dharma realm.<sup>6</sup> Their minds and their knowledge were unimpeded. They everywhere saw all bodhisattvas of the three periods of time. They had already entirely cultivated and brought all meritorious qualities to perfect fulfillment. Even in an ineffable<sup>7</sup> number of kalpas, one would still be unable to entirely describe them all.

C. THE NAMES OF THE BODHISATTVAS IN ATTENDANCE

Their names were:<sup>8</sup>

- Vajragarbha Bodhisattva;
- Jewel Treasury Bodhisattva;
- Lotus Blossom Treasury Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Qualities Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Lotus Qualities Bodhisattva;
- Solar Treasury Bodhisattva;
- Sūrya Treasury Bodhisattva;
- Stainless Moon Treasury Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Adornments Manifesting in All Lands Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Vairocana's Knowledge Bodhisattva;<sup>9</sup>
- Treasury of Sublime Qualities Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Candana's Qualities Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Floral Qualities Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Kusuma's Qualities Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Utpala's Qualities Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Celestial Qualities Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Merit Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Unimpeded Pure Knowledge Qualities Bodhisattva;<sup>10</sup>
- Treasury of Meritorious Qualities Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Nārāyaṇa's Qualities Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Stainlessness Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Defilement Transcendence Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of Adornment with All Forms of Eloquence Bodhisattva;
- Treasury of the Great Net of Light Rays Bodhisattva;

Treasury of the King of the Pure Light of Awesome Qualities Bodhisattva;  
 Treasury of the King of Great Qualities' Gold-Adorned Brilliance Bodhisattva;  
 Treasury of Pure Qualities Adorned with All the Marks Bodhisattva;  
 Treasury of Adornment with Flaming Vajra Radiance and the Marks of Merit Bodhisattva;  
 Treasury of Radiant Flames Bodhisattva;  
 Treasury of Constellation King's Radiance Bodhisattva;  
 Treasury of Spacious Unimpeded Knowledge Bodhisattva;<sup>11</sup>  
 Treasury of Unimpeded Sublime Sound Bodhisattva;  
 Treasury of Dhāraṇī Qualities and Vows Sustaining All Beings Bodhisattva;  
 Treasury of Oceanic Adornments Bodhisattva;  
 Treasury of Sumeru-Like Qualities Bodhisattva;  
 Treasury of All Qualities of Purity Bodhisattva;  
 Tathāgata Treasury Bodhisattva;  
 Treasury of Buddha Qualities Bodhisattva;  
 And Liberation Moon Bodhisattva.

An assembly of bodhisattva *mahāsattvas*,<sup>12</sup> such as these was present there in countless, measureless, boundless, matchless, innumerable, indescribable, inconceivable, immeasurable, and ineffable numbers.<sup>13</sup> Vajragarbha Bodhisattva served as their head.

D. VAJRAGARBHA ENTERS SAMĀDHI AND COUNTLESS BUDDHAS MANIFEST

(B) At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, aided by the spiritual power of the Buddha, entered "the bodhisattva's great wisdom light samādhi."<sup>14</sup> (C) After he entered this samādhi, from beyond a number of worlds in each of the ten directions as numerous as the atoms in ten *koṭis*<sup>15</sup> of buddha lands, buddhas as numerous as the atoms in ten *koṭis* of buddha lands, all of them identically named "Vajragarbha," immediately appeared directly before him and uttered these words:

E. THE BUDDHAS PRAISE HIM AND ENCOURAGE HIM TO TEACH THE TEN GROUNDS

It is good indeed, good indeed, Vajragarbha, that you have become able to enter this bodhisattva's great wisdom light samādhi.

Son of Good Family, these are a number of buddhas from each of the ten directions as numerous as the atoms in ten *koṭis* of buddha lands who have all joined in providing assistance to you here. This is due to the power of the original vows of Vairocana Tathāgata, Worthy of Offerings, of Right and Universal Enlightenment,<sup>16</sup>

and because of his awesome spiritual powers. It is also because of your supreme powers of knowledge and because they wish to influence you to describe for all bodhisattvas the inconceivable Dharma light of all buddhas, in particular doing so:

- ⑩ To cause their entry into the grounds of knowledge;  
To bring about their gathering together of all roots of goodness;  
To enable their skillful selective differentiation of all dharmas of the Buddha;  
To bring about their vast knowing of all dharmas;  
To enable their skillfulness in the ability to expound on Dharma;  
To facilitate their purification of non-discriminating knowledge;  
To ensure their non-defilement by any worldly dharma;  
To facilitate their purification of roots of world-transcending goodness;  
To facilitate their acquisition of the realm of inconceivable knowledge;  
To cause their acquisition of the realm of knowledge of those possessed of all-knowledge;  
To also cause their acquisition, from beginning to end, of the bodhisattva's ten grounds;  
To bring about the reality-accordant explanation of the differentiating aspects of the bodhisattva's ten grounds;  
To enable objectively focused mindfulness of all dharmas of the Buddha;  
To facilitate their cultivation and differentiation of the dharmas that are free of the contaminants,<sup>17</sup>  
To facilitate their skillful adornment through excellence in selection and contemplation employing the light of great wisdom;<sup>18</sup>  
To cause their skillful entry into the gate of absolutely definitive knowledge;  
To enable them to be fearless in providing sequential expositions wherever they may abide;  
To facilitate their acquisition of the light of unimpeded eloquence;  
To enable their abiding on the ground of great eloquence with skillful resolve;  
To enable their bearing in mind the bodhisattva's resolve without ever forgetting it;  
To bring about their ripening of beings in all realms of existence;  
And to facilitate their realization of definitive awakening that reaches everywhere.

(E) Son of Good Family. You should eloquently explain the different skillful means dharmas associated with these Dharma gateways, doing so:

- To receive the Buddha's spiritual power through being aided by the light of the Tathāgata's knowledge;
- To facilitate the purification of one's own roots of goodness;
- To everywhere purify the Dharma realm;
- To everywhere draw forth beings;
- To deeply enter the Dharma body and knowledge body;
- To receive the Buddha's consecrating anointing of the crown;
- To acquire the most supremely lofty and grand body in the entire world;
- To step entirely beyond all worldly paths;
- To purify roots of world-transcending goodness;
- And in order to completely fulfill the cognition of all-knowledge.

F. THE BUDDHAS BESTOW QUALITIES AND ABILITIES ON VAJRAGARBHA

(F) At that time, the Buddhas of the ten directions bestowed these things on Vajragarbha Bodhisattva:

- They bestowed a body that none could outshine;
- They bestowed the skill of unimpeded eloquent expression;
- They bestowed skillfully differentiating pure knowledge;
- They bestowed the power of skillful remembrance invulnerable to forgetfulness,
- They bestowed thoroughly decisive and completely understanding intelligence;<sup>19</sup>
- They bestowed awakened knowledge that extends to all places;
- They bestowed the freely exercised powers associated with realization of the path;
- They bestowed the fearlessnesses of the Tathāgatas;<sup>20</sup>
- They bestowed the Omniscient Ones' eloquence and knowledges<sup>21</sup> that contemplate and distinguish all Dharma gateways;
- And they bestowed the adornments of all Tathāgatas' supremely sublime and utterly perfected body, speech, and mind.

(G) Why did this occur?

- Because acquisition of this samādhi dharma entails just such an occurrence;
- Because this was generated by his original vows;
- Because of his having well purified his resolute intentions;<sup>22</sup>
- Because of his having well cleansed the sphere of knowledge;<sup>23</sup>

Because of his having well accumulated the provisions assisting realization of the path;<sup>24</sup>  
 Because of his having well cultivated and refined whatever he engaged in;  
 Because his mindfulness made him fit as a vessel able to contain measurelessly many dharmas;<sup>25</sup>  
 Because of the knowledge that he was possessed of pure resolute faith;<sup>26</sup>  
 Because of his having acquired the comprehensive retention *dhāraṇīs*<sup>27</sup> in which he was free of errors;  
 And because of his having been well-sealed by the seal of knowledge of the Dharma realm.<sup>28</sup>

G. VAJRAGARBHA EMERGES FROM SAMĀDHI AND SPEAKS OF THE TEN GROUNDS

(H) At that time, the Buddhas of the ten directions each extended their right hands and rubbed the crown of Vajragarbha Bodhisattva's head. (I) After they had rubbed the top of his head, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva emerged from samādhi and, (J) addressing everyone in that congregation of bodhisattvas, he informed them as follows:

Sons of the Buddha, the vows of the bodhisattva are excellent in their resolve, unmixed, imperceptible, as vast as the Dharma realm itself, and as ultimately far-reaching as empty space. They extend to the very bounds of future time and everywhere throughout all buddha lands. They serve to rescue and protect all beings, are carried out under the protection of all buddhas, and enter into the grounds of knowledge of all buddhas throughout the past, the future, and the present.

1. VAJRAGARBHA SETS FORTH THE NAMES OF THE TEN GROUNDS

Sons of the Buddha, what then are the grounds of knowledge of the bodhisattva *mahāsattvas*? Sons of the Buddha, there are ten grounds of knowledge of the bodhisattva *mahāsattvas*. All buddhas of the past, the future, and the present have proclaimed them, will proclaim them, and do now proclaim them. In this same way, I too proclaim them here. What then are these ten? They are:<sup>29</sup>

- First, the Ground of Joyfulness;
- Second, the Ground of Stainlessness;
- Third, the Ground of Shining Light;
- Fourth, the Ground of Blazing Brilliance;<sup>30</sup>
- Fifth, the Difficult-to-Conquer Ground;
- Sixth, the Ground of Direct Presence;

Seventh, the Far-Reaching Ground;  
 Eighth, the Ground of Immovability;  
 Ninth, the Ground of Excellent Intelligence;<sup>31</sup>  
 Tenth, the Ground of the Dharma Cloud.

Sons of the Buddha, these ten bodhisattva grounds have been proclaimed by all buddhas of the three periods of time. They have proclaimed them in the past, will proclaim them in the future, and do proclaim them now.

Sons of the Buddha, I have never observed any among all the buddha lands in which the *tathāgata* therein failed to set forth an explanation of these ten grounds. Why is that? These constitute the bodhisattva *mahāsattvas'* most supreme path to the realization of bodhi as well as the gateway to the light of the pure Dharma. We refer here to the differentiation and explication of the bodhisattva grounds.

Sons of the Buddha, these stations are inconceivable. We refer here to all bodhisattvas' knowledge as it develops in accordance with their realizations.

## 2. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA FALLS SILENT

[K] Then, having set forth the names of these ten grounds of the bodhisattva, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva fell silent, remained in place, and did not then proceed to present a differentiating explanation of them.

### H. THE CONGREGATION IS CAUSED TO WONDER WHY THERE IS NO EXPLANATION

At this time, having heard the names of the bodhisattvas' ten grounds without hearing any attendant explanation of them, that entire congregation of bodhisattvas gazed up at him with thirst-like anticipation as they thought to themselves, "Due to what causes and what conditions does Vajragarbha Bodhisattva merely set forth the names of the bodhisattvas' ten grounds while not then proceeding to explain them?"

### I. LIBERATION MOON BODHISATTVA'S FIRST REQUEST FOR DHARMA TEACHING

Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, knowing the thoughts in the minds of those in that great assembly, thereupon employed verses with which he inquired of Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, asking:<sup>32</sup>

Why is it that you who are possessed of pure awakening and are replete with the qualities of mindfulness and knowledge speak of these supremely sublime grounds, but then, even with the power to do so, still refrain from explaining them? {1}

All of those here are decisively resolute in all things,  
 valiantly brave, and entirely free of any timidity.  
 Why then would one set forth the names of the grounds  
 and yet still refrain from beginning to expound on them for us? {2}

As for the sublime meanings and import of the grounds,  
 the members of this congregation all wish to hear them.  
 Their minds are free of timidity.

Hence they wish you will differentiate and explain these for them. {3}

Those in this congregation are entirely pure,  
 have abandoned indolence, and are strict in their pristine purity.  
 They are able to remain solidly unmoving  
 and are replete with meritorious qualities and wisdom.<sup>33</sup> {4}

Looking at each other, they have all become filled with reverence  
 and have trained the focus of their gaze up at you.

In this, they are like bees when they bring to mind fine honey or  
 like one who is thirsty when he longs for the elixir of sweet-dew. {5}

J. VAJRAGARBHA EXPLAINS HIS SILENCE

At that time, having heard him say this, the greatly wise and fearless Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, wishing to cause the assembled congregation to feel delighted in mind, spoke verses for the sake of all those sons of the Buddha: {6}

The matter of the bodhisattva's practices on the grounds  
 is the most supreme of all and is the origin of all buddhas.  
 To reveal them through a differentiating explanation  
 is the foremost of all rare and difficult endeavors. {7}

This is extremely subtle and difficult to perceive.  
 It transcends thought and steps beyond the mind ground.  
 It produces the domain realized by the Buddha.  
 Those who hear of it may all be thrown into confusion. {8}

It is those whose minds have a capacity for retention as solid as vajra,  
 who possess profound faith in the Buddha's supreme knowledge,  
 and who know the mind ground as devoid of any self  
 who are then capable of hearing this supreme Dharma. {9}

Like a mural painted in space  
 and like the appearance of wind in empty space—  
 The knowledge of the Muni is of this very sort,  
 for it is very difficult to see through differentiating explanations. {10}

As I call to mind the wisdom of the Buddha,  
 the most supremely inconceivable of matters,  
 I see that no one in the world would be able to accept it.  
 Hence I fall silent and no longer speak. {11}



## K. LIBERATION MOON BODHISATTVA'S SECOND REQUEST FOR DHARMA TEACHING

(L) At that time, having heard him declare this, Liberation Moon Bodhisattva then addressed Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, saying:

O Son of the Buddha. Those in this assembly that has gathered together here:

Have well purified their resolute intentions;<sup>34</sup>

Have well cleansed their thoughts;

Have well-cultivated all of the practices;

Have well-accumulated the provisions for realization of the path,<sup>35</sup>

Have been well able to draw close to hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of buddhas;

Have perfected countless meritorious qualities and roots of goodness;

Have abandoned delusion;

Have become free of the defilements;

Are possessed of resolute intentions and resolute faith;

And, as they abide in the Buddha's Dharma, do not follow other sorts of teachings.

It would be good indeed, O Son of the Buddha, if, having here received the aid of the Buddha's spiritual powers, you would expound on these matters for their sakes. All of these bodhisattvas are able to achieve realization of such extremely profound stations as these.

At that time, Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, wishing to restate his meaning, spoke verses, saying:

Please speak on what is most conducive to peace and security,  
these unsurpassable practices of the bodhisattva,  
presenting a differentiating explanation of all of the grounds,  
the purification of knowledge, and realization of right enlightenment.

Those in this congregation are free of all defilements,  
are entirely bright and pristine in resolve and understanding,  
have rendered service to countless buddhas,  
and are able to realize the meaning of these grounds.

## L. VAJRAGARBHA FURTHER EXPLAINS HIS RETICENCE TO TEACH THIS DHARMA

(M) At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva responded by saying:

O Son of the Buddha. Although those within this assembled congregation have well purified their thought, have abandoned delusion and doubts, and within the extremely profound Dharma, do

not follow others' teachings, still, there are yet other beings possessed of only inferior understanding who, on hearing of these extremely profound and inconceivable matters, would then generate numerous doubts due to which they would consequently suffer all manner of ruin and torment for a long time. It is because I feel pity for those of this sort that I have therefore fallen silent.

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, wishing to once again state his meaning, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

Although those in this congregation are pure, of vast wisdom,  
of extremely deep and brilliant acuity in their selective abilities,  
are possessed of minds as immovable as the king of mountains,  
and are as invulnerable to overturning as the great oceans—

Still, others, not long-tenured in practice, not yet understanding,  
acting in accord with consciousness and thus not with knowledge—  
Hearing this, they will raise doubts and fall into wretched destinies.  
It is due to pity for those of this sort that I therefore do not speak.

M. LIBERATION MOON BODHISATTVA'S THIRD REQUEST FOR DHARMA TEACHING

(N) At that time, Liberation Moon Bodhisattva again addressed Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, saying:

O Son of the Buddha, aided by the spiritual powers of the Buddha, please do present here a differentiating exposition of these inconceivable dharmas. These persons will be afforded the protective mindfulness of the Tathāgatas and will consequently bring forth faith and acceptance.

And how could this be? Whenever an explanation of the ten grounds is set forth, the Dharma of all bodhisattvas is such that they should be afforded the protective mindfulness of the Buddhas in this way. Due to having been afforded the protective mindfulness of the Buddhas, they will then be able to bring forth heroic valor in cultivating these grounds of knowledge.

And why is this? This is because these constitute what the bodhisattvas practice from the very beginning and utilize in perfecting all dharmas of the Buddhas. This is analogous to the circumstance involved in the writing of words wherein everything in the realm of counting and description relies upon the alphabet<sup>36</sup> as its origin and also relies upon the alphabet in the end. There is not even the most minor increment of this that departs from the alphabet.

O Son of the Buddha. All dharmas of the Buddha in every case rely upon the ten grounds as their very origin and also rely upon

the ten grounds in the end as they are cultivated and perfected and then culminate in all-knowledge.

Therefore, O Son of the Buddha, please expound on these matters for our sakes. These persons will most certainly be afforded the protection of the Tathāgatas through which they will be caused to bring forth faith and acceptance.

At that time, Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, wishing to restate his meaning, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

Good indeed it would be, O Son of the Buddha. Please do expound on the practices taken up in progressing into bodhi's grounds.

Of all of the ten directions' sovereignly masterful Honored Ones, none fail to hold these roots of knowledge in protective mindfulness.

These bases of establishment in knowledge are also ultimate, for all the dharmas of the Buddha grow forth directly from them just as all writing and counting are but expressions of their alphabets. So too it is with Buddha's Dharma in its reliance on the grounds.

N. THE BODHISATTVA CONGREGATION JOINS IN REQUESTING THIS TEACHING

(10) At that time, that entire congregation of great bodhisattvas, simultaneously and with a single united voice, uttered verses to Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, saying:

[May it be that you] of supremely sublime and stainless knowledge as well as boundless eloquence in differentiation will expound with profound and exquisite phrases that correspond to the supreme meaning. (12)

[May you] whose pure practice is maintained with mindfulness, who has ten powers, and who has gathered the meritorious qualities proceed to differentiate their meanings with eloquence and present the exposition of these most supreme grounds. (13)

With concentration, moral precepts, and accumulated right thought, as well as transcendence of arrogance and wrong views, this congregation is entirely free of doubting thoughts and hence wishes only to hear a skillful proclamation. (14)

We are like the thirsty thinking about cool water,  
like the hungry recalling exquisite cuisine,  
like the sick calling to mind an especially fine physician,  
and like bees craving fine honey.

We are all just like these  
in our wishing to hear this sweet-dew Dharma. (15)

Good indeed it would be, you of such vast knowledge.

We only pray that you will expound on the entry into the grounds,

on accomplishment of the ten powers' unimpeded realization, and on all of the practices of the Well Gone Ones. (16)

O. (P) THE BUDDHA EMITS BRILLIANT LIGHT FROM BETWEEN HIS EYEBROWS

At that time, the Bhagavat emitted from between his eyebrows a pure light known as "the flaming light of bodhisattva powers," a brilliance attended by a retinue of a hundred thousand *asaṃkhyeyas*<sup>37</sup> of light rays. It everywhere illuminated all worlds of the ten directions, having none it failed to entirely pervade. The sufferings of the three wretched destinies then all subsided. It also illuminated the assemblies in attendance on all *tathāgatas*, revealed the inconceivable powers of the Buddhas, and also shone upon the bodies of all of the bodhisattvas in all worlds throughout the ten directions who were then being aided by all buddhas in the proclamation of Dharma. After it had done this, it then ascended into space, formed an immense terrace made of a net of light clouds, and then remained there.

P. ALL BUDDHAS EMIT LIGHT THAT UTTERS VERSES REQUESTING DHARMA

At that time, the Buddhas of the ten directions all proceeded in this very same manner, emitting a pure light from between their eyebrows wherein that light, its retinue of light rays, and its actions all manifested in just the same manner. In addition, they illuminated this Sahā World, the Buddha, and his great assembly, and then, after shining on the person of Vajragarbha Bodhisattva and his lion throne, those rays ascended up into empty space and formed an immense terrace made of a curtain of light clouds. Then, from within that terrace of light, through the awesome spiritual powers of the Buddhas, there then resounded the proclamation of verses, stating:

The Buddhas, the equals of the unequaled, are like empty space<sup>38</sup> in their possession of the ten powers and countless supreme qualities. They are the most superior of men, supreme in the entire world. Here they augment the Dharma of the Lion of the Śākya Clan. (17)

Son of the Buddha, you should take on the powers of the Buddhas, open forth the most supreme treasury of this Dharma king, and employ Buddha's awesome powers to distinguish and explain the supreme and sublime practices of the grounds' vast knowledge. (18)

Where one is afforded the assistance of the Well Gone Ones, one will receive the entry of the Dharma jewel into one's mind. (19)

When one gains sequential fulfillment of the grounds' stainlessness, he shall then also completely embody a *tathāgata's* ten powers. {20}

Though residing amidst an ocean's waters or in kalpa-ending fires, those able to accept this Dharma will certainly be able to hear it. {21} Wherever someone doubts it or has no faith in it, they will never be able to hear ideas such as these. {22}

You should expound on the grounds' path of supreme knowledge, on their entry, abiding, and progressively sequential cultivation, and on the birth of Dharma knowledge from the domains of practice, doing so because this will provide benefit to all beings. {23}

Q. VAJRAGARBHA'S PRELIMINARY VERSES ON THE DIFFICULTY OF THIS EXPLANATION

{Q} At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva directed his contemplative regard to the ten directions and, wishing to cause those in that immense assembly to develop an increased degree of pure faith, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

The path of the Tathāgatas, the Great Rishis,  
is subtle, sublime, and difficult to know.  
It is not perceptible through thought nor by abandoning thought.  
If one seeks to perceive it in that way, it cannot thereby be realized.  
It is without either production or destruction  
and is by nature pure and constantly quiescent. {24}

For those who abandon defilement and possess brilliant sagacity,  
it is the place in which their knowledge is put into practice.  
Its own nature is fundamentally empty, quiescently still,  
devoid of duality, and endless.

It brings about liberation from all of the rebirth destinies  
and the abiding in a state of uniform identity with nirvāṇa itself.  
It has no beginning, has no middle, and has no end.  
It cannot be described through words or phrases,  
utterly transcends the three periods of time,  
and, in character, is comparable to empty space. {25}

The quiescence in which the Buddha courses  
cannot be reached through any verbal description.  
The practices that are taken up on the grounds are also of this sort,  
difficult to describe and difficult for one to be able to accept. {26}

The realm of the Buddha, produced through knowledge,  
is not a path accessible through thought or by abandoning thought.  
It is not a gate entered by aggregates, sense realms, or sense bases.  
It is known by cognition, but not reached by the intellectual mind. {27}

Like the track of a bird through the air,  
 it is difficult to describe and difficult to show.  
 In this same manner, the meanings associated with the ten grounds  
 cannot be entirely fathomed by the mind's intellectual faculty. (28)

Kindness, compassion, and the power of vows  
 bring forth the practices through which one may enter the grounds  
 and sequentially realize perfect fulfillment of the mind.  
 The practices of knowledge are not the domain of mental reflection.  
 (29)

This realm is difficult to perceive.  
 It can be known but cannot be described.  
 It is due to the powers of the Buddhas that one expounds on them.  
 You should all receive them in reverence. (30)

Such knowledge-entering practice as this  
 cannot be completely described even in a *koṭi* of kalpas.  
 Hence I shall now merely set forth a summarizing explanation  
 of their genuine meaning, leaving nothing unaddressed. (31)

Attend to this in single-minded reverence as,  
 aided by the Buddhas' powers, I speak  
 the subtle and sublime voice of the supreme Dharma  
 in a manner compatible with analogies' phrasings. (32)

The boundless spiritual powers of the Buddhas  
 all arrive here and enter my person.  
 Of this circumstance so difficult to proclaim,  
 I shall now describe but a minor measure. (33)

## II. THE MAIN DOCTRINAL TEACHING SECTION

## A. THE FIRST GROUND: THE JOYFULNESS GROUND

## 1. VAJRAGARBHA LISTS THE FIRST GROUND'S QUALIFICATIONS &amp; MOTIVATIONS

(R) Sons of the Buddha, suppose there is a being:

Who has deeply planted roots of goodness;  
 Who has well cultivated the practices;  
 Who has well accumulated the provisions facilitating realization of the path;<sup>39</sup>  
 Who has practiced well the making of offerings to the Buddhas;  
 Who has well accumulated the white dharmas of pristine purity;  
 Who has been skillfully drawn forth by the good spiritual guide;  
 Who has well purified his resolute intentions;  
 Who has established himself in the vast resolve;  
 Who has developed vast understanding;  
 And who has brought forth presently manifest kindness and compassion, [having done so]:

(S) For the sake of the quest to acquire the knowledge of the Buddha;  
 For the sake of gaining the ten powers;  
 For the sake of realizing the great fearlessnesses;  
 For the sake of gaining the Buddhas' dharma of uniformly equal regard for all;  
 For the sake of coming to the rescue of all worlds;  
 For the sake of purifying the great kindness and great compassion;  
 For the sake of gaining the knowledge that knows everything without exception throughout the ten directions;  
 For the sake of bringing about the unimpeded purification of all buddha lands;  
 For the sake of knowing all three periods of time in a single instant;  
 And for the sake of fearlessly turning the great wheel of Dharma.

## 2. THE QUALITIES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S RESOLVE

(T) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva's generation of such resolve:

Takes the great compassion as foremost;  
 Takes wisdom as its predominant condition;  
 Is subsumed within skillful means;  
 Is sustained by the most superior resolute intentions;  
 [Is aided by] the measureless powers of the Tathāgata;

[Is accompanied by] skillful contemplation and assessment of beings' strength of courage and strength of knowledge;  
 [Is implemented with] the directly manifested unimpeded knowledge;  
 Is accordant with spontaneous knowledge;<sup>40</sup>  
 Is able to take on all dharmas of the Buddha in using wisdom in transformative teaching;  
 And is as vast as the Dharma realm, as ultimately extensive as empty space, and so enduring as to reach the very end of future time.

### 3. THE CONSEQUENCES OF GENERATING THE BODHISATTVA VOW

(U) Son of the Buddha, when the bodhisattva first brings forth this resolve, he immediately:

Steps beyond the grounds of the common person;  
 Enters the station of the bodhisattva;  
 Takes birth into the clan of the Tathāgatas;  
 Becomes such that no one can claim his lineage is possessed of any fault;  
 Leaves behind worldly destinies;  
 Enters the world-transcending path;  
 Acquires the bodhisattva dharmas;  
 Abides in the bodhisattva abodes;  
 Equally enters the three periods of time;  
 And becomes definitely bound to realize the unexcelled bodhi in the lineage of the Tathāgatas.

(V) The bodhisattva who dwells in dharmas such as these is known as one who dwells on the Ground of Joyfulness, this on account of his being imperturbable.

Son of the Buddha, abiding on the Ground of Joyfulness, the bodhisattva is completely endowed with:

Abundant joy;  
 Abundant pure faith;  
 Abundant fond delight;  
 Abundant happiness;  
 Abundant exultation;  
 Abundant ebullience;  
 Abundant valiant fortitude;  
 Abundant disinclination to disputatiousness;  
 Abundant harmlessness;  
 And abundant disinclination to anger.<sup>41</sup>



## 4. THE BASES FOR THE FIRST GROUND BODHISATTVA'S JOYFULNESS

{w} Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva dwelling on this Ground of Joyfulness:

- Becomes joyful due to calling to mind the Buddhas;
- Becomes joyful due to calling to mind the Dharma of the Buddhas;
- Becomes joyful due to calling to mind the bodhisattvas;
- Becomes joyful due to calling to mind the conduct practiced by the bodhisattvas;
- Becomes joyful due to calling to mind the pure *pāramitās*;
- Becomes joyful due to calling to mind the exceptional supremacy of the bodhisattva grounds;
- Becomes joyful due to calling to mind the indestructibility of the bodhisattvas;
- Becomes joyful due to calling to mind the Tathāgata's teaching of beings;
- Becomes joyful due to calling to mind the ability to cause beings to acquire benefit;
- And becomes joyful due to calling to mind entry into all *tathāgatas'* knowledge and skillful means.

{x} He also has this thought:

- I become joyful due to turning away from and abandoning all worldly states;
- I become joyful due to drawing close to all buddhas;
- I become joyful due to departing far from the grounds of the common person;
- I become joyful due to drawing near to the grounds of wisdom;<sup>42</sup>
- I become joyful due to eternally cutting off any vulnerability to entering the wretched destinies;
- I become joyful due to serving as a place of refuge for all beings;
- I become joyful due to seeing all the Tathāgatas;
- I become joyful due to being born into the domain of the Buddhas;
- I become joyful due to becoming of the same nature as all bodhisattvas;
- And I become joyful due to leaving behind the fear of all circumstances that would cause hair-raising terror.

## 5. THE FIRST GROUND BODHISATTVA'S FIVE KINDS OF FEARLESSNESS

(Y) Why is it that, once this bodhisattva has gained the Ground of Joyfulness, he abandons all forms of fearfulness? In particular, they are:

- The fear of failing to survive;
- The fear of a bad reputation;
- The fear of death;
- The fear of rebirth in the wretched destinies;
- And the fear of the awesomeness of great assemblies.<sup>43</sup>

He succeeds in forever leaving behind all such forms of fearfulness. And why is this? It is because this bodhisattva has abandoned any perception of a self. Thus he does not even cherish his own body. How much the less might he cherish any provisions or valuables it happens to possess. As a consequence, he is entirely free of any fear of failing to survive.

He does not hope for or seek out offerings from others. Rather, he devotes himself solely to providing for and making gifts to all beings. Consequently he has no fear of a bad reputation.

Because he has abandoned the view that conceives the existence of a self and because he does not perceive any existence of a self, he is therefore entirely free of any fear of death.

He realizes that once he dies, he will definitely not be reborn apart from the Buddhas and the bodhisattvas. Consequently he is entirely free of any fear of falling into the wretched destinies.

He thinks, "That to which I aspire is without equal anywhere in the world. How much the less might there be anything superior to it?" Consequently, he is entirely free of any fear of the awesomeness of great assemblies.

Thus it is that the bodhisattva leaves far behind all such circumstances that might otherwise cause fear and hair-raising terror.

## 6. THE BODHISATTVA'S GROUNDS PURIFYING PRACTICES

(Z) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva takes the great compassion as foremost. He is possessed of a vast aspiring resolve that no one could obstruct or destroy. Thus he redoubles his diligent cultivation of all roots of goodness, thereby achieving complete success in his aims, in particular doing so:

- (AA) Through making faith predominant;
- Through abundant pure faith;<sup>44</sup>
- Through the purity of his resolute faith;<sup>45</sup>

- Through the resolute decisiveness of his faith;  
 Through bringing forth compassionate pity;  
 Through perfecting the great kindness;  
 Through remaining free of any tendency to become weary or withdraw from his efforts;  
 Through being adorned with a sense of shame and dread of blame;  
 Through perfecting mental pliancy;  
 Through respectfully according with and venerating the Buddhas' teaching dharmas;  
 (BB) Through insatiably cultivating and accumulating roots of goodness day and night;  
 Through drawing near to good spiritual guides;  
 Through always cherishing and delighting in the Dharma;  
 Through insatiably pursuing extensive learning;  
 Through engaging in right contemplative investigation accordant with the Dharma he has learned;  
 Through ensuring that his mind remains free of dependent attachments;  
 Through not indulging any attachment to receiving offerings, becoming renowned, or receiving expressions of reverence from others;  
 Through not seeking for any life-supporting material possessions;  
 Through tirelessly bringing forth jewel-like resolve;<sup>46</sup>  
 (CC) Through seeking to reach the ground of all-knowledge;  
 Through seeking to gain the Tathāgata's powers, fearlessnesses, and dharmas exclusive to the Buddhas;  
 Through seeking proficiency in the *pāramitās* and the other dharmas assisting realization of the path;  
 Through abandoning all flattery and deceptiveness;  
 Through being able to practice in accordance with what has been taught;  
 Through always maintaining adherence to truthful speech;  
 Through never defiling the house of the Tathāgatas;  
 Through never relinquishing the moral precepts of the bodhi-sattvas;  
 Through bringing forth a resolve to gain all-knowledge that is as unshakeable as the king of mountains;  
 Through never relinquishing his endeavors in service to anyone in the world while still perfecting the world-transcending path;

Through insatiably accumulating those dharmas that comprise  
 the factors assisting realization of bodhi;  
 And through always striving to gain ever more superior realiza-  
 tion of the most supremely excellent path.

Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva who completely develops  
 such dharmas for purification of the grounds as these thereby  
 becomes one who abides securely on the bodhisattva's Ground  
 of Joyfulness.

#### 7. THE BODHISATTVA'S TEN GREAT VOWS

{DD} Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva who dwells on this Ground  
 of Joyfulness is able to completely institute just such great vows  
 entailing just such great heroic courage and just such great effec-  
 tive action. Specifically, they are:<sup>47</sup>

He brings forth a vast, pure, and resolute understanding  
 through which he makes a vow to reverently present gifts of  
 every form of offering to all buddhas without exception. His  
 implementation of this vow is as vast as the Dharma realm  
 and as extensive as empty space as it continues on incessantly  
 until the end of future time and throughout all kalpas.

{EE} He also makes a great vow in which he vows to take on all  
 buddhas' turning of the Dharma wheel, vows to take on [the  
 realization of] all buddhas' bodhi, vows to protect all bud-  
 dha's teaching, and vows to preserve all buddhas' Dharma.  
 His implementation of this vow is as vast as the Dharma  
 realm and as extensive as empty space as it continues on  
 incessantly until the end of future time and throughout all  
 kalpas.

{FF} He also makes a great vow in which he vows that, in all  
 worlds, when the Buddhas come forth into the world, descend  
 from the Tuṣita Heaven Palace, enter the womb, abide in the  
 womb, first take birth, leave behind the home life, achieve  
 realization of the path, proclaim the Dharma, and finally  
 enter nirvāṇa, in every instance, he will go forth to visit  
 them, will draw close to them and make offerings to them,  
 will serve them as a leader within their congregations, will  
 take on the practice of right Dharma, and will proceed then  
 to simultaneously turn the Dharma wheel in all places. His  
 implementation of this vow is as vast as the Dharma realm  
 and as extensive as empty space as it continues on incessantly  
 until the end of future time and throughout all kalpas.

- (GG) He also makes a great vow in which he vows to explain in accordance with their reality all of the bodhisattva practices, so vast, so immeasurable, indestructible, unalloyed in their purity, and inclusive of all the *pāramitās*, vows to explain the purifying cultivation of the grounds, their general characteristics, their specific characteristics, their common characteristics, their differentiating characteristics, the characteristics conducing to success in them, and the characteristics leading to ruination, vowing too to teach these matters to everyone, thus influencing them thereby to take on these practices and bring forth increasing resolve. His implementation of this vow is as vast as the Dharma realm and as extensive as empty space as it continues on incessantly until the end of future time and throughout all kalpas.
- (HH) He also makes a great vow in which he vows: “I will teach all realms of beings in a manner influencing them to enter into the Dharma of the Buddha, influencing them to eternally cut off coursing in any of the destinies of worldly rebirth, and influencing them to become established in the path to the cognition of all-knowledge,<sup>48</sup> teaching all of them, whether they be possessed of form or formless, whether they be possessed of perception, free of perception, or abiding in a state of neither perception nor non-perception, whether they be egg-born, womb-born, moisture-born, or transformationally born, teaching all of them, no matter how they are connected to the triple world, no matter in which of the six destinies of rebirth they abide, and no matter in which place they have taken birth, teaching all beings possessed of name-and-form, teaching all such classes of beings as these.” His implementation of this vow is as vast as the Dharma realm and as extensive as empty space as it continues on incessantly until the end of future time and throughout all kalpas.
- (II) He also makes a great vow in which he vows to directly know and perceive with utterly clear cognition all worlds in all their vastness and countless varieties, including the coarse, the subtle, the disordered, the inverted, and the upright, knowing them all, whether in entering them, coursing along within them, or emerging from them,<sup>49</sup> knowing them in their countless many different sorts of variations throughout the ten directions that are analogous [in their mutual relationship] to the net-like curtain of Indra. His implementation of this vow is as vast as the Dharma realm and as extensive as empty space as it continues on incessantly until the end of future time and throughout all kalpas.

- {JJ} He also makes a great vow in which he resolves to bring about the complete purification of all the measurelessly many buddha lands wherein all lands enter a single land, a single land enters all lands, and they are all adorned with many radiant phenomena, wherein they all become filled with measurelessly many wise beings<sup>50</sup> who have left behind all afflictions and perfected the path of purification, and wherein he everywhere enters the vast realms of all buddhas, accords with the mental dispositions of beings, and thus appears for them in a manner that causes them all to be pleased. His implementation of this vow is as vast as the Dharma realm and as extensive as empty space as it continues on incessantly until the end of future time and throughout all kalpas.
- {KK} He also makes a great vow in which he vows to unite with all other bodhisattvas in practices with a single determined aim, doing so in a manner that remains free of enmity or jealousy, proceeding in this with the accumulation of all forms of roots of goodness, engaging with all bodhisattvas toward a single objective with universally equal regard, always gathering together with them and never allowing there to develop any mutual estrangement, doing so with a freely exercised ability to manifest all sorts of different buddha bodies, being able by resort to the capacities of his own mind to know all the domains, awesome powers, and wisdom<sup>51</sup> of all *tathāgatas*, being able thus to gain realization of the irreversible psychic powers through which one freely roams throughout all worlds, manifesting his physical presence in all of their assemblies, everywhere entering into all of stations of rebirth, perfecting the inconceivable Great Vehicle, cultivating the practices of the bodhisattvas. His implementation of this vow is as vast as the Dharma realm and as extensive as empty space as it continues on incessantly until the end of future time and throughout all kalpas.
- {LL} He also makes a great vow in which he vows to take up the irreversible turning of the wheel, to course in the bodhisattva practices, to cultivate the refinement of physical, verbal, and mental karmic actions, to never neglect his endeavors in these matters, vowing too that, if anyone sees him, even if only momentarily, then he will thereby become bound for definite success in the Buddha's Dharma, vows that, if anyone hears his voice, even if only momentarily, then he will thereby become bound to gain genuine wisdom,<sup>52</sup> vows that, if one merely brings forth thoughts of pure faith, then he will

thereby become bound to eternally cut off the afflictions, vows that he will succeed in becoming like a personification of the great king of medicine trees, that he will become like a personification of a wish-fulfilling jewel, and vowing that he will cultivate all of the bodhisattva practices. His implementation of this vow is as vast as the Dharma realm and as extensive as empty space as it continues on incessantly until the end of future time and throughout all kalpas.

(MM) He also makes a great vow in which he vows that he will gain realization of *anuttarasamyaksambodhi* in all worlds, that he will not abandon even any of those places manifesting within the tip of a hair, that he will appear even in all those places manifesting within the tip of a hair the actions of taking on human birth, leaving behind the home life, arriving at the *bodhimaṇḍa*, realizing the right enlightenment, turning the wheel of Dharma, and entering nirvāṇa, that he will acquire the Buddha's realms of awareness and powers of great wisdom,<sup>53</sup> that even in every successive instant, adapting to the minds of every being, he will manifest for them the realization of buddhahood and cause them to succeed in achieving quiescent cessation themselves, that he will, through a single *sambodhi*, gain the realization of all dharma realms as characterized by identity with nirvāṇa, that, employing a single voice in the proclamation of Dharma, he will be able to cause the minds of all beings to become joyful, that, even though he manifests the appearance of entering the great nirvāṇa, he will still never cut off his coursing in the practices of the bodhisattva, that he will reveal the grounds of great wisdom<sup>54</sup> and the establishment of all dharmas, and that, in accomplishing this, he will employ the superknowledges associated with the cognition of dharmas, the superknowledges associated with the foundations of spiritual power, the conjuration-like superknowledges, and sovereignly masterful transformations that fill up the entire Dharma realm. His implementation of this vow is as vast as the Dharma realm and as extensive as empty space as it continues on incessantly until the end of future time and throughout all kalpas.

Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva dwelling on this Ground of Joyfulness is able to bring forth such great vows, great heroic courage, and great effective action. Taking these ten vow gateways as foremost, he brings about the complete fulfillment of a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of great vows.

[NN] Son of the Buddha, these great vows are able to achieve their perfect completion on the basis of ten propositions on the ending [of various phenomena]. What then are those ten? They are:

The end of the realms of beings;  
 The end of worlds;  
 The end of the realms of empty space;  
 The end of the Dharma realm;  
 The end of the realm of nirvāṇa;  
 The end of the realms where the Buddhas come forth and appear;  
 The end of the realm of the Tathāgata's knowledge;  
 The end of the realm of objects of mind;  
 The end of the realms of objective circumstances penetrated by the Buddha's cognition;  
 And the end of the realms of permutations of worlds, permutations of dharmas, and permutations of knowledge.

[Accordingly, he vows that]:

"If the realms of beings come to an end, only then might my vows finally come to an end. If the worlds come to an end..." and so forth on up to, "If the realms of the permutations of worlds, permutations of dharmas, and permutations of knowledge come to an end, only then might my vows finally come to an end.

"However, because the realms of beings cannot possibly ever come to an end," and so forth on up to, "Because the realms of the permutations of worlds, permutations of dharmas, and permutations of knowledge cannot possibly ever come to an end, therefore the roots of goodness associated with these great vows of mine will never have an end."

8. THE MENTAL QUALITIES & FAITH GAINED BY THE 1ST GROUND BODHISATTVA

[OO] Son of the Buddha, once the bodhisattva has brought forth such vows as these, he then succeeds in acquiring:<sup>55</sup>

The beneficent mind;  
 The gentle mind;  
 The adaptive mind;  
 The serene mind;  
 The subdued mind;  
 The quiescent mind;  
 The humble mind;



The harmoniously smooth mind;  
 The unmoving mind;  
 And the unsullied mind.

He thereby succeeds in becoming one possessed of pure faith and possessed of the functional uses of faith, whereby he is able:<sup>56</sup>

To have faith in the original practices entered by the Tathāgatas;  
 To have faith in the perfectibility of the *pāramitās*;  
 To have faith in the entry into the supreme grounds;  
 To have faith in the perfectibility of the powers;  
 To have faith in the complete fulfillment of the fearlessnesses;  
 To have faith in the production and development of the indomitable dharmas exclusive to the Buddhas;  
 To have faith in the inconceivable Dharma of the Buddhas;  
 To have faith in the generation of the Buddha's realm transcendent of either any middle or extremes;  
 To have faith in the entry into the Buddha's measureless domain;  
 And to have faith in the perfectibility of the resultant fruition.

To speak of the essentials, he has faith in all bodhisattva practices and the other related factors up to and including the Tathāgata's grounds of knowledge, proclamations, and powers.

9. THE BODHISATTVA'S REFLECTIVE CONTEMPLATION ON DHARMA AND BEINGS

{PP} Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva has these additional thoughts:

The right Dharma of the Buddhas is characterized by:

Such extreme profundity;  
 Such serenity;  
 Such quiescence;  
 Such emptiness;  
 Such signlessness;  
 Such wishlessness;  
 Such non-defilement;  
 Such measurelessness;  
 And such vastness.<sup>57</sup>

{QQ} And yet common people:

Allow their minds to fall into wrong views;  
 Become covered over and blinded by ignorance;  
 Erect the lofty banner of arrogance;  
 Enter the net of craving;

Travel into the dense forest of flattery and deception and become unable to escape on their own;

Involve their minds in miserliness and jealousy, fail to relinquish them, and thus constantly create the causes and conditions conducing to rebirth in the various destinies;

Increase both day and night their accumulation of every sort of karmic activity based on greed, hatred, and delusion;

So set the wind of their anger and animosity blowing upon the flames of the mind's consciousness that they blaze incessantly.

Become such that whatever karmic actions they engage in are reflections of the inverted views;<sup>58</sup>

And become such that the flood of desire, the flood of becoming, the flood of ignorance, and the flood of views<sup>59</sup> continuously generate seeds associated with the mind and mental consciousness in the field of the three realms of existence that in turn grow forth the sprouts of suffering.

(RR) Specifically, this occurs as follows:

[The aggregates of] name-and-form<sup>60</sup> arise conjointly and inextricably.

This name-and-form develops and then produces the vilage of the six sense bases.<sup>61</sup>

In their corresponding pairings, these in turn produce contact.

As a result of the occurrence of contact, feelings then arise. Because of feelings, there then follows the arising of craving.

Due to the growth of craving, there then occurs the generation of grasping.

Because of an increase in grasping, there then occurs the generation of becoming.

Because of becoming, there then follow birth, aging, death, worry, sorrow, suffering, and the afflictions.

It is in this manner that beings generate and proliferate a mass of suffering. In every case, everything therein is empty. Thus, absent the existence of any self or anything belonging to a self, there is no knowing, no awareness, nothing done, and nothing undergone. Thus these matters are all comparable to shrubs, trees, or a stone wall and are also comparable to mere reflected

images. Still, beings remain unaware and unknowing of these circumstances.

10. THE BODHISATTVA'S RESOLVE, RENUNCIATION, & GROUNDS PURIFICATION

{SS} On observing all beings in this circumstance wherein they are unable to escape from such a mass of suffering, the bodhisattva straightaway brings forth wisdom in association with the great compassion and then has this additional thought: "I should rescue and pull forth all these beings and see to their being placed in a circumstance of ultimate happiness." He therefore immediately brings forth radiant wisdom in association with the great kindness.

{TT} Son of the Buddha, when, in accordance with just such great compassion and great kindness as this, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* avails himself of deep and profound resolve and dwells on the first ground, he becomes free of any selfish cherishing for anything at all, pursues realization of the Buddha's great knowledge, and cultivates the great relinquishing through which he is able to bestow whatever he possesses as a gift. This includes his wealth, grain, the contents of his storehouses and granaries, gold, silver, *maṇi* jewels, true pearls, lapis lazuli, conch shells, jade, coral and other such things, precious jewels, necklaces, bodily adornments, elephants, horses, carriages, servants and workers, cities and villages, parks, forests, viewing terraces, wives, consorts, sons, daughters, members of his inner and outer retinue, and all other sorts of precious jewels and means of amusement. He is willing to also give even his head, eyes, hands, feet, blood, flesh, bones, marrow, and any other parts of his own body, bestowing all of these things without any selfish cherishing, and bestowing all these things in quest of the vast wisdom<sup>62</sup> of all buddhas. This is what constitutes the perfection of relinquishing carried out by the bodhisattva dwelling on the first ground.

{UU} Son of the Buddha, because of this mind of great giving imbued with kindness and compassion, the bodhisattva redoubles his quest to acquire every form of worldly and world-transcending beneficial means through which to facilitate the enactment of his aspiration to rescue and protect all beings. Through his tirelessness in this, he comes to perfect the tireless mind.

Having acquired the tireless mind, his mind then becomes entirely free of timidity with respect to pursuing the investigation of all scriptures and treatises. Because he is free of timidity in that regard, he then straightaway succeeds in acquiring the

knowledge contained within all scriptures and treatises. Having acquired this knowledge, he is then well able to assess how he should and should not proceed in relating to all of the beings of superior, middling, and inferior capacities, adapting to what is appropriate for them, adapting to what suits their strengths, and adapting to whatever they are habitually accustomed to.

Due to proceeding in this manner, the bodhisattva succeeds in developing worldly wisdom. Having developed worldly wisdom, he then becomes aware of what constitutes correct timeliness and correct measure in those actions. Then, graced with a sense of shame and dread of blame, he diligently cultivates the path of simultaneously benefiting himself and benefiting others. Thus it is that he perfects the state of being graced by a sense of shame and dread of blame. As he engages in these practices, he diligently cultivates irreversible renunciation<sup>63</sup> and thus develops the power of enduring fortitude. Having developed the power of enduring fortitude, he then becomes diligent in making offerings to all buddhas and becomes able to practice in accord with the teaching dharmas proclaimed by the Buddha.

Son of the Buddha, thus it is that the bodhisattva perfects the ten dharmas employed in purifying the grounds, namely:<sup>64</sup>

- Faith;
- Compassion;
- Kindness;
- Renunciation;
- Indefatigability;
- Knowledge of the sutras and treatises;
- Thorough comprehension of worldly dharmas;
- A sense of shame and dread of blame;
- The power of enduring fortitude;
- The making of offerings to the Buddhas while cultivating in accordance with the teachings.<sup>65</sup>

#### 11. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS

{VV} Son of the Buddha, having come to dwell on this Ground of Joyfulness, the bodhisattva, due to the power of his great vows, then becomes able to see many buddhas. That is to say that he becomes able to see many hundreds of buddhas, many thousands of buddhas, many hundreds of thousands of buddhas, many *koṭis* of buddhas, many hundreds of *koṭis* of buddhas, many thousands of *koṭis* of buddhas, many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of buddhas, many *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddhas, many hundreds of *koṭis*

of *nayutas* of buddhas, many thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddhas, or many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddhas, all of whom he reverently venerates with a magnanimous mind and resolute intentions as he serves them and makes offerings to them of robes, food and drink, bedding, medicines, and every sort of life-sustaining benefaction, all of which he offers up as gifts while also making offerings to all of the many members of the Sangha. He then dedicates all of the roots of goodness thereby created to the realization of the unsurpassable bodhi.

#### 12. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF MEANS OF ATTRACTION AND PĀRAMITĀS

Son of the Buddha, on account of making offerings to the Buddhas, this bodhisattva acquires the dharmas by which one brings about the maturation of beings. Employing the first two of the means of attraction, namely "giving" and "pleasing words," he draws forth beings. As for the remaining two means of attraction,<sup>66</sup> he only employs them in a manner commensurate with his powers of resolute faith, for his practice of them has not yet reached a state of state of consummate skillfulness.

Among the ten *pāramitās*, this bodhisattva becomes especially superior in his practice of *dāna pāramitā*. It is not, however, that he does not cultivate the remaining *pāramitās* at all. Rather, he simply accords them an amount of emphasis corresponding to his own strengths and to what is fitting.<sup>67</sup>

This bodhisattva, in accordance with whatever he is diligently cultivating, whether it be making offerings to buddhas or teaching beings, in every case does so through cultivating the grounds-purifying dharmas. He dedicates all of the associated roots of goodness to the acquisition of the ground of all-knowledge. As he does so, they become ever more radiant, pure, and pliant to the point that he becomes freely able to put them to use however he wishes.

#### 13. THE BODHISATTVA'S GROUNDS PURIFICATION COMPARED TO REFINING GOLD

Son of the Buddha, this circumstance is analogous to that of a goldsmith who, especially well skilled in the refinement of gold, introduces it into the fire again and again, with the result that it shines ever more brightly, becomes ever more pure, and becomes ever more pliant to the point that, once this process is completed, he can then freely put it to use however he wishes.

The bodhisattva is just like this. His making of offerings to the Buddhas and his teaching of beings is in every case done in the service of cultivating the dharmas employed in purification of

the grounds. All of the roots of goodness thereby developed are dedicated to reaching the ground of all-knowledge. As he proceeds with this cultivation, they become ever more brightly shining, pure, and pliant to the point where he becomes freely able to put them to use.

14. THE BODHISATTVA'S ACQUISITION OF FURTHER KNOWLEDGE OF THE GROUNDS

{WW} Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* who dwells on the first ground should set forth searching questions in the presence of the Buddhas, the bodhisattvas, and his good spiritual guides, insatiably requesting from them clarification of this ground's characteristic aspects and acquired fruits, doing so wishing to completely develop this ground's dharmas.

So too should he set forth searching questions in the presence of the Buddhas, the Bodhisattvas, and his good spiritual guides, insatiably requesting from them clarification regarding the second ground's characteristic aspects and acquired fruits, doing so wishing to completely develop that ground's dharmas.

So too should he set forth searching questions insatiably requesting clarification of the characteristic aspects and acquired fruits associated with the third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth grounds, doing so wishing to completely develop those grounds' dharmas.

This bodhisattva then:

Thoroughly knows the obstacles encountered on the grounds as well as the means for countering them;

Thoroughly knows the means of achieving success or falling into ruination on the grounds;

Thoroughly knows the characteristic aspects and fruits associated with the grounds;

Thoroughly knows the attainment and cultivation of the grounds;

Thoroughly knows the grounds' purification of dharmas;

Thoroughly knows the progression in the successively adopted practices used in advancing from ground to ground;

Thoroughly knows with respect to each successive ground what is and is not the correct station;

Thoroughly knows with respect to each successive ground the type of especially superior knowledge associated with it;

Thoroughly knows with respect to each successive ground the means by which to prevent retreating from it;

And thoroughly knows how to bring about the purifying cultivation of all of the bodhisattva grounds on through to the point of progression into the ground of the Tathāgata.

Son of the Buddha, in this way, the bodhisattva thoroughly knows the characteristic features of the grounds beginning with the first ground, knows how one takes up the practices and carries them forward without interruption in this manner until one finally enters the tenth ground, continuing on in this without any instance of the practice being cut off. It is on account of the light associated with the knowledge of the grounds that he succeeds in developing the light of the Tathāgata's wisdom.<sup>68</sup>

#### 15. THE BODHISATTVA'S PATH KNOWLEDGE COMPARED TO A CARAVAN GUIDE

Son of the Buddha, this circumstance is analogous to that of a leader of merchants who comes to know well the means employed when wishing to lead a group of merchants going off to some great city. Before embarking, he must first ask about the roads to be taken, inquiring about their fine qualities and their faulty aspects while also inquiring about the places where one might stop along the way, inquiring also as to whether the threats to security one might encounter along the way are surmountable or not. After doing this, he prepares the provisions to be used on the road and does all that one should do in preparing to embark.

Son of the Buddha, even though that great leader of merchants has not yet set foot on the road to be taken, he is nonetheless able to know all of the circumstances that might threaten their security along the path. He is skilled in applying his wisdom<sup>69</sup> in assessment and observation, in preparing whatever they will need, in ensuring that they will not run short of anything, and in safely leading the entire band of merchants all along the way until they reach that great city, doing so in a manner whereby he himself as well as that group of men will all be able to avoid encountering disastrous circumstances.

Son of the Buddha, so too it is with the bodhisattva in his acting like a leader of merchants. Even as he dwells on the first ground, he comes to know well the obstacles encountered on the grounds as well as the means for countering them. He comes to well know everything else as well, all the way on through to his knowing of the purifying cultivation of all of the bodhisattva grounds and the subsequent progression on forth into the ground of the Tathāgata. Having accomplished this, he next prepares the provisions of merit and knowledge with which he will be able

to lead all beings through the hazardous and difficult regions within the vast wilderness of *saṃsāra*'s births and deaths so that they succeed in safely reaching the city of all-knowledge, all the while leading them along so neither he himself or those beings are forced to go through calamitous and difficult circumstances.

Therefore, the bodhisattva should never slacken in his diligent cultivation of the most especially superior purifying karmic deeds on all the grounds on through to the point where he enters the ground of the Tathāgata's knowledge.

16. VAJRAGARBHĀ'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE FIRST GROUND BODHISATTVA

Son of the Buddha, this has been a summary discussion of the bodhisattva *mahāsattva*'s entry into the gateway of the first bodhisattva ground. Were one to present an extensive discussion of this, that would involve an incalculable and boundless number of hundreds of thousands of *asaṃkhyeyas* of differentiating factors.

a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE

(XX) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* dwelling on the first ground often becomes a monarch reigning over the continent of Jambudvīpa who is a member of the aristocratic nobility that, acting with sovereign freedom, is able to draw forth beings through great giving. He is skilled in doing away with beings' filth of miserliness as he always practices endless great giving.

b. THE BODHISATTVA'S FOUR MEANS OF ATTRACTION AND MINDFULNESS

Even while pursuing the practices of giving, pleasing words, beneficial actions, and joint endeavors, in all these works that he carries out:

He never departs from mindfulness of the Buddha;  
 He never departs from mindfulness of the Dharma;  
 He never departs from mindfulness of the Sangha;  
 He never departs from mindfulness of the bodhisattvas engaged  
 in the same practices;  
 He never departs from mindfulness of the bodhisattva conduct;  
 He never departs from mindfulness of the *pāramitās*;  
 He never departs from mindfulness of the grounds;  
 He never departs from mindfulness of the powers;  
 He never departs from mindfulness of the fearlessnesses;  
 He never departs from mindfulness of the dharmas exclusive  
 to the Buddha;

And so forth until we come to his never departing from mindfulness of his quest to achieve complete fulfillment of the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.



## c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS

He also has this thought: "I should become one who serves these beings as a leader, as one who is supreme, as one who is most especially supreme, as one who is marvelous, as one who is most subtly marvelous, as one who is excellent, as one who is unexcelled, as one who is a guide, as one who is a general, one who is a supreme leader," and so forth until we come to "as one who relies on the cognition of all-knowledge."

## d. THE RESULT OF THE BODHISATTVA'S LEAVING THE HOUSEHOLD LIFE

If this bodhisattva wishes to relinquish the home life and take up the diligent practice of vigor in the Dharma of the Buddha, then he will be able to relinquish the household, his wife and children, and the five desires, and then rely on the teaching of the Tathāgata in his abandonment of the household and in his study of the path.

Having left behind the home life, if he diligently applies himself in the cultivation of vigor, in but a single moment:

He will be able to acquire a hundred samādhis, see a hundred buddhas, and know a hundred buddhas' spiritual powers;

He will be able to cause tremors in a hundred buddha worlds;

He will be able to travel across a hundred buddha worlds;

He will be able to illuminate a hundred buddha worlds;

He will be able to teach the beings in a hundred buddha worlds;

He will be able to remain for one hundred kalpas;

He will be able to know events occurring throughout a hundred kalpas of the past and future;

He will be able to enter a hundred Dharma gateways;

He will be able to manifest a hundred bodies;

And he will be able to manifest a hundred bodhisattvas to serve as the retinue for each and every one of those bodies.

(17) Then, if he resorts to the power of the especially supreme vows of the bodhisattva, he will become freely able to bring forth manifestations beyond this number, such that one would never be able to count them even in a period of a hundred kalpas, a thousand kalpas, or a hundred thousand kalpas.

## 17. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, wishing to once again proclaim his meaning, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

If someone accumulates the many sorts of good deeds,  
perfects the hundred sorts of dharmas of purification,  
makes offerings to those most honored among devas and men,  
accords with the path of kindness and compassion,

possesses the most extremely vast sort of resolute faith,  
and possesses resolve and delight that are pristinely pure,  
then, for the sake of seeking the wisdom<sup>70</sup> of the Buddha,  
he brings forth this unexcelled resolve. (1)

In order to pursue the purification of all-knowledge, the powers,  
and the fearlessnesses,  
to achieve the perfection of all dharmas of the Buddha, and  
to draws in and rescue the many sorts of beings,

And in order to acquire the great kindness and compassion,  
set turning the wheel of the supreme Dharma,  
and adorn and purify buddha lands,  
he brings forth this utterly supreme resolve. (2)

In order, in a single moment, to know the three periods of time,  
and still be free of discriminations about them,  
in order, in all of the various eras, each different,  
to manifest his presence within the world,

and, to state it briefly, in order to seek  
all of the Buddhas' supreme meritorious qualities,  
he brings forth the vast resolve  
equal in its scope to the realm of empty space. (3)

Taking compassion as foremost and wisdom as primary,  
adopting skillful means accordant with them,  
being possessed of resolute faith and purified intentions,  
availing himself of the Tathagata's measureless powers,  
directly manifesting unimpeded knowledge,  
bringing forth spontaneous understanding not reliant on others, and  
gaining fulfillment herein that achieves parity with the Tathāgata,  
he brings forth this most supreme resolve. (4)

When a son of the Buddha first brings forth  
such a marvelous jewel-like resolve as this,  
he then steps beyond the position of the common person  
and enters into the station in which the Buddha courses.

He is thus born into the family of the Tathāgatas,  
into that clan lineage utterly free of flaws, and  
becomes one bound to become the equal of the Buddhas  
who will definitely realize the unexcelled enlightenment. (5)

As soon as he brings forth such a resolve as this,  
he straightaway succeeds in entering the first ground  
and develops determination and delight as unshakeable  
as the great king of the mountains.

He experiences abundant joy, abundant cherishing delight,  
and abundant pure-minded faith as well,  
marshals a great and heroically brave resolve,  
and avails himself of celebratory and exhilarated thought. (6)

He abandons disputatiousness,  
harmful behavior, and hatred,  
and becomes humble, respectful, and straightforward in character  
while also skillfully guarding the sense faculties.

Regarding those who are matchless in rescuing the world  
and all of their many varieties of wisdom,<sup>71</sup>  
he reflects: "This is the station that I am bound to realize,"  
and, in bringing them to mind, he is filled with joy. (7)

On first gaining entry into the first ground,  
he straightaway oversteps five types of fearfulness:  
failure to survive, death, ill-repute,  
the wretched destinies, and the awesome virtue of assemblies.

It is because they have no covetous attachment to a self  
or to anything belonging to a self  
that these sons of the Buddha  
abandon all forms of fearfulness. (8)

They always practice great kindness and sympathy  
and constantly possess faith and reverence.  
Replete in a sense of shame, a dread of blame, and the qualities,  
they strive day and night to increase in good dharmas.  
They delight in the genuine benefit conferred by the Dharma,  
and are not fond of indulgence in the desires. (9)

They contemplate the Dharma that they have learned  
and leave far behind actions involving grasping and attachment.  
They do not covet offerings or support,  
only delight in the bodhi of the Buddha,  
single-mindedly seek to acquire the Buddha's knowledge,  
and focus intently on maintaining undistracted mindfulness.  
They cultivate the *pāramitās*  
and abandon flattery, falseness, and deception. (10)

They cultivate in accordance with what has been proclaimed,  
and establish themselves in truthful speech.  
They refrain from defiling the house of the Buddhas,  
never relinquish the moral precepts of the bodhisattva,  
do not delight in any sort of worldly matters,  
and always benefit the world.  
They are insatiable in the cultivation of what is good,  
and strive ever more to reach increasingly superior paths. (11)

In this manner, they are fond of and delight in dharmas associated with meritorious qualities and whatever is meaningful. They constantly raise up the resolve of their great vows, vow to go and see the Buddhas,

vow to guard and sustain all Buddhas' Dharma, and vow to gather and preserve the Great Rishi's teachings on the path. They always bring forth vows such as these, vowing to cultivate the most supreme practices. (12)

They vow to bring all sorts of beings to maturation, vow to carry forth the purifying adornment of the buddha lands, vow to bring it about that, all buddha lands shall become completely filled with sons of the Buddha, vow that they shall maintain the same singular resolve as theirs, vows that, whatever actions one does shall not have been in vain, and vows that, even in those places within the tip of every hair, they will, at once, manifest the realization of right enlightenment. (13)

They make such great vows as these that are measurelessly vast and boundless in their reach. They declare: "If there were an end to empty space or beings, an end to the Dharma realm or nirvāṇa, an end to the worlds or the appearance of buddhas in the world, an end to the Buddhas' knowledge (14) or to objects of mind, (14) an end to the realms entered by a *tathāgata's* knowledge or to the three permutations [of worlds, dharmas, and knowledge]— If all of these phenomena were to somehow come to an end, my vows might then begin to come to an end. But, just as all of those have no point at which they would end, So too it is with these vows that I have made." (15)

Thus it is that they bring forth great vows with minds that are gentle, subdued, and adaptive. Through their ability to maintain faith in the Buddha's qualities and contemplate the realms of beings, they realize their circumstances arise due to causes and conditions, and then let flourish their kindly and mindful resolve, wherein they reflect thus: "Suffering beings of this sort are such as I should now rescue and liberate." (16)

For the sake of these beings, they then carry out the many different types of giving, relinquishing the royal throne and jewels as well as other possessions, including elephants, horses, and carriages,

their heads, eyes, hands and feet,  
 even to the point of giving their entire body, its blood and its flesh.  
 They are able to relinquish absolutely everything  
 while still remaining free of any distress or regret in this. <sup>(17)</sup>

They strive to study the many different scriptures  
 with minds tireless in this pursuit.  
 They skillfully comprehend their meaning and import,  
 and are able to adapt to the world in implementing their practices.

They grace themselves with a sense of shame and dread of blame  
 and become ever more solid in their cultivation.

They make offerings to countless buddhas,  
 doing so with respect and profound veneration. <sup>(18)</sup>

Thus it is that they are always devoted to cultivation,  
 carrying it forward tirelessly, both day and night.  
 Their roots of goodness become ever more bright and pure  
 just as with true gold when it is refined in fire.

The bodhisattva dwelling herein  
 engages in the purifying cultivation of the ten grounds  
 and remains free of obstacles in all endeavors he pursues,  
 bringing them to completion without interruption. <sup>(19)</sup>

In this, he is like a great leader of merchants  
 who, for the sake of benefiting an entire group of traders,  
 inquires about and learns the road's hazardous and easy conditions,  
 thus ensuring safe arrival at some great city.

The bodhisattva abiding on the first ground  
 should also be known as just like this.  
 Bringing heroic bravery to bear, he remains unimpeded  
 as he advances all the way to the tenth ground. <sup>(20)</sup>

When he abides on this first ground,  
 he may become a monarch possessed of great meritorious qualities  
 who employs the Dharma in teaching beings  
 and uses the mind of kindness to refrain from inflicting injury  
 as he unites and leads the residents of Jambudvīpa  
 in a way that there are none not reached by his transformative acts.  
 Thus they are all caused to abide in that great relinquishing  
 through which they perfect the Buddha's wisdom.<sup>72</sup> <sup>(21)</sup>

Then, wishing to pursue the most supreme of paths,  
 he relinquishes his position on the royal throne.  
 He becomes able in taking up the Buddha's teachings  
 to diligently pursue their cultivation with such heroic bravery

that he then succeeds in acquiring a hundred samādhis,  
 in seeing a hundred buddhas,  
 and in causing tremors throughout a hundred worlds.  
 His radiantly illuminating practices are also of this sort. <sup>(22)</sup>

Thus he teaches the beings in a hundred lands,  
 enters a hundred gateways into the Dharma,  
 knows the events occurring for a hundred kalpas,  
 manifests a hundred bodies therein,

and manifests a hundred bodhisattvas  
 to serve in each of their retinues.

If he avails himself of his sovereign mastery over the power of vows,  
 he may extend his capacities beyond this to incalculable numbers. <sup>(23)</sup>

I have provided here a summary description  
 of but a minor measure of this ground's meanings  
 If one wished to comprehensively distinguish them all,  
 he could never finish it even in a *koṭi* of kalpas.

The supreme path of the bodhisattva  
 benefits all of the many types of beings.

I have hereby now concluded the explanation of  
 such dharmas of the first ground as these. <sup>(24)</sup>

## PART TWO

### The Stainlessness Ground

#### B. THE SECOND GROUND: THE STAINLESSNESS GROUND

##### 1. THE SECOND GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST

As the bodhisattvas listened to this description  
of this especially superior and sublime ground,  
their minds became entirely purified  
and they were all filled with joy. <sup>(1)</sup>

All of them then rose from their seats,  
ascended upward, stood in empty space,  
scattered the most marvelous blossoms everywhere,  
and then simultaneously uttered praises together, saying: <sup>(2)</sup>

“It is good indeed, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva,  
that the greatly wise and fearless one  
has so well described this ground  
and the dharmas practiced by the bodhisattva.” <sup>(3)</sup>

Then, Liberation Moon Bodhisattva,  
knowing that the minds of those in the assembly were pure  
and knowing they would delight in hearing of the second ground  
and all of its characteristic aspects of practice, <sup>(4)</sup>

straightaway made a request of Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, saying:  
“O You of Great Wisdom, we pray you will continue to expound,  
for these sons of the Buddha would all delight in hearing  
about the second of these grounds on which one may dwell.” <sup>(5)</sup>

##### 2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE SECOND GROUND'S EXPLANATION

<sup>(A)</sup> At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva informed Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, saying:

##### 3. THE TEN RESOLUTE INTENTIONS AS BASES FOR ENTERING THE SECOND GROUND

Son of the Buddha. The bodhisattva *mahāsattva* who has already cultivated the first ground and then wishes to enter the second ground should bring forth ten types of resolute intentions.<sup>73</sup> What then are these ten? They are as follows:<sup>74</sup>

- The resolute intention to be upright and straightforward;
- The resolute intention to be gentle;
- The resolute intention to be capable;

The resolute intention to be subdued;  
 The resolute intention to be serene;  
 The resolute intention to be thoroughly good;  
 The resolute intention to be unmixed [in moral purity];  
 The resolute intention to be unattached;  
 The resolute intention to be broadly inclusive;  
 And resolute intention to be magnanimous.

It is because of these ten types of resolute intentions that the bodhisattva succeeds in entering the second ground, the Ground of Stainlessness.

#### 4. THE BODHISATTVA'S OBSERVANCE OF 10 COURSES OF GOOD KARMIC ACTION<sup>75</sup>

##### a. AVOIDANCE OF KILLING

(B) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva dwelling on the Ground of Stainlessness has naturally abandoned all killing of beings. He does not collect knives or staves, does not harbor feelings of animosity, is possessed of a sense of shame and dread of blame, is entirely complete in his humanity and consideration for others, and always brings forth thoughts of beneficial and kindly mindfulness for all beings including anything at all that is possessed of a life. This bodhisattva does not even produce evil thoughts envisioning his inflicting distress upon other beings, how much the less could it happen that he might, having formed the conception of the existence of a being, then proceed with deliberate intent to kill it.

##### b. AVOIDANCE OF TAKING WHAT IS NOT GIVEN

(C) He naturally refrains from stealing. As regards his own possessions and wealth, the bodhisattva is always easily satisfied. He feels kindness and consideration for others and so does not wish to appropriate what is theirs. If something belongs to someone else, he regards it as their property and hence never even thinks of stealing it. Hence, he will not take even a blade of grass or a leaf that has not been given. How much the less might he take anything else that serves to sustain another's life.

##### c. AVOIDANCE OF SEXUAL MISCONDUCT

(D) He naturally refrains from sexual misconduct. The bodhisattva is satisfied with his own wife and hence does not seek after the wives of others. As for the wives or consorts of others, women under the protection of others, female relatives, women whose marriage has already been arranged, and those who are under the protection of the Dharma, he does not even produce any thoughts



defiled by desire, how much the less would he actually engage in any such action, and how much the less might he engage in behaviors involving a wrong physical orifice.

d. AVOIDANCE OF FALSE SPEECH

(E) He naturally refrains from false speech. The bodhisattva always practices truthful speech, genuine speech, and timely speech, and, even in dreams, does not countenance speech aimed at concealment. He does not even generate any thought of wishing to commit such actions, how much the less might he commit a deliberate transgression.

e. AVOIDANCE OF DIVISIVE SPEECH

(F) He naturally refrains from divisive speech. The bodhisattva has no thought inclined toward instigating divisions between other beings, and has no thought to do harm to others. He does not report the words of this person to that one with the intention of breaking up that person's relationship with him, nor does he report to this person the words of that one with the intention of breaking up this person's relationship with him.

He does not cause the breaking apart of those who have not yet broken apart and, in the case of those who have already broken apart, he does not act in a way which might increase that schism. He does not rejoice in divisions that occur between others, does not delight in divisions between others, does not utter any speech that might create divisions between others, and does not pass on to anyone any talk that might create divisions between others, regardless of whether or not those reports might be truthful.

f. AVOIDANCE OF HARSH SPEECH

(G) He naturally refrains from harsh speech such as poisonous and injurious speech, coarse and ferocious speech, speech inflicting suffering on others whether as direct statements or indirect statements, speech inciting hatred, vulgar speech, base speech, speech that no one would enjoy hearing, displeasing speech, angry speech, speech that makes others feel as if burned by fire, speech generating animosity, aggravating speech, speech one cannot appreciate, speech in which one can find no happiness, speech that may bring harm to either oneself or others, or any other such forms of speech, all of which one should abandon.

He always engages in soothingly smooth speech, pliant speech, pleasing speech, speech that may inspire happiness in the hearer, speech that one would be happy to hear, speech that delights the

hearer, speech that skillfully enters others' minds, refined and principled speech, speech loved by the many, speech that many would find pleasing, and speech tending to cause an upwelling of delight in body and mind.

g. AVOIDANCE OF FRIVOLOUS SPEECH

(H) He naturally refrains from frivolous speech. The bodhisattva always delights in thoughtful and reasoned speech, timely speech, genuine speech, meaningful speech, Dharma speech, speech accordant with principle, skillfully subdued speech, and speech that accords with the right time, is always rooted in careful reflection, and is definite in its clarity. This bodhisattva, even in humorous speech, still always imbues it with thoughtfulness. How much the less would he deliberately indulge scattered and chaotically confused speech.

h. AVOIDANCE OF COVETOUSNESS

(I) He naturally abstains from covetousness. The bodhisattva does not generate covetous thought, wishfulness, or craving to possess any of the wealth or possessions of others or anything others depend upon as a resource.

i. AVOIDANCE OF ILL WILL

(J) He naturally abandons ill will. The bodhisattva constantly brings forth kind thoughts, beneficial thoughts, pitying thoughts, joyful thoughts, harmoniously smooth thoughts, and inclusively accepting thoughts toward all beings. He has eternally relinquished ill will, animosity, injuriousness, and behavior intending to vex or torment others. Rather, he always engages in thoughtful and agreeably adaptive actions while also being motivated toward humanity, kindness, helpfulness, and the desire to serve the benefit of others.

j. AVOIDANCE OF WRONG VIEWS

(K) He also abandons wrong views. The bodhisattva abides in the path of what is right. Thus he does not practice divination and does not seize on wrongly conceived rules for one's conduct. His mental perspective is correct, straightforward, and free of motivations toward deceptiveness or flattery. He brings forth and maintains resolute and definite faith in the Buddha, in the Dharma, and in the Sangha.

Son of the Buddha, it is in this manner that the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* always and uninterruptedly guards and maintains his practice of the ten courses of good karmic action.

## 5. THE BODHISATTVA'S REFLECTIONS ON 10 GOOD AND BAD KARMIC ACTIONS

(1) He also has this thought:

Of all of the beings who descend into the wretched destinies, there are none who do not accomplish this by resort to the ten types of unwholesome karmic actions. Consequently, I should cultivate right conduct myself while also encouraging this in others in a manner that causes them to cultivate right conduct as well. Why does one proceed in this way? It is because, if one were to remain incapable of cultivating right conduct oneself while attempting to cause others to cultivate it, it would be impossible to succeed in this.

## a. REFLECTIONS ON THEIR GENERATION OF THE SIX REBIRTH DESTINIES

(M) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* also has this thought:

The ten courses of unwholesome karmic action constitute the causes of rebirth in the hells, among animals, and among hungry ghosts, whereas the ten courses of good karmic action constitute the causes for rebirth among humans and devas and the other rebirth stations on up to the station at the peak of existence.

## b. REFLECTIONS ON GENERATION OF THE FRUITS OF THE 3 VEHICLES' PATHS

Additionally, among these superior classes of those who adhere to the ten courses of good karmic action, there are those who rely on wisdom in cultivating them. Among them, there are those who, due to narrow and inferior resolve, due to fear of the three realms of existence, due to deficiency in the great compassion, and due to having achieved their understanding based on hearing the spoken teachings of others, they then achieve success in the Śrāvaka-disciple Vehicle.

(N) Also, among these superior classes of those who adhere to the ten courses of good karmic action, there are those whose cultivation is pure and who achieve self-awakening not derived from the teachings of others, but who, because of inadequacy in the great compassion and skillful means, and because they succeed in awakening through understanding the extremely profound dharma of causes and conditions, they then achieve success in the Pratyekabuddha Vehicle.

(O) Then again, among these superior classes of those who adhere to the ten courses of good karmic action, there are those whose cultivation is pure, and who, because their minds are immeasurably vast, because they are complete in their

development of compassion and pity, because their practice is subsumed within skillful means, because they have brought forth great vows, because they have not forsaken beings, because they strive to acquire the great knowledge of the Buddhas, and because they carry out the purifying cultivation of the bodhisattva grounds, they then achieve success in the vast practices of the bodhisattva.

(P) Furthermore, these who are most superior among those who are superior in the practice of the ten courses of good karmic action—because they purify the knowledge of all modes and so forth on up to the point of gaining realization of the ten powers and the four fearlessnesses, they therefore succeed in perfecting all dharmas of the Buddha.

Therefore I should now engage in the equal practice of all ten of these good deeds and should cause them all to become perfectly purified.

The bodhisattva should train in just such skillful means as these.

#### C. REFLECTIONS ON THE 10 TRANSGRESSIONS' 10 KARMIC RETRIBUTION

(Q) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* also has this thought:

The highest level of transgression in the ten courses of unwholesome karmic action constitutes the causal basis for rebirth in the hells. A middling level of such transgression constitutes the causal basis for rebirth as an animal. The lowest level constitutes the causal basis for rebirth as a hungry ghost.

Among these, the karmic offense of killing is able to cause beings to descend into the hell realms, animal realms, and hungry ghost realms. If they then achieve a human rebirth, they reap two types of retribution: First, a short lifespan. Second, extensive illness.

The karmic offense of stealing also causes beings to descend into the three wretched destinies. If they then achieve a human rebirth, they reap two types of retribution: First, poverty. Second, if they acquire any wealth, it is jointly held by others, thus preventing its independent use.

The karmic offense of sexual misconduct also causes beings to descend into the three wretched destinies. If they then achieve a human rebirth, they reap two types of retribution: First, their spouse is not virtuous. Second, they do not acquire a retinue responsive to their wishes.

The karmic offense of false speech also causes beings to descend into the three wretched destinies. If they then achieve

a human rebirth, they reap two types of retribution: First, they are often slandered by others. Second, they are deceived by others.

The karmic offense of divisive speech also causes beings to descend into the three wretched destinies. If they then achieve a human rebirth, they reap two types of retribution: First, their retinue is fraught with mutually estranging divisions. Second, the members of their family and clan are corrupt and evil.

The karmic offense of harsh speech also causes beings to descend into the three wretched destinies. If they then achieve a human rebirth, they reap two types of retribution: First, they are always subjected to unpleasant sounds. Second, their conversation is characterized by abundant disputation.

The karmic offense of frivolous speech also causes beings to descend into the three wretched destinies. If they then achieve a human rebirth, they reap two types of retribution: First, nobody accepts their pronouncements. Second, their pronouncements fail to be clearly understood.

The karmic offense of covetousness also causes beings to descend into the three wretched destinies. If they then achieve a human rebirth, they reap two types of retribution: First, their minds are never satisfied. Second, they are extensively afflicted by insatiable desires.

The karmic offense of ill will also causes beings to descend into the three wretched destinies. If they then achieve a human rebirth, they reap two types of retribution: First, they are always subjected to others' criticism of their shortcomings. Second, they are constantly subjected to injurious torment by others.

The karmic offense of holding wrong views also causes beings to descend into the three wretched destinies. If they then achieve a human rebirth, they reap two types of retribution: First, they are always reborn into a household ruled by wrong views. Second, their own minds tend toward flattery and devousness.

Son of the Buddha, the ten courses of unwholesome karmic action are able to generate such an aggregation of measurelessly and boundlessly many immense sufferings as these.

d. RENUNCIATION OF 10 BAD ACTIONS & ROUSING OF 10 ALTRUISTIC MINDS

{R, S} Consequently, the bodhisattva reflects thus: "I must entirely abandon the ten courses of unwholesome karmic action and instead take the ten courses of good karmic action as the gardens of the Dharma wherein I am delighted to abide, dwelling there

myself while also encouraging others so that they too are caused to dwell therein.”

(r) Son of the Buddha, with regard to all beings, this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* also brings forth:<sup>76</sup>

- A mind resolved to serve their benefit;
- A mind wishing to bring them peace and happiness;
- A kind mind;
- A compassionate mind;
- An empathetically pitying mind;
- A mind motivated to draw them forth;
- A protective mind;
- A mind that sees them as like oneself;
- A mind that regards them as like teachers;
- And a mind that regards them as like great teaching masters.

6. HIS REFLECTIONS ON THE PLIGHT OF BEINGS & RESOLVE TO RESCUE THEM

(u) He reflects thus:

These beings are so pitiable. They have fallen into wrong views, into perverse knowledge, into perverse inclinations, and into the entangling thicket of the unwholesome courses of karmic action. I should cause them to abide in right views and practice the genuine path.

(v) He also thinks:

All beings differentiate “other” as opposed to “self” and thus engage in mutually destructive actions, disputatiousness, and hatred that blazes incessantly. I should cause them to abide in the unsurpassable great kindness.

(w) He also reflects thus:

All beings are inclined toward insatiable covetousness and thus only seek to obtain wealth and self-benefit even to the point that they pursue wrong livelihoods to sustain their lives. I should cause them to abide in the dharma of right livelihood characterized by pure actions of body, speech, and mind.

(x) He also thinks:

All beings always follow along with the three poisons and the many different varieties of afflictions and, on account of that, they are as if ablaze. They fail to understand this and fail to bring forth the determination to seek the essential means to escape their circumstances. I should cause them to extinguish that great blaze fed by all of their afflictions and to then become securely established in the station of *nirvāṇa*’s clarity and coolness.

(Y) He also reflects:

Because the vision of all beings has been covered over by the deep darkness of delusion and the thick cataracts of false views, they have therefore strayed into a dark and dense thicket. Having lost the shining light of wisdom, they travel along on dangerous paths in a vast wilderness and bring forth all manner of wrong views. I should cause them to acquire the unimpeded purified wisdom eye with which they can know the true character of all dharmas in a manner not dependent upon the instruction of others.

(Z) He also thinks:

All beings abide on the hazardous road of cyclic births and deaths wherein they are bound to fall into the hell realms, the animal realms, and the realms of the hungry ghosts. They enter the net-trap of wrong views, become confused in the dense forest of delusions, and thus follow along with erroneous paths and pursue practices influenced by the inverted views. In this, they are like blind people with no guide. What is not a path of escape, they take to be a path of escape. They enter into Māra's realm, fall in with bands of evil thieves, follow the thoughts of Māra, and leave far behind the intentions of the Buddha. I should pull them out of these hazardous difficulties and cause them to abide in the fearless city of all-knowledge.

(AA) He also reflects:

All of these beings have become submerged in the waves of the great floods. They have been swept up by the flood of desire, the flood of existence, the flood of ignorance, and the flood of views and thus have become caught in the whirling currents of cyclic existence wherein they are tossed about and turned around in the river of craving as they are carried along in its racing rapids and bounding turbulence, finding no leisure in which to ponder their plight.

They are relentlessly driven along by desire-ridden thoughts, by thoughts motivated by hatred, and by thoughts intent on harming others. The *rākṣasa* of the view imputing the existence of a true self in association with one's body<sup>77</sup> seizes them and carries them off to dwell eternally within the dense forest of desire wherein they develop a deep defiling attachment for whatever they desire. They abide on the high plateau of arrogance and take up residence in the village of the six sense bases wherein they have no one well able to come to their rescue and no one who is able to liberate them.

I should bring forth the mind of great compassion for them, should employ roots of goodness as means of rescuing them, should thus prevent their encountering calamitous disasters, and should thus assist their abandonment of defilement, their abiding in quiescent stillness, and their coming to dwell on the jeweled isle of all-knowledge.

{BB} He also thinks:

All beings abide in the prison of worldly existence in which they are subjected to so much anguishing affliction. They always embrace love and hate and produce worries and fears for themselves. They are bound by the heavy shackles of desire, are covered over and obstructed by the dense forest of ignorance, and are stranded within the three realms of existence from which no one can escape on their own. I should cause them to abandon forever the three realms of existence so that they may come to dwell in the great nirvāṇa that is free of all obstacles.

{CC} He also reflects thus:

All beings are attached to the existence of a self and do not seek to escape from their residence within the cave of the aggregates. In their reliance upon the empty village of the six sense bases, they engage in actions influenced by the four inverted views, are assailed and tormented by the toxic serpents of the four great elements, are subjected to death and injury at the hands of the hostile insurgents of the five aggregates, and thus consequently undergo immeasurably great suffering. I should cause them to take up residence in the most extremely superior station in which they are free of all attachments, namely, in the unexcelled nirvāṇa where all obstacles have been entirely destroyed.

{DD} He also has this thought:

The minds of all beings are inferior and mean. They do not practice the most superior path, the path of all-knowledge. Although they might wish to make their escape, even then, they only delight in the vehicles of the Śrāvaka-disciples and the Pratyekabuddhas. I must cause them to dwell in the Buddha's vast Dharma and vast wisdom.

Son of the Buddha, through his guarding and upholding of the moral precepts, the bodhisattva becomes well able to achieve growth in the mind of kindness and the mind of compassion.

#### 7. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS

{EE} Son of the Buddha, because of the power of his vows, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* who abides on the Ground of Stainlessness



becomes able to see many buddhas. That is to say that he is able to see many hundreds of buddhas, many thousands of buddhas, many hundreds of thousands of buddhas, many *koṭis* of buddhas, many hundreds of *koṭis* of buddhas, many thousands of *koṭis* of buddhas, many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of buddhas, and so forth in this manner on up to his being able to see even many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddhas.

Wherever the buddhas dwell, by resort to his vast resolve and resolute intentions, he acts with reverence and extreme veneration in serving and making offerings to them of robes, food and drink, bedding, medicines, and every form of life-supporting benefaction, all of which he offers up as gifts while also making offerings to their entire assembly of Sangha members. He then dedicates the roots of goodness associated with this to the realization of *anuttarasamyakṣambodhi*.

In addition, in the presence of all buddhas, bringing forth a mind of profound veneration, he undertakes the cultivation of the dharma of the ten courses of good karmic action, persisting in what he has undertaken all the way to the point of reaching the realization of bodhi, never in all that time neglecting or failing in such practice.

#### 8. THE BODHISATTVA'S GROUNDS PURIFICATION COMPARED TO REFINING GOLD

Because, for countless hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas, this bodhisattva has abandoned miserliness and any defilement arising from breaking the moral precepts, he achieves consummate purity in giving and the observance of the moral precepts. This is just as when one places real gold together with *kāśīsa*<sup>78</sup> and subjects it to standard refining processes, whereupon the gold leaves behind all impurities and becomes ever more radiant. So too it is in the case of this bodhisattva dwelling on the Ground of Stainlessness who, for countless hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas, in order to abandon miserliness and any defilement that would arise from breaking moral precepts, has practiced giving and upheld the moral precepts and has thus thereby achieved a state of consummate purity.

#### 9. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF MEANS OF ATTRACTION AND PĀRAMITĀS

Son of the Buddha, among the four means of attraction, this bodhisattva focuses more strongly on "pleasing words" and, among the ten *pāramitās*, he focuses more strongly on upholding the moral precepts. It is not that he does not practice the others. Rather, he

simply accords them an amount of emphasis corresponding to his own strengths and to what is fitting.

10. VAJRAGARBHĀ'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 2ND GROUND BODHISATTVA

Son of the Buddha, this has been a summary discussion of the essentials of the bodhisattva *mahāsattva's* second ground, the Ground of Stainlessness.

a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE

The bodhisattva abiding on this ground often becomes a wheel-turning sage king who serves as a great Dharma sovereign possessed of an abundance of the seven precious things and sovereign powers through which he is able to cause beings to do away with their miserliness and precept-breaking defilements. He employs skillful means to cause them to abide securely in the ten courses of good karmic action. He serves as a great benefactor to all, endlessly supplying provisions to everyone.

b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS

In his practice of giving, pleasing words, beneficial actions, and joint endeavors, and in all other such works as these, he never departs from mindfulness of the Buddha, never departs from mindfulness of the Dharma, never departs from mindfulness of the Sangha, and so forth until we come to his never departing from mindfulness of his quest to achieve complete fulfillment of the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.

c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS

He also has this thought: "I should become one who serves these beings as a leader, as one who is supreme, as one who is most especially supreme, as one who is marvelous, as one who is most subtly marvelous, as one who is excellent, as one who is unexcelled," and so forth until we come to "as one who relies on the cognition of all-knowledge."

d. THE RESULT OF THE BODHISATTVA'S LEAVING THE HOUSEHOLD LIFE

If this bodhisattva wishes to relinquish the home life and take up the diligent practice of vigor in the Dharma of the Buddha, then he will be able to relinquish the household, his wife and children, and the five desires, and having abandoned the home life, if he diligently applies himself in the practice of vigor, in but a single moment, he will acquire a thousand samādhis, will be able to see a thousand buddhas, will know the spiritual powers exercised by a thousand buddhas, will be able to cause tremors in a thousand

world systems, and so forth until we come to his becoming able to manifest a thousand bodies and able to manifest a thousand bodhisattvas to serve in the retinue of each and every one of those bodies.

If he resorts to the power of the especially supreme vows of the bodhisattva, he will become freely able to bring forth a number of manifestations beyond even this such that one would never be able to count them even in a period of a hundred kalpas, a thousand kalpas, and so forth on up to a hundred thousand *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas.

11. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, wishing to again proclaim his meaning, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

The straightforward mind, the gentle mind, the capable mind,  
the subdued mind, the serene mind, the mind of pure goodness,  
the swift exits from *saṃsāra*, the broadly inclusive and great minds—  
By employing these ten minds, one enters the second ground.<sup>79</sup> (6)

Abiding herein, one perfects the qualities of the moral precepts,  
departs far from killing, refrains from vexing or harming others,  
and also abandons stealing as well as sexual misconduct and  
speech that is either false, harsh, divisive, or meaningless. (7)

He does not covet wealth, always feels kindness and pity,  
walks the right path with a straight mind, has no flattery or falseness,  
abandons treachery, forgoes arrogance, is utterly subdued and pliant,  
accords with teachings in practice, and refrains from negligence. (8)

One thinks, “The many sufferings endured in the hells, as animals,  
and as hungry ghosts who, burning, spew forth fierce flames—  
All of these are caused by karmic offenses.

I must abandon them and instead abide in the true Dharma. (9)

Freely gaining rebirth among humans according to one's intentions,  
and so on, up to *dhyāna* samādhi bliss in peak-of-existence heavens,  
and the paths of Pratyekabuddha, Śrāvaka, and Buddha Vehicles—  
All are gained with the ten good karmic actions as their cause.” (10)

One contemplates in this manner and thus refrains from negligence,  
upholds pure precepts oneself, instructs others in guarding them,  
and also, observing the many sufferings undergone by beings,  
one thus ever increases the mind of great compassion. (11)

“Foolish common people of faulty knowledge and wrong  
understanding ever harbor hatred and engage in many disputes.  
The objects of their covetousness never bring them satisfaction.

I should cause them to rid themselves of these three poisons. (12)

“They are enveloped and blanketed by stupidity’s great darkness,  
fall into the net of wrong views on extremely hazardous paths,  
and are trapped by adversaries in the cage of birth and death.  
I should cause them to utterly defeat Māra’s marauders. (13)

“Swept away by the four floods, their minds become submerged.  
They endure incalculable suffering as if burning in the three realms.  
They conceive of the aggregates as a house in which a self abides.  
Wishing to liberate them, I must diligently cultivate the path. (14)

“Where they might seek escape, their minds being inferior and mean,  
they have cast aside the Buddha’s supremely excellent wisdom.  
I wish to cause them to abide in the Great Vehicle  
and bring forth diligent and tireless vigor in this.” (15)

The bodhisattva abiding herein accumulates meritorious qualities,  
sees countless buddhas, presents offerings to them all,  
and refines goodness to even greater brilliance for *koṭis* of kalpas  
as if employing a fine elixir in refining real gold. (16)

A son of the Buddha dwelling herein becomes a wheel-turning king  
everywhere teaching beings to practice the ten good karmic deeds  
while also cultivating all of the other good dharmas  
in order to perfect the ten powers and rescue those in the world. (17)

If he wishes to relinquish the royal throne, wealth, and jewels,  
he thereupon abandons home life, accords with Buddha’s teachings,  
is valiant and energetic in diligence, and in a single moment,  
acquires a thousand samādhis and sees a thousand buddhas. (18)

The bodhisattva abiding on this ground is able to manifest  
all the many different powers of the superknowledges,  
and, through power of vows, his capabilities extend even beyond this  
as, in countless ways, he freely liberates the many classes of beings. (19)

As for these most supreme practices of the bodhisattva cultivated by  
one who bestows benefit on everyone in the world,  
all such meritorious qualities found on the second ground as these  
have hereby been expounded on for the sake of the Buddha’s sons. (20)

## PART THREE

### The Shining Light Ground

#### C. THE THIRD GROUND: THE SHINING LIGHT GROUND

##### 1. THE THIRD GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST

Of those sons of the Buddha hearing of this ground's practices  
and of the inconceivable realms of the bodhisattva,  
none failed to be moved to thoughts of reverence and delight.  
Then, from the midst of space, they scattered blossoms as offerings. <sup>(1)</sup>

Uttering praises, they said, "It is good indeed, Great Mountain King,  
that, with compassionate mind, you think of beings with pity.  
You have so well described the dharmas of moral virtue of the wise  
as well as the practices and characteristics of the second ground. <sup>(2)</sup>

"The sublime practices of these bodhisattvas,  
true, real, free of irregularities, and unvarying—  
Wishing to benefit the many classes of beings,  
you have thus expounded upon their supreme purity. <sup>(3)</sup>

"You to whom all humans and devas make offerings here,  
we pray you will now expound on the third ground for their sakes  
and hope you will entirely explain in accordance with their states  
the Dharma-accordant works of the wise. <sup>(4)</sup>

"All of the Great Rishi's dharmas of giving, moral virtue,  
patience, vigor, *dhyāna*, and wisdom,  
as well as the path of skillful means, kindness, and compassion—  
All these pure practices of the Buddha—please explain them all." <sup>(5)</sup>

At that time, Liberation Moon repeated their request, saying:  
"O fearless and greatly eminent master, Vajragarbha—  
Please explain the manner of one's progression into the third ground  
and all qualities of those there with pliant and harmonious minds." <sup>(6)</sup>

##### 2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE THIRD GROUND'S EXPLANATION

<sup>(A)</sup> At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva informed Liberation Moon  
Bodhisattva, saying:

##### 3. THE TEN RESOLUTE INTENTIONS AS BASES FOR ENTERING THE THIRD GROUND

Son of the Buddha. The bodhisattva who has already accomplished the purification of the second ground and then wishes to enter the third ground should bring forth ten types of resolute intentions.<sup>80</sup> What then are these ten? They are:<sup>81</sup>

The resolute intention set on purity;  
 The resolute intention set on stable abiding;  
 The resolute intention set on renunciation;  
 The resolute intention set on abandoning desire;  
 The resolute intention set on irreversibility;  
 The resolute intention set on solidity;  
 The resolute intention set on flourishing brilliance;  
 The resolute intention set on heroic bravery;  
 The resolute intention set on being broadly inclusive;  
 And the resolute intention set on magnanimity.

The bodhisattva employs these ten types of resolute intentions to acquire entry into the third ground.

#### 4. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONTEMPLATION OF ALL CONDITIONED DHARMAS

(B) Son of the Buddha, after the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* comes to abide on the third ground, he contemplates all conditioned dharmas in accordance with their true character, that is to say, they are characterized by:

Impermanence;  
 Suffering;  
 Impurity;  
 Instability;  
 Certainty of ruination;  
 Inability to long endure;  
 Production and destruction in each succeeding *kṣaṇa*;  
 Not coming forth from the past;  
 Not proceeding on to the future;  
 And not abiding in the present.

(C) He also contemplates these dharmas:

As affording no protection;  
 As devoid of any refuge;  
 As accompanied by worry, sorrow, and anguish;  
 As bound up with love and hate;  
 As proliferating worry and sorrow;  
 As involving ceaseless accumulation;  
 As ablaze with the fire of desire, hatred, and stupidity that blaze  
     on incessantly;  
 As enveloped by the many sorts of calamities;  
 As increasing day and night;  
 And as like magical conjurations in their unreality.

## 5. THE BODHISATTVA'S RENUNCIATION &amp; QUEST FOR BUDDHA'S KNOWLEDGE

(D) Having observed this, he doubly increases his renunciation of all conditioned things and progresses toward the wisdom of the Buddha. He perceives the wisdom of the Buddha:<sup>82</sup>

As inconceivable;  
 As unequaled;  
 As measureless;  
 As rarely encountered;  
 As unalloyed in its purity;  
 As beyond anguish;  
 As beyond worries;  
 As reaching all the way to the city of fearlessness;  
 As irreversible;  
 And as able to rescue countless beings beset with suffering and difficulty.

## 6. THE BODHISATTVA'S TEN SYMPATHETIC MENTAL INTENTIONS TOWARD BEINGS

(E) Once the bodhisattva has in this way observed the immeasurable benefit of the Tathāgata's wisdom and has likewise observed the countless faults and calamitous qualities of all that is conditioned, he then brings forth ten types of sympathetic mental intentions<sup>83</sup> toward all beings. What then are these ten? They are:<sup>84</sup>

He brings forth sympathetic mental intentions on observing that beings abide in solitude with no one upon whom they can depend;  
 He brings forth sympathetic mental intentions on observing that beings are poverty-stricken and destitute;  
 He brings forth sympathetic mental intentions on observing that beings are engulfed in the flames of the three poisons;  
 He brings forth sympathetic mental intentions on observing that beings are confined in the prison of the states of existence;  
 He brings forth sympathetic mental intentions on observing that beings are constantly covered over and obstructed by the dense forest of afflictions;  
 He brings forth sympathetic mental intentions on observing that beings are not skilled in contemplative thought;  
 He brings forth sympathetic mental intentions on observing that beings have no desire for good dharmas;  
 He brings forth sympathetic mental intentions on observing that beings have lost the Buddhas' Dharma;

He brings forth sympathetic mental intentions on observing that  
 beings flow along in the stream of cyclic births and deaths;  
 And he brings forth sympathetic mental intentions on observ-  
 ing that beings have lost the means of achieving liberation.

These are the ten.

7. THE BODHISATTVA'S GENERATION AND PRACTICE OF GREAT VIGOR

(F) Having thus observed the immeasurable suffering and anguish of the realms of beings' existence, the bodhisattva brings forth great vigor and thinks:<sup>85</sup>

I should rescue these beings;  
 I should liberate them;  
 I should establish them in purity;  
 I should take them on across;  
 I should see that they become situated in a place of goodness;  
 I should cause them to abide securely;  
 I should cause them to be filled with joy;  
 I should cause them to acquire knowledge and vision;  
 I should cause them to become well trained;  
 And I should cause them to reach nirvāṇa.

(G) Having thus renounced all conditioned things, having thus become sympathetically mindful of all beings, having understood the supreme benefits of the cognition of all-knowledge, and wishing to rely on the Tathāgata's wisdom in rescuing beings, the bodhisattva reflects thus: "In this circumstance where all these beings have fallen into the great suffering of the afflictions, with what skillful means might I be able to extricate and rescue them so that they are caused to abide in the ultimate bliss of nirvāṇa?"

(H) He then thinks:

If one wishes to liberate beings and cause them to abide in nirvāṇa, this is inseparable from the unimpeded knowledge of liberation. The unimpeded knowledge of liberation is inseparable from awakening to all dharmas as they really are. The awakening to all dharmas as they really are is inseparable from the light of the practice wisdom that cognizes the non-existence of action and non-production. The light of the practice wisdom that is cognizant of the nonexistence of action and non-production<sup>86</sup> is in turn inseparable from *dhyāna* meditation's skillful and definitive knowledge arising from contemplative investigation. *Dhyāna* meditation's skillful and definitive knowledge arising from contemplative investigation is in turn inseparable from skillful extensive learning.



(1) Having contemplated and utterly realized this, the bodhisattva redoubles his diligent striving to cultivate right Dharma to the point that, day and night, he only wishes:<sup>87</sup>

To hear the Dharma;  
 To rejoice in the Dharma;  
 To delight in the Dharma;  
 To rely upon the Dharma;  
 To follow the Dharma;  
 To comprehend the Dharma;  
 To comply with the Dharma;  
 To arrive in the Dharma;  
 To abide in the Dharma;  
 And to practice the Dharma.

(2) As in this way he diligently pursues his quest to acquire the Dharma of the Buddha, the bodhisattva retains no miserly cherishing for any precious possessions or wealth, for he does not perceive that there is any such thing that is worthy of being esteemed as rare. Rather, it is only the person who is able to explain the Buddha's Dharma that he conceives of as but rarely encountered.

Consequently, for the sake of his quest to acquire the Dharma of the Buddha, the bodhisattva is able to give away all his inward and outward wealth. There is no expression of reverence he would be unable to carry out, no form of pride he would be unable to relinquish, no form of service he would be unable to perform, and no form of intensely bitter suffering he would be unable to endure. If he were to be able to hear but a single sentence of Dharma he has never heard before, he would be filled with immense joy more abundant than what he would experience on receiving an entire great trichiliocosm full of precious jewels.

Were he to be able to hear but a single stanza of right Dharma he has not heard before, he would be filled with immense joy even more abundant than that experienced on acquiring the position of a wheel-turning sage king. Were he to succeed in acquiring but a single stanza of Dharma he had not heard before through which he might be able to purify his cultivation of the bodhisattva conduct, he would regard that as superior to ascending to the station of Indra or Brahmā where he might be able to abide in that manner for countless hundreds of thousands of kalpas.

Were someone to tell him: "I possess a single sentence of the Dharma spoken by the Buddha through which you will be able to purify your cultivation of the bodhisattva conduct, but I will only

give it to you if you will now be able to plunge into a huge fire pit in which you will undergo the most extreme suffering," the bodhisattva would reflect in this way:

If I were able to purify the cultivation of the bodhisattva conduct by acquiring this one stanza of Dharma spoken by the Buddha, then, even if an entire great trichiliocosm were filled with a great conflagration, I would still wish to throw my body down into it from the height of the Brahma Heaven in order to be able to personally acquire it. How much the less might it be that I would be unable to enter some small fire pit in order to acquire it. Hence, for the sake of seeking the Dharma of the Buddha, I should now even be willing to undergo all the many sufferings of the hells. How much the less might I be unwilling to undergo any of the relatively minor sufferings encountered in the human realm.

In his practice of vigor in seeking the Buddha's Dharma, the bodhisattva brings forth just such diligence as this. He then implements the practice of contemplation and cultivation in accordance with whatsoever Dharma he has learned.

Having been able to hear the Dharma, this bodhisattva then focuses his mind and takes up peaceful dwelling in a secluded place, thinking, "It is only through cultivating in accordance with what has been taught that one then acquires the Buddha's Dharma. Achieving purification in these matters is not something one can accomplish solely through the spoken word."

#### 8. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONQUEST OF THE MEDITATIVE ABSORPTIONS

Sons of the Buddha, when this bodhisattva comes to dwell on this Ground of Shining Light, he straightaway separates himself from desire and from evil and unwholesome dharmas. Still possessed of both ideation and mental discursion, he experiences the joy and the bliss arising from separation and abides in the first *dhyāna*.

Extinguishing both ideation and mental discursion, achieving inward purity, and anchoring the mind in a single place, he becomes free of ideation and free of mental discursion, experiences the joy and bliss generated through meditative concentration, and abides in the second *dhyāna*.

Separating himself from joy, abiding in equanimity, possessed of mindfulness and right knowing awareness, experiencing physical feeling of which the Āryas are able to state that one is able to maintain equanimity toward it, and possessed of mindfulness while experiencing such bliss, he abides in the third *dhyāna*.

Cutting off bliss, having earlier already done away with suffering, having extinguished joy and sorrow, experiencing neither suffering nor bliss, and maintaining equanimity and mindfulness that are pure, he abides in the fourth *dhyāna*.

He transcends all perceptions of physical form, extinguishes all perceptions of [sensory] impingement, does not attend to any perceptions of diversity, enters a state characterized by boundless space, and thus then abides in the station of boundless space.

He entirely transcends the station of boundless space, enters a state characterized by boundless consciousness, and thus then abides in the station of boundless consciousness.

He entirely transcends the station of boundless consciousness, enters a state characterized by nothing whatsoever, and thus then abides in the station of nothing whatsoever.

He entirely transcends the station of nothing whatsoever and thus then abides in the station of neither perception nor non-perception.

Because he accords with the Dharma, he carries forth his practice without having anything to which he retains a pleasure-based attachment.

#### 9. THE BODHISATTVA'S DEVELOPMENT OF THE FOUR IMMEASURABLES

{L} Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva's mind pursues the cultivation of kindness to the point that it becomes vast, immeasurable, non-dual, free of enmity, free of any opposition, unimpeded, free of affliction, universally pervading everywhere throughout the Dharma realm and the realm of empty space, and extending universally to all worlds. His abiding in compassion, in sympathetic joy, and in equanimity are also just like this.

#### 10. THE BODHISATTVA'S DEVELOPMENT OF THE SPIRITUAL SUPERKNOWLEDGES

{M} Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva acquires the power of measureless spiritual superknowledges by which:

He is able to cause the entire great earth to tremor;

He is able to create many bodies from a single body and is able to make those many bodies become a single body, either making them hidden or making them visible;

He is able to pass unimpededly through the obstructions of rock, walls, and mountains just as if moving through empty space;

He is able to travel through empty space while remaining in full lotus position, just like a flying bird;

He is able to enter into the earth as if it were water;

He is able to walk on water as if it were the earth;  
 He is able to emit smoke and flames like a great bonfire;  
 He is also able to rain down water like a great cloud;  
 He also possesses that great and awesome power by which he  
 is able to reach up with his hand and stroke the sun and the  
 moon where they reside in space;  
 And he is able to freely transport his person wherever he  
 pleases, even up to the Brahma World.

11. THE BODHISATTVA'S HEAVENLY EAR

This bodhisattva possesses the heavenly ear that is purified and surpasses the human ear. Thus he is able to entirely hear all of the sounds of both humans and devas, whether they be near or far. He is also able even to entirely hear all of the sounds emitted by mosquitoes, gnats, and the various sorts of flies.

12. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF OTHERS' THOUGHTS

Employing the knowledge of others' thoughts, this bodhisattva knows in accordance with reality the thoughts of other beings. Specifically, when they have thoughts of desire, he knows in accordance with reality that they have thoughts of desire and when they have abandoned thoughts of desire, he knows in accordance with reality that they have abandoned thoughts of desire. In all cases, he knows in accordance with reality when they have:

Thoughts of hatred or thoughts that have abandoned hatred;  
 Deluded thoughts or thoughts that have abandoned delusion;  
 Thoughts beset with afflictions or thoughts that are free of afflictions;  
 Thoughts that are small in scope or thoughts that are vast in scope;  
 Great thoughts or immeasurable thoughts;  
 Thoughts that are general in nature or thoughts not general in nature;  
 Scattered thoughts or thoughts that are not scattered;  
 Concentrated thoughts or thoughts that are not concentrated;  
 Liberated thoughts or unliberated thoughts;  
 Surpassable thoughts or unsurpassable thoughts;  
 Thoughts admixed with defilement or thoughts not admixed with defilement;  
 And vast thoughts or thoughts that are not vast.

So it is that the bodhisattva uses the knowledge of others' thoughts to know beings' thoughts.

## 13. THE BODHISATTVA'S RECALL OF PAST LIVES

This bodhisattva remembers the details of countless past lives. Specifically, he remembers one life, two lives, three lives, four lives, and so forth on up to ten lives, twenty lives, thirty lives, and so forth on up to a hundred lives, countless hundreds of lives, countless thousands of lives, and countless hundreds of thousands of lives. He remembers the creation phase of the kalpa, the destruction phase of the kalpa, the creation and destruction phases of the kalpa, and remembers countless creation and destruction phases of kalpas. He remembers:

I lived in such-and-such a place, was named this, was a member of this family, came from this caste, consumed these sorts of food and drink, lived a life of this length, dwelt for this amount of time, and experienced these sorts of suffering and happiness, after which I died in that place, was then reborn in such-and-such a place, after which I died in such-and-such a place, was then reborn in this place, possessed this sort of physical stature, was of this sort of appearance, and spoke with this sort of voice.

In this way, he entirely remembers countless details from his past.

## 14. THE BODHISATTVA'S HEAVENLY EYE

This bodhisattva possesses the heavenly eye that is purified and surpasses the human eye. Thus he observes with respect to beings when they were born, when they died, whether they were of fine physical appearance or of hideous appearance, whether they dwelt in the destinies associated with goodness, whether they dwelt in the wretched destinies, and how they moved along in accordance with their karmic actions.

He is able as well to observe that, if some particular being had created bad physical karma, bad verbal karma, and bad mental karma, had slandered worthies and *āryas*, had become completely possessed of wrong views and the causes and conditions of karmic actions associated with wrong views, when his body perished and his lifespan came to an end, he then became bound for descent into the wretched destinies and was reborn into the hells.

He is also able to observe that, if yet some other being had created good physical karma, good verbal karma, and good mental karma, had refrained from slandering worthies and *āryas*, had become completely possessed of right views as well as the causes and conditions of karmic actions associated with right views, then, when his body perished and his lifespan came to an end,

he then became bound for rebirth into the good destinies and for ascent into the heavens.

The bodhisattva's heavenly eye is able to observe all of these circumstances in accordance with the way they really are.

15. THE BODHISATTVA'S VOW-DETERMINED REBIRTH APART FROM THE DHYĀNAS

This bodhisattva, though well able to enter and emerge from the *dhyāna* samādhis and *samāpattis*, nonetheless does not acquiesce in their power when taking rebirth, but rather only acquiesces in rebirth to locations conducing to his ability to achieve complete fulfillment of the factors leading to the realization of bodhi. In this, availing himself of his mind's power of vows, he thereby achieves rebirth in those sorts of circumstances.

16. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS

(N) Son of the Buddha, due to the power of his vows, this bodhisattva who abides on this Ground of Shining Light becomes able to see many buddhas. That is to say that he may see many hundreds of buddhas, many thousands of buddhas, many hundreds of thousands of buddhas, and so forth until we come to his seeing many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddhas, all of whom he reveres, venerates, and serves. He presents offerings to them of robes, food and drink, bedding, medicines, and all things supporting their lives, offering up all of these things with a vast mind and a deep mind. He also makes offerings of such requisites to everyone in their sangha assemblies and then dedicates these roots of goodness to the realization of *anuttarasamyaksambodhi*. He listens respectfully to the Dharma in the presence of the Buddhas. Having heard it, he retains it and cultivates it in a manner befitting his powers to do so.

17. THE BODHISATTVA'S PURIFICATION AND ITS COMPARISON TO REFINING GOLD

This bodhisattva contemplates all dharmas as neither produced nor destroyed and as existing through the conjunction of causes and conditions.

(O) Having first destroyed the bonds of views, the bonds of desire, the bonds of form, the bonds of becoming, and the bonds of ignorance all become ever more attenuated. Because, for countless hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas, they are no longer accumulated, wrong desire, wrong hatred, and wrong delusion are all entirely cut off. All of his roots of goodness then become ever more radiant.

Son of the Buddha, this is analogous to skillfully refining real gold to the point where its weight no longer diminishes with smelting and it shines ever more brightly in its purity. So too it is with the bodhisattva who dwells on the Ground of Shining Light. Because he no longer accumulates them, wrongly generated covetousness, wrongly generated hatred, and wrongly generated stupidity are all entirely cut off and his roots of goodness then shine ever more brightly.

This bodhisattva's inclination to be patient, his inclination to be gently harmonious, his inclination to be congenially adaptive, his inclination to be pleasingly sweet, his inclination to refrain from anger, his inclination to remain imperturbable, his inclination to remain unconfused, his inclination to refrain from judgments as to "superior" or "inferior," his inclination to not long for expressions of gratitude, his inclination to repay kindnesses, his inclination to refrain from flattery, his inclination to refrain from deviousness, and his inclination to refrain from treachery—all of these become ever more purified.<sup>88</sup>

#### 18. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF MEANS OF ATTRACTION AND PĀRAMITĀS

Among the four means of attraction, this bodhisattva focuses more strongly on the practice of "beneficial actions" and, among the ten *pāramitās*, he focuses more strongly on the practice of the patience *pāramitā*.<sup>89</sup> It is not that he does not practice the others. Rather, he simply accords them an amount of emphasis corresponding to his own strengths and to whatever is fitting.

#### 19. VAJRAGARBHĀ'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 3RD GROUND BODHISATTVA

Son of the Buddha, this is what constitutes the bodhisattva's third ground, the Ground of Shining Light.

##### a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE

(P) The bodhisattva dwelling on this ground often becomes a king of the Heaven of the Thirty-three who is able to employ skillful means to cause beings to abandon desire.

##### b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS

In his practice of "giving," "pleasing words," "beneficial actions," and "joint endeavors" and in all other such works as these, he never departs from mindfulness of the Buddha, never departs from mindfulness of the Dharma, never departs from mindfulness of the Sangha, and so forth until we come to his never departing from mindfulness of his quest to achieve complete fulfillment of the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.

## c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS

He also has this thought: "I should become one who serves these beings as a leader, as one who is supreme, as one who is most especially supreme, as one who is marvelous, as one who is most subtly marvelous, as one who is excellent, as one who is unexcelled," and so forth until we come to "as one who relies on the cognition of all-knowledge."

## d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS

If he becomes diligent in the practice of vigor, then, in but a single moment, he will acquire a hundred thousand samādhis, will be able to see a hundred thousand buddhas, will know of the spiritual powers of a hundred thousand buddhas, will be able to cause tremors in a hundred thousand buddha worlds, and so forth until we come to his manifesting a hundred thousand bodies among which each and every one of those bodies manifests a hundred thousand bodhisattvas to serve as its retinue. If he uses the power of the bodhisattva's especially supreme vows, he will be freely able to bring forth manifestations beyond this number such that one could never count them all even in a hundred kalpas, a thousand kalpas, and so forth on up to a hundred thousand *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas.

## 20. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, wishing to again proclaim his meaning, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

The pure mind, stable abiding mind, mind of flourishing brilliance, mind of renunciation, non-desiring mind, non-harming mind,<sup>90</sup> the solid, valiant, broadly inclusive and magnanimous minds—the wise resort to these in acquiring entry into the third ground. (7)

The bodhisattva dwelling on this Ground of Shining Light contemplates formative factor dharmas as suffering, impermanent, impure, bound to perish, rapidly bound to return to destruction, as unenduring, as nonabiding, and as having no coming or going. (8)

He contemplates conditioned dharmas as like a grave disease, as bound up with worry, lamentation, suffering and anguish, as constantly ablaze with the fierce fire of the three poisons that, from beginningless time onward, has continued without cease. (9)

He renounces the three realms, indulges no covetous attachment, exclusively and without distraction pursues the Buddha's knowledge, so difficult to fathom, difficult to conceive of, matchless, immeasurable, boundless, and entirely free of torments. (10)



Having observed the Buddha's knowledge, he feels pity for beings, abiding alone, with no one to rely on or to rescue and protect them, burned by the blazing fire of the three poisons, ever poverty-stricken, dwelling in the prison of existence, always undergoing sufferings, (11) enveloped in and covered by the afflictions, blind, with no eyes, aspiring to the inferior and mean, having lost the Dharma jewel, swept along in cyclic births and deaths, frightened by nirvāna—he thinks, "I should rescue them, being diligently vigorous in this. (12)

I shall seek the wisdom with which to benefit beings."

He reflects on which skillful means can cause their liberation and realizes it is none other than the Tathāgata's unimpeded knowledge that itself arises from the wisdom of non-production. (13)

He reflects, "This wisdom is acquired through learning."

Having considered it thus, he then assiduously urges himself on so that, day and night, he listens and practices incessantly, taking only right Dharma as what is worthy of his esteem. (14)

Whether it be countries, cities, wealth, the various precious jewels, his wife, children, retinue, or even the royal throne—for the sake of Dharma, the bodhisattva, with reverential mind, is able to relinquish all such things. (15)

Even his head, eyes, ears, nose, tongue, and teeth, his hands, feet, bones, marrow, heart, blood and flesh—relinquishing even such things as these, he does not deem difficult, but rather only esteems the hearing of Dharma as most rare. (16)

Should someone come and tell this bodhisattva,

"Whosoever is able to throw his body into a great bonfire—

I will bestow upon you a Dharma jewel of the Buddha,"

having heard this, he would feel no trepidation at leaping into it. (17)

He instead thinks, "Even were there a fire filling up a trichiliocosm, I would leap down into it from the height of the Brahma world, for, to do this in search of the Dharma is not to be seen as difficult, how much the less might I shrink from minor human sufferings." (18)

Even all of the sufferings experienced in the Avīci Hells

from the time of his initial resolve until he achieves buddhahood—

he would be able to endure it all for the sake of hearing the Dharma.

How much the more would he endure all the sufferings of humans. (19)

Having heard it, by right contemplation that accords with principle, he gains in sequence the four *dhyānas*, four formless absorptions, four equally-regarding minds,<sup>91</sup> and five superknowledges, yet does not acquiesce in their power to determine one's rebirths. (20)

The bodhisattva dwelling herein sees many buddhas,  
 makes offerings to them, listens to them, and, with resolute mind,  
 severs erroneous views and delusions and becomes ever more pure,  
 as when refining true gold, its substance remains undiminished. {21}

One who abides herein often becomes a Trāyastriṃśa Heaven King  
 teaching and guiding countless members of the assemblies of devas,  
 causing them to forsake the desire mind, abide in paths of goodness,  
 and proceed with singular devotion to seek the Buddha's qualities. {22}

A son of the Buddha abiding herein who is diligently vigorous  
 perfectly acquires a hundred thousand samādhis,  
 sees a hundred thousand buddhas' bodies adorned with the marks,  
 and, if resorting to the power of vows, exceeds even this. {23}

As for the universal benefiting of all beings  
 and all of those especially superior practices of the bodhisattvas  
 as well as all of the other such aspects of the third ground,  
 I have concluded their explanation according to their meaning. {24}

## PART FOUR

### The Blazing Brilliance Ground

#### D. THE FOURTH GROUND: THE BLAZING BRILLIANCE GROUND

##### 1. THE FOURTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST

When those sons of the Buddha had heard of these vast practices on this delightful, deeply sublime, and especially supreme ground, their minds were exhilarated, they were filled with great joy, and they scattered many flowers everywhere as offerings to the Buddha. (1)

When such sublime Dharma had been proclaimed there, the great earth trembled, the ocean's waters roiled, and all of the celestial nymphs became joyful, whereupon they all joined their marvelous voices in singing praises. (2)

The Vaśavartin Heaven King, moved to immense celebratory delight, rained down *mañi* jewels as offerings to the Buddha, and uttered praises: "The Buddha has come forth here for our sakes, expounding the practices possessed of the foremost merit. (3)

"The meaning of the grounds taught by such a wise one as this is extremely difficult to encounter in a hundred thousand kalpas. We have now suddenly been able to hear this sublime Dharma voice speak of a bodhisattva's supreme conduct. (4)

"We wish to additionally hear expounded the brilliantly wise one's subsequent grounds on the definite path to the realm without residue that bestows benefit on all devas and all humans.

All of these sons of the Buddha would delight in hearing this." (5)

Then the heroically valiant one of great resolve, Liberation Moon, posed a request to Vajragarbha, saying, "O Son of the Buddha, please explain here all aspects of the practice involved in turning from here to enter the fourth ground." (6)

##### 2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE FOURTH GROUND'S EXPLANATION

(A) At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva informed Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, saying:

##### 3. 10 GATEWAYS TO DHARMA LIGHT AS BASES FOR ENTERING THE 4TH GROUND

O Son of the Buddha. As for the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* who has already well purified his practice on the third ground and then wishes to enter the fourth ground, the Ground of Blazing Brilliance,

he should cultivate ten gateways to the light of Dharma.<sup>92</sup> What are the ten? They are:

- Contemplation of the realms of beings;
- Contemplation of the Dharma realm;
- Contemplation of the world realms;
- Contemplation of the realms of empty space;
- Contemplation of the realms of consciousness;
- Contemplation of the desire realm;
- Contemplation of the form realm;
- Contemplation of the formless realm;
- Contemplation of the realms of broadly inclusive resolute intentions and resolute convictions;<sup>93</sup>
- And contemplation of the realms of magnanimous resolute intentions and resolute convictions.<sup>94</sup>

The bodhisattva employs these ten gateways to the light of Dharma to gain entry into the fourth ground, the Ground of Blazing Brilliance.

#### 4. TEN KNOWLEDGE-MATURING DHARMAS FOR BIRTH IN THE BUDDHAS' CLAN

{B} Son of the Buddha, if a bodhisattva comes to dwell on this Ground of Blazing Brilliance, then, by employing ten types of knowledge-maturing dharmas,<sup>95</sup> he becomes able to acquire its inner dharmas<sup>96</sup> and achieve birth into the clan of the Tathāgatas. What then are those ten? They are:

- Through possessing non-retreating resolute intentions;
- Through bringing forth ultimately pure and indestructible faith in the Three Jewels;
- Through contemplating the production and destruction of all karmic formative factors;
- Through contemplating all dharmas as, by their very nature, unproduced;
- Through contemplating the formation and destruction of worlds;
- Through contemplating that it is on account of karmic actions that birth exists;
- Through contemplating *saṃsāra* and *nirvāṇa*;
- Through contemplating the karma associated with beings and lands;
- Through contemplating the past and the future;
- And through contemplating non-existence and complete destruction.

These are the ten.

## 5. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF THE 37 ENLIGHTENMENT FACTORS

## a. THE FOUR STATIONS OF MINDFULNESS

(c) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva dwelling on this fourth ground employs the body-examining contemplation that takes his own body as the objective focus, employing diligent and robust mindfulness and knowing awareness<sup>97</sup> in ridding himself of desire and distress associated with the world. He employs the body-examining contemplation taking others' bodies as the objective focus, employing diligent and robust mindfulness and knowing awareness in ridding himself of desire and distress associated with the world. And he employs the body-examining contemplation that takes both his own body and others' bodies as the objective focus, employing diligent and robust mindfulness and knowing awareness in ridding himself of desire and distress associated with the world.

In this same manner, he also applies such contemplation to his own feelings, to the feelings of others, and to the feelings of both himself and others, applying the feeling-examining contemplation to those objective conditions.

He also applies such contemplation to his own mind, to the minds of others, and to the minds of both himself and others, employing the mind-examining contemplation to those objective conditions.

And, finally, he also applies such contemplation to subjectively-related dharmas, to objectively-related dharmas, and to dharmas that are both subjectively related and objectively related, employing the dharma-examining contemplation to those objective conditions.

Thus it is that he employs diligent and robust mindfulness and knowing awareness in ridding himself of desire and distress associated with the world.<sup>98</sup>

## b. THE FOUR RIGHT EFFORTS

Additionally, for the sake of not generating evil and unwholesome dharmas that have not yet arisen, this bodhisattva strives to bring forth diligently applied vigor and resolves to cut off their arising.

For the sake of severing already arisen evil and unwholesome dharmas, he strives to bring forth diligently applied vigor and resolves to cut them off.

For the sake of generating good dharmas not yet arisen, he strives to bring forth diligently applied vigor and resolves to proceed with their right practice.

And for the sake of ensuring that already-arisen good dhar-  
mas will continue and not be lost, and also in order to cultivate,  
increase and broaden them, he strives to bring forth diligently  
applied vigor and resolves to engage in right practice.<sup>99</sup>

c. THE FOUR BASES OF PSYCHIC POWER

Additionally, this bodhisattva cultivates the severance prac-  
tice associated with zeal-based concentration, this in order to  
completely establish the spiritual powers, doing so based upon  
detachment, based upon dispassion, based upon cessation, and  
directed toward relinquishment.<sup>100</sup> He also cultivates the sever-  
ance practices associated with vigor-based concentration, associ-  
ated with mind-based concentration, and associated with contem-  
plation-based concentration, this in order to completely establish  
the spiritual powers, doing so based upon detachment, based  
upon dispassion, based upon cessation, and directed toward  
relinquishment.<sup>101</sup>

d. THE FIVE ROOTS

Additionally, this bodhisattva cultivates the root-faculty of faith,  
doing so based upon detachment, based upon dispassion, based  
upon cessation, and directed toward relinquishment, cultivates  
too the root-faculty of vigor, the root-faculty of mindfulness, the  
root-faculty of concentration, and the root-faculty of wisdom, in  
all cases doing so based upon detachment, based upon dispassion,  
based upon cessation, and directed toward relinquishment.<sup>102</sup>

e. THE FIVE POWERS

Additionally, this bodhisattva cultivates the power of faith, doing  
so based upon detachment, based upon dispassion, based upon  
cessation, and directed toward relinquishment, cultivates the  
power of vigor, the power of mindfulness, the power of concen-  
tration, and the power of wisdom, doing so based upon detach-  
ment, based upon dispassion, based upon cessation, and directed  
toward relinquishment.<sup>103</sup>

f. THE SEVEN LIMBS OF ENLIGHTENMENT

Additionally, this bodhisattva cultivates the mindfulness limb of  
enlightenment, doing so based upon detachment, based upon dis-  
passion, based upon cessation, and directed toward relinquish-  
ment, cultivates the dharma-differentiation limb of enlighten-  
ment, the vigor limb of enlightenment, the joyfulness limb of enlighten-  
ment, the pliancy limb of enlightenment, the concentration limb  
of enlightenment, and the equanimity limb of enlightenment,

doing so based upon detachment, based upon dispassion, based upon cessation, and directed toward relinquishment.<sup>104</sup>

g. THE EIGHTFOLD PATH

Additionally, this bodhisattva cultivates right views, doing so based upon detachment, based upon dispassion, based upon cessation, and directed toward relinquishment. So too, he cultivates right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right concentration, doing so based upon detachment, based upon dispassion, based upon cessation, and directed toward relinquishment.<sup>105</sup>

h. THE BODHISATTVA'S TEN AIMS IN PRACTICING THE 37 FACTORS

{D} The bodhisattva cultivates such meritorious qualities as these, engaging in such cultivation:

- In order to refrain from forsaking all beings;
- In order to be sustained by his original vows;
- In order to make the great compassion foremost;
- In order to perfect the great kindness;
- In order to reflect upon and bear in mind the cognition of all-knowledge;
- In order to completely accomplish the adornment of buddha lands;
- In order to completely realize the Tathāgata's powers, fearlessnesses, dharmas exclusive to the Buddhas, major marks, subsidiary signs, and voice;
- In order to further his quest to acquire the most especially supreme path;<sup>106</sup>
- In order to accord with what he has learned regarding the extremely profound liberation of the Buddha;
- And in order to reflect upon greatly wise and good skillful means.

6. THE BODHISATTVA'S LEAVING OF WRONG VIEWS, ATTACHMENTS, AND ACTIONS

{E} Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva dwelling on the Ground of Blazing Brilliance, taking the view imputing the existence of a self associated with the body as chief among them, abandons all attachments that might be generated, including attachments to the existence of a self, to a person, to beings, to a lifespan, to the aggregates, to the sense realms, and to the sense bases, doing so because they arise and disappear in reliance on conceptual thought, because they are sustained through discursive thought, because they are but subsidiary to a self, because they are but its

material possessions, and because they are but points of attachment. He entirely abandons them all.

(F) Whenever this bodhisattva sees that particular karmic actions have been censured by the Tathāgata as defiled by the afflictions, he abandons all of them. Whenever he sees that particular karmic actions accord with the bodhisattva path and have been praised by the Tathāgata, he cultivates all of them.<sup>107</sup>

#### 7. MENTAL AND PERSONAL QUALITIES GAINED IN PATH CULTIVATION

(G) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva cultivates the path and the provisions assisting realization of the path<sup>108</sup> in a manner that befits the skillful means and wisdom he has developed. Proceeding in this manner, he thus acquires:<sup>109</sup>

The harmoniously smooth mind;  
 The gentle mind;  
 The congenially adaptive mind;  
 The mind that benefits and provides happiness to others;  
 The mind unmixed with defilement;  
 The mind that seeks ever more superior dharmas;  
 The mind that seeks especially supreme wisdom;  
 The mind that seeks to rescue everyone in the world;  
 The mind that respects those of venerable virtue and does not go against their teaching instructions;  
 And the mind that thoroughly cultivates in accordance with the Dharma one has learned.

(H) This bodhisattva:<sup>110</sup>

Acknowledges kindnesses received;  
 Knows to repay kindnesses;  
 Has a mind that is extremely harmonious and good;  
 Dwells happily together with others;  
 Is endowed with a character that is straight-minded;  
 Is gentle and pliant;  
 Is free of behavior influenced by the dense forest [of afflictions];  
 Is free of arrogance;  
 Is one who skillfully accepts instruction;  
 And is one who well understands the intentions of those whose speech he hears.

It is in this way that this bodhisattva's patience becomes completely developed, in this way that his pliancy becomes completely developed, and in this way that his quiescence becomes completely developed. Having thus acquired completely developed patience,



pliancy, and quiescence, he then purifies his karmic actions on the subsequent grounds.

8. THE BODHISATTVA'S ACQUISITION OF TEN KINDS OF VIGOR

(j) At this time, as he proceeds with well-considered cultivation, he acquires:<sup>111</sup>

Unresting vigor;  
 Vigor unmixed with defiling factors;  
 Non-retreating vigor;  
 Vast vigor;  
 Boundless vigor;  
 Blazing vigor;  
 Matchless vigor;  
 Invincible vigor;  
 Vigor aimed at maturing all beings;  
 And vigor that is well able to distinguish what is and is not the path.

9. OTHER QUALITIES DEVELOPED IN THE BODHISATTVA'S 4TH GROUND PRACTICE

(j) This bodhisattva's aspirations have become purified, his resolute intentions never wane, his awakened convictions are brilliant and sharp, and his roots of goodness increase.<sup>112</sup> He abandons the world's defiling turbidities, cuts off all doubts and uncertainties, achieves perfected clarity in severance, and is filled with delight. He is one of whom the Buddhas are protectively mindful and his resolute intentions in relation to the immeasurable minds have become fully developed.<sup>113</sup>

10. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS

(k) Son of the Buddha, due to the power of his vows, the bodhisattva dwelling on this Ground of Blazing Brilliance is able to see many buddhas. That is to say that he can see many hundreds of buddhas, can see many hundreds of thousands of buddhas, and so forth until we come to his seeing of many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddhas, all of whom he reveres, venerates, and serves, presenting offerings to them of robes, bedding, food and drink, medicines, and all amenities supporting their existence, offering up all of these things while also making offerings to those in all their sangha assemblies, proceeding then to dedicate the merit associated with these roots of goodness to *anuttarasamyaksambodhi*.

So too does he then respectfully listen to the teachings on Dharma in the presence of those buddhas. Having heard these

teachings, he takes them on, upholds them in practice, and entirely perfects their cultivation. Furthermore, during the Dharma reign of those buddhas, he leaves behind the home life to cultivate the path.

11. THE BODHISATTVA'S PURIFICATION & ITS COMPARISON TO REFINING GOLD

He also purifies his resolute intentions and resolute faith<sup>114</sup> as he passes through countless hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas wherein he causes his roots of goodness to shine ever more brightly in their purity.

Son of the Buddha, this is analogous to a goldsmith's refining of real gold to create objects of adornment unmatched in their perfection by anything made from other grades of gold. So too it is with this bodhisattva *mahāsattva*. When he dwells on this ground, all of his roots of goodness are such that none of the roots of goodness of those on lower grounds could ever match them.

12. THE RADIANCE OF THIS BODHISATTVA'S ROOTS LIKE THAT OF A MAṆI JEWEL

This circumstance is analogous to a *maṇi* jewel's orb of pure radiant light that is able to emit radiance of the sort that no other jewel's radiance can even approach, radiance that not even the conditions of wind, rain, and so forth are able to ruin. So, too, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* dwelling on this ground cannot be matched by any of the lower ground bodhisattvas, for he cannot be destroyed by any of the many sorts of *māras* or afflictions.

13. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF MEANS OF ATTRACTION AND PĀRAMITĀS

Among the four means of attraction, this bodhisattva most extensively devotes his practice to "joint endeavors," while, among the ten *pāramitās*, he most extensively practices the perfection of vigor. It is not that he does not practice the others. Rather, he simply accords them an amount of emphasis corresponding to his own strengths and to what is fitting.

14. VAJRAGARBHĀ'S STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 4TH GROUND BODHISATTVA

Sons of the Buddha, this has been a concise explanation of the bodhisattva *mahāsattva*'s fourth ground, the Ground of Blazing Brilliance.

a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE

The bodhisattva dwelling on this ground often becomes the heavenly king *Suyāma* in which capacity he is equipped with skillful means by which he can influence beings to rid themselves of the view imputing the existence of a real self in association with the

body<sup>115</sup> and other such delusions, thereby causing them to abide in right views.

b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS

In his practice of giving, pleasing words, beneficial actions, and joint endeavors and all other such works that he pursues, he never departs from mindfulness of the Buddha, never departs from mindfulness of the Dharma, never departs from mindfulness of the Sangha, and so forth until we come to his never departing from mindfulness of his quest to achieve complete fulfillment of the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.

c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS

He also has this thought: "I should become one who serves these beings as a leader, as one who is supreme, as one who is most especially supreme, as one who is marvelous, as one who is most subtly marvelous, as one who is excellent, as one who is unexcelled," and so forth until we come to "as one who relies on the cognition of all-knowledge."

d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS

If this bodhisattva brings forth diligently vigorous practice, then, in but a moment, he will become able to enter a *koṭi* of samādhis, will be able to see a *koṭi* of buddhas, will become aware of the spiritual powers as exercised by a *koṭi* of buddhas, will be able to cause tremors in a *koṭi* of worlds, and so forth until we come to his being able to manifest a *koṭi* of bodies wherein each and every one of those bodies will itself become able to manifest a *koṭi* of bodhisattvas serving in his retinue. If he resorts to the power of the especially supreme vows of the bodhisattva, he will become freely able to bring forth manifestations beyond this number such that one would never be able to count them even in a period of a hundred kalpas, a thousand kalpas, and so forth until we come to a hundred thousand *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas.

15. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, wishing to once again proclaim the meaning of his discourse, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

"The bodhisattva who has already purified the third ground next contemplates beings, the worlds, the Dharma realm, the realms of empty space and consciousness, the three realms, intentions, and convictions. Fathoming these, he is able to enter.<sup>116</sup> [7]

On first ascending to the flaming ground, as he increases in strength, he is born into the Tathāgatas' clan through never-retreating resolve, indestructible faith in the Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha, contemplating dharmas as impermanent and unproduced, (8)

contemplating worlds' rise and fall, karma as the basis for birth, *saṃsāra* and *nirvāṇa*, the karma associated with lands and such, contemplating past and future, and also contemplating destruction. Through just such cultivation as this, he is born in Buddha's clan.<sup>117</sup> (9)

After acquiring these dharmas, his kindly sympathy increases, he redoubles diligent cultivation of the four stations of mindfulness and their inward and outward contemplation of body, feelings, mind, and dharmas, thus expelling and banishing all worldly desires. (10)

The bodhisattva cultivates the four right efforts by which bad dharmas are extinguished and good dharmas are increased. Psychic power bases, faculties, and powers are all well cultivated. So too it is with the seven limbs of bodhi and the eightfold path.<sup>118</sup> (11)

He cultivates those practices in order to liberate beings, to be guarded by original vows, to perfect kindness, to make compassion foremost, to aid his quest for all-knowledge and adornment of buddha lands, and also to bear in mind acquisition of the Tathāgata's ten powers, (12)

four fearlessnesses, the dharmas exclusive to the Buddhas, their special major marks, subsidiary signs, and fine voice.

He also cultivates those practices to pursue his quest for the sublime path's stations of liberation and great skillful means.<sup>119</sup> (13)

As for seeing a self related to the body, chief of the sixty-two views that include conceiving of a self, its possessions, and countless other attachments to aggregates, sense realms, sense bases, and such, he abandons all of these on this fourth ground. (14)

Because they are meaningless and unbeneficial, he cuts off all affliction-ridden actions censured by the Tathāgata, while, of the pure karmic actions cultivated by the wise, there are none he fails to implement in order to liberate beings. (15)

The bodhisattva, assiduous in cultivating, refrains from indolence, straightaway achieves perfect fulfillment of ten types of mind, focuses intently on tirelessly pursuing the path to buddhahood, is resolute in aspiring to receive the consecration and liberate beings, (16)

respectfully follows cultivation dharmas of the venerably virtuous, acknowledges kindness, is easily taught, is free of enmity or temper, forsakes pride, abandons flattery, has a subdued and pliant mind, and increases in energetic diligence that then never retreats. (17)

As for the bodhisattva dwelling on this Ground of Blazing Brilliance, his intentions are purified and never are lost.

His awakened convictions are definite, his goodness increases, and he entirely abandons the net of doubts and all defiling turbidity. (18)

The bodhisattva on this ground, the most supreme of all men, makes offerings to countless *nayutas* of buddhas, listens to their right Dharma teaching, leaves the home life, becomes impossible to impede, and becomes like real gold. (19)

The bodhisattva abiding herein is replete with meritorious qualities. He employs knowledge and skillful means in cultivating the path. His resolve cannot be turned back by the many sorts of *māras*. In this he becomes like a marvelous jewel that no one can ruin. (20)

One abiding herein often becomes *Suyāma*, a king of the devas who, masterfully adept in all dharmas and revered by the multitudes, everywhere teaches all types of beings to be rid of wrong views and focuses on seeking Buddha's knowledge and cultivating good karma. (21)

This bodhisattva who is diligent in applying the power of vigor acquires *samādhis* and other achievements, each a *koṭi* in number, and, if he avails himself of the power of vows and knowledge, his acts go beyond this number and exceed even the range of knowability. (22)

Thus it is that the sublime path of the bodhisattva's fourth ground, pure in its practices and mutually consistent with the meritorious qualities, meaning, and knowledge, has been explained by me for the Sons of the Buddha." (23)

## PART FIVE

### The Difficult-to-Conquer Ground

#### E. THE FIFTH GROUND: THE DIFFICULT-TO-CONQUER GROUND

##### 1. THE FIFTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST

On hearing of this ground's supreme practices,  
the bodhisattvas awakened to this Dharma with joyous minds.  
Blossoms rained down from the sky and praises resounded, saying:  
"This is good indeed, O Great Eminence, Vajragarbha." (1)

The Vaśavartin Deva King and his celestial host,  
having heard this Dharma teaching, leapt up, stood in space,  
and everywhere released all sorts of marvelous light clouds  
as offerings to the Tathāgata, and everyone was filled with joy. (2)

The celestial nymphs played heavenly music,  
sang songs in praise of the Buddha,  
and then, through the awesome spiritual power of the Bodhisattva,  
from amidst the sounds of their voices, they uttered these words: (3)

"The Buddha's vows, made so long ago, are now fulfilled.  
The path of the Buddha, so long in its course, is now realized.  
Śākyamuni Buddha has arrived at the celestial palace where  
he who benefits both devas and humans, after so long, is now seen. (4)

"The Great Sea, so ancient and vast, for the first time, now moves.  
The Buddha's light, so ancient and far-reaching, now shines forth.  
Beings, after a long and distant past, for the first time, are happy.  
The voice of the great compassion, after so long, is now heard. (5)

"[After such a long time, the Great Muni is now met.]  
The far shore of all perfected qualities has been reached.  
The darkness of all arrogance and pride has been dispelled  
[The Great Śramaṇa, worthy of reverence, is revered.] (6)<sup>120</sup>

"He who is possessed of utmost purity, like empty space,  
undefiled by worldly dharmas, comparable to a lotus blossom,  
the Great Muni, the Honored One, appears here in this world,  
like Mount Sumeru rising up from the midst of the great ocean. (8)

"By making offerings to him, one becomes able to end all suffering.  
By making offerings, one certainly acquires the Buddhas' knowledge.  
In this place of one worthy of offerings, we offer to one without peer.  
Hence, with delighted minds, we present offerings to the Buddha." (7)

After these countless daughters of the devas  
had sung these phrases in praise,  
everyone there was moved to reverence and was filled with joy.  
They then gazed up at the Tathāgata who dwelt there in silence. (9)

At this time, the great eminence, Liberation Moon,  
again presented a request to the fearless one, Vajragarbha,  
“We only pray, O Son of the Buddha, that you will explain for us  
the practices and characteristic aspects of the fifth ground.” (10)

2. VAJRAGARBHA BEGINS THE FIFTH GROUND’S EXPLANATION

(A) At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva informed Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, saying:

3. TEN IMPARTIAL RESOLUTE INTENTIONS ENABLING 5TH GROUND ACCESS

O Son of the Buddha. The bodhisattva *mahāsattva* who has already thoroughly and perfectly fulfilled the path of the fourth ground’s practices and then wishes to enter the fifth ground, the “difficult-to-conquer” ground, should progress into it through the practice of ten kinds of equally regarding pure resolute intentions.<sup>121</sup> What then are these ten? They are:

Equally regarding pure resolute intentions toward the Dharma  
of the buddhas of the past;

Equally regarding pure resolute intentions toward the Dharma  
of the buddhas of the future;

Equally regarding pure resolute intentions toward the Dharma  
of the buddhas of the present;

Equally regarding pure resolute intentions toward the moral  
precepts;

Equally regarding pure resolute intentions toward the mind;<sup>122</sup>

Equally regarding pure resolute intentions toward ridding him-  
self of views, doubts, and regretfulness;

Equally regarding pure resolute intentions toward the knowl-  
edge of what is the path and what is not the path;

Equally regarding pure resolute intentions toward the knowl-  
edge and vision associated with cultivating the practices;

Equally regarding pure resolute intentions toward ever more  
superior contemplations of all the dharmas constituting the  
limbs of bodhi;

And equally regarding pure resolute intentions toward teach-  
ing all beings.

The bodhisattva *mahāsattva* employs these ten types of equally regarding pure resolute intentions to achieve entry into the fifth bodhisattva ground.

## 4. THE BODHISATTVA'S BASES FOR THE IRREVERSIBLE BODHI RESOLVE

(B) Son of the Buddha, once the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* has come to dwell on this fifth ground, then:

Due to thoroughly cultivating the dharmas of the limbs of bodhi;

Due to thoroughly purifying the resolute intentions;<sup>123</sup>

Due to further redoubled efforts in seeking the most supreme stations on the path;

Due to according with true suchness,

Due to being sustained by the power of vows;

Due to never relinquishing kindness and pity for all beings;

Due to accumulating the merit and knowledge constituting the provisions for realization of the path;

Due to energetic and ceaseless diligence in cultivation,

Due to bringing forth skillful means;

Due to contemplating and illuminating ever higher grounds;

Due to being guarded by the Tathāgata's protective mindfulness;

And due to being sustained by the power of mindfulness and wisdom,

He then acquires the irreversible resolve.

## 5. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE TRUTHS

(C) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* knows in accordance with reality: "This is the Āryas' truth of suffering, this is the Āryas' truth of the accumulation of suffering, this is the Āryas' truth of the cessation of suffering, and this is the Āryas' truth of the path to the cessation of suffering." He:

Knows well the conventional truth;<sup>124</sup>

Knows well the truth of the supreme meaning;<sup>125</sup>

Knows well the truth of characteristic signs;<sup>126</sup>

Knows well the truth of differentiating distinctions;<sup>127</sup>

Knows well the truth of establishment;<sup>128</sup>

Knows well the truth of phenomena;<sup>129</sup>

Knows well the truth of production;<sup>130</sup>

Knows well the truth of cessation with no further production;<sup>131</sup>

Knows well the truth of the knowledge associated with entering the path;<sup>132</sup>

Knows well the truth of the sequential and complete cultivation of all bodhisattva grounds, and so forth on up to his knowing well the truth associated with the complete cultivation of the Tathāgata's knowledge.<sup>133</sup>



This bodhisattva:

- Knows the conventional truth through adapting to beings' mental dispositions and thereby causing them to be delighted,<sup>134</sup>
- Knows the truth of the supreme meaning through achieving a penetrating comprehension of the one true character of all phenomena,<sup>135</sup>
- Knows the truth of characteristic signs through comprehending the individual and shared characteristics of dharmas;<sup>136</sup>
- Knows the truth of differentiating distinctions through completely comprehending the distinctions in dharmas' categorical differences,<sup>137</sup>
- Knows the truth of establishment through skillfully distinguishing the aggregates, sense realms, and sense bases,<sup>138</sup>
- Knows the truth of phenomena through being aware of the suffering and anguish inherent in body and mind,<sup>139</sup>
- Knows the truth of production through being aware of the factors involved in the continuity of rebirths within the rebirth destinies,<sup>140</sup>
- Knows the truth of complete cessation with no further production through the ultimate extinguishing of all inflaming afflictions;<sup>141</sup>
- Knows the truth of the knowledge associated with entering the path through bringing forth the realization of non-duality;<sup>142</sup>
- And knows well the truth of the sequential and continuous complete cultivation of all bodhisattva grounds on up to and including the complete cultivation of the Tathāgata's knowledge, accomplishing this through having become rightly aware of all aspects of the practices.<sup>143</sup>

It is through the power of knowledge associated with resolute faith<sup>144</sup> that he knows this, for this is not yet a case of knowing accomplished through the power of ultimately final knowledge.

#### 6. THE BODHISATTVA'S RESULTANT GENERATION OF COMPASSION & KINDNESS

(D) Son of the Buddha, after this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* has acquired the knowledge associated with these truths, he knows in accordance with reality that all conditioned dharmas are false and deceptive and that they thereby delude the foolish common person. At this time, the bodhisattva increases even more his great compassion for beings and brings forth the light of the great kindness.

## 7. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONTEMPLATION OF CAUSALITY IN BEINGS' PLIGHT

(E) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* who has acquired such powers of knowledge never forsakes any being and always strives to acquire the Buddha's knowledge. He contemplates in accordance with reality all past and future conditioned actions and knows that it is from prior ignorance, existence, and craving that one therefore produces the flowing on and turning about in cyclic births and deaths wherein one is unable to move to escape the house of the aggregates and thus increases one's accumulation of suffering. He knows that there is no self, no entity possessed of a lifespan, no one who grows up, and no one who yet again repeatedly takes up bodies in subsequent rebirth destinies. He knows that this all occurs entirely apart from any self or anything possessed by a self and knows that, just as this has been the case in the past, so too does it continue to be so in the future, for, in every case, none of these exist at all. And he knows whether or not there is any complete cessation and escape to be had from this covetous attachment to what is empty and false. He knows all of these matters in accordance with reality.

(F) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* has this additional thought:

These common people, so deluded and devoid of wisdom, are so very pitiable. They have countless bodies that have already destroyed, are now being destroyed, and will be destroyed in the future. In this way, their bodies are all entirely destroyed and yet they are unable to bring forth any thought of renunciation toward the body, but rather instead ever increase the matters that are the mechanisms for producing suffering. Hence they flow along, following the current of births and deaths and remain unable to turn back against it.

They do not seek to escape from the house of the aggregates and never know to become concerned about or fear the poisonous snakes of the four great elements. They are unable to extricate the arrows of pride and views, are unable to extinguish the fires of desire, hatred, and delusion, are unable to destroy the darkness of ignorance, and are unable to dry up the great sea of desire. They do not seek to encounter the great *ārya* and guide who possesses the ten powers but instead enter the entangling thicket of resolute intentions influenced by *māras*.<sup>145</sup> They then become swept up and drowned in the crashing surf of ideation and mental discursion.<sup>146</sup>

(G) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* has yet another thought:

In their undergoing of such suffering, these beings are alone, poverty-stricken, and distressed by difficulties. They have no one to rescue them and no one to rely on. They are without an island, without a shelter, without a guide, and without eyes. They are covered over by ignorance, and enveloped in darkness. For the sake of all those beings, I shall now cultivate merit and knowledge, the dharmas constituting provisions for the path. In doing so, I bring forth this resolve alone, not seeking any companions in this. Utilizing such meritorious qualities, I shall influence beings to achieve the ultimate purification and continue in this until they acquire the Tathāgata's ten powers and unimpeded wisdom.

8. THE BODHISATTVA'S COMPASSIONATE DEDICATION OF ROOTS OF GOODNESS

(H) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* employing wisdom such as this, contemplates the roots of goodness that he cultivates as being dedicated entirely for the sake of:<sup>147</sup>

Rescuing and protecting all beings;  
 Benefiting all beings;  
 Bringing happiness to all beings;  
 Bringing forth sympathetic pity for all beings;  
 Bringing about the complete success of all beings;  
 Liberating all beings;  
 Drawing in all beings;  
 Causing all beings to abandon suffering and anguish;  
 Causing all beings everywhere to acquire purity;  
 Causing all beings to adopt the training;  
 And causing all beings to achieve entry into *parinirvāṇa*.

9. THE FIFTH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S QUALITIES AND THEIR BASES

(I) Son of the Buddha, regarding the bodhisattva dwelling on this fifth ground, the Difficult-to-Conquer Ground:

He is one who is mindful, for he never forgets any dharma;  
 He is one who is wise, for he is able to skillfully and resolutely bring forth complete understanding;  
 He is one who comprehends implications, for he realizes the purport of the ideas contained in the scriptures and understands their order and their connections;  
 He is one possessed of a sense of shame and a dread of blame, for he guards himself while also protecting others;

- He is one who is possessed of solidity, for he never abandons his practice of the moral precepts;
- He is one who is possessed of awakened awareness,<sup>148</sup> for he is able to assess what is and is not possessed of correct bases;
- He is one who accords with knowledge,<sup>149</sup> for he does not accord with anything aside from that;
- He is one who accords with wisdom,<sup>150</sup> for he knows well the distinctions between principled and unprincipled statements;
- He is one possessed of the spiritual superknowledges, for he skillfully cultivates the *dhyāna* absorptions;
- He is one possessed of skillful means, for he is able to adapt to the ways of the world;
- (j) He is one possessed of insatiability, for he pursues the thorough accumulation of merit,<sup>151</sup>
- He is one who is unresting, for he always seeks to acquire wisdom;<sup>152</sup>
- He is one who is tireless, for he accumulates great kindness and compassion,<sup>153</sup>
- He is one who pursues diligent cultivation on behalf of others, for he wishes to cause all beings to achieve entry into nirvāṇa;
- He is one who is possessed of unrelenting diligence in the pursuit of his quest, for he seeks the Tathāgata's powers, fearlessness, and dharmas exclusive to the Buddhas;
- He is one who is able to carry out whatever he decides to do, for he perfects the adornment of the buddha lands;
- He is one who diligently cultivates every sort of good karmic work, for he is able to completely fulfil [the bases for acquiring] the major marks and the subsidiary signs;
- He is one who always cultivates with diligence, for he seeks to acquire the physical, verbal, and mental qualities adorning the Buddha;
- He is one who greatly venerates and reveres the Dharma, for he practices in accordance with the teachings wherever all bodhisattva Dharma teachers reside;
- He is one possessed of unimpeded resolve, for he adopts great skillful means as he always implements his practice in the world;
- And he is one who, both day and night, abandons any other sorts of intentions, for he always delights in teaching all beings.

10. THE METHODS USED BY THE BODHISATTVA IN HIS TEACHING OF BEINGS

- (k) Son of the Buddha, as the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* diligently cultivates in this manner:

He uses giving in teaching beings;  
 He uses pleasing words, beneficial actions, and joint endeavors  
 in teaching beings;  
 He manifests form bodies in teaching beings;  
 He expounds on all dharmas in teaching beings;  
 He opens up and reveals the bodhisattva conduct in teaching  
 beings;  
 He displays the immensely awe-inspiring powers of the  
 Tathāgata in teaching beings;  
 He reveals the transgressions associated with *samsāra* in teach-  
 ing beings;  
 He praises the benefits of the Tathāgata's wisdom in teaching  
 beings;  
 He manifests the power of great spiritual superknowledges in  
 teaching beings;  
 And he uses all different sorts of practices involving skillful  
 means in teaching beings.

Son of the Buddha, even as the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* is able in this fashion to diligently employ skillful means in teaching beings, his mind constantly progresses toward the Buddha's wisdom. He never turns back in his creation of roots of goodness, but rather always diligently cultivates and trains in the most especially supreme practice dharmas.

#### 11. THE BODHISATTVA'S ADOPTION OF AN ARRAY OF MEANS TO BENEFIT BEINGS

(1) Son of the Buddha, in order to be of benefit to beings, there is no worldly skill or art that this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* does not comprehensively practice. In particular, this refers to writing, mathematical calculation, drawing, writing, printing, and all of the different sorts of treatises devoted to the elements of earth, water, fire, and wind, all of which he completely comprehends. He is also thoroughly skilled in medicinal prescriptions and the treatment of all diseases, including insanity, the wasting diseases, possession by ghosts, and poisoning at the hands of sorcerers, all of which he is able to dispel. He is thoroughly skilled in all such matters as literary compositions, praises, chants, singing, dance, musical performance, humor, and explanatory discussion.

He is also skilled in the placement and arrangement of states, cities, villages, palaces, homes, parks, gardens, springs, flowing waters, reservoirs, ponds, grasses, trees, flowers, and medicinal plants so that they each find their most appropriate location. He also knows the hidden locations of gold, silver, *maṇi* jewels, pearls,

lapis lazuli, conch shells, jade, coral, and other such things that he brings forth and reveals for others.

He is also skilled in the contemplative assessment of all such things as the sun, the moon and stars, the cries of birds, earthquakes, the auspicious or inauspicious significance of dreams, and the good and bad fortune associated with physical features, never erring even once in his judgment on these matters.

In order to benefit them and gradually influence them to become securely established in the unsurpassed Dharma of the Buddha, he thoroughly explains and reveals for beings such matters such as the observance of moral precepts, entry into the *dhyāna* absorptions, the spiritual superknowledges, the immeasurables, and the four formless absorptions as well as all other sorts of other matters having to do with the world. In this, his sole concern is that he never act in a manner harmful or distressing to beings.

#### 12. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS

{M} Son of the Buddha, due to the power of his vows, the bodhisattva dwelling on this Difficult-to-Conquer Ground becomes able to see many buddhas. Specifically, he becomes able to see many hundreds of buddhas, many thousands of buddhas, many hundreds of thousands of buddhas, and so forth until we come to his becoming able to see many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddhas, to all of whom he offers up his reverence, veneration, service, and offerings of robes, food and drink, bedding, medicines, and all amenities facilitating their lives and also makes offerings to all their Sangha assemblies. He dedicates all the merit associated with these roots of goodness to *anuttarasamyaksambodhi* and, wherever those buddhas dwell, he goes and reverently listens to their teachings on Dharma, whereupon, having heard them, he accepts and upholds those teachings and cultivates them in a manner befitting his powers to do so.

#### 13. THE BODHISATTVA'S PURIFICATION OF HIS ROOTS OF GOODNESS

Additionally, during the Dharma reign of those buddhas, he leaves the home life and, having left the home life, he listens to yet more teachings on Dharma, acquires *dhāraṇīs*, and becomes a master of the Dharma who, having heard the Dharma, upholds it and abides on this ground, passing through a hundred kalpas, passing through a thousand kalpas, and so forth up to the point that he even passes through countless hundreds of thousands of

*koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas during which all of his roots of goodness shine forth with ever increasing brightness.

14. GOOD ROOTS PURIFICATION LIKE REFINING GOLD & CELESTIAL PHENOMENA

Son of the Buddha, this is analogous to real gold that, as it is polished with *musāragalva*<sup>154</sup> to an ever more brilliant luster, shines forth with ever brighter purity. So too it is with all of the roots of goodness accumulated by this bodhisattva who dwells on this ground. As he employs his skillful means and wisdom in contemplative meditation, they shine forth with ever brighter purity.

Son of the Buddha, in the case of the bodhisattva who dwells on this Difficult-to-Conquer Ground, his use of skillful means and wisdom in perfecting meritorious qualities is such that the roots of goodness developed on lower grounds cannot even approach.

Son of the Buddha, this is just as with the sun, moon, stars, constellations, and the radiance of the celestial palaces wherein the wind-like forces supporting them are so irresistibly strong that none of the other winds could even slightly alter their course. So too it is with all the roots of goodness of the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground. Through his use of skillful means and wisdom in pursuing contemplative meditation, he becomes so invincible that he cannot be even slightly deflected from his path by anyone with only the roots of goodness of any *śrāvaka*-disciple, *pratyekabuddha*, or worldly being.

15. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE OF THE PĀRAMITĀS

Among the ten *pāramitās*, this bodhisattva most extensively practices the perfection of *dhyāna*. It is not that he does not practice the others. Rather, he simply accords them an amount of emphasis corresponding to his own strengths and to what is fitting.

16. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 5TH GROUND BODHISATTVA

Son of the Buddha, this has been a general explanation of the bodhisattva *mahāsattva*'s, fifth ground, the Difficult-to-Conquer Ground.

a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE

The bodhisattva dwelling on this ground often becomes a Tuṣita Heaven king, one who in his interactions with other beings is possessed of sovereign mastery in all that he does. He utterly defeats in debate all proponents of the wrong views set forth by non-Buddhist traditions and he is able to influence other beings to abide in the real truth.

## b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS

In his practice of giving, pleasing words, beneficial actions, joint endeavors, and all other such endeavors, he never departs from mindfulness of the Buddha, never departs from mindfulness of the Dharma, never departs from mindfulness of the Sangha, and so forth until we come to his never departing from mindfulness of his quest to achieve complete fulfillment of the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.

## c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS

He also has this thought: "I should become one who serves these beings as a leader, as one who is supreme, as one who is most especially supreme, as one who is marvelous, as one who is most subtly marvelous, as one who is excellent, as one who is unexcelled," and so forth until we come to "as one who relies on the cognition of all-knowledge."

## d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS

If this bodhisattva brings forth diligently vigorous practice, then, in but a moment, he will become able to enter a thousand *koṭis* of samādhis, will be able to see a thousand *koṭis* of buddhas, will become aware of the spiritual powers as exercised by a thousand *koṭis* of buddhas, will be able to cause tremors in a thousand *koṭis* of worlds, and so forth until we come to his being able to manifest a thousand *koṭis* of bodies wherein each and every one of those bodies will itself be able to manifest a thousand *koṭis* of bodhisattvas serving in his retinue.

If he resorts to the power of the especially supreme vows of the bodhisattva, he will become freely able to bring forth manifestations beyond this number, such that one would never be able to count them even in a period of a hundred kalpas, a thousand kalpas, and so forth until we come to a hundred thousand *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas.

## 17. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, wishing to once again proclaim the meaning of his discourse, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

The bodhisattva who has achieved the fourth ground's purification with equal dispositions contemplates the buddhas of the three times, precepts, the mind, riddance of doubt, what is and is not the path, and, through such contemplations, enters the fifth ground. (11)



With stations of mindfulness as bow, sharpness of roots as arrows, the right efforts as steed, the bases of psychic powers as his chariot, and the five powers as sturdy shield, he crushes hostile adversaries, and, with unretreating heroic valor, he enters the fifth ground. (12)

With senses of shame and blame as robes, limbs of bodhi as garland, pure moral precepts as incense, *dhyāna* meditation as perfume, wisdom and skillful means as marvelous adornments, he enters the *dhāraṇī* forest and the samādhi gardens. (13)

With psychic powers as his feet, right mindfulness as his neck, kindness and compassion as his eyes, and wisdom as his teeth, with the roar of “non-self,” the lion among men crushes the affliction adversaries, and then enters the fifth ground. (14)

The bodhisattva dwelling on this fifth ground increases cultivation of the most supremely pure path, is irreversible in his determined quest for the Buddha’s Dharma, and tireless in contemplative mindfulness of kindness and compassion. (15)

He gathers the supreme qualities of merit and wisdom, possesses energetic diligence and skillful means, contemplates higher grounds, is aided by Buddha’s powers, embodies mindfulness and wisdom, and utterly knows all four truths in accordance with reality. (16)

He knows well worldly truth, the truth of the supreme meaning, the truths of characteristic signs, distinctions, and establishment, the truths of phenomena, production, cessation, the path, and so on up to the truth of what, for the Tathāgata, is unimpeded.<sup>155</sup> (17)

Although such contemplation of truths is subtle and marvelous, he has not yet realized the unimpeded supreme liberation.

In this way, he is able to generate great meritorious qualities and therefore steps entirely beyond the sphere of worldly wisdom. (18)

Having contemplated these truths, he realizes conditioned existence, by its very nature, is false, deceptive, and devoid of solid reality.

He acquires the Buddha’s radiant aspects of kindness and pity, and seeks Buddha’s knowledge in order to benefit beings. (19)

He contemplates prior and later periods in conditioned existence as beset by the darkness of ignorance and bound by bonds of craving by which one flows onward cyclically, abiding in a mass of suffering, wherein there is no self, no person, and no entity with a lifespan. (20)

Craving and grasping are causes of their receiving future suffering that, if one wished to seek its end, one could never find it.

“Confused by the false, they float on, never going against the flow. Beings such as these are so pitiable. I should see to their liberation.” (21)

In the house of aggregates, snakes of sense realms, arrows of views,  
the mind's flames blaze fiercely and delusion's darkness is heavy.  
They drift and swirl in love's river with no leisure to contemplate it,  
and, bereft of a brilliant guide, sink in the sea of suffering's waters. (22)

Having realized such things as these, he becomes diligent in vigor  
and dedicates all of his actions to the liberation of beings.  
He becomes one possessed of mindfulness, possessed of wisdom,  
and so on up to his becoming one aware of the means of liberation. (23)

He is insatiable in his cultivation of merit and wisdom,  
tireless in his reverence for extensive learning,  
and pursues adornment of all lands, the major marks, and the signs.  
All such deeds are done for the sake of beings. (24)

For the sake of teaching everyone in the world,  
he knows well methods of writing, mathematics, printing and such,  
also well understands medicinal prescriptions  
and the treatment of the many diseases, all of which he can cure, (25)  
is marvelously skilled in all literary composition, songs, and dance,  
assists secure placement of all palaces, homes, parks, and ponds,  
shows others all locations of hidden jewels of not just a single sort,  
and does all of this for the sake of benefiting countless beings. (26)

He interprets the omens of the sun, moon, stars, earthquakes,  
and other such things, including even people's physical features,  
and, in order to be of benefit to the world, reveals for them the  
four *dhyānas*, formless absorptions, and spiritual superknowledges. (27)

Those wise ones who dwell on this Difficult-to-Conquer Ground  
make offerings to *nayutas* of buddhas and listen to their Dharma.  
Hence, just as when one uses a marvelous jewel to polish real gold,<sup>156</sup>  
all of their roots of goodness shine ever more brightly in their purity. (28)

Just as the stars and constellations residing in space,  
supported by wind-like forces, are not shaken out of place,  
and just as the blooming lotus is not attached to its waters,  
so too does this great eminence travel along in the world. (29)

Dwelling herein, he often becomes a Tuṣita Heaven King,  
well able to utterly refute the wrong views of non-Buddhist paths.  
The goodness he cultivates is done to acquire the Buddha's wisdom  
and he vows to acquire the ten powers to thereby rescue beings. (30)

He redoubles his cultivation of great vigor  
and so straightaway makes offerings to a thousand *koṭis* of buddhas,  
gains absorptions and shakes lands just as numerous as they are,  
and, through power of vows, surpasses even such numbers as these. (31)

Thus it is that, using the power of all different sorts of skillful means, this Difficult-to-Conquer Ground, the fifth ground within the most supreme and genuine of all paths for humans, has been explained by me for the Sons of the Buddha. {32}



## PART SIX

### The Direct Presence Ground

#### F. THE SIXTH GROUND: THE DIRECT PRESENCE GROUND

##### 1. THE SIXTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST

Having heard this teaching of supreme practices, the bodhisattvas' minds were filled with joy, they rained down marvelous blossoms, emanated pure light, sprinkled down precious jewels as offerings to the Tathāgata, and praised his excellent discourse. (1)

A hundred thousand assembled devas, full of celebratory delight, at once scattered down from space the many jewels as offerings, together with floral garlands, strands of pearls, banners, jeweled canopies, and perfumes, all offered there to the Buddha. (2)

The Vaśavartin Heaven King, together with his retinue, all with minds filled with joyous delight, stood above in space, scattered jewels forming a cloud holding their offerings, praised him, and said, "O Buddha's Son, may you soon proclaim this teaching." (3)

Countless celestial nymphs residing above in space together made offerings of music and song in praise of the Buddha wherein one heard amidst their voicings such words as these: "The Buddha's discourse can expel the disease of the afflictions. (4)

The nature of dharmas is originally quiescent, devoid of all signs, and like empty space in that one makes no discriminations therein. It transcends all attachments, reaches beyond the path of words, and is genuine, uniformly equal, and eternally pure. (5)

If one can completely comprehend the nature of dharmas, his mind is unmoved by what exists or by what does not exist as he cultivates diligently to rescue the inhabitants of the world. This is a true son of the Buddha, born from the Buddha's mouth. (6)

He does not seize on the various marks in his practicing of giving, fundamentally cuts off all evil, and solidly upholds the precepts. Knowing the Dharma, he is thus free of harming and always patient. Knowing dharmas as by nature transcendent,<sup>157</sup> he is perfect in vigor. (7)

Having ended the afflictions, he enters the *dhyānas*, and, in making distinctions about dharmas, knows well they are devoid of a nature. Replete in wisdom power, he is able to extensively rescue beings and, being rid of the many evils, he gains renown as a great eminence." (8)

Having used such marvelous voices of a thousand myriad sorts in offering praises, they then fell silent and gazed up at the Buddha. (9) Liberation Moon then set forth the request to Vajragarbha, "Through which practice attributes does one enter the next ground?" (10)

## 2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE SIXTH GROUND'S EXPLANATION

(A) Vajragarbha Bodhisattva then informed Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, saying:

### 3. THE TEN DHARMAS OF IDENTITY ENABLING ACCESS TO THE SIXTH GROUND

O Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* who has already completely fulfilled the fifth ground's practices and then aspires to enter the sixth ground, the Ground of Direct Presence, should then take up the contemplation of ten dharmas of identity.<sup>158</sup> What then are those ten? As follows, all dharmas:<sup>159</sup>

- Are the same due to their signlessness;
- Are the same due to their non-substantiality;
- Are the same due to their being unproduced;
- Are the same due to their being unborn;
- Are the same due to their original purity;
- Are the same due to their being beyond frivolous intellectual ideation;
- Are the same due to their being beyond either grasping or relinquishing;
- Are the same due to their quiescence.
- Are the same due to their being like a conjured illusion, like a dream, like a shadow, like an echo, like the moon reflected on water, like an image in a mirror, like a mirage, and like a magical transformation;<sup>160</sup>
- And are the same due to the non-duality in their existence and non-existence.

### 4. SIXTH GROUND ENTRY, ACQUIESCENT PATIENCE & PRIMACY OF COMPASSION

The bodhisattva who contemplates all dharmas in this way realizes their nature is pure and practices in a manner that is consistent with this and that is free of anything that contradicts this. He thereby succeeds in entering the sixth ground, the Ground of Direct Presence, and acquires the acquiescent patience characterized by clarity and acuity.<sup>161</sup> Even so, he has not yet reached the realization of the unproduced-dharmas patience.

(B) Son of the Buddha, once this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* has come to contemplate in this manner, he then additionally takes the great compassion as what is foremost, the great compassion as what is to

be made predominant, and the great compassion as what is to be brought to complete fulfillment.

5. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONTEMPLATION OF CAUSALITY IN CYCLIC EXISTENCE<sup>162</sup>

(c) He contemplates production and extinction as it takes place in the world, thinking, "Taking on rebirth in the world in every case arises through attachment to a self. Were one to abandon this attachment, then there would no longer be any basis for being reborn."

a. CONTEMPLATION OF THE SEQUENTIAL CONTINUITY OF THE CAUSAL FACTORS

He additionally thinks:<sup>163</sup>

Common people, so unknowing, are attached to a self, always seek existence or non-existence, engage in wrong thought, pursue falsely-based actions, and follow erroneous paths wherein they accumulate and increase offense-generating actions, merit-generating actions, or imperturbable actions.<sup>164</sup> Through all courses of actions, they plant mental seeds associated with the contaminants and with the *grasping* that further precipitates subsequent *becoming*, *birth*, *aging*, and *death*. This is a circumstance said to be one wherein one's karmic *volitional actions* serve as a field, one's *consciousness* serves as seeds, *ignorance* keeps them covered in darkness, the water of *cravings* moistens them, and pride in oneself irrigates them.

As the net of views grows, the sprout of *name-and-form* is produced. As *name-and-form* develop, the five physical sense faculties are formed. With the oppositional impingement [of sense objects] on the sense faculties, *contact* is produced. This impingement-generated *contact* produces *feeling*. Subsequent wishing for further *feeling* produces *craving*. Increased *craving* brings about *grasping*. An increase in *grasping* produces *becoming*. Having produced *becoming*, it is one's generating of the five-aggregate bodies as one courses in the various destinies that constitutes *birth*, the deterioration following upon *birth* that constitutes *aging*, and the culmination of this process in mortality that brings about *death*. When *aging* and *death* arrive, one is seized by intense mental torment and, on account of this intense mental torment, one is then beset by distress, worry, sorrowful lamentation, and the accumulation of a multitude of sufferings.

Because this is all simply a product of causes and conditions, there is no entity for whom this accumulation takes place, and, even as this process proceeds on to destruction, there is still no existent entity that is destroyed, either.

The bodhisattva pursues just such an investigative contemplation of the characteristic features of causally-based origination.

b. THE BODHISATTVA CONTEMPLATES THE DEFINITIONS OF CAUSAL LINKS

(D) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* also thinks thus:

It is the failure to utterly comprehend the ultimate truth that defines *ignorance*.

It is the fruition of karmic actions one has done that constitutes *volitional actions*.

The initial mental factor dependent on *volitional actions* is what constitutes *consciousness*.

The additional four appropriated aggregates arising together with *consciousness* are what constitute *name-and-form*.

The development of *name-and-form* creates *the six sense bases*.

The conjunction of the three phenomena of *sense faculties*, *sense objects*, and *consciousnesses*, constitutes *contact*.

Arising simultaneously with *contact*, there exists *feeling*.

The forming of a defiled attachment for *feeling* is what constitutes *craving*.

Based on an increase in *craving*, *grasping* then occurs.

Those karmic actions associated with the contaminants that arise as a consequence of *grasping* are what constitute *becoming*.

The arising of the aggregates resulting from such karmic actions is what constitutes *birth*.

The progressive maturation of the aggregates is what constitutes *aging*.

When the aggregates perish, this is what constitutes *death*.

The confusion and fond attachment attendant on the separation occurring at the time of dying that then manifest as agitation and depression of the heart—this is what is meant by *worry*.

Weeping and sniveling attended by regretful sighing—this is what is meant by *lamentation*.

That which occurs based on the five physical sense faculties constitutes *pain*, whereas what occurs based on the intellectual mind faculty constitutes *distress*.

As distress and pain increase they result in *mental torment*.

In such circumstances as these, there is only a growing tree of suffering. There is no self in this, nothing belonging to a self, no agent of actions, and no entity undergoing experiences.

He has this additional thought: “If an agent of actions exists, then there exists an endeavor that is done. If no agent of actions exists, then there does not exist any endeavor that is done. From the perspective of ultimate truth, neither of them can even be found.”



## c. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONTEMPLATION OF MIND AS THE BASIS OF EXISTENCE

(E) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* has this additional thought:

Everything throughout the three realms of existence is only mind. (E) Where the Tathāgata has, within this, distinguished and expounded upon these twelve factors comprising the bases of existence, they in every case rely on a single thought and are established on just such a basis. How is this the case?

In accordance with particular circumstances, desire arises together with the mind. In this, the mind constitutes the *consciousness*, whereas the particular circumstances themselves constitute the basis of *volitional actions*. The confusion that exists regarding *volitional actions* constitutes *ignorance*. That which is produced from the cooperation of *ignorance* and the mind is *name-and-form*. That which develops from *name-and-form* is the *six sense bases*. The three-fold conjunction that occurs in association with the *six sense bases* constitutes *contact*. That which arises together with *contact* is *feeling*. Insatiability with respect to such *feeling* constitutes *craving*. *Craving* that becomes focused and is not relinquished culminates in *grasping*. That which all of these branches comprising existence produce is *becoming*. That which *becoming* brings forth is *birth*. The maturation of what has been born constitutes *aging*. The perishing brought on through *aging* is *death*.

## d. THE CONTEMPLATION OF 2 FUNCTIONS OF EACH CAUSAL CHAIN LINK

(G) Son of the Buddha, among these, *ignorance* has two types of karmic functions: First, it causes beings to be confused with respect to objective conditions. Second, it serves as a cause for the initiation of *volitional actions*.

*Volitional actions* also have two types of functions: First, they are capable of generating future retributions. Second, they serve as causes for the initiation of *consciousness*.

*Consciousness* also has two types of functions: First, it causes continuity of *becoming*. Second, it serves as a cause for the initiation of *name-and-form*.

*Name-and-form* also have two types of functions: First, they are mutually cooperative in their establishment. Second, they serve as the cause for the initiation of the *six sense bases*.

The *six sense bases* also have two types of functions: First, each of them clings to its own respective objective sense realm. Second, they serve as the cause for the initiation of *contact*.

*Contact* also has two types of functions: First, it is capable of touching its objective condition. Second, it serves as the cause for the initiation of *feeling*.

*Feeling* also has two types of functions: First it is capable of serving as the recipient of experiences that are craved, detested, and so forth. Second, it serves as the cause for the initiation of *craving*.

*Craving* also has two types of functions: First, it consists of a defiled attachment to whatsoever circumstances are deemed desirable. Second, it serves as the cause for the initiation of *grasping*.

*Grasping* also has two types of functions: First, it causes continuity of the afflictions. Second, it serves as the cause for the initiation of *becoming*.

*Becoming* also has two types of functions. First, it is capable of causing rebirth into the other destinies. Second, it serves as the cause for the initiation of *birth*.

*Birth* also has two types of functions. First, it is able to generate the aggregates. Second, it serves as the cause for the initiation of *aging*.

*Aging* also has two types of functions. First, it causes all of the sense faculties to undergo change. Second, it serves as the cause for the onset of *death*.

*Death* also has two types of functions. First, it is capable of destroying all actions. Second, because there is then no conscious awareness, it allows this process to continue on and not be cut off.

e. THE CONTEMPLATION OF CAUSAL CHAIN PRODUCTION AND DESTRUCTION

{H} Son of the Buddha, in this circumstance wherein *ignorance* serves as a condition for *volitional actions*, and so on till we have *birth* serving as a condition for *aging-and-death*, it is because *ignorance* and so on up to *birth* serve as conditions that there then occurs the causation of *volitional actions* and so on up to *aging-and-death*. This occurs on account of [the prior conditions'] ceaseless facilitation of the establishment [of the subsequent conditions].

f. CONTEMPLATION OF THE 12 LINKS' ASSOCIATION WITH INSEPARABILITY.

In the circumstances wherein, "if *ignorance* is extinguished, then *volitional actions* will be extinguished," and so forth until we come to "if *birth* is extinguished, then *aging-and-death* will be extinguished," this occurs because, in those circumstances, *ignorance* and so forth on up to *birth*, do not then any longer serve as conditions causing the initiation of *volitional actions* and so on up to

*aging-and-death*. This extinguishing through severance occurs because there no longer occurs the [prior condition's] facilitating establishment [of the subsequent condition].

g. THE TWELVE LINKS AS CONSTITUENTS OF THREE PATHS

(i) Son of the Buddha, among these, ceaseless *ignorance*, *craving*, and *grasping* constitute *the path of the afflictions*. Ceaseless *volitional actions* and *becoming* constitute *the path of karmic actions*. The ceaseless occurrence of the remaining factors constitutes *the path of suffering*. Analytic extinguishing of these prior and subsequent factors facilitates severance of all three paths.<sup>165</sup> [The factors comprising] these three paths exist apart from any self or possessions of a self and exist only as a process of production and extinction wherein they are analogous to standing sheaves of mutually-supporting reeds.<sup>166</sup>

h. THE TWELVE LINKS' CORRELATION WITH THE THREE PERIODS OF TIME

(j) Additionally, where *ignorance* serves as the condition for the occurrence of *volitional actions*, this refers to past circumstances. The factors of *consciousness* on up to and including *feeling* refers to present circumstances. The factors of *craving* and so forth on up to and including *becoming* refer to future circumstances. Henceforth there occurs the unfolding of an ongoing continuity.

In those instances where the cessation of *ignorance* precipitates cessation of *volitional actions*, this is a case of severance occurring due to the dependency [of the latter conditions upon the prior conditions].

i. THE TWELVE LINKS' CORRELATION WITH THE THREE KINDS OF SUFFERING

(k) Additionally, the twelve factors comprising the bases of existence are synonymous with *the three sufferings*. Among these, *ignorance*, *volitional actions*, and so forth on up to and including *the six sense bases* collectively constitute *the suffering associated with the karmic formative factors*.<sup>167</sup> *Contact* and *feeling* constitute *the suffering of suffering*.<sup>168</sup> The remaining factors constitute *the suffering of deterioration*.<sup>169</sup>

j. CONTEMPLATION OF THEIR ARISING & CEASING BY CAUSES AND CONDITIONS

Where the cessation of *ignorance* brings about the cessation of *volitional actions*, these three types of suffering are then cut off.

(l) Additionally, in *ignorance's* serving as a condition for the generation of *volitional actions*, *ignorance* is the cause and condition that can produce all manner of *volitional actions*. As for the circumstance wherein, once *ignorance* is extinguished, *volitional actions*

are then extinguished, it is because, once there is an absence of *ignorance*, there are then no *volitional actions*, either. This same circumstance holds for all of the remaining factors as well.

k. CONTEMPLATION OF THEIR CREATION AND DESTRUCTION OF THE BONDS

Also, in *ignorance's* serving as a condition for the generation of *volitional actions*, this conduces to the generation of bondage. Where, with the extinguishing of *ignorance*, *volitional actions* are then extinguished, this then brings about the extinguishing of this bondage. This same principle holds for all of the remaining factors as well.

l. CONTEMPLATION OF "UTTER NONEXISTENCE" AND "UTTER CESSATION"

Then again, in *ignorance's* serving as a condition for the generation of *volitional actions*, this is a circumstance adaptable to the "nonexistence of anything whatsoever" contemplation. Where, with the extinguishing of *ignorance*, *volitional actions* are then extinguished, this is a circumstance adaptable to the "utter cessation of everything" contemplation. This same principle holds for all of the remaining factors as well.

m. A SUMMARY LISTING OF 10 CONTEMPLATIONS OF THE 12 CAUSAL FACTORS

{M} Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* thus engages in ten types of sequential and counter-sequential contemplation of the factors involved in conditioned arising,<sup>170</sup> specifically:<sup>171</sup>

Contemplation of the sequential continuity in the existential factors.

Contemplation of their all being reducible to the one mind.

Contemplation of their each having their own distinct function.

Contemplation of their inseparability.

Contemplation of the non-severance of the three paths.<sup>172</sup>

Contemplation of their relationship to the past, the present, or the future.

Contemplation in terms of the accumulation of the three kinds of suffering.

Contemplation of their arising and ceasing through causes and conditions.

Contemplation in terms of the creation and destruction of bondage.

Contemplation in terms of "utter nonexistence" and "utter cessation."

## 6. THE BODHISATTVA'S ACQUISITION OF THE THREE GATES TO LIBERATION

{N} Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* contemplates everything within the realm of conditioned arising in accordance with these ten characteristics. Thus he realizes that there is no self, no person, and no lifespan, that there is an absence of any inherently existent nature, and that there is also no agent of actions or anyone who undergoes experiences. He then immediately acquires the direct manifestation of *the emptiness gate to liberation*.<sup>173</sup>

He contemplates all of the factors associated with becoming as having the nature of cessation, as ultimately synonymous with liberation, and as not having even the smallest dharma characteristic that they produce. He then immediately acquires the direct manifestation of *the signlessness gate to liberation*.<sup>174</sup>

Having thus gained entry into both emptiness and signlessness, he then becomes entirely free of anything at all that he seeks with the sole exception of taking the great compassion as foremost in the transformative teaching of beings. He then immediately acquires the direct manifestation of *the wishlessness gate to liberation*.<sup>175</sup>

Thus it is that, in his cultivation of *the three gates to liberation*, the bodhisattva abandons conceptions of the existence of either others or a self, abandons conceptions of either any agent of actions or anyone who undergoes experiences, and abandons the conceptions of anything as either existent or nonexistent.

## 7. THE BODHISATTVA'S COMPASSIONATE RELUCTANCE TO ENTER FINAL NIRVĀṆA

{O} Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva *mahāsattva's* great compassion progressively increases. He is energetically diligent in his cultivation and, for the sake of bringing about the complete fulfillment of those factors facilitating bodhi he has not yet completely fulfilled, he reflects thus:

All conditioned things possess an ongoing existence through a circumstance involving the conjunction of factors. Where there is no such circumstance involving the conjunction of factors, there is then no ongoing existence. When the conditions gather together, they may then possess an ongoing existence. When those conditions do not gather together, there is no ongoing existence.

Thus I realize that, since conditioned dharmas are beset by many faults, I should cut off this conjunction of causes and conditions. However, for the sake of facilitating the successful

development of other beings, I shall nonetheless refrain from bringing about the ultimate extinguishing of all volitional actions.

Son of the Buddha, thus it is that the bodhisattva contemplatively investigates all conditioned things as possessed of many faults, as devoid of any inherently existent nature, as neither produced nor destroyed, and yet he nonetheless constantly generates the great compassion, refrains from abandoning beings, and then straightaway acquires the direct manifestation of the *prajñāpāramitā* known as the light of unimpeded wisdom.

Having successfully acquired such wisdom light, although he cultivates the causes and conditions related to the factors facilitating bodhi, he still refrains from abiding in the realm of conditioned things. And although he contemplates the nature of conditioned dharmas as that of quiescent cessation, he still does not abide in quiescent cessation either. This is because he has not yet achieved the complete fulfillment of the dharmas that lead to the realization of bodhi.

#### 8. THE BODHISATTVA'S SAMĀDHIS RELATED TO THE 3 GATES TO LIBERATION

(P) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva who dwells on this Ground of Direct Presence succeeds in entering:<sup>176</sup>

The penetration of emptiness samādhi;  
 The emptiness of any inherently existent nature samādhi;  
 The emptiness of the supreme meaning samādhi;  
 The foremost emptiness samādhi;  
 The great emptiness samādhi;  
 The emptiness of unities samādhi;  
 The emptiness of production samādhi;  
 The reality-accordant non-discriminating emptiness samādhi;  
 The non-abandonment emptiness samādhi;  
 And the transcendent yet not transcendent emptiness samādhi.

With these ten emptiness samādhis as foremost among them, this bodhisattva acquires the direct manifestation of every one of a hundred thousand emptiness samādhis. In this same way, with ten signlessness samādhis and ten wishlessness samādhis as foremost, he also acquires the direct manifestation of every one of a hundred thousand signlessness and wishlessness samādhis.

#### 9. THE BODHISATTVA'S TEN TYPES OF RESOLUTE INTENTIONS

(Q) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva who dwells on this Ground of Direct Presence also cultivates and completely perfects:<sup>177</sup>

The indestructible resolute intention;<sup>178</sup>  
 The definitely certain resolute intention;  
 The resolute intention of pure goodness;  
 The especially profound resolute intention;  
 The non-retreating resolute intention;  
 The unrelenting resolute intention;  
 The vast resolute intention;  
 The boundless resolute intention;  
 The knowledge-seeking resolute intention;  
 And the resolute intention joining skillful means and wisdom.

In every case, he brings all of these to a state of perfect fulfillment.

10. 10 CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S 10 TYPES OF RESOLUTE INTENTIONS

(R) Son of the Buddha, in availing himself of these types of resolute intentions, the bodhisattva:

Accords with the bodhi of the Buddhas;  
 Remains unfrightened by encounters with proponents of deviant doctrines;  
 Enters all the grounds of knowledge;  
 Abandons the paths of the Two Vehicles;  
 Progresses toward the knowledge of the Buddha;  
 Remains invulnerable to obstruction or ruination by any of the afflictions or *māras*;  
 Abides within the light of the bodhisattva's wisdom;  
 Skillfully cultivates and implements all the dharmas of emptiness, signlessness, and wishlessness;  
 In every case skillfully engages in the constantly conjoined practice of skillful means and wisdom;  
 And always implements and never relinquishes the dharmas assisting the realization of bodhi.

11. THE BODHISATTVA'S PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ PRACTICE AND PATIENCE ACQUISITION

(S) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva abiding on this Ground of Direct Presence acquires an especially supreme degree of realization in the practice of *prajñāpāramitā* and acquires the third of the patiences, the clear and sharp acquiescent patience,<sup>179</sup> this because of acting in accordance with and not contrary to the true character of dharmas.

12. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS

Son of the Buddha, because of the power of his vows, the bodhisattva who has come to dwell on this Ground of Direct Presence

succeeds in seeing many buddhas, that is to say, he can see many hundreds of buddhas and so forth until we come to his seeing of many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddhas. In every instance, with a vast mind and a profound mind, he makes offerings to them, pays reverence to them, venerates them, praises them, and presents them with robes, food and drink, bedding, medicines, and all amenities supporting their existence, offering up all of these things while also making offerings to those within all their sangha assemblies. He then proceeds to dedicate the merit associated with these roots of goodness to *anuttarasamyaksambodhi*.

So too does he then respectfully listen to the teachings on Dharma in the presence of those buddhas. Having heard these teachings, he takes them on and retains them, gains reality-concordant samādhis and the light of wisdom, and then accords with these in his cultivation, bearing them in mind and never relinquishing them.

#### 13. PURIFYING GOOD ROOTS LIKE POLISHING GOLD & MOONLIGHT'S COOLNESS

He also gains access to the Buddhas' treasures of extremely profound Dharma and, passing through a hundred kalpas, passing through a thousand kalpas, and so forth on up to incalculably many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas, his roots of goodness shine ever more brightly in their purity just as when a goldsmith uses a lapis lazuli gem to repeatedly polish real gold, causing it to shine with ever more brilliant purity. So too it is with all the roots of goodness of the bodhisattva who dwells on this ground. Through his use of skillful means and wisdom, in a manner corresponding to his pursuit of meditative contemplation, they become ever brighter and ever more imbued with quiescence to the point where they cannot be outshone by anyone and become like the light of the moon that shines on the bodies of beings and causes them to experience a sense of pristine coolness that the four kinds of wind are incapable of diminishing.

So too it is with all the roots of goodness of the bodhisattva on this ground who is able to use them to extinguish the blazing fires of affliction burning in incalculably many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of beings. In this, they remain invulnerable to destruction by the paths of any of the four kinds of *māras*.

#### 14. THE BODHISATTVA'S SPECIALIZATION IN THE PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ

Among the ten *pāramitās*, this bodhisattva most extensively practices the *prajñā pāramitā*. It is not that he does not practice the



others. Rather, he simply accords them an amount of emphasis corresponding to his own strengths and to what is fitting.

15. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 6TH GROUND BODHISATTVA

Sons of the Buddha, this has been a general explanation of the bodhisattva *mahāsattva's*, sixth ground, the Ground of Direct Presence.

a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE

The bodhisattva dwelling on this ground often becomes a king of the Skillful Transformations Heaven<sup>180</sup> who, sovereignly masterful in all that he does, is one who cannot be driven into retreat or submission by any questioning challenge posed by any *śrāvaka*-disciple. He is able to influence beings to do away with arrogance and to deeply enter into a comprehension of conditioned origination.

b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS

In his practice of giving, pleasing words, beneficial actions, and joint endeavors, and in all such works that he pursues, he never departs from mindfulness of the Buddha, and so forth until we come to his never departing from mindfulness of his quest to achieve complete fulfillment of the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.

c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS

He also has this thought: "I should become one who serves these beings as a leader, as one who is supreme," and so forth until we come to "as one who relies on the cognition of all-knowledge."

d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS

If this bodhisattva brings forth diligently vigorous practice, then, in but a moment, he will be able to enter hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *samādhis*, and so forth until we come to his becoming able to transformationally manifest a hundred thousand *koṭis* of bodhisattvas to serve as his retinue. If he resorts to the power of vows, he will become freely able to manifest them in numbers beyond even this, such that one would never be able to count them even in a period of hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas.

16. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, wishing to once again proclaim the meaning of his discourse, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

After entirely fulfilling the fifth ground's practices, the bodhisattva sees dharmas as the same due to their being signless, natureless, unproduced, unborn, originally pure, beyond frivolous ideation, beyond grasping or relinquishing, <sup>(11)</sup> quiescent in substance and signs, and illusory, as well as non-dual and beyond discrimination as existent or non-existent. Thus contemplating in accordance with the nature of dharmas, those with this knowledge succeed in entering the sixth ground. <sup>(12)</sup>

With clear and acute acquiescent patience and replete in knowledge, he contemplates the world's aspects of production and destruction, the world's production by the power of delusion's darkness, and sees, if delusion's darkness were destroyed, the world would not exist. <sup>(13)</sup>

He contemplates all causes and conditions as, in reality, empty, yet does not contradict artificial names' use in designating constructs. Even as there is no doer, no recipient, and no thinker of thoughts, all actions arise and spread forth everywhere like clouds. <sup>(14)</sup>

Failure to know the actual truth constitutes *ignorance*.

The *volitional actions* that are done are the fruit of delusion.

That which arises together with *consciousness* is *name-and-form*.

Thus it proceeds on forth until the manifold sufferings accumulate. <sup>(15)</sup>

He utterly comprehends the three realms exist dependent on mind, that the same is true of the twelve causes and conditions, that birth and death in every case are created because of mind, and that, if the mind itself is extinguished, then birth and death end. <sup>(16)</sup>

That which *ignorance* brings about is in every case of two types:

Non-comprehension of conditions and the causes of *actions*,

This is so all the way through to *aging's* end in *death*.

Suffering is generated endlessly from this. <sup>(17)</sup>

So long as *ignorance* serves as a condition, these cannot be cut off, but, if that condition is brought to an end, then these are all extinguished.

*Ignorance*, *craving*, and *grasping* are the factors belonging to afflictions.

*Actions* and *becoming* form karma, and the rest are suffering. <sup>(18)</sup>

*Ignorance* up to the six sense bases relate to *formative-factor suffering*.

The proliferation of *contact* and *feeling* forms the *suffering of suffering*.

The rest of the existential factors relate to the *suffering of deterioration*.

If one sees non-existence of "self," all three sufferings are destroyed. <sup>(19)</sup>

*Ignorance* and *actions* both pertain to the past,

*Consciousness* on through to *feeling* continually unfold in the present.

*Craving*, *grasping*, and *becoming* generate future suffering.

If their interdependence is severed, such temporal phases all end. <sup>(20)</sup>

When *ignorance* serves as a condition, it is this that creates the bonds. Through abandoning such conditions, the bonds are thus ended. Effects are produced from causes, but if abandoned, they are cut off. Closely contemplating this, one realizes they are, by nature, empty. (21)

Through following the course of *ignorance*, all existence arises. If one but refrains from following its course, all existence is cut off. If this exists, then that exists. So too it is for nonexistence as well. Through the ten reflections, the mind abandons its attachments: (22)

Continuity of existential factors; traceability to a single thought; individual karma; inseparability; non-severance of three paths; three times, three sufferings; generation by causes and conditions; the rising and passing of the fetters; nonexistence and cessation. (23)

Thus he universally contemplates the course of conditioned arising, realizing that it is devoid of any actor, recipient, or reality, that it is like a conjuration, like a dream, like shadows, or like a circumstance wherein a fool chases after a mere mirage. (24)

Through just such analytic contemplation, he enters emptiness, knows conditions as, by nature, separate, realizes signlessness, utterly comprehends their falseness, and becomes free of any wish with the sole exception of the desire to act with kindness for beings. (25)

Thus this great eminence cultivating the three gates to liberation ever increases great compassion and his quest for Buddha's Dharma. He realizes all conditioned things are created as an assemblage and, with resolute fondness for it, resolves to diligently practice the path. (26)

He acquires a hundred thousand emptiness samādhi gateways and gains the same number for signlessness and wishlessness as well. His *prajñā* and acquiescent patience both become ever more superior, and his liberations and wisdom reach complete fulfillment. (27)

With a deep mind, he also makes offerings to many buddhas and cultivates the path through the instruction of those buddhas. He gains Buddhas' Dharma treasuries enhancing roots of goodness just as when gold is subjected to polishing with a lapis lazuli gem. (28)

Just as when the moon's pure and cool radiance shines on beings, though the four winds may blow, none are able to interfere with it, so too, this ground's bodhisattvas step over the paths of Māra and extinguish the heat of all beings' afflictions. (29)

On this ground, he is often King of the Fine Transformations Heaven, one who teaches and guides beings in doing away with pridefulness. All endeavors he pursues are done to seek all-knowledge and they all have already overstepped and become superior to the *śrāvaka* path. (30)

The bodhisattva on this ground who is diligent in practice of vigor acquires hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of samādhis and is also able to see countless many buddhas that appear to him like suns shining in the midsummer sky. <sup>(31)</sup>

This is extremely profound, sublime, and so difficult to know or see that no *śrāvaka*-disciple or *pratyekabuddha* could ever fully fathom it. So it is that I have here explained the bodhisattva's sixth ground for the sake of the Sons of the Buddha. <sup>(32)</sup>

## PART SEVEN

### The Far-Reaching Ground

#### G. THE SEVENTH GROUND: THE FAR-REACHING GROUND

##### 1. THE SEVENTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST

Then the congregated devas, their minds filled with joy,  
scattered jewels that formed a cloud hanging up in the sky,  
whereupon they all sang with different sorts of sublime voices  
addressed to The Most Supremely Pure One, saying: <sup>(1)</sup>

“Fully penetrating the supreme meaning with masterful knowledge  
and perfected in a hundred thousand *koṭis* of fine qualities,  
a lotus among men, entirely free of any attachments,  
proclaims here the profound practices to benefit all beings.” <sup>(2)</sup>

The Vaśavartin Heaven King, abiding there in space,  
emanated a great light that illuminated the Buddha's body  
and spread forth the most superior sorts of sublime incense clouds,  
all presented as offerings to he who dispels worries and afflictions. <sup>(3)</sup>

Then, the entire congregation of devas, all of them joyful,  
all sang beautiful sounds in a united chorus of praises:  
“Having heard here of the qualities comprising this ground, we  
have thence all reaped immense and fine benefit.” <sup>(4)</sup>

Then the celestial nymphs, their minds full of celebratory delight,  
vied in chorusing forth a thousand myriad musical sounds and then,  
as all of them availed themselves of the Tathāgata's spiritual powers,  
amidst all those sounds, they joined in uttering phrases like these: <sup>(5)</sup>

“With peerless awe-inspiring presence and quiescent stillness, he  
can train those difficult to train, is worthy of the world's gifts,  
and, though he has already transcended all worlds,  
he still travels forth in the world, extolling the marvelous path. <sup>(6)</sup>

“Although he manifests incalculably many bodies of every kind,  
he realizes each and every body is itself devoid of any existence.  
He is skillful in the use of phrases in his explanation of all dharmas,  
yet does not seize on any signs of words or sounds. <sup>(7)</sup>

“He goes forth to a hundred thousand buddha lands and  
presents all the most supreme gifts as offerings to those buddhas.  
Through sovereign mastery of knowledge, he is free of all attachment  
and so does not generate any conception of ‘my own buddha land.’ <sup>(8)</sup>

“Although diligent in the teaching of all beings,  
he does not have any thought conceiving of either ‘other’ or ‘self.’  
Although he has already cultivated vast goodness to perfection,  
he still does not generate any attachment to good dharmas. {9}

“Because he perceives that all worlds are always fiercely ablaze  
with the fires of desire, hatred, and stupidity,  
he has utterly transcended all forms of thought even as  
he still brings forth the great compassion and the power of vigor.” {10}

After all of those devas and celestial nymphs  
had finished presenting all different sorts of offerings and praises,  
they all simultaneously fell silent and stood there,  
gazing up at the most revered of men, wishing to hear the Dharma. {11}

At that time, Liberation Moon Bodhisattva again set forth a request:  
“The minds of everyone in this assembly are pure.  
We wish only, O Son of the Buddha, that you will explain for us  
the practices and characteristic aspects of the seventh ground.” {12}

## 2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE SEVENTH GROUND’S EXPLANATION

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva addressed Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, saying:

### 3. 10 TYPES OF SKILLFUL MEANS & WISDOM ENABLING 7TH GROUND ACCESS

{A} O Son of the Buddha. The bodhisattva *mahāsattva* who has already completed the sixth ground’s practices and then aspires to gain entry into the seventh ground, the Far-Reaching Ground, should proceed in the cultivation of ten kinds of skillful means and wisdom,<sup>181</sup> thereby bringing forth the most especially supreme path. What then are those ten? Specifically, they are:

Although he has skillfully cultivated the emptiness, signlessness, and wishlessness samādhis, through the practice of kindness and compassion, he refrains from forsaking beings;

Although he has acquired the Buddhas’ dharma of uniform equality, he still delights in always making offerings to buddhas;

Although he has entered the gateway to wisdom of emptiness contemplation, he still diligently pursues the accumulation of merit;

Although he has become detached from the three realms of existence, he still engages in the adornment of the three realms of existence;

Although he has achieved the final extinguishing of the flames of all afflictions, he is still able for the sake of all beings to bring forth the means to extinguish the flames of their greed, hatred, and delusion;

Although he realizes that all dharmas are like conjurations, like dreams, like shadows, like echoes, like mirages, like transformations, like the moon reflected on water, and like images in a mirror, and realizes too that, in their essential nature, they are non-dual, he still accords with his resolve by performing works of countless different sorts;

Although he realizes that, by their very nature, all lands are like empty space, he is still able to use pure and sublime practices to adorn the buddha lands;

Although he realizes that the fundamental nature of all buddhas' Dharma body is free of any "body," he still adorns his own body with the major marks and subsidiary signs;

Although he realizes that, by its very nature, the voice of all buddhas is empty of inherent existence, quiescent, and ineffable, he is still able to accord with all beings by bringing forth for them many different sorts of pure voices;

And although he accords with all buddhas' complete fathoming of the three periods of time as reducible to but a single thought, he still accords with the differences in beings' minds and understandings by manifesting in many different sorts of appearances, many different temporal circumstances, and many different sorts of kalpas wherein he cultivates all the practices.

It is by resort to ten such types of skillful means and wisdom that the bodhisattva brings forth the especially supreme practices by which he leaves the sixth ground and enters the seventh ground. Once he has entered there, these practices always manifest directly before him and henceforth define his abiding on the seventh ground, the Far-Reaching Ground.

#### 4. THE BODHISATTVA'S TWENTY KINDS OF PENETRATING COMPREHENSION

(B) Son of the Buddha, after the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* has achieved entry into the seventh ground:

He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measurelessly many realms of beings;

He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measurelessly many works carried out by the Buddhas in their teaching of beings;

He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measurelessly many networks of worlds;

He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the Buddhas' measurelessly many pure lands;

- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measurelessly many different sorts of dharmas;<sup>182</sup>
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measureless knowledge manifested by the Buddhas' enlightenment;<sup>183</sup>
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the enumeration of the measurelessly many kalpas;
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measureless knowledge of the three periods of time to which the Buddhas have awakened;
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of beings' measurelessly many different sorts of resolute convictions;
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measurelessly many different sorts of name-and-form bodies manifested by the Buddhas;<sup>184</sup>
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the differences in beings' measurelessly many different mental dispositions and faculties;
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measurelessly many languages and voices through which the Buddhas' inspire delight in beings;
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of beings' measurelessly many different courses of thought;
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the Buddhas' measurelessly many sorts of utterly complete understanding of vast knowledge;
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measurelessly many sorts of resolute convictions of adherents of the Śrāvaka-disciple Vehicle;
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measurelessly many proclamations of the path of wisdom set forth by the Buddhas in inspiring resolute faith;
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measurelessly many accomplishments of *pratyekabuddhas*;
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the Buddhas' measurelessly many proclamations of gateways of extremely profound wisdom that cause others to enter therein;
- He acquires a penetrating comprehension of the bodhisattvas' measurelessly many practices of skillful means;
- And he acquires a penetrating comprehension of the measurelessly many works accumulated and accomplished in the Great Vehicle that, when described by the Buddhas, then influence bodhisattvas to enter into them.



## 5. HIS ADOPTION OF EFFORTLESSNESS, NON-DISCRIMINATION &amp; MEDITATION

(C) This bodhisattva reflects thus: "Such measureless domains of the Tathāgatas as these could never be known even in a hundred thousand *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas. I should therefore rather resort to the effortless and non-discriminating mind to succeed in achieving their perfect fulfillment."

(D) Son of the Buddha, employing deep wisdom, this bodhisattva engages in such contemplative meditations as these whereby he always diligently cultivates these forms of skillful means and wisdom and thus brings forth this especially supreme path wherein he becomes so securely and unshakably established in it that there is not so much as a single moment in which he rests or desists. While walking, standing, sitting, lying down, and even in the midst of sleep and dreams, he never even briefly involves himself with any of the hindrances and he never abandons thought such as this.

## 6. HIS PRACTICE OF 10 PĀRAMITĀS &amp; OTHER DHARMAS LEADING TO BODHI

In each successive moment, this bodhisattva is always able to completely fulfill the ten *pāramitās*. And how is this the case? This is because he takes the great compassion as foremost in every successive mind-moment as he cultivates the Buddha's Dharma and proceeds toward realization of the Buddha's knowledge. In particular:

He bestows on beings all roots of goodness he develops in the course of seeking to acquire the Buddha's knowledge. This is what constitutes *dāna pāramitā*.

He is able to extinguish the heat of the afflictions. This is what constitutes *śīla pāramitā*.

Taking kindness and compassion as foremost, he refrains from inflicting harm on beings. This is what constitutes *kṣānti pāramitā*.

He is insatiable in seeking supremely good dharmas. This is what constitutes *vīrya pāramitā*.

He always keeps the path of all-knowledge directly present before him, never becoming scattered or distracted. This is what constitutes *dhyāna pāramitā*.

He is able to patiently acquiesce in all dharmas as neither produced nor destroyed. This is what constitutes *prajñā pāramitā*.

He is able to bring forth measureless knowledge. This is what constitutes the *pāramitā* of skillful means.

He is able to seek out higher and higher levels of knowledge. This is what constitutes the *pāramitā* of vows.

None of the deviant doctrines or hordes of *māras* are ever able to obstruct him or bring about his ruination. This is what constitutes the *pāramitā* of powers.

He utterly knows all dharmas in accordance with reality. This is what constitutes the *pāramitā* of knowledge.

Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva is able to completely fulfill all of these ten *pāramitās* in every successive mind-moment. It is in this way that, in each successive mind-moment, he is able to completely fulfill the four means of attraction, the four types of retention,<sup>185</sup> the thirty-seven factors conducing to enlightenment, the three gates to liberation, and, to state it briefly, all dharmas assisting the realization of bodhi.

#### 7. VIMUKTICANDRA ASKS ABOUT PERFECTION OF BODHYAṄGA DHARMAS

(E) At that time, Liberation Moon Bodhisattva asked Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, saying, "O Son of the Buddha. Is it only on this seventh ground that the bodhisattva fulfills all dharmas assisting realization of bodhi?<sup>186</sup> Or is it rather that he is also able to completely fulfill them on all grounds?"

#### 8. VAJRAGARBHA ON THE PERFECTION OF BODHYAṄGAS ON ALL GROUNDS

Vajragarbha Bodhisattva then replied:

O Son of the Buddha. The bodhisattva is able to completely fulfill the dharmas facilitating realization of bodhi on all ten grounds. Still, it is on the seventh ground where this ability becomes most especially supreme in its implementation. How is this the case? This is because it is on this seventh ground that his effortfully implemented practice becomes complete, thereby enabling his entry into practice characterized by sovereign mastery in wisdom.<sup>187</sup>

O Son of the Buddha, on the first ground, it is because of his aspiration taking all Buddha dharmas as its object that the bodhisattva perfects the dharmas assisting realization of bodhi.

On the second ground, this occurs due to his abandonment of the mind's defilements.

On the third ground, this occurs due to the ever increasing strength of his vows and due to his acquiring the light of the Dharma.

On the fourth ground, this occurs through his entry into the path.

On the fifth ground, this occurs through his adaptation to the ways of the world.

On the sixth ground, this occurs through his entry into the extremely profound Dharma gateways.

On the seventh ground, it is due to bringing forth all Buddha dharmas and completely fulfilling all dharmas assisting realization of bodhi.

(F) How is this the case? From the first ground through the seventh ground, the bodhisattva achieves the complete development of the effortfully implemented preliminary practice factors conducive to knowledge. It is due to the power produced by this that, from the eighth ground to the tenth ground, all of his effortless practices then become completely developed.

Son of the Buddha, It is as if there were two worlds of which one is characterized by admixture with defilements whereas the other is entirely pure and it is difficult to pass between them, the sole exception being in the case of the bodhisattva who possesses the powers of great skillful means, spiritual superknowledges, and vows.

Son of the Buddha, so too it is with the grounds of the bodhisattva wherein there are those in which the practices are admixed with defilement and there are those in which the practices are pure. It is difficult for anyone to pass between these two with the sole exception of the bodhisattva possessed of great vow power, skillful means, and wisdom who only then is able to pass between them.

#### 9. VIMUKTICANDRA ASKS ABOUT TRANSCENDENCE OF AFFLICTIONS

Liberation Moon Bodhisattva then asked, "O Son of the Buddha. Does this seventh ground bodhisattva engage in defiled practices or does he instead engage in pure practices?"

#### 10. VAJRAGARBHA EXPLAINS THE TRANSCENDENCE OF AFFLICTIONS

Vajragarbha Bodhisattva replied:

O Son of the Buddha. From the first ground to the seventh ground, all practices in which he engages involve abandoning affliction-related actions. This is because they are directed toward realizing unsurpassably supreme bodhi. However, because he has still only achieved a partial realization corresponding to the level of his position on the path, this still cannot be referred to as stepping completely beyond all affliction-related actions.

#### 11. VAJRAGARBHA'S CAKRAVARTIN SAGE KING ANALOGY

Son of the Buddha, this circumstance is comparable to that of a wheel-turning sage king who mounts his precious heavenly

elephant and roams the four continents. In doing so, he becomes well aware that there are poverty-stricken people in difficult straits who are afflicted with suffering, even as he himself remains unsullied by those many disastrous situations. In such a circumstance, he would still not qualify as having truly stepped entirely beyond the position of being human.

Suppose, however, that he were to relinquish the body in which he serves as a king and then take rebirth in the Brahma Worlds where he would mount a heavenly palace from which he could view a thousand worlds as he roams throughout a thousand worlds manifesting the radiance and awesome qualities of a Brahma Heaven deva. In such a case, he would only then truly qualify as having stepped entirely beyond the station of being human.

Son of the Buddha, so too it is with the bodhisattva. Beginning with the first ground and going on through to the seventh ground, he mounts the vehicle of the *pāramitās*. As he roams about in the world, he becomes well aware of all the world's afflictions, faults, and disastrous aspects. Because he rides along on the path of right conduct, he remains unsullied by the faults associated with the afflictions. Still, he does not yet truly qualify as having stepped entirely beyond actions associated with afflictions.

However, if he were to then relinquish all of the effortfully implemented preliminary practices, he would then go forth from the seventh ground and enter the eighth ground and would then travel through the world mounted on the pure vehicle of the bodhisattva wherein he would be cognizant of the faults associated with the afflictions and yet would still remain unsullied by them. It is only then that he would qualify as having truly stepped entirely beyond the practices associated with the afflictions, this due to his having successfully stepped beyond them all.

Son of the Buddha, in coming to abide on this ground, this seventh ground bodhisattva has stepped entirely beyond the many sorts of afflictions such as abundant desire and the other sorts of afflictions. Abiding on this ground, he is not designated as someone who possesses the afflictions and yet he is not designated as entirely devoid of the afflictions, either. How is this the case? This is because, since none of the afflictions directly manifest in his practice, he is not designated as possessing them. However, because he seeks to acquire the Tathāgata's knowledge and his intentions have not yet become completely fulfilled, he is not yet designated as entirely free of them, either.

(G) Son of the Buddha, through profound purified intentions, the bodhisattva abiding on the seventh ground perfects his physical karma actions, perfects his verbal karmic actions, and perfects mental karmic actions. He has already entirely abandoned all bad courses of karmic action criticized by the Tathāgata and he always thoroughly cultivates all good courses of karmic actions praised by the Tathāgata. As for everything related to the world's classical texts, skills, and arts, his actions here are as described earlier in relation to the fifth ground. He naturally practices all of these without having to expend any particular effort in doing so.

This bodhisattva serves as a greatly illustrious teacher for those throughout the worlds of a great trichiliocosm, one who, with the sole exceptions of the Tathāgatas and those on the eighth ground and above, is unmatched by any of the other bodhisattvas in his resolute intentions and the marvelousness of his practice. All of the *dhyāna* samādhis, *samāpattis*, spiritual superknowledges, and liberations become directly manifest for him. Still, their cultivation and development here is not like that occurring on the eighth ground wherein they become completely realized as a function of karmic reward. In every successive mind-moment, the bodhisattva on this ground completely cultivates the power of skillful means and wisdom as well as all dharmas assisting realization of bodhi, all of which become ever more supremely fulfilled herein.

#### 12. THE CONQUEST OF SAMĀDHIS AND UNPRODUCED-DHARMAS PATIENCE

(H) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva abiding on this ground enters:<sup>188</sup>

- The bodhisattva's skillful investigative contemplation samādhi;
- The skillful consideration of meanings samādhi;
- The most supreme intelligence samādhi;
- The distinguishing of the treasury of meanings samādhi;
- The distinguishing of meaning in accordance with reality samādhi;
- The skillful abiding in solidly established roots samādhi;
- The gateway to knowledge and spiritual superknowledges samādhi;
- The works throughout the Dharma realm samādhi;
- The supreme benefit of the Tathāgata samādhi;
- And the samādhi of the treasury of many different meanings and the gateway to *saṃsāra* and *nirvāṇa*.

He enters hundreds of myriads of samādhis such as these that are gateways to complete fulfillment of great knowledge and spiritual

superknowledges whereby he is able to carry out the purifying cultivation of this ground.

(i) Having acquired these samādhis, due to thoroughly purifying skillful means and wisdom and due to the power of the great compassion, this bodhisattva steps beyond the Two Vehicles' grounds and reaches the wisdom contemplation ground.<sup>189</sup>

(j) Son of the Buddha, because the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground well purifies countless signlessness practices related to physical karma, well purifies countless signlessness practices related to verbal karma, and well purifies countless signlessness practices related to mental karma, he consequently acquires the light of the unproduced-dharmas patience.

13. VIMUKTICANDRA: "DOESN'T THE 1ST GROUND SURPASS THE TWO VEHICLES?"

Liberation Moon Bodhisattva then asked, "O Son of the Buddha. How could it be that all of the measurelessly many physical, verbal and mental deeds performed by each of the bodhisattvas from the first ground onward have not already stepped entirely beyond the Two Vehicles' practices?"

14. VAJRAGARBHA: "IN ASPIRATION, YES. BY VIRTUE OF PRACTICE, NOT YET"

Vajragarbha Bodhisattva then replied:

Son of the Buddha, all of those bodhisattvas do step entirely beyond them, however, they do so only due to their aspiration to acquire the Dharma of all buddhas. It is not due to their own cognition's power of meditative contemplation.<sup>190</sup> Now, however, on this seventh ground, it is because of their own power of cognition that all Two Vehicles practitioners become unable to even approach them.

15. VAJRAGARBHA'S ANALOGY OF A PRINCE NOT YET ASCENDED TO POWER

This circumstance is analogous to that of a prince who, having been born of a queen into the house of a king, is entirely possessed of all of the marks of a king. Right at birth, he is immediately deemed superior even to all of the government ministers. This, however, is solely due to the power associated with kingship and not due to any power he as yet possesses himself. If as he grows to adulthood he becomes accomplished in the various sorts of skills, it will only then be due to his own powers that he steps entirely beyond everyone else.

So too it is with the bodhisattva *mahāsattva*. When he first brings forth the resolve, because he has established the great Dharma as the goal of his determination, he right then steps

entirely beyond all *śrāvaka*-disciples and *pratyekabuddhas*. Now, in dwelling on this ground, it is due to the power of wisdom that he surpasses all adherents of the Two Vehicles.

16. THIS BODHISATTVA'S UNIQUE PRACTICE & RESTRAINT FROM FINAL NIRVĀṆA

(K) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva dwelling on this seventh ground acquires the ability to engage in extremely profound and secluded non-practice even as he still always practices deeds of body, speech, and mind through which he diligently pursues the supreme path, thus never abandoning that quest. Therefore, although the bodhisattva practices in accordance with ultimate reality,<sup>191</sup> he still refrains from bringing about its complete realization.

17. VIMUKTICANDRA: "WHEN CAN ONE ENTER THE CESSATION SAMĀDHI?"

(L) Liberation Moon Bodhisattva then asked, "O Son of the Buddha. Beginning with which ground can the bodhisattva enter the cessation concentration?"

18. VAJRAGARBHA: "FROM THE 6TH GROUND; NOW HE ENTERS & ARISES AT WILL"

Vajragarbha Bodhisattva replied:

Son of the Buddha, it is from the sixth ground onward that the bodhisattva has the ability to enter the cessation concentration. Now, as he abides on this ground, he can enter it in each successive mind-moment and can also arise from it in each successive mind-moment and yet still refrain from bringing about its complete realization. So it is that this bodhisattva is known as one who has completely developed inconceivable deeds of body, speech, and mind.

19. VAJRAGARBHA LIKENS PRACTICE TO SAILING ON THE OPEN OCEAN

His practicing in accordance with ultimate reality even while still refraining from bringing about its complete realization is analogous to someone who sets sail in a boat out onto the open ocean and who then, by resorting to the power of his skillfulness, remains able to avoid disastrous difficulties out on those waters. So too it is with the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground. He sets sail in the ship of the *pāramitās* out onto the ocean of ultimate reality and, in doing so, through his reliance on the power of vows, he still refrains from bringing about the complete realization of cessation.

## 20. 10 PARADOXICAL ASPECTS OF THE 7TH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICE

{M} Son of the Buddha, having acquired powers of samādhi and knowledge such as these, he employs great skillful means by which:

Although he manifests within *saṃsāra*, he still constantly abides in nirvāṇa;

Although surrounded by a retinue, he still always delights in detachment;

Although, by resort to the power of vows, he takes birth in the three realms, he still remains undefiled by worldly dharmas;

Although he always abides in a state of quiescence, through the power of skillful means, he is as if ablaze, but, although ablaze, he remains unburned;

Although he proceeds in accordance with the knowledge of the Buddha, he may still manifest entry into the grounds of the Śrāvaka-disciples and the Pratyekabuddhas;

Although he has acquired the treasury of the Buddha's realms of cognition,<sup>192</sup> he may still manifest as dwelling in the realms of *māras*;<sup>193</sup>

Although he has stepped beyond the paths of the *māras*, he may still manifest as practicing the dharmas of *māras*;

Although he may manifest practices identical to those of non-Buddhist traditions, he still never relinquishes the Dharma of the Buddha;

Although he manifests in ways that adapt to those in all worlds, he still always practices all world-transcending dharmas;

And although all of his adorning phenomena<sup>194</sup> surpass anything possessed by any of the devas, dragons, *yakṣas*, *gandharvas*, *asuras*, *garuḍas*, *kinnaras*, *mahoragas*, humans, non-humans, Śakra Devānām-Indra, the Brahma Heaven King, the Four Heavenly Kings, or anyone else, he still never relinquishes the mind that delights in the Dharma.

{N} Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva who has completely developed wisdom such as this abides on the Far-Reaching Ground.

## 21. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS

Due to the power of his vows he succeeds in seeing many buddhas, that is to say, he can see many hundreds of buddhas and so forth until we come to his seeing of many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddhas. He goes forth wherever those buddhas dwell and then, with a vast mind and with an especially supreme mind, he makes offerings to them, pays reverence to



them, venerates them, praises them, presents them with robes, food and drink, bedding, medicines, and all amenities supporting their existence, offering up all of these things while also making offerings to those within all of their sangha assemblies. He then dedicates the merit associated with these roots of goodness to *anuttarasamyaksambodhi*. So too does he then respectfully listen to the teachings on Dharma in those places where those buddhas dwell. Having heard these teachings, he takes them on and retains them, gains reality-concordant samādhis and the light of wisdom, and then accords with these in his cultivation.

Wherever the Buddhas dwell, he guards and preserves right Dharma. He is always one whom the Tathāgatas praise and express delight in. No proponent of the Two Vehicles can cause him to retreat or prevail over him through questioning or challenging him. His benefiting of beings purifies his realization of the patience with respect to dharmas. He passes through incalculably many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas in this way during which all of his roots of goodness achieve ever greater supremacy.

#### 22. GOOD ROOTS PURIFICATION LIKENED TO GOLD INLAY AND SUNLIGHT

This circumstance is comparable to when one inlays in real gold many sorts of marvelous gems as adornments, thereby making it ever more superior in quality and thereby redoubling its radiance to the point that no other article of adornment can rival it in these respects. All of the roots of goodness of the bodhisattva who dwells on the seventh ground are of just this very sort. Employing the power of skillful means and wisdom, he brings them to a state of ever increasing brightness and purity unrivaled by any followers of the Two Vehicles.

Son of the Buddha, this circumstance is comparable to the light of the sun which the light cast by the stars, the moon, and other heavenly bodies cannot even approach it in its brilliance that is even able to dry up all of the marshes on the entire continent of Jambudvīpa. So too it is with the bodhisattva on this Far-Reaching Ground who cannot be rivaled by any follower of the Two Vehicles, for he is able to entirely dry up all of the marshes of delusion possessed by all beings.

#### 23. THE 7TH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S FOCUS ON SKILLFUL MEANS PĀRAMITĀ

Among the ten *pāramitās*, this bodhisattva most extensively practices the *pāramitā* of skillful means. It is not that he does not practice the others. Rather, he simply accords them an amount

of emphasis corresponding to his own strengths and to what is fitting.

24. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 7TH GROUND BODHISATTVA

Son of the Buddha, this has been a general explanation of the bodhisattva *mahāsattva*'s seventh ground, the Far-Reaching Ground.

a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE

The bodhisattva dwelling on this ground often becomes a Vaśavartin Heaven king who, through skillfully explaining for beings the means to achieve the realization of knowledge, thereby influences them to realize it and enter therein.

b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS

In his practice of giving, pleasing words, beneficial actions, and joint endeavors and in all such works that he pursues, he never departs from mindfulness of the Buddha, and so forth until we come to his never departing from mindfulness of his quest to achieve complete fulfillment of the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.

c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS

He also has this thought: "I should become one who serves these beings as a leader, as one who is supreme," and so forth until we come to "as one who relies on the cognition of all-knowledge."

d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS

If this bodhisattva brings forth diligently vigorous practice, then, in but a moment, he will become able to enter hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of samādhis, and so forth until we come to his becoming able to transformationally manifest hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of bodhisattvas to serve as his retinue. If he resorts to the especially supreme power of the bodhisattva's vows, he will become freely able to manifest them in numbers beyond even this even to the point that one could never calculate their number even in a period of hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas.

25. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, wishing to once again proclaim the meaning of his discourse, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

As, on the path of the supreme meaning's knowledge and samādhi, his sixth ground mind cultivation reaches complete fullness, he straightaway perfects skillful means and wisdom.

It is due to this that the bodhisattva enters the seventh ground. (13)

Though awakened to three liberations, he is kind and compassionate.  
 Though the same as *tathāgatas*, he is diligent in offerings to Buddhas.  
 Though contemplating emptiness, he still accumulates merit.  
 Through these things, a bodhisattva ascends to the seventh ground. (14)

He has become detached from the three realms yet still adorns them.  
 He's put out his own delusions' fires, yet douses others' fires as well.  
 He knows dharmas' non-duality and yet is diligent in doing works.  
 He fathoms all lands as empty, yet delights in adorning lands. (15)

Even knowing the body as unmoving, he embodies all of its signs.  
 Though aware voice's nature is transcendent, he is skilled in discourse.  
 Though he fathoms all as one thought, he distinguishes all matters.  
 It is due to this that the wise ascend to the seventh ground. (16)

Closely contemplating these dharmas, he gains utter illumination,  
 broadly brings forth benefit for the multitudes who are so confused,  
 and enters the boundlessly many realms of beings as well as  
 the Buddhas' acts of transformative teaching that are also countless. (17)

All lands, all dharmas, and all categories of kalpas,  
 beings' convictions and mental dispositions—he enters them all,  
 proclaiming Three Vehicles Dharma in a manner equally boundless,  
 carrying on in this way the teaching of all the multitudes of beings. (18)

The bodhisattva diligently pursues the supreme path  
 and, moving or still, never forsakes skillful means and wisdom.  
 He dedicates each and every act to gaining Buddha's bodhi,  
 and, in each successive mind-moment, he perfects the *pāramitās*. (19)

Generating the resolve and making dedications constitute giving.  
 Extinguishing delusions is moral virtue and non-harming is patience.  
 Insatiable pursuit of goodness—this is vigor's goad.  
 Being unshakable on the path is the cultivation of *dhyāna*. (20)

Patient acquiescence in the unproduced is what constitutes *prajñā*.  
 Dedicating merit constitutes skillful means. Aspirations form vows.  
 Invincibility is the mark of powers. Skillful fathoming is knowledge.  
 It is in this way that he develops all of these to complete fullness. (21)

On the first ground, grasping fine qualities' conditions is fulfilled.  
 On the second, one abandons defilement. The third: Disputes cease.  
 On the fourth, one enters the path. The fifth: Practice is compliant.  
 On the sixth, light shines from wisdom that fathoms the unproduced.  
 (22)

On the seventh, merit from the bodhi practices becomes full  
 and all the different types of great vows become perfectly complete.  
 It is because of this that one is able to cause  
 everything one does on the eighth ground to become entirely pure. (23)

This ground is difficult to traverse. With wisdom, one steps beyond. This is analogous to going between two worlds and also like a sage king's degree of freedom from defiling attachment, for it does not yet qualify as totally stepping beyond it. (24)

When he comes to abide on the eighth ground of knowledge he then passes on beyond those domains of mind. As Brahmā deva, viewing the world, steps beyond the human realm, and like a lotus atop the water, he is free of defiling attachments. (25)

Although on this ground one oversteps the many sorts of afflictions, one is not said either to have afflictions or to be free of afflictions.<sup>195</sup> This is because there are no afflictions that are active therein even as the mind seeking Buddha's knowledge has not yet become fulfilled. (26)

He entirely fathoms all of the many types of worldly skills, the classical texts, books, literary skills, and polemics while, as for the *dhyāna* concentrations, samādhis, and spiritual superknowledges, he cultivates all such endeavors to the point of complete mastery. (27)

In cultivating and perfecting the path of the seventh ground, the bodhisattva steps entirely beyond all Two Vehicles' practices. First ground success arises from vows. Here it is from knowledge. This is analogous to a prince whose powers are utterly perfected. (28)

Though perfect in the very profound, he still advances on the path. His every moment is quiescent cessation, yet he forgoes realization. It is just as when one goes forth in a boat out into the open ocean, and yet still keeps from being capsized by its waters. (29)

His practice of skillful means and wisdom and perfection of qualities are such that no one in the entire world can completely fathom. By offerings to many buddhas and his mind's growing radiance he becomes like gold that has been adorned with marvelous gems. (30)

The wisdom of this ground's bodhisattva is the most brilliant of all. Like flourishing sunlight, it dries up the waters of craving. He also serves as a lord of the Paranirmita Vaśavartin Heaven who teaches and guides beings in the cultivation of right knowledge. (31)

If he resorts to the power of valiant and vigorous diligence, he acquires numerous samādhis and sees multitudes of buddhas, hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* in number. With freely exercised vow power, the number goes even beyond this. (32)

This is the bodhisattva's Far-Reaching Ground, the path of the purification of skillful means and wisdom. It is such that no deva, human, *śrāvaka*-disciple, or *pratyekabuddha* anywhere in any world would be able to comprehend it. (33)

## PART EIGHT

### The Immovability Ground

#### H. THE EIGHTH GROUND: THE IMMOVABILITY GROUND

##### 1. THE EIGHTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST

At that time, the Deva King and those in the deva assembly, hearing of these supreme practices, were filled with joyous delight. Wishing to make offerings to the Tathāgata and to that boundless congregation of great bodhisattvas, <sup>(1)</sup>

they rained down marvelous blossoms, banners, canopies, incenses, floral garlands, necklaces, and jeweled robes, measurelessly and boundlessly many, of a hundred thousand sorts, all of which were adorned with *maṇi* jewels. <sup>(2)</sup>

Celestial nymphs simultaneously chorused forth heavenly music, sending everywhere about many different sorts of sublime voices as offerings to the Buddha as well to those sons of the Buddha there, all together singing forth these words that they offered in praise: <sup>(3)</sup>

“The All Seeing One most revered among all two-legged beings, out of kindly pity for these beings, manifests his spiritual powers, causing these many sorts of celestial music and sublime sounds to come forth from everywhere so that everyone is able to hear. <sup>(4)</sup>

On each hair tip, there are a hundred thousand *koṭis* of *nayutas* of lands as numerous as atoms wherein just such a measureless number of *tathāgatas* abide there, proclaiming the sublime Dharma. <sup>(5)</sup>

Within each hair pore there are countless lands, each of which has its four continents and great oceans as well as Mount Sumeru and the Iron Ring Mountains, all of which are seen therein without being cramped for space. <sup>(6)</sup>

Within the tip of each hair, there exist the six destinies of rebirth, the three wretched destinies, as well as men and devas, all of the multitudes of dragons and spirits, and the *asuras*, wherein each undergoes retribution in accordance with his karma. <sup>(7)</sup>

In all of those lands, there are *tathāgatas* expounding teachings with their marvelous voices, adapting to the minds of all of the different sorts of beings in order to turn the wheel of the supremely pure Dharma. <sup>(8)</sup>

In those lands, the beings have all different sorts of bodies.  
 Within their bodies, there are in turn many different types of lands.  
 Humans, devas, the other destinies—each is different from the others.  
 The Buddha, having fully known them, speaks Dharma for them all. <sup>(9)</sup>

Large lands, in response to thought, transform, becoming small.  
 Small lands, in response to thought, transform, becoming large.  
 He has such spiritual superknowledges that are so measureless that,  
 even if worldlings all described them at once, they could never finish.”  
<sup>(10)</sup>

Having sent forth everywhere these sublime sounds  
 praising the meritorious qualities of the Tathāgata,  
 those assembled there, filled with joyous delight, became silent  
 and then single-mindedly gazed up, wishing to hear an explanation.

At that time, Liberation Moon Bodhisattva again set forth a request:  
 “Everyone in this assembled congregation has become still and quiet.  
 We pray that you will describe the practice aspects  
 that one sequentially enters in reaching the eighth ground.” <sup>(11)</sup>

## 2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE EIGHTH GROUND’S EXPLANATION

(A) At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva informed Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, saying:

### 3. TEN ACCOMPLISHMENTS ASSOCIATED WITH ENTERING THE EIGHTH GROUND

O Son of the Buddha. Here we have the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* who, on seven grounds:

Has well cultivated skillful means together with wisdom;  
 Has well purified the paths;  
 Has well accumulated the dharmas assisting realization of the path;  
 Has been sustained by the power of great vows;<sup>196</sup>  
 Has received the assistance of the Tathāgata’s powers;<sup>197</sup>  
 Has been supported by the power of his own goodness;<sup>198</sup>  
 Has remained always mindful of the Tathāgata’s powers, fearlessnesses, and dharmas exclusive to the Buddhas;<sup>199</sup>  
 Has well purified his higher aspirations and intentions;<sup>200</sup>  
 Has become able to completely develop merit and wisdom;<sup>201</sup>  
 And has practiced the great kindness and the great compassion by which he never forsakes any being. So it is that he enters the path of measureless knowledge.<sup>202</sup>

### 4. TEN TYPES OF COMPREHENSION ASSOCIATED WITH 8TH GROUND ACCESS

(B) He penetratingly comprehends all dharmas:<sup>203</sup>

As originally unproduced;  
 As non-arising;  
 As signless;  
 As neither created nor destroyed;  
 As inexhaustible and undergoing no transformation;  
 As having the nature of being devoid of any inherent nature;  
 As of uniformly equal character in the past, present, and future;  
 As being amenable to penetration by non-discriminating suchness-cognizing knowledge;  
 As being beyond the range of discriminating concepts associated with the mind or mind consciousness;  
 And as, in the manner of empty space, devoid of any basis for grasping or attachment.

This penetrating comprehension of all dharmas as comparable in their nature to empty space is synonymous with the realization of the unproduced-dharmas patience.

5. THE UNPRODUCED DHARMAS PATIENCE BASIS FOR "PROFOUND PRACTICE"

(C) Son of the Buddha, when the bodhisattva acquires this patience, he immediately achieves entry into the eighth ground, the Ground of Immovability, and becomes a "profound practice" bodhisattva who is unfathomable and free of any discriminations, one who has transcended all signs, all conceptual thought, and all attachments, one who has reached a state that is immeasurable and boundless, one who cannot be matched by any *śrāvaka*-disciple or *pratyekabuddha*, one who has abandoned all contentiousness, and one in whom quiescence is directly manifest.

6. "PROFOUND PRACTICE" LIKE A MONK WITH SUPERKNOWLEDGES & DHYĀNAS

This circumstance is comparable to that of a bhikshu who has perfected the spiritual superknowledges and whose mind has achieved sovereign mastery, one who has proceeded through the sequential development of the absorptions to the point of entering the absorption of complete cessation and has become one wherein all movement of the mind, all recollective thought, and all discriminations have entirely ceased.

In just such a way, when this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* comes to dwell on the Ground of Immovability, he immediately relinquishes all deliberately effortful practice and acquires the dharma of effortlessness. As for any undertakings of body, speech, and mind as well as any mental exertion, these all completely cease. He then abides in practice accomplished as the fruit of karmic rewards.<sup>204</sup>

## 7. 8TH GROUND LIKENED TO AWAKENING FROM A RIVER-FORDING DREAM

His situation is like that of a person who, in the midst of a dream, sees that he has tumbled into the waters of a great river, and then, wishing to get across, brings forth great bravery and pursues some means to accomplish this. Then, due to bringing forth great bravery and enacting some means to accomplish this, he suddenly wakes up. Having awoken, he then desists from everything he was doing.

So too it is with the bodhisattva. Having seen that beings are being swept along in the four floods,<sup>205</sup> he exerts himself with great bravery and brings forth great vigor to rescue them and bring them across. Due to his bravery and vigor, he then succeeds in reaching the Ground of Immovability. Then, having reached this station, there is none of his deliberate effortfulness that does not cease entirely. He then no longer manifests any duality-based practice or practice grounded in phenomenal characteristics.

## 8. 8TH GROUND LIKENED TO THE BRAHMA WORLD'S ABSENCE OF AFFLICTIONS

Son of the Buddha, this situation is comparable to what occurs when one is reborn into the Brahma World wherein, of all the afflictions associated with the desire realm, none of them fail to cease. So too it is when one comes to dwell on the Ground of Immovability. All activity associated with the mind or mind consciousness no longer manifests. This bodhisattva *mahāsattva* no longer even manifests the arising of any thought associated with being a bodhisattva, any thought associated with buddhahood, any thought associated with bodhi, or any thought associated with nirvāṇa, how much the less would he bring forth any sort of thought associated with the world.

## 9. THE BUDDHAS' MANIFESTATION BEFORE THE 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA

Son of the Buddha, on account of the power of his original vows, the Buddhas, the Bhagavats, personally manifest directly before the bodhisattva who dwells on this ground, bestowing on him the knowledge of the Tathāgatas, causing him to pass through the gateway leading into the flow of the Dharma.

## 10. THE BUDDHAS' PRAISE &amp; INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA

(D) They then speak as follows:

This is good indeed, good indeed. Son of Good Family, this patience is the foremost among them all, one that accords with all dharmas of the Buddhas. Still, Son of Good Family, you have not yet acquired all of our ten powers, our fearlessnesses, and



our eighteen dharmas exclusive to the Buddhas. Hence, out of a desire to perfectly realize these dharmas, you should bring forth the diligent application of vigor even while, at the same time, you must never relinquish this gateway of patience.

(E) Furthermore, Son of Good Family, although you have indeed acquired this quiescent liberation, still, the foolish common people have not yet been able to acquire that realization. All of the different sorts of afflictions continue to manifest in them and all the different sorts of ideation and discursive thought always assail and injure them. Out of kindly pity, you should bear in mind the plight of these beings.

(F) Additionally, Son of Good Family, you should bear in mind your original vow to bestow great and universal benefit on all beings, in every instance causing them to enter the gateway of inconceivable wisdom.

(G) Also, Son of Good Family, this essential nature of all dharmas<sup>206</sup> always abides and never changes whether buddhas come forth into the world or do not come forth into the world. It is not through acquiring this dharma that they are designated as "*tathāgatas*." Even all those who pursue the Two Vehicles practice are equally able to acquire this dharma that is free of discriminating thought.

(H) Furthermore, Son of Good Family, you should behold the measurelessness of our physical signs, the measurelessness of our wisdom, the measurelessness of our lands, the measurelessness of our skillful means, the measurelessness of our light auras,<sup>207</sup> and also the measurelessness of our pure voices. It is only fitting that you should now perfect these phenomena yourself.

(I) Additionally, Son of Good Family, you have just now acquired this one Dharma light,<sup>208</sup> namely that all dharmas are unproduced and devoid of any differentiating distinctions.<sup>209</sup> Son of Good Family, the Dharma light that the Tathāgatas have acquired is possessed of so countless many circumstances it enters, so countless many implementations, and so countless many permutations that, even in hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas, one could still never succeed in knowing them all. You should cultivate and perfect this dharma.

(J) Also, Son of Good Family, as you contemplate throughout the ten directions the many different distinctions in the immeasurably many lands, the immeasurably many beings, and the immeasurably many dharmas, you should penetrate and comprehend them all in accordance with reality.

Son of the Buddha, the Buddhas, the Bhagavats, bestow upon these bodhisattvas just so countlessly many gateways to the generation of knowledge, thus enabling them to generate countless and boundlessly many different works arising from their knowledge.

11. THE IMPORTANCE OF BUDDHAS' APPEARING TO 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVAS

(K) Son of the Buddha, if the Buddhas did not bestow on these bodhisattvas these gateways to the generation of knowledge, they would otherwise straightaway enter final nirvāṇa and abandon all of their works carried out for the benefit of beings. It is because the Buddhas bestow on them just so countlessly and boundlessly many gateways for the generation of wisdom that the wisdom-implementing works these bodhisattvas then generate in but a single mind-moment become so numerous that all of the practices they have cultivated from the time of bringing forth their initial resolve all the way on through to the seventh ground could not even equal a hundredth part, and so forth until we come to their being in aggregate unable to equal even a single part in a hundred thousand *koṭis* of *nayutas* of parts and, in this same way, unable to equal even a single part in an *asaṃkhyeya* of parts, in a *kalā* of parts, in the highest number of parts reachable by calculation, in the highest number of parts describable by analogy, or even in an *upaniṣad*'s number of parts.

12. WHY 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICES ARE SO MEASURELESS

And why is this? Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva formerly employed but one single body in developing his practice. Now, in coming to dwell on this ground, he acquires countless bodies, countless voices, and measureless wisdom while also taking on countless rebirths whereby he engages in the purification of countless pure lands, teaches countless beings, makes offerings to countless buddhas, enters countless gateways into the Dharma, equips himself with countless sorts of spiritual superknowledges, becomes possessed of countless different *bodhimaṇḍa* congregations, abides in countless different sorts of physical, verbal, and mental deeds, and accumulates all of the bodhisattva practices, accomplishing all of this by relying on the dharma of immovability.

13. THIS BODHISATTVA'S PRACTICES LIKENED TO SAILING OUT ONTO THE OCEAN

Son of the Buddha, in this, he is comparable to someone who boards a ship wishing to set sail out onto the great ocean. Before

he has actually reached the ocean, he must tax his strength by devoting much deliberate effort to this end. If he manages to make his way out to sea, he then need only accord with the prevailing winds in continuing to travel along, doing so with no further requirement of human exertion.

Then, due to having finally reached the great ocean, the distance he can then travel in but a single day becomes so great that, were one to compare it with his progress before reaching the ocean, it could not be matched by even a hundred years of those previous methods.

Son of the Buddha, so too it is with bodhisattva *mahāsattva*. Once he has accumulated such a vast store of roots of goodness and sets sail in the ship of the Great Vehicle out onto the ocean of bodhisattva practices, then, in but a single mind-moment, he is able to employ effortlessly implemented knowledge to proceed so far into the realm of the cognition of all-knowledge that his progress then could not be rivaled by even countless hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas of his former deliberately effortful practices.

#### 14. THE BODHISATTVA'S CONTEMPLATION OF BUDDHA'S ALL-KNOWLEDGE

(1) Son of the Buddha, by using effortlessly manifest awakened intelligence produced by great skillful means and cleverly invoked knowledge, the bodhisattva dwelling on the eighth ground contemplates the realm in which the cognition of all-knowledge is implemented.

#### 15. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THE ARISING AND DESTRUCTION OF WORLDS

In particular, he contemplates the creation of worlds and the destruction of worlds and thus knows that they are created from the accumulation of these particular sorts of karmic deeds, that they are destroyed through the exhaustion of the effects of these particular sorts of karmic deeds, knows when their creation phase occurs, knows when their destruction phase occurs, knows how long their creation phase endures, and knows how long their destruction phase endures. He knows all of these things in accordance with reality.

#### 16. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THE FOUR ELEMENTAL PHASES

He also knows with respect to the sphere of the earth-element its character on a small scale, its character on a large scale, its character when manifest on an immeasurable scale, and its character in its different manifestations. So too does he know of the spheres of

the water, fire, and wind elements their character on a small scale, their character on a large scale, their character on an immeasurable scale, and their character in their different manifestations.

17. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF ATOMS' MANIFESTATIONS IN WORLDS AND BEINGS

So too does he know of the atoms their character as minutely manifest, their character in their different manifestations, and their character in their different manifestations when manifest on an immeasurable scale. He knows of whichever worlds what constitutes their entire accumulation of atoms as well as the character of those atoms' different manifestations, knowing all of these phenomena in accordance with reality.

So too does he know of whichever world, how many such atoms constitute each of its elemental spheres of earth, water, fire, and wind, how many such atoms form all of their precious things, how many such atoms constitute the bodies of all the beings there, and how many such atoms form the physical mass of those lands, knowing all of these phenomena in accordance with reality.

So too does he know of those beings, both of those who are physically large and of those who are physically small, how many such atoms collectively compose their bodies, knowing this as well of the bodies of the hell-dwellers, the bodies of the animals, the bodies of the hungry ghosts, the bodies of the *asuras*, the bodies of the devas, and the bodies of the humans, knowing of each of them of how many such atoms they are composed.

He acquires just such knowledge as this whereby he knows even of atoms their different sorts of manifestations.

18. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THE THREE REALMS OF EXISTENCE

So too, he knows of the desire realm, the form realm, and the formless realm the circumstances of their creation, knows of the desire realm, the form realm, and the formless realm the circumstances of their destruction, knows of the desire realm, the form realm, and the formless realm their character on a small scale, their character on a large scale, their character when manifest on an immeasurable scale, and their character in their different manifestations.

He acquires just such knowledge as this whereby he contemplates the different manifestations within the three realms of existence.

19. HIS APPLICATION OF KNOWLEDGE IN ADAPTIVE BIRTHS TO TEACH BEINGS

Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva also brings forth the light of knowledge by resort to which he teaches beings. In particular,

he thereby becomes thoroughly aware of the different physical bodies of beings, thoroughly distinguishes the character of these beings' physical bodies, and thoroughly contemplates the stations of rebirth into which these beings are born. He then manifests bodies for them in ways adapted to what is appropriate for them, whereupon he then teaches them and brings them to maturation.

This bodhisattva employs his light of knowledge to manifest the taking on of rebirths everywhere throughout an entire great trichiliocosm, doing so in a manner adapted to the differences in beings' bodies and resolute convictions.

So too, everywhere throughout the worlds within two or three great trichiliocosms, within a hundred thousand great trichiliocosms, and even within ineffably many great trichiliocosms, he manifests this taking on of births in a manner adapted to the differences in beings' bodies and resolute convictions.

Because this bodhisattva has perfected wisdom such as this, even as his body remains motionless within a single buddha land, he manifests his bodies everywhere, doing so in the midst of assembled congregations in up to an ineffably great number of buddha lands.

(M) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva, adapting to all of the different variations in beings' bodies, minds, and resolute convictions, manifests his own bodies in the midst of the assembled congregations within those buddha lands. In particular, within assemblies of *śramaṇas*, he appears in the form of a *śramaṇa*, within assemblies of brahmins, he appears in the form of a brahmin, and within assemblies of *kṣatriyas*, he appears in the form of a *kṣatriya*. He appears in this same manner within assemblies of *vaiśyas*, within assemblies of *śūdras*, within assemblies of householders, within assemblies in the Heaven of the Four Heavenly Kings, within assemblies in the Heaven of the Thirty-three, within assemblies in the Yāma Heaven, within assemblies in the Tuṣita Heaven, within assemblies in the Transformation of Bliss Heaven, within assemblies in the Paranirmita Vaśavartin Heaven, within assemblies of *māras*, within assemblies in the Brahma Heaven, and so forth on up to his manifestations that appear within assemblies in the Akaniṣṭha Heaven. In each of these cases, he manifests in a form adapted to the particular sorts of beings there.

Also, for the sake of those who should most readily achieve liberation through someone manifesting in the form of a *śrāvaka*-disciple, he then manifests in the form of a *śrāvaka*-disciple. For the sake of those who should most readily achieve liberation

through someone manifesting in the form of a *pratyekabuddha*, he then manifests in the form of a *pratyekabuddha*. For the sake of those who should most readily achieve liberation through someone manifesting in the form of a bodhisattva, he then manifests in the form of a bodhisattva. And for the sake of those who should most readily achieve liberation through someone manifesting in the form of a *tathāgata*, he then manifests in the form of a *tathāgata*.

Son of the Buddha, it is in this way that the bodhisattva manifests bodies in all of these ineffably many buddha lands, doing so in accordance with the distinct differences in beings' resolute convictions.

20. HIS TRANSCENDENCE OF DISCRIMINATIONS & KNOWLEDGE OF 10 BODY TYPES

(IN) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva has completely abandoned all discriminations associated with the perceptions of bodies and abides in the awareness of uniform equality in such things.

This bodhisattva knows:

- The bodies of beings;
- The bodies of lands;
- The bodies received as karmic retribution;
- The bodies of *śrāvaka*-disciples;
- The bodies of *pratyekabuddhas*;
- The bodies of bodhisattvas;
- The bodies of *tathāgatas*;
- The knowledge body;
- The Dharma body;
- And empty space bodies.

a. THE BODHISATTVA'S MANIFESTATION OF DIFFERENT BODIES FOR BEINGS

This bodhisattva, knowing beings' resolute convictions, is able to use a being's body to form his own body. So too is he able to turn it into the body of a land, a body received as karmic retribution, or any of the other sorts of bodies, up to and including an empty space body.

He is also able, knowing beings' resolute convictions, to turn the body of a land into his own body. So too is he able to turn it into the body of a being, a body received as karmic retribution, or any of the other sorts of bodies, up to and including an empty space body.

He is also able, knowing what pleases the minds of beings, to turn a karmic retribution body into his own body. So too is he able to turn it into the body of a being, the body of a land, or any of the other sorts of bodies up to and including an empty space body.

He is also able, knowing beings' resolute convictions, to turn his own body into the body of another being, the physical body of a land, and so forth on up to and including an empty space body.

So it is that, adapting to beings' different resolute convictions, he then employs these sorts of bodies to manifest for them just these very sorts of physical forms.

b. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF BEINGS' BODIES

This bodhisattva knows beings' bodies associated with the accumulation of karmic actions, their karmic retribution bodies, their bodies associated with the afflictions, their form-realm bodies, and their formless-realm bodies.

c. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE BODIES OF LANDS

He also knows with regard to the bodies of lands:

Their characteristics when small;  
 Their characteristics when large;  
 Their characteristics when immeasurable;  
 Their characteristics when defiled;  
 Their characteristics when pure;  
 Their characteristics when vast;  
 Their characteristics when inverted;  
 Their characteristics when upright;  
 Their characteristics when they are universally pervasive;  
 And their different sorts of characteristics when existing as parts of a spatially distributed network.

d. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF RETRIBUTION, 2 VEHICLES, AND BODHISATTVA BODIES

He knows with respect to bodies received as karmic retribution, the distinctions in the conventional names applied to them and knows with respect to the bodies of *śrāvaka*-disciples, the bodies of *pratyekabuddhas*, and the bodies of bodhisattvas, the distinctions in the conventional names applied to them.

e. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF TATHĀGATAS' BODIES

He knows with respect to the bodies of *tathāgatas*, their possession of:

Bodhi bodies;  
 Bodies associated with vows;  
 Transformationally produced bodies;  
 Bodies sustained through their powers;  
 Bodies graced with the major marks and subsidiary signs;  
 Bodies possessed of awe-inspiring strength;  
 Mind-generated bodies;

Merit bodies;  
 The Dharma body;  
 And the knowledge body.

f. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE KNOWLEDGE BODY

He knows with respect to the knowledge body:

Its characteristic of skillful deliberation;  
 Its characteristic of selective judgment accordant with reality;  
 Its characteristics associated with the practices leading to the fruits of the path;  
 Its characteristics associated with the distinctions between what is worldly and what is world-transcending;  
 Its characteristics associated with distinctions in the Three Vehicles;  
 Its characteristics when shared;  
 Its characteristics when exclusive;  
 Its characteristics when associated with emancipation;  
 Its characteristics when associated with an unemancipated state;  
 Its characteristics when associated with the stages of the learner;  
 And its characteristics when associated with the stage of those beyond learning.

g. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE DHARMA BODY

He knows with respect to the Dharma body its characteristic of uniform equality and its characteristic of indestructibility, knows the characteristics associated with the differentiation in conventional names when adapted to times and when adapted to mundane circumstances, knows the characteristic distinctions in the dharmas associated with beings as opposed to those associated with non-beings, and knows the characteristic distinctions in the dharmas associated with the Buddhas, the Dharma, and the Ārya Sangha.

h. THE BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE EMPTY SPACE BODY

He knows with respect to the empty space body its characteristic of immeasurability, its characteristic of universal pervasion, its characteristic of formlessness, its characteristic of non-differentiation, its characteristic of boundlessness, and its characteristic of revealing the existence of form bodies.

21. THE BODHISATTVA'S ACQUISITION OF TEN KINDS OF SOVEREIGN MASTERY

{0} Son of the Buddha, having completely developed such knowledge with respect to bodies as this, this bodhisattva acquires:



Sovereign mastery in lifespan;  
 Sovereign mastery of mind;  
 Sovereign mastery in wealth;  
 Sovereign mastery in karmic deeds;  
 Sovereign mastery in births;  
 Sovereign mastery in vows;  
 Sovereign mastery in resolute faith;<sup>210</sup>  
 Sovereign mastery in psychic power;  
 Sovereign mastery in knowledge;  
 And sovereign mastery of the Dharma.

(P) Due to having acquired these ten types of sovereign mastery, he then becomes one whose knowledge is inconceivable, one whose knowledge is measureless, one whose knowledge is vast, and one whose knowledge is invincible.

## 22. TEN CHARACTERISTIC ASPECTS OF THIS EIGHTH GROUND BODHISATTVA

Having achieved just such penetrating comprehension as this and having achieved just such consummate realization as this, he thus becomes:

One who is absolutely free of fault in physical karmic actions,  
 free of fault in verbal deeds, and free of fault in mental deeds;  
 One in whom all physical, verbal, and mental karmic acts are  
 carried forth in accordance with knowledge;  
 One in whom the *prajñāpāramitā* is dominant;  
 One in whom the great compassion has become the foremost  
 priority;  
 One whose expedient means are skillful;  
 One who is well able to make distinctions;  
 One who is excellent in bringing forth great vows;  
 One who is protected by the power of the Buddha;  
 One who always diligently cultivates knowledge directed  
 toward benefiting beings;  
 And one who dwells everywhere throughout the boundlessly  
 many different worlds.

Son of the Buddha, to state this in terms of the most essential point, the bodhisattva dwelling on this Ground of Immovability is able to gather all dharmas of the Buddha in all that he does through his physical, verbal, and mental deeds.

## 23. TEN TYPES OF POWER IN WHICH THIS BODHISATTVA IS WELL ESTABLISHED

Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground:

Becomes well established in the power of the resolute intentions<sup>211</sup> because none of the afflictions function in him;  
 Becomes well established in the power of the supreme mind through never departing from the path;  
 Becomes well established in the power of the great compassion through never relinquishing his benefiting of beings;  
 Becomes well established in the power of the great kindness through striving to rescue and protect everyone abiding in all worlds;  
 Becomes well established in power of the *dhāraṇīs* through never forgetting any dharma;  
 Becomes well established in power of eloquence through skillfully contemplating and distinguishing all dharmas;  
 Becomes well established in the power of the spiritual super-knowledges through going forth everywhere throughout the boundlessly many worlds;  
 Becomes well established in the power of the great vows through never relinquishing any of the bodhisattva endeavors;  
 Becomes well established in the power of the *pāramitās* through perfecting all dharmas of the Buddha;  
 And acquires the power of being protected and borne in mind by the Tathāgatas through his being directed toward the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.

This bodhisattva who has acquired such powers of knowledge as these is able to manifest all endeavors that are to be accomplished while remaining free of fault in all those endeavors.

#### 24. THE TEN NAMES OF THIS EIGHTH BODHISATTVA GROUND

(Q) Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva ground of knowledge:

Is known as the Ground of Immovability because no one is able to obstruct or overcome him;  
 Is known as the ground of irreversibility because his wisdom never retreats;  
 Is known as the ground that is difficult to acquire because no one in the world is able to fathom it;  
 Is known as the ground of the pure youth<sup>212</sup> because he has abandoned all faults;  
 Is known as the ground of birth because he possesses sovereign mastery in doing whatever he pleases;  
 Is known as the ground of completion because there is nothing more to be done;  
 Is known as the ultimate ground because his wisdom has become resolutely decisive;

Is known as the ground of transformations because he achieves complete success in whatever he wishes to do;  
 Is known as the ground of sustenance through power because others are unable to move him;  
 And is known as the ground of effortlessness because, earlier on, he has already achieved complete development.

25. ADDITIONAL 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA QUALITIES AND PRACTICE ASPECTS

(R) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva who has developed wisdom such as this gains entry into the domain of the Buddhas, becomes illuminated by the Buddha's merit, and accords with the Buddha's awe-inspiring deportment. With the direct manifestation of the realms of the Buddhas, he is always protected and borne in mind by the Tathāgatas. Brahmā, Śakra, the Four Heavenly Kings, and the Vajra-wielding protectors constantly follow and protect him. He never leaves the great samādhis and is able to manifest countless different sorts of bodies each and every one of which is possessed of immense strength. As karmically generated effects, he acquires spiritual superknowledges and samādhis in which he has sovereign mastery.<sup>213</sup> Wherever there are beings amenable to being taught, he manifests the realization of right enlightenment.

Son of the Buddha, it is in this way that the bodhisattva enters the assembly of those who abide in the Great Vehicle, acquires great spiritual superknowledges, emits immensely radiant light, and is unimpeded in entering the Dharma realm. He knows the different variations among the worlds. He manifests all of the magnificent meritorious qualities, has sovereign mastery in whatever he directs his mind to, is well able to bring forth an utterly penetrating comprehension of both the past and the future, and is able to everywhere overcome all of the paths of Māra's deviance. He deeply enters the realms in which the Tathāgatas course and cultivates the bodhisattva practices in countless lands. It is because he has been able to acquire the dharma of irreversibility that he is described as dwelling on the Ground of Immovability.

26. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS

(S) Son of the Buddha, having come to dwell on this Ground of Immovability, this bodhisattva, through the power of samādhi, is then always able to directly see measurelessly many buddhas. He never relinquishes his practice of serving and making offerings to them. In each and every kalpa and in each and every world, this bodhisattva sees measurelessly many hundreds of buddhas, measurelessly many thousands of buddhas, and so forth on up to

measurelessly many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddhas, all of whom he reveres, venerates, serves, and presents with offerings. He offers up and bestows upon them all amenities facilitating the sustenance of their lives.

27. THE BODHISATTVA'S FURTHER ACQUISITION OF BUDDHAS' DHARMA LIGHT

Wherever the Buddhas dwell, he acquires the Tathāgatas' treasures of extremely profound Dharma and receives from them measureless Dharma light pertaining to the differences among worlds and other such phenomena. Should anyone approach him and challenge him by posing difficult questions regarding any of the distinctions among worlds or other such matters, no one can prevail over him.

28. THE RADIANCE OF GOOD ROOTS LIKENED TO A SAGE KING'S CROWN

He continues on in this way passing through a period of measurelessly many hundreds of kalpas, measurelessly many thousands of kalpas, and so on up to measurelessly many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas during which his roots of goodness become ever more radiant in their purity like the real gold that is fashioned into a jeweled crown to be placed on the head of the sage king ruling over the continent of Jambudvīpa. It is of a sort that none of the adornments possessed by any of his government ministers or any of his people could ever rival it.

So too it is with all the roots of goodness possessed by the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground, for they are such that they could never be rivaled by any roots of goodness possessed by followers of the Two Vehicles or by bodhisattvas dwelling on any of the first seven grounds.

Due to dwelling on this ground, the light of his great wisdom is able to everywhere extinguish the darkness of beings' afflictions. This is because he is well able to open up and expound upon the gateways to wisdom.

29. THIS BODHISATTVA'S RADIANCE LIKE THAT OF A BRAHMA HEAVEN KING

Son of the Buddha, just as that lord of a thousand worlds, the king of the Great Brahma Heaven, is able to everywhere extend his mind of kindness and everywhere send forth light that fills up a thousand worlds, so too it is with the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground. He is able to send forth light that illuminates worlds as numerous as the atoms in hundreds of myriads of buddha lands that extinguishes the flames of afflictions of the beings therein and causes them to experience clarity and coolness.

## 30. THE 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S FOCUS ON THE SKILLFUL MEANS PĀRAMITĀ

Among the ten *pāramitās*, this bodhisattva is especially superior in his practice of the *pāramitā* of vows. It is not that he does not practice the other *pāramitās*. Rather, he simply accords them an amount of emphasis corresponding to his own strengths and to what is fitting.

## 31. VAJRAGARBHĀ'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 8TH GROUND BODHISATTVA

This has been a summary discussion of all bodhisattva *mahāsattvas'* eighth ground, the Ground of Immovability. Were one to speak of it extensively, one could pursue the discussion for measurelessly many kalpas and yet still be unable to find the end of it.

## a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE

Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* dwelling on this ground often serves as a king of the Great Brahma Heaven, the lord over a thousand worlds, who, supreme in his sovereign mastery, is well able to discourse on any principle and is able to bestow the path of the *pāramitās* on *śrāvaka*-disciples, *pratyekabuddhas*, and bodhisattvas. Should anyone challenge his explanations of the differences in world realms, no one is able to prevail over him.

## b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS

In his practice of giving, pleasing words, beneficial actions, and joint endeavors as well as any of the other such endeavors he pursues, he never departs from mindfulness of the Buddha, and so forth on up to his never departing from mindfulness of the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.

## c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS

He also has this thought: "I should become one who serves these beings as a leader, as one who is supreme," and so forth until we come to "as one who relies on the cognition of all-knowledge."

## d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS

If this bodhisattva brings forth the power of great vigor, then, in but a moment, he acquires a number of *samādhis* as numerous as the atoms in the worlds contained within a hundred myriads of great trichiliocosms. And so it goes on up to his then being able to manifest a following of bodhisattvas serving in his retinue as numerous as the atoms in all the worlds in a hundred myriads of great trichiliocosms.

[1] If this bodhisattva chooses to avail himself of the power of his especially supreme vows, he becomes able then to freely

manifest these phenomena in numbers well beyond these, such that one would never be able to count them even in hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas.

32. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, wishing to proclaim his meaning once more, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

Having on seven grounds cultivated expedients and wisdom, having thoroughly assembled path-assisting practices and great vow power, having become supported by those most honored among men, and seeking the supreme knowledge, he ascends to the eighth ground. {12}

He perfects meritorious qualities,<sup>214</sup> is constant in kindness and pity, possesses wisdom as vast as empty space, and is then able by hearing Dharma, to initiate the power of resolute decisiveness and enter the quiescent unproduced-dharmas patience. {13}

He knows dharmas as unproduced, unarisen, signless, as uncreated, undestroyed, endless, not undergoing transformation, as beyond existence, uniformly equal, cutting short discriminations, as stepping beyond the range of thought, and as abiding like space. {14}

Having perfected this patience, he transcends frivolous theorizing, abides in very deep, motionless, and constant quiescence such as no one in the entire world could ever comprehend, and such as abandons all thoughts, signs, grasping, and attachment. {15}

Dwelling on this ground, he makes no discriminations, like the bhikshu who has entered the cessation absorption, like one in a river-fording dream who, awakening, sees it is nonexistent, and like one who, born in the Brahma Heaven, severs base desires. {16}

By power of original vows, he receives encouragement and guidance, is praised for gaining supreme patience, is given a crown anointing, and is told, "The many Buddha dharmas that we possess, you have now still not acquired. You must bring forth diligent vigor. {17}

Although you have already extinguished the afflictions' fires, the flaming afflictions of the world's beings still blaze on. You must recall your original vow to help beings cross beyond, and influence them all to cultivate the causes leading to liberation. {18}

True constancy of Dharmas' nature and separation from thoughts are of the sort that even adherents of the Two Vehicles can realize. Hence it is not due to this that we are the World Honored Ones, rather it is solely due to extremely deep and unimpeded knowledge." {19}

In this way, those worthy of the offerings of men and devas bestow this wisdom on him, causing him to deeply contemplate it. Thus they completely develop boundlessly many buddha dharmas and, in a single moment, step beyond their many previous practices. (20)

When the bodhisattva dwells on this ground of sublime knowledge, he then acquires vast spiritual superknowledges' powers whereby, in a moment, his transformation bodies pervade the ten directions as he becomes like a ship gone out to sea, carried across by the wind. (21)

The mind effortlessly avails itself of the power of knowledge, entirely knows the creation, destruction, and abiding of lands, all of the differences in each of the different sorts of realms, and is able to utterly know them when small, large, or boundless. (22)

The four great elements throughout the trichiliocosms' worlds, the different sorts of bodies of the beings in the six rebirth destinies, as well as even the atoms forming the many jewels— with his knowledge, he contemplates all of these without exception. (23)

This bodhisattva is also able to know all of the types of bodies and take on the same forms as theirs for the sake of teaching beings. In the countless lands with their many different types, he manifests his forms for them, with none wherein he is not everywhere present. (24)

Like the sun and moon that, abiding in space, display their reflections in all of the bodies of water, he abides in the Dharma realm, remaining motionless, even as, adapting to beings' minds, he manifests reflections in this same way. (25)

Adapting to their minds' predilections<sup>215</sup> that differ in each case, he manifests bodies in the presence of all beings, doing so with bodies of *śrāvakas*, *pratyekabuddhas*, bodhisattvas, or buddhas, having no type of body that he does not manifest. (26)

Bodies of beings, bodies of lands, karmic retribution bodies, bodies of the various *āryas*, the knowledge body, the Dharma body, and the space-like body, all uniformly equal in character— he manifests them everywhere for the sake of beings. (27)

With ten *ārya* knowledges,<sup>216</sup> his contemplation extends everywhere. He also adapts kindness and compassion to doing many works, entirely develops all dharmas of a buddha and, in upholding moral precepts, is as immovable as Mount Sumeru. (28)

Completely developed in ten powers, he cannot be moved or shaken, cannot be turned back by any of Māra's hordes, is held in mindfully protected by buddhas, is revered by deva kings, and is constantly served and guarded by traceless vajra-bearers. (29)

The meritorious qualities of those on this ground are boundless, indescribable even in thousands of myriads of *koṭis* of kalpas. He continues by offerings to buddhas to skillfully gain in radiance that becomes like that of a crown adorning the head of the King. <sup>(30)</sup>

The bodhisattva dwelling on this eighth ground often serves as a Brahma Heaven king, lord of a thousand realms, who expounds endlessly on the Three Vehicles, everywhere shines forth his light of kindness, and dispels the afflictions of the many. <sup>(31)</sup>

The samādhis he acquires in but a single moment equal in number the atoms in a hundred myriads of worlds. So too is the number of endeavors that he accomplishes, and yet, through vow power, he may even manifest yet more. <sup>(32)</sup>

The bodhisattva's eighth ground, the Ground of Immovability has thus been summarily explained by me for the sake of all of you. Were one to pursue a vast, sequentially presented analysis of this, even speaking on it for a *koṭi* of kalpas, one still could never finish. <sup>(33)</sup>



## PART NINE

### The Excellent Intelligence Ground

#### I. THE NINTH GROUND: THE EXCELLENT INTELLIGENCE GROUND

##### 1. THE NINTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST

Once the eighth bodhisattva ground's explanation had concluded, the Tathāgata manifested great spiritual superknowledges' powers, causing tremors in an inconceivable and incalculable number of *koṭis* of lands throughout the ten directions. <sup>(1)</sup>

The body of that all-knowing and seeing Supremely Honored One then sent forth everywhere immensely radiant light that illuminated with dazzling brilliance all those countless lands, causing all beings therein to be filled with happiness. <sup>(2)</sup>

The incalculably many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of bodhisattvas simultaneously ascended into space where they remained and presented offerings superior even to the devas' marvelous gifts to he whose proclamations are the most superior of all. <sup>(3)</sup>

The Great Vaśavartin Heaven King and the Vaśavartin devas then all together and with unified minds felt measureless joy. They each then presented all different sorts of the many types of gifts as offerings to the extremely deep ocean of meritorious qualities. <sup>(4)</sup>

A thousand myriads *koṭis* of celestial nymphs were also present who, filled with joyous exultation in body and mind, each played measurelessly many kinds of music as offerings to the great guiding teacher among humans. <sup>(5)</sup>

Then the many sorts of music played simultaneously a hundred thousand myriads of *koṭis* of countless musical variations that, by the awe-inspiring spiritual power of the Well Gone One, uttered praises with sublime voices, saying: <sup>(6)</sup>

“The quiescent and pliant one free of defilements or injuriousness skillfully cultivates whichever ground he enters. Possessed of a mind like space, he goes forth to the ten directions, broadly proclaiming the Buddha's path to awaken the many beings. <sup>(7)</sup>

“In all places throughout the heavens and among men, he manifests incomparably marvelous adornments arising from the meritorious qualities of the Tathāgata that cause those who observe them to delight in Buddha's wisdom. <sup>(8)</sup>

“Without leaving that single land, he goes to visit the many lands. In this, he is like the moon everywhere illuminating the entire world. Even as his voice’s conceptual thoughts have all become quiescent,<sup>217</sup> like echoes in a valley, there is no place where they do not resound. (9)

“Where there are beings of lesser resolve, he expounds for them the practices of *śrāvaka*-disciples. If their minds are bright, sharp and pleased by the *pratyeka* vehicle,<sup>218</sup> then he discourses for them on the path of that intermediate vehicle. (10)

“For the kind and compassionate who delight in beneficence, he explains for them the deeds practiced by bodhisattvas. For those with the resolve to acquire the most superior wisdom, he shows them the unsurpassable Dharma of the Tathāgata. (11)

“In this, he is like a conjurer in his creation of many phenomena wherein none of those forms or features are real. So too it is with these conjurations born of this bodhisattva’s wisdom. Though showing all, they transcend existence and nonexistence.” (12)

Having thus sung with a thousand myriad beautiful sounds these songs praising the Buddha, they all then stood there in silence. Liberation Moon then spoke, saying: “This congregation is now pure. Please expound now on the path as practiced on the ninth ground.” (13)

## 2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE NINTH GROUND’S EXPLANATION

(A) At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva informed Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, saying:

### 3. TEN EARNESTLY PURSUED ENDEAVORS ENABLING NINTH GROUND ACCESS

O Son of the Buddha. Here we have the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* who, resorting to such immeasurably vast knowledge as this, has pursued reflective meditative contemplations and has additionally sought:

To seek out ever more supreme realizations of quiescent liberation;

To further cultivate the wisdom of the Tathāgata;

To access the secret dharmas of the Tathāgata;

To contemplate the nature of inconceivably great knowledge;

To purify all gateways to *dhāraṇīs* and *samādhis*;

To become equipped with the great spiritual superknowledges;

To enter the different sorts of worlds;

To cultivate the powers, fearlessnesses, and dharmas exclusive to the Buddhas;

To accord with all buddhas in turning the wheel of the Dharma;

And to never relinquish his greatly compassionate original vows.

It is he who then succeeds in entering the bodhisattva's ninth ground, the Ground of Excellent Intelligence.

4. THIS BODHISATVA'S TEN TYPES OF REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF KARMA

{B} Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva* dwelling on this Ground of Excellent Intelligence knows in accordance with reality:

The effects of practicing<sup>219</sup> dharmas that are good, bad, and karmically neutral;

The effects of practicing dharmas either associated with or free of the contaminants;

The effects of practicing worldly dharmas and world-transcending dharmas;

The effects of practicing dharmas that are conceivable and dharmas that are inconceivable;

The effects of practicing the dharmas that are definite and the dharmas that are indefinite;

The effects of practicing *śrāvaka* dharmas and dharmas of *pratyekabuddhas*;

The effects of practicing the bodhisattva practice dharmas;

The effects of practicing dharmas of the Tathāgata's ground;

The effects of practicing conditioned dharmas;

And the effects of practicing unconditioned dharmas.

5. HIS TEN TYPES OF REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF ENTANGLING THICKETS

{C} This bodhisattva uses such wisdom to know in accordance with reality the entangling thickets<sup>220</sup> in beings' minds, specifically knowing:<sup>221</sup>

The entangling thicket of the afflictions;

The entangling thicket of karmic actions;

The entangling thicket of the faculties;

The entangling thicket of resolute beliefs;<sup>222</sup>

The entangling thicket of the sense realms;<sup>223</sup>

The entangling thicket of resolute intentions;<sup>224</sup>

The entangling thicket of latent tendencies;<sup>225</sup>

The entangling thicket of births;<sup>226</sup>

The entangling thicket of the continuity of karmic propensities;<sup>227</sup>

And the entangling thicket associated with the differences among the three groups of beings.<sup>228</sup>

6. TEN TYPES OF REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF BEINGS' MENTAL ASPECTS

{C} This bodhisattva knows in accordance with reality all of the different sorts of characteristics of beings' minds, specifically knowing:

The characteristic of arising with diverse character;  
 The characteristic of swift transformation;  
 The characteristic of either being destroyed or undestroyed;  
 The characteristic of having no physical form;<sup>229</sup>  
 The characteristic of becoming boundless;<sup>230</sup>  
 The characteristic of purity;  
 The characteristic of being either defiled or undefiled;  
 The characteristic of being either held in bondage or freed of  
 bondage;  
 The characteristic of being deceptive about its endeavors;  
 And the characteristic of manifesting in accordance with the  
 destinies of rebirth.

So it is that he knows in accordance with reality such characteristics numbering in the hundreds of thousands of myriads of *koṭis*, knowing characteristics that in number extend to the point of incalculability.

#### 7. HIS REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF THE AFFLICTIONS' CHARACTERISTICS

(E) So too does he know all of the different characteristics of the afflictions, specifically knowing:

Their characteristic of following one long and far;  
 Their characteristic of possessing boundlessly many bases for  
 their arising;  
 Their characteristic of accompanying [the mind] in their arising  
 and thus not being abandoned;  
 Their characteristic of possessing the same quality in both their  
 latent and arisen states;  
 Their characteristic of being either associated with mind or dis-  
 associated from mind;  
 Their characteristic of abiding in a manner corresponding to the  
 destiny of rebirth one enters;  
 Their characteristic of differing in each of the three realms of  
 existence;  
 The characteristic of craving, views, ignorance, and pride to be  
 as calamitous as deeply penetrating arrows;  
 And their characteristic of uninterrupted continuity in serving  
 as causes and conditions of the three categories of karmic  
 actions.

Briefly stated, he knows in accordance with reality all such characteristics, thus knowing even up to eighty-four thousand such characteristics.

## 8. HIS REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF CHARACTERISTICS OF KARMIC ACTIONS

(F) So too does he know the characteristics of all of the different sorts of karmic actions, specifically knowing:

- Their characteristic of being either good, bad, or neutral;
- Their characteristic of being either manifest or not manifest;
- Their characteristic of arising in association with and not separate from mind;
- Their characteristic of being, due to their very nature, extinguished in every *kṣaṇa* even as there occurs the sequential accumulation of karmic fruits that are never lost;
- Their characteristic of involving or not involving karmic retribution;
- Their characteristic of involving the undergoing of multiple sorts of karmic retributions as when black actions are rewarded with black retributions, and so forth,<sup>231</sup>
- Their characteristic of being comparable to immeasurably vast farm fields [in which their karmic causes are planted],<sup>232</sup>
- Their characteristic of possessing differences as performed by the foolish common people and by the Āryas;
- Their characteristic of involving the undergoing of their retribution in the present life, in the immediately ensuing rebirth, or in some subsequent life;
- And their characteristic of being either definite or indefinite as determined by their association with any of the Vehicles or non-association with any of the Vehicles.

Briefly stated, he knows in accordance with reality all such characteristics, thus knowing even up to eighty-four thousand such characteristics.

## 9. HIS REALITY-BASED KNOWLEDGE OF CHARACTERISTICS OF BEINGS' FACULTIES

(G) So too does he know the characteristics of the various faculties, specifically knowing:

- Their characteristic of being either weak, middling, or superb;
- Their characteristic of possessing or not possessing distinct differences between the past and the future;
- Their characteristic of existing in association with what is either superior, middling, or inferior;
- Their characteristic of arising in association with and being inseparable from the afflictions;
- Their characteristic of being either definite or indefinite as determined by their association with any of the Vehicles or non-association with any of the Vehicles;

Their characteristic of being entirely ripened and trained to the point of pliancy;

Their characteristic of vulnerability, as befits the state of the individual web of faculties, to transformation and destruction;

Their characteristic of becoming so especially superb that they are insuperable by anyone;

Their characteristic of differing as regards their reversibility or irreversibility;

And their characteristic of possessing differences in the degree to which they continue even distantly to accompany one in their arising.

Briefly stated, he knows in accordance with reality all such characteristics, thus knowing even up to eighty-four thousand such characteristics.

#### 10. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF BELIEFS, SENSE REALMS, AND RESOLUTE INTENTIONS

So too does he know:

With respect to resolute beliefs,<sup>233</sup> the degree to which they may be either weak, middling, or superior;

With respect to sense realms,<sup>234</sup> the degree to which they may be either weak, middling, or superior;

With respect to resolute intentions,<sup>235</sup> the degree to which they may be either weak, middling, or superior.

With respect to all of these matters, briefly stated, he knows all of their associated characteristics, thus knowing of each of them even up to eighty-four thousand such characteristics.

#### 11. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THE LATENT TENDENCIES' CHARACTERISTICS

(H) He also knows with respect to the latent tendencies,<sup>236</sup> all of their different sorts of characteristics, specifically knowing:

Their characteristic of arising in association with resolute intentions;<sup>237</sup>

Their characteristic of arising in association with thought;

Their characteristic of differing when concomitant with mind or not concomitant with mind;

Their characteristic of following one long and far;

Their characteristic of having existed beginninglessly and thus never having been extricated;

Their characteristic of running counter to the realization of any and all of the *dhyāna* absorptions, liberations, samādhis, *samāpattis*, and spiritual superknowledges;

- Their characteristic of being what holds one in bondage to continuous rebirth within the three realms;
- Their characteristic of causing the boundlessly continuous manifestation of mind;
- Their characteristic of opening the gateway to all of the sense bases;
- Their characteristic of possessing such solidity as to be difficult to counteract;
- Their characteristic of determining success or failure in acquisition of any of the grounds as stations of the path;
- And their characteristic of being only such as may be extricated through the path of the Āryas.

12. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THE CHARACTERISTICS ASSOCIATED WITH BIRTHS

(1) He also knows with respect to the taking on of rebirths, all of their different sorts of characteristics, specifically knowing:

- The characteristic of taking on rebirths in accordance with one's karmic deeds;
- The characteristics associated with differences in the six rebirth destinies;
- The characteristics associated with differences between form realm and formless realm rebirth;
- The characteristics associated with differences between rebirths with perception and rebirths without perception;
- The characteristics associated with karmic action acting as a field, craving as moistening water, ignorance as sheltering darkness; and consciousness as a seed giving birth to the sprout of subsequent becoming;
- The characteristics of simultaneous arising and inseparability of name and form;
- The characteristic of delusion and craving to seek continued existence;
- The characteristic of beginningless desirous attachment to desire feelings and to desire rebirth;
- And the characteristic of erroneously thinking one has already escaped the desires involved in existence within the three realms.

13. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF CHARACTERISTICS OF HABITUAL KARMIC PROPENSITIES

(1) He also knows with respect to the habitual karmic propensities,<sup>238</sup> all their different sorts of characteristics, specifically knowing:

- The characteristic of differing when active or inactive;
- The characteristic of their imbued impressions to follow into the rebirth destinies;

- The characteristic of their imbued impressions to accord with beings' actions;
- The characteristic of their imbued impressions to accord with karma and afflictions;
- The characteristic of their imbued impressions to accord with what is karmically good, bad, or neutral;
- The characteristic of their imbued impressions to follow one into subsequent existences;
- The characteristic of their creation of imbued impressions to occur in a sequential manner;
- The characteristic of their imbued impressions to be associated with ceaseless afflictions that follow one afar and are not relinquished;
- The characteristic of their imbued impressions to be associated with what is substantially true or associated with what is not substantially true;
- And the characteristic of their imbued impressions to be associated with observing, listening to, and drawing close to either *śrāvaka*-disciples, *pratyekabuddhas*, bodhisattvas, or *tathāgatas*.

14. HIS KNOWLEDGE OF THOSE FIXED IN RIGHT, IN WRONG, OR UNFIXED

(K) He also knows with respect to beings the characteristics of being fixed in what is right, fixed in what is wrong, or unfixed, specifically knowing:<sup>239</sup>

- The characteristic of being fixed in what is right through the possession of right views;
- The characteristic of being fixed in what is wrong through the possession of wrong views;
- The characteristic of being unfixed in both of these respects;
- The characteristic of being fixed in what is wrong through the five heinous karmic offenses;<sup>240</sup>
- The characteristic of being fixed in what is right through the five root faculties;
- The characteristic of being unfixed in both of these respects;
- The characteristic of being fixed in what is wrong through following the eight-fold wrong path;
- The characteristic of being fixed in what is right through following what right by its very nature;
- The characteristic of being unfixed in either respect by no longer engaging in either [what is right or what is wrong], thus separating from both;
- The characteristic of being fixed in what is wrong through being deeply attached to wrong dharmas;



The characteristic of being fixed in what is right through habitual practice of the path of the Āryas;  
 And the characteristic of being unfixed in either respect through abandoning both [what is right and what is wrong].

15. HIS KNOWLEDGE-BASED ADAPTIVE TEACHING AND LIBERATION OF BEINGS

(L) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva who accords with knowledge such as this is said to dwell on the Ground of Excellent Intelligence. Having come to dwell on this ground, he completely knows all the different aspects of beings' actions, teaches and trains them, and thereby causes them to gain liberation.

Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva is well able to expound on the dharmas of the Śrāvaka-disciple Vehicle, the dharmas of the Pratyekabuddha Vehicle, the dharmas of the Bodhisattva Vehicle, and the dharmas of the ground of the Tathāgata.

Because, in all aspects of practice, he acts in accordance with such knowledge, he is able to adapt to variations in beings' faculties, natures, desires, understandings, and practices as well as to differences in their groups.<sup>241</sup> He also accords with whichever destiny they have been born into as well as with their particular afflictions, latent tendencies, karmic bonds, karmic actions and habitual karmic propensities. Having done so, he then explains the Dharma for them accordingly, thereby causing them to develop resolute belief,<sup>242</sup> to increase their wisdom, and to then achieve liberation through whichever vehicle is appropriate for them.

16. THE BODHISATTVA'S COMMAND OF FOUR TYPES OF UNIMPEDED KNOWLEDGE

(M) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva who dwells on this Ground of Excellent Intelligence becomes a great expounder of the Dharma<sup>243</sup> thoroughly equipped with the practice appropriate to an expounder of the Dharma. He is thus well able to preserve and protect the Dharma treasury of the Tathāgata.

(N) Availing himself of immeasurably vast knowledge, he brings forth the four types of unimpeded knowledge and uses the bodhisattva's command of phrasing to expound the Dharma. This bodhisattva always accords with permutations of the four kinds of unimpeded knowledge<sup>244</sup> and never abandons them even briefly. What then are those four? They are:

Unimpeded knowledge of Dharma;  
 Unimpeded knowledge of meaning;  
 Unimpeded knowledge of language;  
 And unimpeded knowledge of eloquence.

## a. TEN PERMUTATIONS OF EXPERTISE IN THE FOUR UNIMPEDED KNOWLEDGES

(O) It is through unimpeded knowledge of Dharma that this bodhisattva knows the specific characteristics of individual dharmas, through unimpeded knowledge of meaning that he knows the differentiating characteristics of dharmas, through unimpeded knowledge of language that he remains free of errors in his discourse, and through unimpeded knowledge of eloquence that his discourse is neither interrupted or exhausted.

(P) Additionally, it is through unimpeded knowledge of Dharma that he knows the nature of dharmas, through unimpeded knowledge of meaning that he knows the production and destruction of dharmas, through unimpeded knowledge of language that he establishes [the conventional designations of] all dharmas and discourses on them continuously,<sup>245</sup> and through unimpeded knowledge of eloquence that he presents boundless discourses that accord with and do no violence to [those conventional designations] he has established.

(Q) Also, it is through unimpeded knowledge of Dharma that he knows the distinctions among present dharmas, through unimpeded knowledge of meaning that he knows the distinctions among past and future dharmas, through unimpeded knowledge of language that he discourses without error on past, future, and present dharmas, and it is through unimpeded knowledge of eloquence that he discourses completely and with boundless Dharma light on each of the periods of time.

(R) Then again, it is through unimpeded knowledge of Dharma that he knows the differences among dharmas, through unimpeded knowledge of meaning that he knows the differences among meanings, through unimpeded knowledge of language that he accords with others' language in his discourse, and through unimpeded knowledge of eloquence that he adapts to others' mental dispositions.

(S) Additionally, it is through unimpeded knowledge of Dharma that he uses Dharma knowledge to know differentiating and non-differentiating aspects. It is through unimpeded knowledge of meaning that he employs comparative knowledge to know differences in accordance with reality. It is through unimpeded knowledge of language that he uses worldly knowledge to discourse on differentiating aspects. And it is through unimpeded knowledge of eloquence that he uses the knowledge of ultimate truth to discourse skillfully.

(r) Also, it is through unimpeded knowledge of Dharma that he knows dharmas' singular and indestructible character. It is through unimpeded knowledge of meaning that his knowing of the aggregates, the sense realms, the sense bases, the truths, and conditioned origination is skillful. It is through unimpeded knowledge of language that he is able to employ in his discourse a beautifully sublime voice and choice of phrasing that are easily and completely understood by all inhabitants of the world. And it is through unimpeded knowledge of eloquence that he becomes ever more supremely able to discourse with boundless Dharma light.

(u) Then again, it is through unimpeded knowledge of Dharma that he knows the uniformly equal nature of the One Vehicle, through unimpeded knowledge of meaning that he knows the different natures of all the vehicles, through unimpeded knowledge of language that he expounds on the absence of differences among all of the vehicles, and through unimpeded knowledge of eloquence that he expounds on each and every one of the vehicles with boundless Dharma [light].<sup>246</sup>

(v) Also, it is through unimpeded knowledge of Dharma that he knows the practices of all bodhisattvas, the practice of knowledge, the practice of the Dharma, and the realizations following from knowledge. It is through unimpeded knowledge of meaning that he knows the differences in meaning associated with the stations on ten grounds. It is through unimpeded knowledge of language that he discourses on the aspects of the path of the grounds that do not differ. And it is through unimpeded knowledge of eloquence that he expounds on the boundless practice aspects of each and every one of the grounds.

(w) Then again, it is through unimpeded knowledge of Dharma that he knows the realization of the right enlightenment in but a single mind-moment as achieved by all Tathāgatas. It is through unimpeded knowledge of meaning that he knows the individual distinctions in the many different times, the many different places, and so forth. It is through unimpeded knowledge of language that he expounds on the different aspects associated with the realization of right enlightenment. And it is through unimpeded knowledge of eloquence that he may discourse on each and every sentence of Dharma for measurelessly many kalpas and yet still not come to the end of it.

(x) Also, it is through unimpeded knowledge of Dharma that he knows the corresponding realizations associated with all

Tathāgatas' proclamations, powers, fearlessnesses, dharmas exclusive to buddhas, great kindness, great compassion, eloquence, skillful means, turning of the Dharma wheel, and cognition of all-knowledge. It is through unimpeded knowledge of meaning that he knows the means by which the Tathāgata's voice adapts to beings' eighty-four thousand different implementations of resolute intentions,<sup>247</sup> different faculties, and different resolute beliefs.<sup>248</sup> It is through unimpeded knowledge of language that, adapting to all of the courses of action engaged in by beings, he uses the voice of the Tathāgata to present different explanations to them. And it is through unimpeded knowledge of eloquence that, adapting to beings' resolute convictions,<sup>249</sup> he uses the Tathāgata's knowledge and perfectly pure practice to discourse for them.

17. HIS ACQUISITION OF DHĀRAṆĪS & FURTHER RECEIPT OF BUDDHAS' DHARMA

(Y) Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva dwelling on the ninth ground acquires just such skill in the unimpeded knowledges, acquires the Tathāgata's treasury of sublime Dharma, becomes a great master of the Dharma, and also acquires the meanings *dhāraṇī*, the Dharma *dhāraṇī*, the wisdom *dhāraṇī*, the radiant illumination *dhāraṇī*, the good intelligence *dhāraṇī*, the manifold wealth *dhāraṇī*, the awe-inspiring virtue *dhāraṇī*, the unimpeded gateway *dhāraṇī*, the boundless *dhāraṇī*, and the variety of meanings *dhāraṇī*. He acquires in their fullness a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of *dhāraṇī* gateways and he employs a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of gateways of skillfulness in voice and eloquence with which he expounds the Dharma.

Having acquired hundreds of myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of *dhāraṇīs* such as these, this bodhisattva, appearing before each and every one of measurelessly many buddhas wherever those buddhas dwell, then uses hundreds of myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of *dhāraṇī* gateways such as these in listening to their teachings of right Dharma. Then, having heard them, he never forgets them. He then takes up those measurelessly many different gateways and expounds on them for others.

(Z) When this bodhisattva first enters the presence of a buddha, he bows, head to the ground, in reverential obeisance, and then, straightaway, in their very presence, acquires measurelessly many gateways into the Dharma. These dharmas that he acquires are so extensive that, even in a hundred thousand kalpas, none of the great *śrāvaka*-disciples who are skillful in learning and retention could ever be able to absorb them.

## 18. HIS EXPOUNDING ON DHARMA THROUGHOUT A GREAT TRICHILIOCOSM

Having acquired such *dhāraṇīs* and such unimpeded knowledges as these, even as this bodhisattva sits on the Dharma throne and expounds on Dharma, he is just then explaining it for the beings abiding throughout the worlds of a great trichiliocosm, doing so in a manner adapted to their different mental dispositions.<sup>250</sup> With the sole exception of the Buddhas and those bodhisattvas who have already received the consecration, there is no one in any other assembly whose awe-inspiring virtue and brilliant radiance could ever rival that which he manifests.

## 19. THIS BODHISATTVA'S 10 TYPES OF VOICE-LIKE EXPRESSION IN TEACHING

When this bodhisattva sits on the Dharma throne:

He may wish to use but a single voice to cause everyone within a great assembly to gain complete comprehension, whereupon they will immediately acquire complete comprehension.

He may wish to employ many different sorts of voices to cause everyone in an entire great assembly to equally develop an understanding.

He may at times wish, by emanating great radiant light, to thereby proclaim gateways to the Dharma.

He may at times wish for the sound of Dharma to be proclaimed from each and every single hair pore on his body.

He may at times wish to cause all things with and without form throughout the worlds of a great trichiliocosm to simultaneously send forth the sublime sounds of Dharma.

He may at times wish to utter the sound of a single word that will then pervade the entire Dharma realm, causing all within it to achieve complete comprehension.

He may at times wish for the sounds of all words to emanate the sound of the Dharma, doing so in a way that constantly endures and never fades away.

He may at times wish for all musical sounds throughout all worlds, including those of flutes, pipes, bells, drums, songs, and chants, to proclaim in unison the sounds of the Dharma.

He may at times wish for but a single word to become entirely replete in itself with all of the words contained in all utterances of Dharma.

He may at times wish to cause each and every one of the finest atoms comprising the four great elements of earth, water, fire, and wind throughout an ineffable and measureless number of worlds to each proclaim an ineffable number of Dharma gateways.

In just this way, whatever he brings to mind comes to pass in accordance with his intentions so that none of them do not do so.

20. HIS INDEPENDENT COMMAND OF COUNTLESS SIMULTANEOUS VOICES

Son of the Buddha, even if all the beings within the worlds of a great trichiliocosm all came before this bodhisattva, and each and every one of them, using measurelessly many words, let flourish questions wherein each and every one of those questions was different from the others, this bodhisattva would still be able in but a single mind-moment to absorb them all and then, employing but a single voice, he would be able to explain and resolve every one of those questions, thereby causing each individual to become delighted in a manner accordant with whatever suits his mental disposition.

In this same way, even if each and every one of all the beings in an inexpressibly great number of worlds were, in but a single *kṣaṇa*, to use measurelessly many words as they let flourish questions wherein each and every one of those questions was different from the others, in but a single mind-moment, this bodhisattva would be able to absorb them all and, employing but a single voice, he would be able to explain and resolve every one of them, thereby causing each individual to become delighted in a manner accordant with his mental disposition.

So, too, even were this to be the case with all the beings filling up an ineffably great number of ineffably many worlds, this bodhisattva would still be able to explain the Dharma for each of them, in every case according with whatever suits each being's mental disposition, suits his faculties, and suits his resolute beliefs.

So it is that, receiving the assistance of the Buddhas' spiritual powers, he engages on a vast scale in accomplishing the Buddha's works, everywhere serving as someone upon whom everyone can rely.

21. THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR IN QUEST OF THE LIGHT OF KNOWLEDGE

Son of the Buddha, this bodhisattva redoubles his application of vigor in order to perfect the light of knowledge, doing so even to this degree: Suppose that on the tip of every single hair there were buddha assemblies as numerous as the atoms in an ineffably great number of worlds. Suppose as well that, in every one of those assemblies, there were beings as numerous as the atoms in an ineffably great number of worlds, each and every one of which beings possessed individual dispositions as numerous as the atoms in an ineffably great number of worlds. Suppose also

that all of those buddhas bestowed on those beings a gateway into the Dharma suited to those beings' individual dispositions. And suppose too that this circumstance obtaining with this one single place on the tip of a single hair was also true of all other places throughout the entire Dharma realm. Even so, this bodhisattva would still be able in but a single mind-moment to take in and never forget even all of those measurelessly many gateways to the Dharma as have been described herein.

Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva dwelling on this ninth ground is intensely focused in the diligence of his practice both day and night, never indulging any other thought other than his aspiration that is solely devoted to entering the realm in which the Buddha courses,<sup>251</sup> to drawing close to the Tathāgata, and to entering the extremely profound liberations of all bodhisattvas. He always abides in samādhi, constantly sees the Buddhas, and never relinquishes this circumstance.

#### 22. THE BODHISATTVA'S SEEING AND SERVING OF COUNTLESS BUDDHAS

In each and every kalpa, he sees measurelessly many buddhas, measurelessly many hundreds of buddhas, measurelessly many thousands of buddhas, and so forth on up to his seeing of measurelessly many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddhas. He pays reverence to, venerates, renders service to, and presents offerings to those buddhas. He also presents inquiries to them on many different sorts of difficult topics and acquires the *dhāraṇīs* facilitating the proclamation of Dharma.

#### 23. HIS GOOD ROOTS' PURITY LIKE THE GOLD OF A CAKRAVARTIN'S CROWN

All of his roots of goodness become ever more bright in the radiance of their purity in a manner comparable to the real gold that would be crafted by a skillful goldsmith into a jeweled crown made to adorn the head of a wheel-turning sage king, one that could never be rivaled by any adornment in the possession of any of the lesser kings, ministers, or citizens anywhere else on the four continents. Just so are the roots of goodness of this bodhisattva dwelling on the ninth ground, for they are such that none of the roots of goodness of any *śrāvaka*-disciple, *pratyekabuddha*, or bodhisattva dwelling on a lesser ground could ever rival.

#### 24. HIS GOOD ROOTS' PURITY LIKE A BRAHMA HEAVEN KING'S RADIANCE

Son of the Buddha, this circumstance is comparable to that of a king of the Great Brahma Heaven, a lord of two thousand worlds, whose body emanates such radiant light that it illuminates with

dazzling brilliance even the most dark and distant places throughout those two thousand worlds, thus dispelling all darkness therein. So too it is with all the roots of goodness of the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground, for he is thereby enabled to emanate such brilliant light that it illuminates the minds of beings and thus causes all the darkness of their afflictions to become entirely extinguished.

25. THE NINTH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S FOCUS ON THE POWERS PĀRAMITĀ

Among the ten *pāramitās*, this bodhisattva has become most supreme in his perfection of the powers *pāramitā*. It is not that he does not practice the others. Rather, he simply accords them an amount of emphasis corresponding to his own strengths and to what is fitting.

26. VAJRAGARBHĀ'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 9TH GROUND BODHISATTVA

Son of the Buddha, this has been a general explanation of the bodhisattva *mahāsattva's*, ninth ground, the Ground of Excellent Intelligence. Were one to discourse on this extensively, then one would remain unable to finish the discussion of it even if one carried it forth for measurelessly many kalpas.

a. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE

Son of the Buddha, the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground often becomes a king of the Great Brahma Heaven, a lord ruling over two thousand worlds who is well able to govern and liberally serve the benefit of others with sovereign mastery. He is able to differentially expound on the practice of the *pāramitās* for the sake of all *śrāvaka*-disciples, *pratyekabuddhas*, and bodhisattvas. In this, he adapts to beings' mental dispositions<sup>252</sup> and, in addressing all of their challenging questions, there is no one who can prevail over him.

b. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS

In his practice of giving, pleasing words, beneficial actions, and joint endeavors, and, in all such works that he pursues, he never departs from mindfulness of the Buddha, and so forth until we come to his never departing from mindfulness of the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.

c. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS

He also has this thought: "I should become one who serves these beings as a leader, as one who is supreme," and so forth until we come to "as one who relies on the cognition of all-knowledge."



## d. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS

If this bodhisattva brings forth diligently vigorous practice, then, in but a moment, he will become able to enter samādhis as numerous as the atoms in hundreds of myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of lands, and so forth until we come to his becoming able to transformationally manifest bodhisattvas to serve as his retinue that are as numerous as the atoms in hundreds of myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of lands. If he resorts to the power inherent in the bodhisattva's especially supreme vows, he becomes able then to freely manifest numbers beyond even this, such that one would never be able to count them even in a period of hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas.

## 27. VAJRAGARBHA BODHISATTVA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, wishing to restate his meaning, thereupon uttered verses, saying:

Through skillful meditation with measureless wisdom power that is the most supremely subtle and difficult for the world to know, he everywhere enters the Tathāgata's secret places, and, serving the benefit of beings, enters the ninth ground. <sup>[14]</sup>

Exercising sovereign mastery in both *dhāraṇīs* and samādhis and gaining great spiritual superknowledges, he enters the many lands. Equipped with the powers, wisdom, fearlessness, exclusive dharmas, vow power, and compassionate mind, he enters the ninth ground. <sup>[15]</sup>

Dwelling on this ground he preserves the treasury of Dharma and utterly knows: what is good, bad, or neutral; what possesses or is free of the contaminants; what is worldly or world-transcending; and what is conceivable or inconceivable. He well knows them all. <sup>[16]</sup>

As for whether any dharma is definite or indefinite as well as what Three Vehicle's adherents do, he meditatively contemplates it all. Regarding the differences in conditioned and unconditioned actions, he knows them just as they are and thus enters the worlds. <sup>[17]</sup>

If he wishes to know beings' minds, he can use knowledge to know as they truly are their many characteristics including whether they are diversely arising, swiftly transformed, deteriorating, not deteriorating, insubstantial, boundless, and so forth. <sup>[18]</sup>

He knows afflictions as boundless, as in constant accompaniment, as of the same quality, latent or arising, as continuing in the destinies, knows karmic actions' varying natures, each different, destruction of of causes, and accrual of effects. He is able to know all of these. <sup>[19]</sup>

All the different faculties, inferior, middling, or superior, their past and future differences, countless other distinctions, resolute beliefs, sense realms, and resolute intentions— of eighty-four thousand aspects, there are none he does not know. (20)

[He knows] beings' afflictions and views that ever follow and bind, their beginningless entangling thickets, never yet cut down, the [latent tendencies] arising with intentions and together with mind, and their always restraining and binding them, never being severed. (21)

He knows they are merely erroneous thought, are unreal phenomena, are inseparable from the mind, are devoid of dwelling place, are still able to cause retreat after being dispelled by *dhyāna* samādhis, and are extinguished on the vajra path and then are finally ended. (22)

He knows that taking birth in the six destinies, each case differs, that karma is the field, cravings are moisture, ignorance is covering, consciousness is the seed, name-and-form are the sprout, and these cause beginningless ever continuous becoming in the three realms. (23)

He knows afflicted acts and mental habits cause birth in the destinies, knows that, if one abandons these, there will be no further births, and knows beings as all existing within one of three groupings,<sup>253</sup> and as either drowning among views or else as practicing the path. (24)

Dwelling on this ground, he is skillful in meditative contemplation, adapts to their dispositions, faculties, and resolute beliefs, and, always employs the unimpeded knowledges and sublime eloquence by which he teaches each differently as befits what is appropriate. (25)

As he sits on the Dharma throne, he is like a lion, also is like the king of bulls, the king of jewel mountains, or a king of dragons who spreads forth dense clouds, showers down the sweet dew rain, and thus fills the great oceans. (26)

He knows well the nature of dharmas and their abstruse meanings, is able with concordant verbal expressions to expound eloquently, and with a hundred myriad *asaṃkhyeyas* of *dhāraṇīs*, he retains all just as the great ocean takes in the many showers of rain. (27)

With *dhāraṇīs* and samādhis that are all pure, he is able in but a single mind-moment to see the many buddhas, listens to the Dharma in the presence of each and every buddha, and then in turn expounds on it with a sublimely wondrous voice. (28)

Whenever he wishes, throughout the worlds of a great trichiliocosm, he teaches all of the many classes of beings, becoming in this like a vastly spreading cloud that has no place it fails to reach as he adapts to their faculties and predilections, causing all to feel joyful. (29)

Even with countless buddha assemblies on the tips of every hair and even with beings' mental predilections also being endless, they respond to all their minds in the bestowing of Dharma gates, doing so in this same manner throughout the entire Dharma realm.

The bodhisattva diligently applies the power of vigor and thereby gains yet more meritorious qualities, ever more supremely refined. His hearing and retaining of so very many Dharma gateways as this is comparable to the earth's ability to retain all seeds. (30)

If the countless beings throughout the ten directions all came and drew close to where he sits in the midst of an assembly, in but a moment, he would adapt to their minds as each poses queries and then, with a single voice, he would respond and satisfy them all. (31)

Dwelling on this ground, he serves as a king of Dharma, adapting to beings' potentials, tirelessly providing teaching and inducement. Day and night, he sees the Buddhas, never relinquishes that vision, and enters deeply quiescent knowledge and liberation. (32)

He makes offerings to buddhas, skillfully refines his brilliance so that it shines like the Sage King's marvelously bejeweled crown and also causes the darkness of beings' afflictions to be extinguished just as when the Brahma Heaven King's light shines on every place. (33)

Dwelling herein, he often becomes king of a Great Brahma Heaven who employs the Dharma of the Three Vehicles to teach beings. The good works he does are everywhere and liberally beneficial all the way on to his future realization of all-knowledge. (34)

The samādhis he enters in but a single mind-moment number as the atoms comprising an *asaṃkhyeya* of lands. So too is the number of buddhas he sees proclaiming the Dharma. By the power of vows these extend in number even beyond this. (35)

This has been the ninth, the Ground of Excellent Intelligence, the station in which bodhisattvas of great knowledge practice, one that is extremely profound, sublime, and recondite. I have now finished its explanation for the Sons of the Buddha. (36)



## PART TEN

### The Dharma Cloud Ground

#### J. THE TENTH GROUND: THE DHARMA CLOUD GROUND

##### 1. THE TENTH GROUND'S INTRODUCTORY VERSES AND DHARMA REQUEST

Having heard of the supreme practices carried out on this ground,  
the *nayutas* of Pure Dwelling Heaven devas  
who were up in the sky sprang up in delight and then,  
united in deep sincerity, presented offerings to the Buddha. (1)

That inconceivably vast assembly of bodhisattvas  
that was also there in the sky was immensely delighted.  
They all lit the most supremely mind-pleasing incenses  
that everywhere permeated that assembly, causing it to be purified. (2)

The Paranirmita Vaśavartin Heaven King with his heavenly host  
of countless *koṭis* of devas that were there in the sky scattered  
everywhere heavenly raiment as offerings to the Buddha which  
floated down in a profusion of a hundred thousand myriad sorts. (3)

Of the heavenly nymphs there in measureless numbers,  
none failed to then joyfully present offerings to the Buddha  
as they each played all sorts of sublime music and  
all together used these phrases in offering their praises: (4)

“Even as this body of the Buddha sits securely in a single land,  
he manifests bodies in all worlds, wherein, in stately adornment,  
countless *koṭis* of his physical appearances are seen,  
entirely filling the Dharma realm in all its vastness. (5)

Within a single hair pore, he emanates light  
that everywhere extinguishes the darkness of the world's afflictions.  
Though one might be able to know a land's number of atoms,  
one could still never measure these light rays' number. (6)

One may see the Tathāgata there replete with all his many signs,  
turning the unsurpassable wheel of right Dharma.  
One may see him roaming forth to all of the buddha lands,  
or one may see him still, at peace, unmoving. (7)

Or he may manifest as dwelling in the Tuṣṭita Heaven Palace,  
or may manifest as descending into his mother's womb,  
or may appear as dwelling in the womb or emerging from the womb,  
in all such cases causing this to be observable in countless lands. (8)

He may manifest as leaving home, cultivating the path in the world, as appearing in the *bodhimaṇḍa*, and as realizing right enlightenment. He may appear as proclaiming the Dharma and as entering nirvāṇa, everywhere causing there to be none in ten directions not seeing this. (9)

Just as a master conjurer skilled in the techniques of conjuration performs his many feats in the midst of a great crowd, so too it is in the case of the Tathāgata's wisdom by which he manifests his bodies everywhere throughout the worlds. (10)

The Buddha dwells within dharmas' extremely profound true nature that is quiescent, signless, and like space even as, from within ultimate truth, he manifests the many different deeds that he performs. (11)

All those endeavors performed for the benefit of beings, come into existence in dependence upon the very nature of dharmas. That possessed of signs and the signless have no differentiation, for, with entry into the ultimate, they are all signless. (12)

If one wishes to acquire the knowledge of the Tathāgata, one should abandon all false discriminations, utterly comprehend existents and non-existents all abide in a state of uniform equality, and thus swiftly become a great guide for humans and devas." (13)

Having offered up these praises with many different phrases, this countless and boundlessly vast assemblage of celestial nymphs fell silent in both body and mind, and, united in their happiness, gazed up at the Tathāgata as they stood there quietly. (14)

Then Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, aware that everyone in the great assembly was now still and silent, straightaway addressed Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, saying: "O, Great Fearless One, True Son of the Buddha." (15)

"We pray that you who possess such intelligence and wisdom will expound here on all the meritorious qualities, aspects of practice, spiritual superknowledges, and transformational deeds involved in advancing from the ninth ground into the tenth ground." (16)

## 2. VAJRAGARBHA COMMENCES THE TENTH GROUND'S EXPLANATION

{A} At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva Mahāsattva informed Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, saying:

### 3. THE TEN CATEGORIES OF PRACTICE BEFORE ENTERING THE TENTH GROUND

O Son of the Buddha. From the first ground through the ninth ground, having employed such measureless wisdom as this in meditative contemplation and awakening, the bodhisattva *mahāsattva*:

Engages in thorough meditative contemplation on cultivation;<sup>254</sup>  
 Thoroughly fulfills the pristinely white dharmas;  
 Assembles boundlessly many dharmas constituting the provisions for the path;  
 Increases his immense stock of merit and wisdom;  
 Cultivates the great compassion on a vast scale;  
 Comes to know the aspects distinguishing the worlds;  
 Penetrates the entangling thickets of the realms of beings;<sup>255</sup>  
 Enters the domain in which the Tathāgata courses;  
 Accords with the Tathāgata's quiescence practices;  
 And always carries on meditative contemplations focused on  
 the Tathāgatas' powers, fearlessnesses, and dharmas exclusive to the Buddhas.

Having done so, he is then said to have reached the station wherein one receives the consecration of imminent acquisition of the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.

#### 4. THIS BODHISATTVA'S SUBSEQUENT ACQUISITION OF SAMĀDHIS

(B) Son of the Buddha. Once this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* has employed wisdom such as this to enter the ground of consecration, he straightaway acquires:<sup>256</sup>

The bodhisattva's stainless samādhi;  
 The entering the distinctions within the dharma realm samādhi;  
 The adornment of the *bodhimaṇḍa* samādhi;  
 The radiance of every kind of flower samādhi;  
 The oceanic treasury samādhi;  
 The oceanic reflection samādhi;  
 The vastness of empty space samādhi;  
 The contemplation of the nature of all dharmas samādhi;  
 The knowledge of the minds and actions of all beings samādhi;  
 And the direct manifestation of all buddhas samādhi.

A hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of other samādhis such as these also all manifest directly before him. In all of these samādhis, the bodhisattva, whether entering them or arising from them, in all cases achieves a state of consummate skillfulness while also comprehending well the differences in the functional uses to which all of these samādhis are devoted. The very last samādhi to manifest for him is the one known as "the station of the acquisition of the supreme consecration of all-knowledge."<sup>257</sup>

## 5. THIS FINAL SAMĀDHI'S MANIFESTATION OF AN IMMENSE RADIANT LOTUS

(C) When this samādhi manifests directly before him, an immense bejeweled lotus flower suddenly emerges, one whose blossom is so immense that it equals in volume the breadth of a hundred myriad great trichiliocosms. It is inlaid and adorned with the many sorts of marvelous precious gems and presents an appearance that surpasses any realm of objective phenomena observed in any world. This is a phenomenon that comes forth from his world-transcending roots of goodness and that is perfected by his many practices utilizing the knowledge that all dharmas are by nature like mere illusions.

It constantly radiates brilliant light that everywhere illuminates the Dharma realm. This is a phenomenon that is not found even in any of the celestial abodes. Its stem is made of beryl and *maṇi* jewels. Its dais consists of *candana* incense. Emeralds compose its floral pistils and its petals are made of *jambunada* gold. Its blossom always emanates countless light rays. The many sorts of precious jewels compose its inner chamber, and it is covered over by a bejeweled net canopy. Lotus blossoms as numerous as the atoms in ten great trichiliocosms make up its retinue.

## 6. THIS BODHISATTVA SITS ATOP A LOTUS ENCIRCLED BY RETINUE BODHISATTVAS

At this time, as the bodhisattva then sits atop the flower throne, the scale of his physical appearance precisely matches that of the throne itself. Measurelessly many bodhisattvas serve as his retinue, with each of them sitting upon one of the other lotus blossoms completely encircling him. Each and every one of them, having thereupon acquired a hundred myriad samādhis, then single-mindedly gazes up at this great bodhisattva.

(D) Son of the Buddha. When this great bodhisattva together with his retinue are all sitting there on their lotus thrones, all of those light rays as well as the sound of his words then everywhere fill all ten directions of the Dharma realm, those worlds all quake, the wretched destinies become stilled, and all lands then became adorned and purified. Of all the bodhisattvas engaged in the same practices, none of them do not then come and assemble there.

The musical sounds of men and devas then simultaneously resound as all of those beings experience feelings of happiness and then present offerings of inconceivable gifts to all the Buddhas. All of the assemblies of the Buddhas then became visibly manifest.



## 7. HIS BODY EMANATES LIGHT ILLUMINATING TEN REALMS OF BEINGS

Son of the Buddha. As this bodhisattva sits there atop that immense lotus blossom throne, from the bottom of his two feet, he releases a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of light rays that everywhere illuminate all the great hell realms throughout the ten directions and extinguish the sufferings undergone by the beings dwelling in them.

From his two knee caps, he releases a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of light rays that everywhere illuminate all the ten directions' animal rebirth destinies and extinguish the sufferings of the beings dwelling in them.

From the center of his navel, he releases a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of light rays that everywhere illuminate the ten directions' realms of King Yama and extinguish the sufferings of the beings residing in them.<sup>258</sup>

From his left and right sides, he releases a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of light rays that everywhere illuminate all the realms of the human destinies throughout the ten directions and extinguish the sufferings of the beings residing in them.

From his two hands, he releases a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of light rays that everywhere illuminate all the palaces of the devas and *asuras* throughout the ten directions.

From atop his two shoulders, he releases a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of light rays that everywhere illuminate all the *śrāvaka*-disciples throughout the ten directions.

From the back of his neck, he releases a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of light rays that everywhere illuminate the bodies of all the *pratyekabuddhas* throughout the ten directions.

From his face, he releases a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of light rays that everywhere illuminate the bodies of all the bodhisattvas throughout the ten directions, inclusive of those who have newly brought forth the initial resolve on up to all those dwelling on the ninth ground.

From between his eyebrows, he releases a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of light rays that everywhere illuminate all the bodhisattvas throughout the ten directions who had received the consecration while also causing the palaces of the *māras* to no longer appear.

From the crown of his head, he then releases light rays as numerous as the atoms in a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of great trichiliocosms that everywhere illuminate the assemblies

attending upon the *bodhimaṇḍas* of all the Buddhas, the Tathāgatas, throughout all worlds of the ten directions.

8. THE LIGHT RAYS FORM A CANOPY THAT MAKES OFFERINGS TO ALL BUDDHAS

Those rays then circle around them ten times in a rightward direction and, having ascended into the midst of space, they dwell there and form a netlike canopy of bright light known as “Flaming Radiance” that then sends forth all sorts of different offerings to the Buddhas.

Those offerings are so numerous that the offerings of all the other bodhisattvas from those who have but newly brought forth the resolve on through to those who dwell on the ninth ground could not compare to even a hundredth part and so forth until we come to their being unable to compare at all even by resort to calculation or analogy.

That canopy of brilliant light rains down offerings before each and every one of the Tathāgatas and their assemblies everywhere throughout the ten directions, raining down the many sorts of marvelous incenses, floral garlands, raiment, banners, bejeweled canopies, various *maṇi* jewels, and other sorts of adornments, all of which are presented there as offerings. In every case, these offerings issue from world-transcending roots of goodness and surpass anything found in any worldly realm. Were there to be any being at all who might observe this occurrence, they would all be those who had already reached the stage of irreversibility with respect to the realization of *anuttarasamyaksaṃbodhi*.

9. THE LIGHT RAYS CIRCLE AROUND ALL BUDDHAS AND ENTER THEIR FEET

Son of the Buddha. Once this immense aggregation of light rays has finished these acts of offering, it then once again circles around each and every one of the *bodhimaṇḍa* assemblies of all buddhas throughout all worlds of the ten directions. After it has finished circling around them ten times, it then enters the bottoms of the feet of all *tathāgatas*.

It is at this time that all buddhas and bodhisattvas realize that, in this particular world system, a particular bodhisattva *mahāsattva* has been able to perform such immensely expansive practices and has thus reached the stage of receiving the consecration.

10. THE 10 REGIONS' BODHISATTVAS COME, MAKE OFFERINGS & ENTER SAMĀDHI

Son of the Buddha. At this time, the congregation of all the measurelessly and boundlessly many bodhisattvas throughout the ten

directions inclusive of those who have reached the ninth ground then arrives there. They circumambulate him, reverently present offerings, and then enter a state of single-minded meditative contemplation. At the very time when they enter into this state of meditative contemplation, each of these bodhisattvas acquires a myriad samādhis.

11. THEY EMANATE LIGHT FROM THEIR CHESTS THAT ENTERS HIS CHEST

Just at that very time, all the bodhisattvas throughout the ten directions who have already received the consecration emanate from their chests' vajra adornment meritorious-qualities symbol an immense beam of bright light known as "able to destroy Māra's enmity," one attended by a hundred myriads of *asaṃkhyeyas* of light rays that form its retinue. It everywhere illuminates all of the ten directions and manifests incalculably many permutations of the spiritual superknowledges. After it has finished carrying out these actions, it then comes and enters the vajra adornment virtuous-qualities mark on this bodhisattva's chest. After that light has entered, it then causes all of the wisdom and powers of this bodhisattva to increase more than a hundred thousand fold.

12. ALL BUDDHAS SEND FORTH LIGHT THAT ENTERS THIS BODHISATTVA'S CROWN

(E) At that time, all buddhas throughout the ten directions put forth a pure beam of light from between their eyebrows known as "enhancer of all-knowledge's superknowledges," one attended by countless light rays that form its retinue. It everywhere illuminates all worlds throughout the ten directions, circling them ten times in a rightward direction, manifesting the Tathāgatas' vast powers of sovereign mastery and instigating the awakening of a congregation of incalculably many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of bodhisattvas, everywhere causing the quaking of all buddha lands, extinguishing the sufferings in all the wretched destinies, covering over and hiding the palaces of the *māras*, and revealing the adornments and awe-inspiring qualities in all the assemblies at those *bodhimaṇḍas* wherein the Buddhas have achieved realization of bodhi.

After having everywhere illuminated all worlds even to the ends of empty space and throughout the entire Dharma realm, it then comes and, arriving in the assembly of this bodhisattva, circles ten times around in a rightward direction, revealing all of the different sorts of adornments there. After having revealed these phenomena, it then enters into the crown of this great bodhisattva. Its retinue light rays also each enter the crowns of those other bodhisattvas in attendance there.

## 13. THIS BODHISATTVA ACQUIRES SAMĀDHIS AND ALL BUDDHAS' CONSECRATION

At that very time, this bodhisattva acquires a hundred myriad samādhis he has never before acquired and becomes known<sup>259</sup> as one who has reached the station of consecration and has entered the realm of the Buddhas wherein, having completely developed the ten powers, he joins the ranks of the Buddhas.

## 14. THE SIMILE OF THE CONSECRATION OF THE WHEEL TURNING SAGE KING'S SON

Son of the Buddha. In this circumstance he is comparable to a crown prince born to a wheel-turning sage king whose mother is the chief queen and who is himself completely endowed with the physical marks. That wheel-turning king orders this prince to sit on the throne of marvelous gold atop his white elephant treasure, raises the great canopy, plants the great banner, burns incense, scatters flowers, plays all sorts of music, takes up water from each of the four great seas, and places it into the vase of gold.

The King then takes up this vase and pours the liquid out over the crown of the prince's head. From this very moment on he is known as one who has reached the stage of receiving royal consecration at which point he then joins the ranks of the consecrated *kṣatriyan* kings. He then straightaway becomes able to completely fulfill the ten courses of good karmic action and is then also able to become known as a wheel-turning sage king.

So too it is in the case of this bodhisattva who has received the consecration. Because the waters of all buddhas' knowledge have been poured onto the crown of his head, he is then known as one who has received the consecration. It is on account of his complete development of the Tathāgata's ten powers that he then joins the ranks of the Buddhas.

## 15. THE CAPACITIES ARISING FROM THIS BODHISATTVA'S CONSECRATION

Son of the Buddha. This is what is what is known as the bodhisattva's great knowledge consecration. It is because of this great knowledge consecration that this bodhisattva is then able to engage in incalculably many hundreds of thousands of myriads of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of difficult-to-practice practices and increase his growth in incalculably many sorts of wisdom and meritorious qualities. So it is that he is then known as one who abides securely on the Dharma Cloud Ground.

## 16. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF ATTAINMENTS

(F) Son of the Buddha. The bodhisattva *mahāsattva* dwelling on this Dharma Cloud Ground knows in accordance with reality:

Attainment as it takes place in the desire realm;<sup>260</sup>  
 Attainment as it takes place in the form realm;  
 Attainment as it takes place in the formless realm;  
 Attainment as it takes place within the worldly realms;  
 Attainment as it takes place within the Dharma realm;  
 Attainment as it takes place within the conditioned realm;  
 Attainment as it takes place within the unconditioned realm;  
 Attainment as it takes place within the realms of beings;  
 Attainment as it takes place within the realms of consciousness;  
 Attainment as it takes place within the realm of empty space;  
 And attainment as it takes place within the realm of nirvāṇa.

This bodhisattva also knows in accordance with reality:

The attainment of karmic actions associated with the views and the afflictions;  
 Knows attainment as it takes place in the production and destruction of worlds;  
 Knows the attainment of *śrāvaka*-disciple practices;  
 Knows the attainment of *pratyekabuddha* practices;  
 Knows the attainment of bodhisattva practices;  
 Knows attainment as it takes place in a *tathāgata*'s powers, fearlessnesses, form bodies, and Dharma body;  
 Knows attainment of the knowledge associated with the knowledge of all modes and all-knowledge;  
 Knows attainment as it occurs in the manifestation of the appearance of realizing bodhi and turning the Dharma wheel;  
 And knows attainment as it takes place in entering the knowledge that is decisive in its distinguishing of all dharmas.

To speak of what is essential in this, he employs all-knowledge to know all processes of attainment.

#### 17. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF TRANSFORMATION

Son of the Buddha. This bodhisattva *mahāsattva* resorts to just such supremely awakened wisdom to know in accordance with reality:

Transformation as it takes place in beings' karmic actions;  
 Transformation as it takes place in the afflictions;  
 Transformation as it takes place in the views;  
 Transformation as it takes place in the worlds;  
 Transformation as it takes place in the Dharma realm;  
 Transformation as it takes place among *śrāvaka*-disciples;  
 Transformation as it takes place among *pratyekabuddhas*;

Transformation as it takes place among bodhisattvas;  
 Transformation as it takes place among *tathāgatas*;  
 And transformation as it takes place in the presence and absence  
 of differences.

He also knows in accordance with reality all of the other such  
 sorts of transformations.

18. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF SUSTAINING BASES

So too does he know in accordance with reality:

The sustaining bases<sup>261</sup> of the Buddha.  
 The sustaining bases of the Dharma;  
 The sustaining bases of the Sangha;  
 The sustaining bases of karma;  
 The sustaining bases of the afflictions;  
 The sustaining bases of time;  
 The sustaining bases of vows;  
 The sustaining bases of offerings;  
 The sustaining bases of practices;  
 The sustaining bases of kalpas;  
 And the sustaining bases of knowledge.

He also knows in accordance with reality all of the other such  
 sorts of phenomena.

19. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF SUBTLETIES OF PRACTICE

So too does he know in accordance with reality all buddhas', all  
*tathāgatas*', knowledge that enters into all sorts of subtlety, specifi-  
 cally knowing:

Their knowledge regarding the subtleties involved in cultiva-  
 tion;  
 Their knowledge regarding the subtleties involved in the end-  
 ing of a lifetime;<sup>262</sup>  
 Their knowledge regarding the subtleties involved in the taking  
 on of birth;  
 Their knowledge regarding the subtleties involved in abandon-  
 ing the home life;  
 Their knowledge regarding the subtleties involved in the mani-  
 festing of the spiritual superknowledges;  
 Their knowledge regarding the subtleties involved in achieving  
 realization of the right enlightenment;  
 Their knowledge regarding the subtleties involved in turning  
 the wheel of Dharma;

Their knowledge regarding the subtleties involved in abiding throughout a lifespan;  
 Their knowledge regarding the subtleties involved in [passing into] *nirvāṇa*;  
 And their knowledge regarding the subtleties involved in the endurance of their teaching Dharma.

He also knows all of the other such sorts of phenomena in accordance with reality.

20. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE TATHĀGATAS' SECRETS

So too does he enter into the Tathāgatas' secrets, specifically entering:

Their secrets associated with the body;  
 Their secrets associated with speech;  
 Their secrets associated with the mind;  
 Their secrets associated with the assessment of timeliness and non-timeliness;  
 Their secrets associated with the bestowing of predictions upon bodhisattvas;  
 Their secrets associated with the attraction of beings;  
 Their secrets associated with the many different sorts of vehicles;  
 Their secrets associated with the root faculties and practices of all beings;  
 Their secrets associated with the functioning of karmic actions;  
 And their secrets associated with acquisition of the practices associated with bodhi.

He also knows all other such sorts of phenomena in accordance with reality.

21. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWLEDGE OF THE INTERPENETRATION OF KALPAS

So too does he know all of the knowledge of the Buddhas with regard to the interpenetration of kalpas [and other such measures of time], specifically knowing:

How a single kalpa may enter into an *asaṃkhyeya* kalpa;  
 How an *asaṃkhyeya* kalpa may enter into a single kalpa;  
 How an enumerated number of kalpas may enter into innumerable kalpas;  
 How innumerable kalpas may enter into an enumerated number of kalpas;  
 How a single mind-moment may enter into a kalpa;  
 How a kalpa may enter into a single mind-moment;

How a kalpa may enter into what does not constitute a kalpa;  
 How what does not constitute a kalpa may enter into a kalpa;  
 How a kalpa in which there is a buddha may enter into a kalpa  
 in which there is no buddha;  
 How a kalpa with no buddha may enter into a kalpa in which  
 there is a buddha;  
 How past and future kalpas may enter into the present kalpa;  
 How the present kalpa may enter into past and future kalpas;  
 How past kalpas may enter into future kalpas;  
 How future kalpas may enter into past kalpas;  
 How long kalpas may enter into short kalpas;  
 And how short kalpas may enter into long kalpas.

He also knows all the other such sorts of phenomena in accordance with reality.

22. THIS BODHISATTVA'S KNOWING OF THE BUDDHA'S PENETRATING KNOWLEDGE

So too does he know all of the types of penetrating knowledge that the Tathāgata possesses, specifically knowing:

The penetrating knowledge<sup>263</sup> that knows the realms of ordinary common people,<sup>264</sup>  
 The penetrating knowledge that knows atoms;  
 The rightly enlightened penetrating knowledge that knows [buddha] land bodies;<sup>265</sup>  
 The rightly enlightened penetrating knowledge that knows the beings' bodies;  
 The rightly enlightened penetrating knowledge that knows beings' minds;  
 The rightly enlightened penetrating knowledge that knows beings' actions;  
 The rightly enlightened penetrating knowledge that knows adaptation to all places;  
 The penetrating knowledge that knows the manifestation of universally pervasive practices;  
 The penetrating knowledge that knows the manifestation of adaptive practices;  
 The penetrating knowledge that knows the manifestation of contrary practices;  
 The penetrating knowledge that knows the manifestation of conceivable and inconceivable practices and knows the manifestation of practices either completely comprehensible to the world or not completely comprehensible to the world;



And the penetrating knowledge that knows the manifestation of the practices of *śrāvaka*-disciples, *pratyekabuddhas*, bodhisattvas, and *tathāgatas*.

Son of the Buddha. In every case, the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground is able to have penetrating knowledge of all the vast and measureless wisdom possessed by all buddhas.

23. THIS BODHISATTVA'S ACQUISITION OF COUNTLESS LIBERATIONS

{G} Son of the Buddha. The bodhisattva *mahāsattva* dwelling on this ground immediately acquires:

- The bodhisattva's inconceivable liberation;
- The unimpeded liberation;
- The pure contemplation liberation;
- The universal illumination liberation;
- The *tathāgata* treasury liberation;
- The compliance with the unimpeded wheel liberation;
- The penetrating comprehension of the three periods of time liberation;
- The Dharma realm treasury liberation;
- The circle of liberation's light liberation;
- And the realm of remainderless totality liberation.

These ten are those that are chief among them. There are incalculably many hundreds of thousands of *asaṃkhyeyas* of other such gateways to liberation that are all acquired on this tenth ground.

24. THIS BODHISATTVA'S SAMĀDHIS, DHĀRAṆĪS, AND SUPERKNOWLEDGES

In this same way, there are also even as many as measurelessly many hundreds of thousands of *asaṃkhyeyas* of samādhi gateways, measurelessly many hundreds of thousands of *asaṃkhyeyas* of *dhāraṇī* gateways, and measurelessly many hundreds of thousands of *asaṃkhyeyas* of spiritual superknowledge gateways that, in every case, he also succeeds in completely developing.

25. THIS BODHISATTVA'S LIMITLESS MEMORY POWER

{H} Son of the Buddha. This bodhisattva *mahāsattva* develops a penetrating comprehension of wisdom such as this that accords with measureless bodhi. He also develops such powers of skillful memory that, in a single mind-moment, he is in every case able to accommodate, able to take in, able to absorb, and is able to retain all of the measureless great Dharma light, great Dharma illumination, and great Dharma rain of all of the measurelessly many buddhas throughout the ten directions.

## 26. HIS LIMITLESS MEMORY COMPARED TO THE OCEAN'S LIMITLESS CAPACITY

Just as it is the case that, with the sole exception of the great ocean, all other places are in every case unable to accommodate, unable to take in, unable to absorb, and unable to retain the great rains poured down by Sāgara, the dragon king, so too it is with the great Dharma light, the great Dharma illumination, and the great Dharma rain coming forth from the secret treasury of the Tathāgata. With the sole exception of the tenth ground bodhisattvas, all other beings including *śrāvaka*-disciples, *pratyekabuddhas*, and bodhisattvas up through the ninth ground are all unable to accommodate it, unable to take it in, unable to absorb it, and unable to retain it.

Son of the Buddha. In this, he is comparable to the great ocean that is able to accommodate, able to take in, able to absorb, and able to retain those great rains poured down by one of the great dragon kings, two of them, three of them, and so forth on up to the rains poured down by countless dragon kings. In but a single mind-moment, it is able to accommodate, able to take in, able to absorb, and able to retain all the rain that they all simultaneously pour down. And why is it able to do this? It is because it is a vessel possessed of an immeasurably vast capacity.

So too it is with this bodhisattva who dwells on the Dharma Cloud Ground who is himself able to accommodate, able to take in, able to absorb, and able to retain the Dharma light, the Dharma illumination, and the Dharma rain brought forth by one buddha, two, three, and so forth on up to measurelessly many buddhas, being able to take it all in in this very same manner, even if it were all to be simultaneously expounded to him in but a single mind-moment. It is for this very reason that this ground is known as the Dharma Cloud Ground.

## 27. VIMUKTICANDRA ASKS ABOUT THE LIMITS OF THIS BODHISATTVA'S MEMORY

Liberation Moon Bodhisattva then asked, "O Son of the Buddha. From how many Tathāgatas' is the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground able in but a single mind-moment to accommodate, take in, absorb, and retain their great Dharma light, their great Dharma illumination, and their great Dharma Rain?"

## 28. VAJRAGARBHA'S ANALOGY DESCRIBING THIS BODHISATTVA'S MEMORY POWER

Vajragarbha Bodhisattva replied:

O Son of the Buddha. This is something that cannot be known merely by resort to numerical calculations. I shall provide an analogy for you.

Son of the Buddha. Suppose for instance that there existed in each of the ten directions worlds as numerous as the atoms in ten ineffably numerous hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddha lands, and in each of those worlds each and every one of the beings residing therein had all acquired the “hearing-and-retaining” *dhāraṇī*, had served as a buddha’s attendant, was foremost in learning among everyone within the assembly of *śrāvaka*-disciples, was one comparable to Great Supremacy Bhikshu<sup>266</sup> residing in the dwelling place of Vajra Lotus Blossom Supremacy Buddha,<sup>267</sup> while the Dharma received by each of these beings was not the same as that received by any of the others.

Son of the Buddha. What do you think? Is all of the Dharma received by all of these beings measurable or immeasurable?

Liberation Moon Bodhisattva replied, “That is an exceedingly great amount, one that is measureless and boundless.”

Vajragarbha Bodhisattva then said:

Son of the Buddha. I will explain this matter for you in a manner that will cause you to comprehend it.

Son of the Buddha. That great Dharma light, great Dharma illumination, and great Dharma rain constituting the Dharma treasury of the three periods of time that this Dharma Cloud Ground bodhisattva is able to accommodate, take in, absorb, and retain from but one single buddha in just a single mind-moment is such that all the Dharma heard and retained by all of those beings in those previously described world systems could not even compare to a hundredth part of it and is such that one could not adequately compare the two even by resort to analogy.

And just as this is the case with the Dharma taken in from but a single Buddha, so too it is for all those other buddhas as numerous as the atoms in all those previously described worlds throughout the ten directions wherein this number is exceeded immeasurably and boundlessly, for this bodhisattva is able in every case to accommodate, able to take in, able to absorb, and able to retain all of their Dharma light, Dharma illumination, and Dharma rain that constitute the Dharma treasury of the three periods of time as it is brought forth by each and every one of those *tathāgatas*. It is for this reason that this is known as the Dharma Cloud Ground.

#### 29. THE DHARMA CLOUD BODHISATTVA’S GREAT DHARMA RAIN

Son of the Buddha. Through the power of his own vows, the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground spreads forth the clouds of the

great compassion, brings on the quaking of the great Dharma thunder, uses his superknowledges, clarities, and fearlessnesses as the flashing of his lightning, and brings forth his merit and wisdom as dense rain clouds. He manifests all different kinds of bodies that circulate everywhere, going forth and returning, and, in but a single mind-moment, they everywhere pervade the ten directions, going forth to a number of lands as numerous as the atoms in hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of worlds wherein they expound the great Dharma and utterly defeat Māra's hordes.

In yet greater numbers than these, in lands as numerous as the atoms in measurelessly many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of worlds, he adapts to the dispositions of the beings therein and pours down the rain of sweet-dew *amṛta*, thus extinguishing the smoke and flames of beings' afflictions. It is for this reason that this is known as the Dharma Cloud Ground.

Son of the Buddha. From the time he descends from a particular world's Tuṣita Heaven on through to the time he enters nirvāṇa, the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground adapts to the minds of the beings he should bring to liberation and then manifests the works of a buddha. So too does he carry this out in the same way in two worlds, three worlds, and so forth on up to his doing so in lands as numerous as the above-described atoms, even doing so in a number of lands beyond even these, in even up to lands as numerous as the atoms in measurelessly many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of worlds. It is for this reason that this ground is known as the Dharma Cloud Ground.

### 30. THIS BODHISATTVA'S USE OF SPIRITUAL POWERS IN TRANSFORMING WORLDS

(1) Son of the Buddha. The bodhisattva dwelling on this ground is possessed of such brightly penetrating wisdom and sovereign mastery of the spiritual superknowledges that he is able in accordance with whatever he wishes to transform a narrow world into a broad world, transform a broad world into a narrow world, transform a defiled world into a pure world, transform a pure world into a defiled world, and is able, too, to mutually transform every type of world into the other, including those that are chaotically arranged, those that are arranged in an orderly fashion, those that are upside down, those that are right-side up, and those that are of countless other different varieties.

Or it may also be that, in accordance with whatever he wishes, he may also place within a single atom an entire world with its

Mount Sumerus as well as all of its other mountains and rivers, doing so even while keeping the appearance of an atom just as it was before and while also ensuring that world is not reduced in scale.

Or then again, it may also be that, within but a single atom, he may place two, place three, or place even up to an ineffably great number of worlds with their Mount Sumerus and other such mountains and rivers, doing so even while the physical appearance of that atom remains just as it originally was and doing so even while the world system within it is able to remain entirely and clearly manifest.

Or it may also be that, in accordance with whatever he wishes, he may manifest in a but a single world the adornments of two worlds, and so forth until we come to his placing the adornments of an ineffably great number<sup>268</sup> of worlds into the adornments of but a single world.

Or it may also be that, in the adornment of a single world, he may manifest two worlds and so forth on up to an ineffably great number of worlds.

Or it may also be that, in accordance with whatever he wishes, he may place the beings from an ineffably great number of worlds into but a single world.

Or it may also be that, in accordance with whatever he wishes, he places the beings from a single world into an ineffably great number of worlds and yet does so without disturbing or harming any of those beings in any way.

Or it may also be that, in accordance with whatever he wishes, he manifests in a single hair pore all the adornments associated with the realms of all buddhas.

### 31. HIS USE OF POWERS IN MANIFESTING BODIES & SUPERNATURAL PHENOMENA

Or it may also be that, in accordance with whatever he wishes, in but a single mind-moment, he manifests bodies as numerous as the atoms in an ineffably great number of worlds, each and every one of those bodies then manifests hands as numerous as that same number of atoms, and each and every one of those hands holds a Ganges' sands number of trays of flowers, cases of incense, floral garlands, canopies, flags, and banners that are then presented as offerings to the Buddhas everywhere throughout the ten directions.

Additionally, each and every one of those bodies may manifest with a number of heads matching this same number of atoms as

each and every one of those heads manifests a number of tongues matching this same number of atoms and, in each and every mind-moment, their utterances reach everywhere throughout the ten directions with praises of the Buddhas' meritorious qualities.

Or it may also be that, in accordance with whatever he wishes, in but a single mind-moment, he thus manifests everywhere throughout the ten directions the appearances of realizing the right enlightenment and the other associated events on through to the nirvāṇa along with the associated lands and their adornments.

Or it may be that he manifests bodies everywhere throughout the three periods of time while revealing within each of his bodies an incalculably great number of buddhas as well as their buddha lands, their adornments, and the creation and destruction of worlds, revealing all of these things in a manner whereby none of these phenomena fail to completely manifest therein.

Or it may also be that, from a single hair pore in his own body, he sends forth every variety of wind that, even so, does no harm to any being.

Or it may also be that, in accordance with whatever he wishes, he transformationally manifests therein boundlessly many worlds forming a single great sea and then manifests in the middle of this sea's waters a great lotus blossom that, with its radiance and graceful adornment, everywhere covers measurelessly and boundlessly many worlds as he manifests therein a great bodhi tree with all its adornments, and so forth on through to his manifestation of the realization of the knowledge of all modes.

Or it may also be that, even within his own body, he manifests every sort of light, including that of precious *maṇi* pearls, the sun, the moon, the stars, lightning in the clouds, and so forth, so that there are none that do not manifest therein.

Or it may also be that, employing the breath from his mouth, he is able to move the incalculably many worlds throughout the ten directions and yet still not cause any of the beings therein to give rise to thoughts of terror.

Or it may also be that he manifests the appearance of the wind disasters, fire disasters, and water disasters throughout the ten directions.

Or it may also be that, adapting to beings' predilections, he manifests form bodies that are entirely replete in their adornment.

Or it may also be that, even within his own body, he manifests the body of a buddha or else manifests his own body within the

body of a buddha. Or it may also be that, within the body of a buddha, he manifests his own land, or else, within his own land, manifests the body of a buddha.

Son of the Buddha. This bodhisattva dwelling on the Dharma Cloud Ground is able to manifest such phenomena as these as well as measurelessly many other hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of such appearances produced through his sovereign mastery of the spiritual powers.

32. THE CONGREGANTS WONDER: "WHAT MORE COULD EVEN A BUDDHA DO?"

(j) At that time, the bodhisattvas within the assembly as well as the devas, dragons, *yakṣas*, *gandarvas*, *asuras*, the Four World-Protecting kings, Śakra Devānām Indra, the Brahma Heaven devas, and the devas' sons of the Pure Dwelling Heavens and Maheśvara Heavens all had this same thought: "If a bodhisattva is able to employ the power of spiritual superknowledges and the power of his knowledge in ways such as this, what more in addition to that could be done even by a buddha?"

33. LIBERATION MOON ASKS VAJRAGARBHA FOR AN EXPLANATION

At that time, Liberation Moon Bodhisattva, aware of the thoughts in the minds of everyone within that assembly, then addressed Vajragarbha Bodhisattva, saying: "O Son of the Buddha. Having heard of this bodhisattva's power of spiritual superknowledges and wisdom, the members of this great assembly have now fallen into a net of doubts. It would be good indeed, O Humane One, if, for the sake of cutting off their doubts, one were to briefly reveal those phenomena associated with the spiritual powers and adornments of the bodhisattva."

34. VAJRAGARBHA ENTERS "THE NATURE OF ALL BUDDHA LANDS' SAMĀDHI"

At this time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva immediately entered "the nature of the physical form of all buddha lands samādhi."<sup>269</sup> When he entered this samādhi, the bodhisattvas as well as the entire great assembly all viewed their own bodies residing within the body of Vajragarbha Bodhisattva and, within it, they observed all the many different sorts of adornments within the great trichiliocosm that were such that, even were one to attempt to describe them for an entire *koṭi* of kalpas, one would never be able to come to the end of them.

They also observed therein a bodhi tree, the trunk of which had the circumference of ten myriads of great trichiliocosms and

a height that reached to a hundred myriads of great trichiliocosms. The span of the shade cast by its branches and leaves was of the same scale, matching the shape and size of the tree.

There was a lion throne there upon which sat a buddha named King of Omniscience and Superknowledges.<sup>270</sup> The entire great assembly observed that buddha sitting there beneath the bodhi tree on a lion throne adorned with many different characteristics that were such that, even in a *koṭi* of kalpas, one could never completely describe them.

Having manifested such great powers of spiritual superknowledges as these, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva caused each individual in the assembly to return to his original place. At that time, that great assembly, having experienced what it never experienced before, brought forth thoughts of amazement at the rarity of what they had experienced and then remained there quietly, single-mindedly gazing up at Vajragarbha Bodhisattva.

35. LIBERATION MOON ASKS ABOUT THIS SAMĀDHI'S NAME AND CAPACITY

At that time, Liberation Moon Bodhisattva said, "O Son of the Buddha. This samādhi is extremely rare and possessed of immense power. What is its name?"

Vajragarbha Bodhisattva replied, "This samādhi is known as "the nature of the physical form of all buddha lands samādhi."

He also asked, "What is the range of this samādhi's objective domain?"

Vajragarbha Bodhisattva then replied:

Son of the Buddha. If a bodhisattva were to cultivate this samādhi, then in accordance with whatever he wishes, he would be able to manifest within his own body a number of buddha lands as numerous as the atoms in a Ganges' sands number of worlds or even a number yet greater than this extending up to a measurelessly and boundlessly great number.

Son of the Buddha. The bodhisattva dwelling on the Dharma Cloud Ground acquires measurelessly many hundreds of thousands of other great samādhis such as these. Consequently this bodhisattva's body and his physical deeds are impossible to completely fathom. So too, his speech, his verbal deeds, his mind, his mental deeds, his sovereign mastery of the spiritual superknowledges, his contemplation of the three periods of time, the objective domains of his samādhis, the objective domains of his wisdom, his wandering and sporting in all the gates to liberation, the



transformations he performs, what he accomplishes through the use of spiritual powers, the works his rays of light perform and, to state it briefly, everything he does up to and including every raising up and setting down of his feet—absolutely everything he does all the way along cannot be known by any bodhisattva up to and including those who have reached the Ground of Excellent Intelligence who dwell therein at the station of the Dharma Prince.

Son of the Buddha. To state it briefly, all of the objective domains of this bodhisattva dwelling on the Dharma Cloud Ground are of this very sort. If one were to attempt an extensive explanation of it, one would still be unable to finish it even in measurelessly many hundreds of thousands of *asamkhyeyas* of kalpas.

36. HE ASKS: “WHAT MORE MIGHT A BUDDHA’S POWERS ACCOMPLISH?”

Liberation Moon Bodhisattva said, “O Son of the Buddha. If the objective domains of this bodhisattva’s spiritual superknowledges are of this sort, then what additional factors must characterize the powers of a buddha’s spiritual superknowledges?”

37. VAJRAGARBHA CONTRASTS A FEW CLUMPS OF EARTH TO ALL WORLDS

Vajragarbha Bodhisattva replied:

O Son of the Buddha. By way of comparison, suppose there was someone who picked up a clump of soil from somewhere on the four continents and asked, ‘Which is of greater volume? Is it all of that soil that comprises all the great earths in the boundlessly many worlds, or is it instead this clump of earth that I am holding here?’ I see this question you have asked as of this very sort. The Tathāgata’s wisdom is boundless and unequalled by anyone. How then could it possibly be compared to that of a bodhisattva?

Additionally, Son of the Buddha, it is just as when one picks up a small clump of earth from somewhere on the four continents and what remains is incalculable in volume. Were one to attempt to describe the spiritual superknowledges and wisdom of this bodhisattva on the Dharma Cloud Ground, even if one were to attempt to describe them for measurelessly many kalpas, one could only succeed in describing a minor portion of them. How much the more so then would this be the case if one were to attempt to describe them as they relate to one who abides on the ground of the Tathāgata?

38. VAJRAGARBHA COMPARES MANY BODHISATTVAS’ WISDOM TO ONE BUDDHA’S

Son of the Buddha. I will now bring forth a circumstance for you that will attest to the truth of this matter and thereby cause you

to be able to understand the realm of the Tathāgata. Son of the Buddha. Suppose that in each and every one of the ten directions there were buddha lands as numerous as the atoms in boundlessly many worlds, and suppose too that each and every one of those lands was so completely filled with bodhisattvas abiding on this ground that they could be compared to dense thickets of sugar cane stalks, bamboo, reeds, paddy rice, or hemp. Even all the wisdom arising from the bodhisattva practices cultivated by all of those bodhisattvas across the course of hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas could not compare to even a hundredth part of that possessed by a single *tathāgata*, and so forth until we come to its inability to equal even the smallest fraction of an *upaniṣad* when compared with the wisdom possessed by a single *tathāgata*.

#### 39. THE NATURE OF THIS BODHISATTVĀ'S PRACTICE AND WISDOM LIGHT

Son of the Buddha. Abiding in wisdom of this sort, this bodhisattva is no different from the Tathāgata in his actions of body, speech, and mind. He never relinquishes the power of any of the bodhisattva samādhis. Across the course of countless kalpas, he renders service to and makes offering to all buddhas and, in each and every kalpa, he presents every sort of gift to them as offerings. He is aided by the spiritual powers of all buddhas. The light of his wisdom becomes ever more supremely bright. Hence he is able to skillfully resolve all the difficult challenging questions throughout the Dharma realm, becoming one over whom no one can prevail even if they were to challenge him for a hundred thousand *koṭis* of kalpas.

#### 40. THE LIGHT OF HIS WISDOM COMPARED TO THAT OF REAL GOLD

Son of the Buddha. It is as if there was a goldsmith who, using the most supremely fine real gold, created articles of physical adornment to be personally worn by the Vaśavartin Heaven King,<sup>271</sup> adornments in which he inlaid large *maṇi* jewels, thereby creating adornments that could not be rivaled by those worn by any of the other devas.

So too it is in the case of the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground. His wisdom is such that it cannot be rivaled by all of the wisdom-based conduct of all bodhisattvas dwelling on the first ground through the ninth ground. The wisdom light of the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground is even able to cause beings to reach all the way through to the point of entering the cognition of

all-knowledge. None of the wisdom light of those others is able to compare to this.

41. THIS BODHISATTVA'S WISDOM LIGHT COMPARED TO MAHEŚVARA'S LIGHT

Son of the Buddha. This is analogous to the light of the Maheśvara Heaven King<sup>272</sup> that is able to cause the bodies and minds of beings to become clear and cool and, as such, is of a sort that cannot be rivaled by the light of any other beings.

So too it is with the wisdom light of the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground. It is able to cause all beings to acquire clarity and coolness and progress on through to the point where they themselves dwell in the cognition of all-knowledge. As such, it is of a sort that it cannot be rivaled by the wisdom light of any *śrāvaka*-disciple, *pratyekabuddha*, or bodhisattva on any ground up to and including the ninth ground.

42. THE BUDDHAS' ONGOING TEACHING OF THIS BODHISATTVA

Son of the Buddha. Though this bodhisattva *mahāsattva* already possesses the ability to be established in wisdom such as this, the Buddhas, the Bhagavats, additionally expound for his sake on the "the knowledge of the three periods of time," "the knowledge of the Dharma realm's distinctions," the knowledge that extends to all worlds," the knowledge that illuminates all worlds," "the knowledge that bears all beings in mind with kindness," and, to speak of what is essential, they expound for his sake on all the types of knowledge up to and including that culminates in gaining the cognition of all-knowledge.

43. THE TENTH GROUND BODHISATTVA'S FOCUS ON THE KNOWLEDGES PĀRAMITĀ

Among the ten *pāramitās*, this bodhisattva has become most especially superior in his perfection of the *pāramitā* of knowledges, though it is not the case that he does not cultivate the others.

44. VAJRAGARBHA'S FINAL STATEMENTS ABOUT THE 10TH GROUND BODHISATTVA

Son of the Buddha. This has been a summary explanation of the bodhisattva *mahāsattva*'s, tenth ground, the Ground of the Dharma Cloud. Were one to discourse on it extensively, even if one were to do so for measurelessly many *asaṃkhyeyas* of kalpas, one would still be unable to come to the end of it.

45. THE BODHISATTVA'S STATION AND DHARMA PRACTICE

Son of the Buddha. The bodhisattva *mahāsattva* dwelling on this ground often becomes a Maheśvara Heaven King who possesses sovereign mastery of the Dharma and who is able to transmit on

to beings the practices of *śrāvaka*-disciples and *pratyekabuddhas* as well as the practice of the bodhisattvas' *pāramitās*. Even if challenged with all the difficult questions from throughout the entire Dharma realm, there would still be no one able to prevail over him.

#### 46. THE BODHISATTVA'S MINDFULNESS

In his practice of giving, pleasing words, beneficial actions, joint endeavors, and all other such karmic works he pursues, he never departs from mindfulness of the Buddha, and so forth until we come to his never departing from mindfulness of his quest to achieve complete fulfillment of the knowledge of all modes and the cognition of all-knowledge.

#### 47. THE BODHISATTVA'S ASPIRATION TO SERVE BEINGS

He also has this thought: "I should become one who serves these beings as a leader, as one who is supreme," and so forth until we come to "as one who relies on the cognition of all-knowledge."

#### 48. THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE BODHISATTVA'S VIGOR AND VOWS

If he applies himself diligently to the practice of vigor, then, in but the instant of a single mind-moment, he succeeds in acquiring *samādhis* as numerous as the atoms in ineffably many hundreds of thousands of *koṭis* of *nayutas* of buddha lands. And so it goes on up to his then being able to manifest the acquisition of a following of bodhisattvas serving in his retinues as numerous as just that many atoms.

If this bodhisattva chooses to avail himself of the power of his especially supreme vows, he becomes able then to freely manifest such phenomena in numbers well beyond these, even to the point that, whether we speak of his cultivation, the adornments he creates, his resolute faith, what he accomplishes through physical or verbal actions, his light, his faculties, his spiritual transformations, his voice, or the domain of his practices, one would still be unable to enumerate them even if one were to attempt to do so for a hundred thousand *koṭis* of *nayutas* of kalpas.

### III. THE FINAL SUMMARIZING DISCUSSION OF THE TEN GROUNDS<sup>273</sup>

#### A. HIS EVENTUAL ALL-KNOWLEDGE LIKENED TO RIVERS' FLOW INTO THE SEA

{A} Son of the Buddha. This bodhisattva *mahāsattva's* aspects of practice on the ten grounds are such that, so long as he causes them to become directly and sequentially manifest, he will thereby become able to progress into the cognition of all-knowledge.

This circumstance is analogous to Lake Anavatapta that sends forth the four great rivers, the flowing waters of which circulate throughout the continent of Jambudvīpa. Because these waters are never exhausted, they ever increase in volume until they enter the ocean and cause it to become full.

Son of the Buddha. So too it is with this bodhisattva. From the point of his initial resolve to realize bodhi, he continually streams forth the waters of his roots of goodness and great vows, employing the four means of attraction to completely fulfill the needs of beings. Not only are these waters inexhaustible, they are moreover ever increasing until they ultimately pour forth into the ocean of all-knowledge and cause it to become full.

B. THE 10 GROUNDS' DIFFERENCES LIKENED TO THOSE OF 10 MOUNTAIN KINGS

(B) Son of the Buddha. Due to the Buddha's knowledge, the ten grounds of the bodhisattva have distinct differences. This is just as when, due to the great earth, there exist the ten kings of mountains. What then are those ten? They are: the Snow Mountain King, the Fragrance Mountain King, the Vaidharī Mountain King, the Rishi Mountain King, the Yugaṃdhara Mountain King, the Horse Ear Mountain King, the Nimindhara Mountain King, the Cakravāḍa Mountain King, the Ketumat Mountain King, and the Sumeru Mountain King.

1. THE FIRST GROUND COMPARED TO THE SNOW MOUNTAIN KING

Son of the Buddha. Just as on the Snow Mountain King, every sort of herb grows there so abundantly that one could never harvest them all, so too it is on the bodhisattva's Ground of Joyfulness, for all the world's classical texts, skills and arts, literature, verses, mantras and other occult techniques—these are all so completely present therein that one could never exhaustively describe them all.

2. THE SECOND GROUND COMPARED TO THE FRAGRANCE MOUNTAIN KING

Son of the Buddha. Just as on the Fragrance Mountain King, every sort of incense is all accumulated there and is so abundantly present there that one could never harvest it all, so too it is on the bodhisattva's Ground of Stainlessness, for the bodhisattva's moral precept practices and standards of awesome deportment are all so completely present therein that one could never exhaustively describe them all.

3. THE THIRD GROUND COMPARED TO THE VAIDHARĪ MOUNTAIN KING

Son of the Buddha. Just as the Vaidharī Mountain King is so entirely composed of jewels that all the many different kinds of

precious jewels are so abundantly present therein that one could never extract them all, so too it is on the bodhisattva's Ground of Shining Light, for the world's *dhyāna* absorptions, spiritual super-knowledges, liberations, *samādhis*, and *samāpattis* are all so completely present therein that one could never exhaustively describe them all.

4. THE FOURTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE RISHI MOUNTAIN KING

Son of the Buddha. Just as the Rishi Mountain King composed entirely of jewels has rishis possessed of the five spiritual super-knowledges in such abundance that they are endlessly numerous, so too it is with the bodhisattva's Ground of Blazing Brilliance, for the forms of especially supreme wisdom from all paths are so completely present therein that one could never exhaustively describe them all.

5. THE FIFTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE YUGAMDHARA MOUNTAIN KING

Son of the Buddha. Just as on the Yugamdhara Mountain King composed entirely of jewels, the *yakṣas*, those great spirits, live there in such abundance that one could never come to the end of them, so too it is on the bodhisattva's Difficult-to-Conquer Ground, for all types of sovereign masteries and psychic powers, and spiritual penetrations are so completely present therein that one could never exhaustively describe them all.

6. THE SIXTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE HORSE EAR MOUNTAIN KING

Son of the Buddha. Just as on the Horse Ear Mountain King composed entirely of jewels, all the various fruits are so abundantly present there that one could never harvest them all, so too it is on the bodhisattva's Ground of Direct Presence, for those who have penetrated the principle of conditioned arising corresponding to the realizations of *śrāvaka* disciples' fruits of the path are all so completely present therein that one could never exhaustively describe them all.

7. THE SEVENTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE NIMINDHARA MOUNTAIN KING

Just as on the Nimindhara Mountain King composed entirely of jewels, all the greatly powerful dragon spirits are so abundantly present there that one could never come to the end of them, so too it is on the bodhisattva's Far-Reaching Ground, for the skillful means, wisdom, and realizations corresponding to the fruits of a *pratyekabuddha*'s path are all so completely present therein that one could never exhaustively describe them all.

## 8. THE EIGHTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE CAKRAVĀDA MOUNTAIN KING

Just as on the Cakravāda Mountain King composed entirely of jewels, the congregation of those possessed of sovereign mastery is so abundantly present that one could never come to the end of them, so too it is on the bodhisattva's Ground of Immovability, for all bodhisattvas' sovereign masteries in traveling to different worlds are all so completely present therein that one could never exhaustively describe them all.

## 9. THE NINTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE KETUMAT MOUNTAIN KING

Just as on the Ketumat Mountain King composed entirely of jewels, all the *asura* kings possessed of great awe-inspiring virtue who dwell there are so abundantly present that one could never come to the end of them, so too it is on the bodhisattva's Ground of Excellent Intelligence, for all forms of knowledge and practice pertaining to the creation and destruction of worlds are all so completely present therein that one could never exhaustively describe them all.

## 10. THE TENTH GROUND COMPARED TO THE SUMERU MOUNTAIN KING

Just as on the Sumeru Mountain King that is entirely composed of precious jewels, the devas possessed of greatly awe-inspiring virtue are so abundantly present there that one could never come to the end of them, so too it is on the bodhisattva's Dharma Cloud Ground, for the Tathāgata's powers, fearlessnesses, exclusive dharmas, and matters pertaining to buddhahood are all so completely present therein along with their abundantly present facility in questions, answers, and proclamations that one could never come to the end of them all.

## 11. THE TEN GROUNDS IN ALL-KNOWLEDGE LIKENED TO MOUNTAINS IN THE SEA

Son of the Buddha. These ten jeweled mountain kings all identically reside within the great ocean and achieve their names based on their differences. So too it is with the bodhisattva's ten grounds. They all identically reside within all-knowledge and acquire their names based on their differences.

## C. THE TEN GROUNDS COMPARED TO TEN ASPECTS OF THE GREAT OCEAN

{C} Son of the Buddha. [These ten bodhisattva grounds] are comparable to the great ocean that, on the basis of ten characteristic features, acquires the inalterably exclusive designation "great ocean."<sup>274</sup> What then are those ten? They are:

- First, it progresses gradually from its shallows to its depths;
- Second, it refuses to accept dead bodies;

Third, upon flowing into it, all other waters thereby lose their original names;  
 Fourth, it is everywhere of the same singular flavor;  
 Fifth, it holds incalculably many truly precious jewels;  
 Sixth, nobody is able to go all the way down to its bottom;  
 Seventh, it is incalculably vast;  
 Eighth, it is a place in which beings with huge bodies reside;  
 Ninth, its tides do not reach beyond its shoreline;  
 Tenth, it everywhere takes in the great rains without overflowing.

So too it is with the practices of the bodhisattva that on the basis of ten characteristic features acquire the inalterably exclusive designation "bodhisattva practices." What then are those ten? They are:

On the Ground of Joyfulness this is because it is therein that the production of great vows gradually and sequentially deepens;

On the Ground of Stainlessness this is because it refuses to accept the dead bodies of those who break the precepts;

On the Ground of Shining Light this is because that is where one relinquishes the world's false designations;

On the Ground of Blazing Brilliance this is because it is of the same singular flavor as the Buddha's meritorious qualities;

On the Difficult-to-Conquer Ground this is because this is where one produces incalculably many skillful means and spiritual superknowledges whereby what one does in the world constitutes a multitude of precious jewels;

On the Ground of Direct Presence this is because that is where one contemplates the extremely profound principles of conditioned arising;

On the Far-Reaching Ground this is because that is where one employs vast enlightened intelligence in skillful investigative contemplation;

On the Ground of Immovability this is because that is where one manifests vast works of adornment;

On the Ground of Excellent Intelligence this is because that is where one acquires profound liberation and, in one's practice within the world, one's awareness accords with reality and never extends beyond boundaries;

And on the Dharma Cloud Ground this is because that is where one becomes able to insatiably take on all the rain of the Buddha's, the Tathāgata's, great Dharma light.



## D. THE TEN GROUNDS COMPARED TO A LARGE MAṆI JEWEL

{D} Son of the Buddha. This circumstance is analogous to that of a large *maṇi* jewel that by virtue of possessing ten characteristic qualities surpasses all the many other sorts of jewels. What then are those ten? They are:

- First, it comes forth from the great ocean;
- Second, it is enhanced by the refinements of a skilled artisan;
- Third, it is perfect and entirely free of flaws;
- Fourth, it is possessed of stainless purity;
- Fifth, its brightly penetrating brilliance shines both inwardly and outwardly;
- Sixth, it has been skillfully drilled through;
- Seventh, it is strung with precious thread;
- Eighth, it is mounted at the very tip of a tall flagpole made of lapis lazuli;
- Ninth, it shines forth everywhere with all the many different kinds of light;
- Tenth, it is able to rain down the many sorts of precious things in response to the wishes of the King and is able to fulfill the wishes arising in beings' minds.

Son of the Buddha. So too it is with the bodhisattva who, in this same manner, by virtue of possessing ten characteristic features, surpasses the qualities of the many other *āryas*. What then are these ten?

- First, he has brought forth the resolve to gain all-knowledge;
- Second, in his observance of the moral precepts and his cultivation of the *dhūta* practices, he is possessed of radiantly pure right practice;
- Third, he is possessed of perfectly full and flawless practice of all the *dhyāna* samādhis;
- Fourth, his path practices are pure white and free from all stains and defilements;
- Fifth, his skillful means and spiritual superknowledges are possessed of a penetrating brilliance that shines both inwardly and outwardly;
- Sixth, his wisdom with respect to the process of conditioned arising has the capacity to be skillfully penetrating;
- Seventh, [his practice] is strung through with the thread of the many different applications of skillful means and wisdom;
- Eighth, he is placed high atop the pillar of the sovereign masteries;

Ninth, he contemplates beings' actions and emanates the light of learning and retention;

Tenth, having received the Buddhas' consecration of his knowledge, he then falls in among those counted as buddhas and thus becomes able, for the sake of beings, to carry out on a vast scale the works of the Buddhas.

E. THE PREREQUISITE CONDITIONS FOR HEARING THE TEN GROUNDS TEACHINGS

(E) Son of the Buddha. As for this chapter on the bodhisattva practice gateways by which one accumulates the meritorious qualities associated with the knowledge of all modes and all-knowledge, if any being had not himself already planted roots of goodness, he would be unable to even obtain a hearing of it.

F. LIBERATION MOON ASKS: "HOW MUCH MERIT BY HEARING THIS TEACHING?"

Liberation Moon Bodhisattva then asked, "How much merit might one acquire due to having heard [this chapter that describes] these Dharma gateways?"

G. VAJRAGARBHA EXPLAINS MERIT AND IMPORTANCE TEN GROUNDS TEACHING

Vajragarbha Bodhisattva replied:

The merit associated with simply hearing these Dharma gateways is of the same sort as the merit of all-knowledge. How could that be? It could not be that one might have resolute faith in, accept, uphold, study and recite these Dharma gateways to the meritorious qualities if one had not heard them. How much the less might one then proceed to vigorously pursue their cultivation in accordance with the way they were explained. Therefore, one should realize that it is essential that one gain a hearing of these Dharma gateways to the accumulation of the meritorious qualities associated with all-knowledge in order to then be able to have resolute faith in them, accept them, uphold them in practice, and thus later succeed in reaching the ground of all-knowledge.

H. THE AUSPICIOUS SIGNS OCCURRING WHEN THIS SUTRA'S TEACHING ENDED

At that time, because of the spiritual powers of the Buddha and because of the very nature of the Dharma, in each of the ten directions, worlds as numerous as the atoms in ten *koṭis* of buddha lands underwent the six types and eighteen varieties of characteristic movements, namely: movement, universal movement, equal-and-universal movement, rising, universal rising, equal-and-universal rising, upward thrusting, universal upward thrusting, equal-and-universal upward thrusting, shaking, universal shaking,

equal-and-universal shaking, roaring, universal roaring, equal-and-universal roaring, striking, universal striking, and equal-and-universal striking. This was accompanied by the raining down of the many sorts of heavenly flower blossoms, heavenly floral garlands, heavenly raiment, and also heavenly jewels, articles of adornment, flags, banners, silken canopies, the playing of heavenly instruments and singing in which the sounds were harmonious and refined and accompanied by the simultaneous sounding of voices in praise of all the meritorious qualities of the ground of all-knowledge.

I. THE 10 DIRECTIONS' BODHISATTVAS ATTEST TO THE TEACHING'S UNIVERSALITY

Just as this proclamation of this Dharma was taking place in the palace of this world's Paranirmita Vaśavartin Heaven, so too was it also taking place in this very fashion in all worlds of the ten directions.

Additionally, at that time, again on account of the spiritual powers of the Buddha, there came to this assembly from beyond worlds as numerous as the atoms in ten *koṭis* of buddha lands bodhisattvas as numerous as the atoms in ten *koṭis* of buddha lands who then spoke these words:

It is good indeed, good indeed, O Vajragarbha, that you have discoursed so directly on this dharma. We too carry the name "Vajragarbha" and the worlds in which we dwell with all their differences, are all named, "Vajra Qualities." Our buddha is called "Vajra Banner." All of us, receiving the benefit of the spiritual powers of the Tathāgata, proclaim this very Dharma in those worlds in which we dwell and from which we come. Our assemblies are all also entirely identical. The language, the phrases, and the meanings are also neither enhanced nor reduced in comparison to what is set forth here.

That all of us have come to this assembly is entirely because of the Buddha's spiritual powers through which we have come to offer this certifying corroboration. Just as we have now come and entered this world, so too is it the case that, in this same manner, we go forth to all the worlds of the ten directions to offer just such certifying corroboration there as well.

J. VAJRAGARBHA'S SUMMARIZING VERSES AUGMENTED BY THE BUDDHA'S POWERS

At that time, Vajragarbha Bodhisattva regarded that entire congregation that had assembled from the ten directions throughout the entire Dharma realm and, wishing to praise the generation of the resolve to gain realization of the cognition of all-knowledge,

wishing to reveal the realms of the bodhisattvas, wishing to reveal the purification of the practices and powers of the bodhisattva, wishing to discourse on the acquisition of the path to the knowledge of all modes, wishing to discourse on the extinguishing of all forms of worldly defilement, wishing to bestow all-knowledge, wishing to reveal the adornments associated with inconceivable knowledge, wishing to reveal all the meritorious qualities of all bodhisattvas, and wishing to cause such meanings associated with the grounds to become yet more clearly revealed, he availed himself of the spiritual power of the Buddha and then proceeded to utter verses, saying:

With a mind abiding in quiescence, forever tamed,  
and as uniformly the same and unobstructed as space itself,  
he abandons the turbidity of all defilements and abides in the path.  
You should listen to such especially supreme practices as these. <sup>(17)</sup>

For a hundred thousand *koṭis* of kalpas, he cultivates every good,  
presents offerings to incalculably and boundlessly many buddhas,  
and to *śrāvaka*-disciples and *pratyekabuddhas* as well  
and, in order to benefit beings, brings forth the great resolve. <sup>(18)</sup>

He diligently upholds moral precepts, is always pliantly patient,  
is replete in senses of shame and blame and merit and knowledge,  
resolutely seeks Buddha's knowledge, cultivates vast intelligence,  
and, vowing to acquire the ten powers, brings forth the great resolve.  
<sup>(19)</sup>

He makes offerings to all Buddhas of the three periods of time,  
adorns and purifies all lands,  
utterly realizes all dharmas' uniform equality,  
and, for the sake of benefiting beings, brings forth the great resolve.<sup>275</sup>  
<sup>(20)</sup>

Dwelling on the first ground, he brings forth this resolve,  
forever abandons the many evils, and always abides in joyfulness.  
Through the power of vows, he vastly cultivates all good dharmas,  
and, through compassionate empathy, enters the next station.

Entirely replete in precepts and learning and mindful of beings,  
he washes away defilements, his mind becomes radiantly pristine,  
he contemplates the world's fires of the three poisons,  
and, with vast comprehension, proceeds on to the third ground.

Seeing the three realms of existence as entirely impermanent,  
as ablaze with sufferings akin to when an arrow is shot into the body,  
he renounces all that is conditioned, pursues the Buddha's Dharma,  
and, as one with great wisdom, enters the Blazing Ground.

Fully replete in mindfulness and wisdom, he gains path knowledge, makes hundreds of thousands of offerings to countless buddhas, and always contemplates all of the most supreme qualities, whereupon this person then enters the Difficult-to-Conquer Ground.

Employing wisdom and skillful means, he skillfully contemplates, brings forth all different sorts of manifestations to rescue beings, again makes offerings to the unexcelled Honored One of ten powers, and enters the unproduced and the Direct Presence Ground.

He becomes able to know what is difficult for a worldling to know, does not accept any self, transcends existence and non-existence, knows dharmas' basic stillness, adapts to conditions' transformations, and, having gained these sublime states, enters the seventh ground.

With wisdom, skillful means, and a vast mind, [he masters] what is hard to practice, hard to overcome, and hard to entirely know. Though he has realized quiescent cessation, he cultivates diligently and is able to enter the space-like Ground of Immovability.

Encouraged by Buddha, he is caused to rise from quiescent cessation, takes up vast cultivation of many different deeds rooted in wisdom. Equipped with ten sovereign masteries, he contemplates the world, and, due to this, ascends to the Ground of Excellent Intelligence.

With subtle and marvelous wisdom, he contemplates beings' thickets of mental actions, karmic actions, afflictions, and such, and, wishing to teach them and cause them to enter the path, he then expounds on all Buddhas' treasury of the supreme meaning.

He sequentially cultivates to completion the many forms of goodness, accumulates merit and wisdom up through the ninth ground, always pursues all buddhas' most supreme dharmas, and gains the consecration with Buddha's wisdom waters poured on his crown.

He acquires measurelessly many samādhis and also thoroughly and completely understands their functions. The very last samādhi is known as "Receiving the Consecration" wherein he dwells in a vast realm, forever unmoving.

When this bodhisattva acquires this samādhi, an immense bejeweled lotus blossom suddenly appears, whereupon, with a body of matching size, he sits down in its middle, surrounded by those buddha's sons, all in the same contemplation.

He emanates a hundred thousand *koṭis* of great light beams that extinguish the sufferings of all beings and also emanates beams of light from his crown that everywhere enter the assemblies of the buddhas of the ten directions.

They all remain there in space, forming a net-like canopy of light that, after making offerings to the Buddhas, then enters their feet. The Buddhas all then immediately know,  
 “This Buddha’s son has now ascended to the consecration stage.”

The bodhisattvas from the ten directions come to observe this great consecration-receiving eminence pour forth illumination. The Buddhas then also release light from between their eyebrows that, after producing illumination everywhere, then enter his crown.

All worlds of the ten directions are then beset with tremors and all the sufferings experienced in the hells are extinguished. It is at this very time that the Buddhas confer their consecration just as a wheel-turning king confers a consecration on his eldest son.

When one receives this anointing of the crown by the Buddhas, then this is what is known as ascending to the Dharma Cloud Ground. His wisdom continues to grow boundlessly to include [the means of] awakening everyone in all worlds.

The desire realm, the form realm, the formless realm, the Dharma realm, the worldly realms, and the realms of beings. Whether calculable, incalculable, or in the realms of empty space, he acquires a penetrating comprehension of all such things as these.

In all his transformations, he employs greatly awe-inspiring powers and receives the Buddhas’ augmenting support in subtle knowledge. As for the esoteric, kalpa enumerations, ordinary beings, and such, he can contemplate them all in accordance with reality.

He takes on birth, leaves the home life, realizes right enlightenment, turns the wheel of the wondrous Dharma, and enters nirvāṇa. Everything up to the dharma of quiescent liberation as well as what has not yet been taught—he is able to completely fathom it all.

The bodhisattva dwelling on this Dharma Cloud Ground, entirely perfect in mindfulness power, retains the Buddha’s Dharma. Just as the great ocean takes in the dragon’s rains, so too is his ability to take in and retain the Dharma on this ground.

Compared to all buddha dharmas countless beings in ten directions who had the hearing-and-retaining [samādhi] could retain, the Dharma that he hears [and retains] in the place of a single buddha exceeds that number by a measurelessly great amount.

Using the power of wisdom, past vows, and awesome spiritual might, in but a single mind-moment, he pervades the ten directions’ lands, pours down the rain of sweet-dew elixir, and extinguishes afflictions. Hence the Buddha referred to this as “the Dharma Cloud.”

What his superknowledges manifest throughout the ten directions so surpasses matters in the worldly sphere of humans and devas, exceeding their number so incalculably many *koṭis* of times, assessing them with worldly knowledge, one is sure to become bewildered.

Even everyone up through the ninth ground cannot know how much knowledge and merit is involved in his merely raising his foot. How much less might this be known by any ordinary being or even by any *śrāvaka*-disciple or *pratyekabuddha*.

The bodhisattva dwelling on this ground makes offerings to buddhas in the lands throughout the ten directions while also making offerings to all present-era assemblies of *āryas* and completely fulfilling his adornment with a buddha's qualities.

As he dwells on this ground, they additionally discourse for him on unimpeded knowledge of the three times, the Dharma realm, and in the same manner, on beings, on lands, and so forth on up to all of the Buddha's meritorious qualities.

The wisdom light of the bodhisattva dwelling on this ground is able to reveal to beings the road of right Dharma.

As the Maheśvara Heaven King's light dispels worldly darkness, so too this light of his dispels darkness in just that same manner.

Dwelling herein, one often becomes a king within the three realms well able to expound on Dharma according to the Three Vehicles. Incalculably many *samādhis* are acquired in but a mind-moment and the number of buddhas he sees is of that same order.

I have now concluded a summary explanation of this ground. If one wished to discourse on it extensively, it would be endless. Just so, the grounds exist in reliance on the Buddha's wisdom just as the ten mountain kings, towering, abide [in reliance on the earth].

Culturally supportive works done on the first ground are endless, comparable to the density of the many herbs on Snow Mountain. Second ground precepts and learning are like Incense Mountain. The third is like the fine flowers that come forth on Vaidharī.

The jewels of the path on the "Blazing Brilliance" ground are endless, comparable to the worthies skillfully dwelling on Rishi Mountain. The spiritual powers on the fifth ground are like on Yugaṃdhara. The many fruits on the sixth are like on Horse Ear Mountain.

The seventh ground's great wisdom is analogous to Nimindhara. The sovereign masteries on the eighth ground are like Cakravāda. The ninth is like Ketumat in its gathering of unimpeded knowledge. The tenth is like Sumeru in its repletion with the manifold virtues.

The first ground is chief in vows, the second in upholding precepts, the third ground in virtues, the fourth in singular focus, the fifth ground in sublimity, the sixth in extreme profundity, the seventh in vast wisdom, and the eighth in adornment.

The ninth is foremost in the contemplation of sublime meanings in a manner that surpasses that of all the world's paths.

On the tenth ground, one takes on and preserves Buddha dharmas. It is in this way that the ocean of practices is inexhaustible.

Ten practices overstep the worldly, the first is generating the resolve, upholding precepts is second, *dhyāna* is third,

purification of practices is fourth, fulfillment is fifth, conditioned arising is sixth, his threading of [means and wisdom] is seventh,

the eighth is placement atop the vajra pillar,

the ninth is contemplation of the beings' thickets,

the tenth is the anointing of the crown according to the King's intent.

It is in this way that the jewel of virtue gradually becomes purified.

Even if, having crushed the ten directions' lands to dust,

one could know in but a single mind-moment their number of dusts,

and, even if one could measure the size of space with a hair tip, still,

one could not finish describing [the grounds] even in a *koṭi* of kalpas.

### End of the Ten Grounds Chapter



## Translation Endnotes

1. Khotan was a Buddhist state located on the branch of the Silk Road that ran along the Southern periphery of the Taklamakan Desert and which corresponds to modern Xinjiang Province, China.
2. Because the Chinese translator only titled the sections of this text with section numbers (“Chapter 26: The Ten Grounds: Part One,” “... Part Two,” etc., I have elected to provide more specific titling for each part of the text as in “The Joyfulness Ground,” “The Stainlessness Ground,” etc.
3. “Clear knowledges” refers here to the “three knowledges” (*trividya*): 1) The remembrance of previous lives (*pūrvavāṇivāsānusmṛti*); 2) Knowledge of beings’ rebirth destinies (*cyutyupapattijñāna*); and 3) Knowledge of the destruction of the contaminants or “taints” (*āsravakṣaya*).
4. A *bodhimaṇḍa* is the “site of enlightenment” wherein enlightenment is cultivated and fully realized. It may be used as a general reference to Buddhist temples, though it often refers specifically to the site beneath the bodhi tree where a buddha gains complete realization of the utmost, right, and perfect enlightenment.
5. The “wheel of Dharma” or “Dharma wheel” (*dharmacakra*) refers to the eight-spoked wheel emblematic of the Buddha’s teaching of the eight-fold path of the Āryas or “Noble Ones” consisting of right views, right thought or intention, right speech, right physical action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right meditative absorption (*samādhi*).
6. As a Buddhist technical term, “Dharma realm” or “dharma realm,” *dharmadhātu*, has at least several levels of meaning, of which this refers to the second of the three listed below:
  - 1) At the most granular level, “dharma realm” refers to the objective contents of one of the eighteen sense realms, dharmas as “objects of mind” (*dharmāyatana*);
  - 2) In the most cosmically and metaphysically vast sense, “Dharma realm” refers in aggregate to all conventionally-existent phenomena and the universally pervasive noumenal “true suchness” (*tathatā*) that is the nature of all of those phenomena. In this sense, it is identical with the “Dharma body” (*dharmakāya*);
  - 3) As a classifying term, “dharma realm” is used to distinguish realms of existence (as in “the ten dharma realms” that consist of the realms of buddhas, bodhisattvas, *śrāvaka* disciples, *pratyekabuddhas*, devas, *asuras*, humans, animals, hungry ghosts, and hell-dwellers) or metaphysical modes of existence (as in the “four dharma realms” of the Huayan hermeneutic tradition

that speaks of: a) the dharma realm of the “noumenal” [synonymous with emptiness or *śūnyatā*]; b) the dharma realm of the “phenomenal”; c) the dharma realm of the unimpeded interpenetration of the phenomenal and the noumenal; and d) the dharma realm of the unimpeded interpenetration of all phenomena with all other phenomena in a manner that resonates somewhat with quantum entanglement and non-locality).

7. An “ineffable” (*anabhilāpya*) is a specific nearly unimaginably large number that is the 120<sup>th</sup> of 123 numbers described in Chapter Thirty of the Flower Adornment Sutra wherein each of those numbers is defined as being the square of the immediately previous number the first of which is a *lakṣa* (100,000).
8. Per DSBC, the Sanskrit names of these bodhisattva *mahāsattvas*, (37 in BB and KB, 38 in BR, 39 in SA, SD and the Sanskrit) are:  
 Vajragarbha, Ratnagarbha, Padmagarbha, Śrīgarbha, Padmaśrīgarbha, Ādityagarbha, Sūryagarbha, Kṣitigarbha, Śaśivimalagarbha, Sarvavyūhālaṃkārapratibhāsaṃdarśanagarbha, Jñānavairocanagarbha, Ruciraśrīgarbha, Candanaśrīgarbha, Puṣpaśrīgarbha, Kusumaśrīgarbha, Utpalaśrīgarbha, Devaśrīgarbha, Puṇyaśrīgarbha, Anāvaraṇajñānavisuddhigarbha, Guṇaśrīgarbha, Nārāyaṇaśrīgarbha, Amalagarbha, Vimalagarbha, Vicitrpratibhānālaṃkāragarbha, Mahāraśmijālāvabhāsaagarbha, Vimalaprabhāsaśritejorājagarbha, Sarvalakṣaṇapratimanāḍitaviśuddhiśrīgarbha, Vajrārciḥśrīvatsālaṃkāragarbha, Jyotirjvalanārciḥśrīgarbha, Nakṣatrarājaprabhāvabhāsaagarbha, Gaganakośānāvaraṇajñānavisuddhigarbha, Anāvaraṇasvaramaṇāḍalamadhuranirghoṣagarbha, Dhāraṇīmukhasarvajagatprāṇidhisamdhāraṇagarbha, Sāgaravyūhagarbha, Meruśrīgarbha, Sarvagunaśrīgarbha, Tathāgataśrīgarbha, Buddhaśrīgarbha, and Vimukticandra.
9. Jñānavairocanagarbha.
10. Anāvaraṇajñānavisuddhigarbha.
11. Gaganakośānāvaraṇajñānavisuddhigarbha.
12. A *mahāsattva* is a “great bodhisattva,” one who has practiced the bodhisattva path for countless kalpas.
13. Most of these numerical descriptors: “countless” (perhaps equals an “innumerable” [*agaṇeya* = 112<sup>th</sup> level]), “measureless” (*aparimāṇa* = 106<sup>th</sup> level), “boundless” (*aparyanta* = 108<sup>th</sup> level), “unequalable” (*asamanta* = 110<sup>th</sup> level), “innumerable” (*agaṇeya* = 112<sup>th</sup> level), “indescribable” (*atulya* = 114<sup>th</sup> level), “inconceivable” (*acintya* = 116<sup>th</sup> level) “immeasurable” (*ameya* = 118<sup>th</sup> level), and “ineffable” (*anabhilāpya* = 120<sup>th</sup> level) represent a specific nearly unimaginably large number described

- in Chapter Thirty, "Asaṃkhyeyas," of the Flower Adornment Sutra wherein each of those numbers is defined as being the square of the immediately previous number the first of which is a *lakṣa* (100,000).
14. Although the Sanskrit refers here to this samādhi as "the bodhisattva samādhi known as 'the light of the Great Vehicle' (*mahāyānaprabhāsaṃ nāma bodhisattvasamādhim*)," this may be a later textual modification of the text, for both SA and KB refer to it as "the great wisdom light samādhi."
  15. A *koṭi* is a number that is defined in the Flower Adornment Sutra Chapter 30 as the product of multiplying a *lakṣa* (100,000) by a *lakṣa*. Hence it equals 10,000,000, i.e. ten million.
  16. The text refers here to the first three of the ten standard names for a buddha.
  17. "Contaminants" here translates the slightly ambiguous pre-Buddhist Jain term *āsrava*, translated into Chinese as "flows" (漏). The allusion is to the defiling influence (read "influents") of either three or four factors, as follows: 1) sensual desire (*kāma*); 2) [craving for] becoming (*bhāva*), i.e. the craving for continued existence; 3) ignorance (*avidyā*), i.e. delusion; 4) views (*drṣṭi*) This fourth type is not included in some listings. Often-encountered alternate translations include "taints," "outflows," "influxes," and "fluxes."
  18. The Sanskrit references "*mahāprajñā*" here.
  19. "*suvinīścītamatikauśalyatām*."
  20. "*tathāgatavaiśāradyānavalīnatām*."
  21. The DSBC Sanskrit (*pratiṣaṃvoid*) makes it clear that "knowledges" is intended to refer to the four types of unimpeded knowledge discussed at great length later in the text in the explanation of the ninth ground which SA renders as "Ground of Excellent Intelligence" (*sādhumatī-bhūmi*). Briefly, they are unimpeded knowledge of Dharma, meaning, language, and eloquence.
  22. DSBC specifies: "*supariśodhitādhyāśayatayā ca*," i.e. "has well purified his *higher* resolute intentions (or 'higher aspirations')." "
  23. "*svavadātajñānamaṇḍalatayā ca*."
  24. "*susambhṛtasambhāratayā ca*."
  25. "*apramāṇasmṛtibhājanatayā*."
  26. "Resolute faith" (*adhimukti*) is a term that generally refers to confidently held, rationally based inclinations toward wholesome objective conditions or path-associated endeavors. That said, this term is *also* used to refer to sentient beings' strongly held habitual interests or predilections toward the whole range of wholesome, unwholesome,

or karmically neutral objective conditions or endeavors, hence it is incumbent on the teaching bodhisattva to be comprehensively cognizant of all of these different types of “resolute dispositions” along with the most skillful teaching stratagems to adopt in teaching the beings who possess them.

27. *Zongchi* (總持), “comprehensive retention,” is the Chinese translation of the Sanskrit *dhāraṇī*. I sometimes redundantly translate the term as “comprehensive-retention *dhāraṇī*” to clarify what the Chinese text means by “comprehensive retention,” especially when the term is not simply referring to mantras. “*Dhāraṇīs*” refers primarily to formulae that constitute a kind of pronunciation-dependent Sanskrit code language consisting of Sanskrit syllables which may or may not have a translatable meaning but which can never be translated into another language without destroying their primary functions which are of primarily two types: a) to facilitate the remembrance of teachings and their meanings even for many lifetimes; and b) when more-or-less equivalent to mantras, to protect the practitioner or other vulnerable beings from danger, the manifestation of karmic obstacles, or demonic influences.

*Dhāraṇīs* may also facilitate the bodhisattva’s unproduced-dharmas patience through which he can remain in *saṃsāra* for countless kalpas as he continues to work for the spiritual liberation of all other beings. They also may be used to invoke the manifestation of beneficial supernormal powers either in conjunction with or independent of *mudras* (hand postures) and/or visualizations.

28. “*dharmadhātujñānamudrāsūmudritatayā ca.*”
29. Per DSBC, the names of the *bhūmis* are: *pramuditā*; *vimalā*; *prabhākarī*; *arciṣmatī*; *sudurjayā*; *abhīmukhī*; *dūraṃgamā*; *acalā*; *sādhumatī*; *dharmameghā*.
30. SA,SD, and Prajñā all translate the name of this *bhūmi* as “the Ground of Blazing Intelligence” (焰慧地). This appears to be the result of an error arising from misinterpreting the Sanskrit name (*arciṣmatī*) by mistaking a suffix indicating possession (*-mat* modified to agree with the feminine noun *bhūmi* to become *-matī*) for a completely unrelated word that means “intelligence,” “intellect,” “mind” (*matī*). (BB, BR, KB, and the Tibetan all recognize *-matī* as a possessive suffix and hence accord with the Sanskrit meaning.) I have chosen to “bridge” the problem by translating the name of this ground as “the Ground of Blazing Brilliance” in order to allow both meanings the be reflected in the word “blazing” and thus more or less accurately translate both the (seemingly erroneous) SA translation and the correct meaning of the Sanskrit.

31. There seem to be two distinctly different understandings of the meaning of this ground:

DR, SA, BB, BR, SD, and Prajñā all translate the name of this *bhūmi* as “the Ground of Excellent Intelligence” (善慧地). DR translates that same meaning slightly differently: (善哉意). The Tibetan translation also corresponds to this with “the Ground of Excellent Insight” (*legs pa'i blo gros*). Strictly speaking, one could infer that these renderings all appear to be the result of an error arising from misinterpreting the Sanskrit name (*sādhumatī*) by mistaking a suffix indicating possession (*-mat* modified to agree with the feminine noun *bhūmi* to become *-matī*) for a completely unrelated word that means “intelligence,” “intellect,” or “mind” (*matī*).

Of all of the Chinese and Tibetan translators, it appears that the Kumārajīva-Buddhayaśas translation team may have been the only one to render the name of this *bhūmi* more or less in accordance with the above-referenced “strictly correct” interpretation of the Sanskrit term as “the Ground of Sublime Goodness” (妙善地). The KB edition only employs the possibly erroneous Chinese and Tibetan default rendering once (in its initial listing of the ten bodhisattva grounds), but otherwise accords with the strictly grammatically correct interpretation of the term throughout its detailed discussion of the ninth *bhūmi* itself.

32. For the most part, throughout the text, in the introductory and reiterative verses for each of the chapters, SA’s Chinese translation employs six or eight verse lines to translate the ideas contained in each four-line Sanskrit gatha when he is producing five-character Chinese verse lines. However, when he produces seven-character verse lines, he seems to more often follow the Sanskrit on a line by line basis. Even so, it is still not always possible to precisely map the Chinese onto the much later and somewhat “evolved” gathas found in the extant Sanskrit editions. Although the ideas are mostly all present in both editions, the exact content and sequencing often differ somewhat. To aid correlation with the Sanskrit edition, I have appended the verse number of the DSBC Sanskrit edition (in reduced font bold curly braces) to the last line of each equivalent SA verse.
33. Although the Chinese specifies “wisdom” here (*zhīhui* / 智慧), DSBC records the word more commonly rendered as “knowledge” (*jñāna*): “*guṇajñānasamanvitā*.”
34. “Resolute intentions” translates the Chinese *shenxin* (深心), one of SA’s translations of the Sanskrit *āśaya*.
35. The “provisions for the realization of the Path” (*bodhisamḥāra*) are the requisites for realization of buddhahood. These are often explained

as consisting of karmic merit on the one hand (*puṇya*) and “knowledge” (*jñāna*) or “wisdom” on the other.

36. “*mātrkā*.”
37. An *asaṃkhyeya* is an exceedingly large number the definition for which varies so widely in Buddhist texts that I have seen definitions ranging between 10 to the fifty-first power and 10 to a power the exponent for which is transcribed with 35 placeholders (i.e. exponent = 74,436,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000).
38. Vasubandhu explains the comparison of the Buddha to empty space thus: “Again, as for ‘like empty space,’ [just as empty space cannot be stained by anything at all, so too, the Buddha] cannot be stained by worldly dharmas, this because all habitual karmic propensities associated with ignorance and afflictions have been extinguished.” (復如虛空世間法不能染。無明煩惱習氣滅故。[131c05-06])
39. This is another reference to the provisions required for the realization of bodhi (*bodhisam̐bhāra*) usually explained as consisting primarily of merit and knowledge or wisdom. “*susam̐bhṛtasam̐bhārāṇām*.”
40. DSBC: “*svayaṃbhūjñānānukūlaṃ*.”
41. “*pramuditāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito bodhisattvaḥ prāmodyabahulo bhavati prasādabahulaḥ prītibahula utplāvanābahula udagrībahula utsībahula utsāhabahulo ‘saṃram̐bhābahulo ‘vihiṃsābahulo ‘krodhabahulo bhavati*.”
42. Although the Chinese references “wisdom” here (*zhìhuì* / 智慧),“ DSBC references the word more commonly rendered as “knowledge” (*jñāna*): “*jñānabhūmeḥ*.”
43. Bhikkhu Bodhi points out that this same list appears in the Pali (albeit in slightly different order and with mild differences in the interpretation of two of the five points). See his translation of *Numerical Discourses* 9:5, p. 1255. The most exhaustive of all treatments of this list appears to be Nāgārjuna’s discussion of it in his Ten Grounds Sutra commentary, for which see my complete translation of that entire text under separate cover.
44. “*prasādabahulatayā*.” BHS lists “faith” as the primary definition, although MW doesn’t mention it at all and prefers definitions along the lines of “purity” and “tranquility” reflected here, hence the apparent discrepancy between KB and SA translations. BB follows KB precisely here, while SD similarly prefers “abundant realization of purity” (多證淨) and Bodhiruci falls somewhat farther afield with “abundant reverence” (多恭敬).
45. “*adhimuktiviśuddhyā*.”
46. DSBC: “*ratnopamacittotpādāṅgāḥ*.”

47. In his Treatise on the Ten Grounds Sutra, (*Daśabhūmika-vibhāṣā* / 十住毘婆沙論 [T no. 1521]), Nāgārjuna devotes all of Chapter Five (T26n1521\_p30b10-35a21) to an extensive explanation of the following ten vows. For an English translation of this, see my translation of this entire treatise.
48. DSBC = “*sarvajñajñānapraṭiṣṭhāpanāya*.”
49. I opt for the first of Qingliang’s two interpretations for the reading of this extremely ambiguous line not found at all in Bodhiruci, Śīladharma, Buddhābhadrā, or the Sanskrit and only obliquely alluded to in Kumārajīva. (QL’s other approved interpretation of “若入若行若去” refers to these worlds subsuming or being subsumed by each other in an interpenetrating fashion wherein this bodhisattva freely travels to and returns from these many different sorts of worlds.)
50. DSBC doesn’t specify “‘wise’ beings” so much as “beings possessed of knowledge”: “*apramāṇajñānākaraśattva*.”
51. DSBC doesn’t specify “wisdom,” but rather “knowledge”: “*tathāgataparabhāvajñānānugamāya*.”
52. DSBC does not specify “wisdom,” but rather “knowledge”: “*sahaghoṣodāhārajñānānugamāya*.”
53. Again, DSBC specifies “knowledge” rather than “wisdom”: “*mahābuddhaviśayaprabhāvajñānānugamāya*.”
54. Again, DSBC specifies “knowledge” rather than “wisdom”: “*mahājñānabhūmi*.”
55. The following list of ten mental qualities is present with minor variations in BB, SA, and KB, but is missing seven of these mental qualities in SD and eight of these mental qualities in BR and the (very late) surviving Sanskrit editions of the Ten Grounds Sutra.
56. DSBC lists these expressions of faith as follows: “*tathāgatānām arhatām samyaksambuddhānām pūrvāntacaryābhīnīrharapraveśam pāramitāsamudāgamam bhūmīpariniṣpattim vaiśeṣikatām balapariniṣpattim vaiśāradīyaparipūrim āveṇīkabuddhadharmāsamhāryatām acintyām buddhadharmatām anantamadhyaṃ tathāgataviśayābhīnīrharāparāparimāṇajñānānugatam tathāgatagocarānupraveśam phalapariniṣpattim abhīśradadhātī*.”
57. One could insert in brackets a tenth member of this list as “[and such insurmountability]” following both BB and KB (如是難壞), that is also found with mild permutations in most other editions. Bodhiruci (如是上。此諸佛法如是難得。) follows very closely the extant DSBC Sanskrit: “*evamudārāḥ evaṃ durāsadāśceme buddhadharmāḥ*,” i.e. “Such loftiness and so hard to approach.”

58. This is a reference to the four inverted views (*viparyāsa*):
- 1) Viewing as pleasurable what is in fact conducive to suffering;
  - 2) Viewing as permanent what is in fact impermanent;
  - 3) Viewing as lovely what is in fact unlovely by virtue of its impurity;
  - 4) Viewing as “self” what is in fact devoid of anything constituting an inherently and enduringly existent self.
59. These are collectively referred to as “the four floods” (*ogha*).
60. “Name-and-form” is a reference to the five aggregates of mentality and physicality that are generally falsely construed by unenlightened beings to constitute an inherently existent “self.”
61. “The six sense bases” is a reference to the six sense faculties: eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and intellectual mind faculty. They are commonly metaphorically referred to as a village wherein beings falsely impute the existence of an inherently existent self.
62. DSBC specifies “knowledge” (*jñāna*) rather than “wisdom.”
63. For “Diligently cultivates irreversible renunciation” (勤修出離。不退不轉。), the DSBC Sanskrit has “*naiṣkramyacārī avivartya*” for which BHSD foregrounds as definitions for “*naiṣkramya*”: “departure from the world, renunciation of worldly things,” and “renunciation as regards desires (lusts)” while Conze’s MDPL has: “leaving home.”
64. DSBC gives this entire list as: “*tadyathā - śraddhā karuṇā maitrī tyāgaḥ khedasahiṣṇutā śāstrajñatā lokajñatā hryapatrapyaṃ dhṛtibalādhānam tathāgatapūjopasthānamiti.*”
65. Although the phrasing of the Chinese text might lead one to think these are two separate dharmas, I follow QLSC in combining these two subcomponents as a single grounds-purifying dharma. The surviving Sanskrit for this tenth member of the list (per DSBC) is: “*tathāgatapūjopasthānamiti.*”
66. “The remaining two means of attraction” are “beneficial actions” and “joint endeavors.”
67. “*yathābalaṃ yathābhajamānam.*”
68. DSBC specifies “knowledge” (*jñāna*) rather than “wisdom.”
69. DSBC specifies “knowledge” (*jñāna*) rather than “wisdom.”
70. DSBC specifies “knowledge” (*jñāna*) rather than “wisdom.”
71. DSBC specifies “knowledge” (*jñāna*) rather than “wisdom.”
72. DSBC specifies “knowledge” (*jñāna*) rather than “wisdom.”
73. For “... should bring forth ten types of resolute intentions,” DSBC has: “*tasya daśa cittāśayāḥ pravartante.*”



74. For these ten “resolute intentions” (*cittāśaya*), DSBC has: *ṛjvāśaya* (= *ārjava*?), *mṛdvāśaya*, *karmaṇyāśaya*, *damāśaya*, *śamāśaya*, *kalyāṇāśaya*, *asaṃsṛṣṭāśaya*, *anapekṣāśaya*, *udārāśaya*, *māhātmyāśaya*.
75. This refers to the avoidance of the ten courses of bad karmic action, namely: killing; taking what is not given; sexual misconduct; false speech; divisive speech; harsh speech; frivolous speech; covetousness; ill will; wrong views.
76. For these ten kinds of minds, DSBC gives: “...*hitacittatām utpādayati / sukhacittatām maitracittatām kṛpācittatām dayācittatām anugrahacittatām āraḥśācittatām samacittatām acāryacittatām śāstricittatām utpādayati.*”
77. “The view imputing the existence of a true self in association with one’s body” corresponds to the Sanskrit *satkāya-dṛṣṭi*.
78. The SA Chinese gives “礬石,” the modern translation of which is “aluminite.” This does not correspond to the DSBC Sanskrit which specifies “*kāsīsa*,” a type of iron oxide. Hence I am compelled to prefer the Sanskrit antecedent term.
79. One may notice the seeming absence in this verse of two of the ten resolute intentions: “the unmixed resolute intention” (*asaṃsṛṣṭāśaya*) and “the unattached resolute intention” (*anapekṣāśaya*). It would appear then that they have somehow been replaced here by the phrase: “the swift exits from *saṃsāra*.” (The BB and SD verses specify all ten mental dispositions and do not refer to anything corresponding to this phrase.) That neither BB, SD, DR, or the Sanskrit say anything at all about “*saṃsāra*” here suggests that perhaps this verse line was corrupted in the SA edition by a scribal error or translator misreading that ended up producing a substitution of “*saṃsāra*” for “*saṃsarga*,” for the corresponding part of same line in the extant Sanskrit edition, per DSBC reads: “*saṃsargapekṣavigatāśca*,” which clearly refers to the two missing list elements and does not refer to “swift exits from *saṃsāra*” at all.
80. As with the previous *bhūmi*, DSBC shows “*cittāśaya*” (“mental intentions”) as the Sanskrit antecedent for “resolute intentions” (深心).
81. For these ten “resolute intentions” (*cittāśaya*), DSBC gives: *śuddha-cittāśaya*, *sthira-cittāśaya*, *nirvic-cittāśaya*, *avirāga-cittāśaya*, *avimivarta-cittāśaya*, *dṛḍha-cittāśaya*, *uttapta-cittāśaya*, *atrīpta-cittāśaya*, *udāra-cittāśaya*, and *māhātmya-cittāśaya*. (The last two correspond precisely to the last two listed for the second *bhūmi*.)
82. DSBC gives this tenfold list as: *acintya*, *atulya*, *aprameya*, *durāsada*, *asaṃsprṣṭa*, *nirupadrava*, *nirupāyāsa*, *abhayaपुरagamanīya*, *apunarāvṛtti*, *bahujanaparitrāṇa*.
83. Again, DSBC has “*cittāśaya*” for these ten.

84. DSBC lists these as:

*anāthātrāṇāpratiśaraṇacittāśaya;*  
*nityadaridrāpratiśaraṇacittāśaya;*  
*rāgadveṣamohāgnisampradīptapraśaraṇacittāśaya;*  
*bhavadacārakāvaruddhapraśaraṇacittāśaya;*  
*satatasamitaklaśagahenāvṛtaprasuptapraśaraṇacittāśaya;*  
*vilokanasamarthapraśaraṇacittāśaya;*  
*kuśaladharmacchandarahitapraśaraṇacittāśaya;*  
*buddhadharmapramuṣitapraśaraṇacittāśaya;*  
*saṃsārasrotonuvāhipraśaraṇacittāśaya;*  
*mokṣopāyapraṇaṣṭapraśaraṇacittāśaya.*

85. DSBC seems to leave out part of this list, but it is complete in Rahder (herein bracketed): "...*paritrāṭavyāḥ parimocayitavyāḥ [parisodhayitavyā uttārayitavyā nivesayitavyāḥ pratiṣṭhāpayitavyāḥ] paritoṣayitavyāḥ saṃropayitavyā vīnetavyāḥ parinirvāpayitavyā...*"

86. Both the BB and KB editions appear to dispense with "non-production" here. (It is retained in SA, BR, SD, and the Sanskrit.) DSBC: "*sa ca sarvadharmayathāvadavabodho nānyatra apracārānutpādacārīṇyāḥ prajñāyāḥ.*"

87. DSBC lists these ten as: "...*dharmārāmo dharmarato dharmapraśaraṇo dharmānimno dharmapraṇaṣṭo dharmapraṅgbhāro dharmaparāyaṇo dharmalayano dharmatrāṇo dharmānudharmacārī.*"

88. The DSBC Sanskrit text clarifies that *xin* (心), otherwise legitimately translated as "minds," in fact refers more specifically to "dispositions," "mental intentions," or "inclinations" (*āśaya*).

89. The DSBC Sanskrit, SA, BR, and SD all speak here of only one means of attraction (beneficial action) and only one *pāramitā* (patience). However, BB and KB both speak here of two means of attraction (pleasing words and beneficial actions) and two *pāramitās* (patience and vigor).

90. The "non-harming mind" in this verse section corresponds to and is at variance with the initial prose section's "non-retreating mind."

91. This is a reference to the four immeasurable minds (*apramāṇa-citta*), all of which require identifying with all beings everywhere as equally deserving of kindness, compassion, sympathetic joy, and equanimity.

92. "*dharmālokapraveśa.*"

93. Just as he did in the previous ground's introductory section, SA used *xin* (心) here in these last two members of this list as an abbreviation for *shenxin* (深心), his usually rather standard rendering of "resolute

- intentions" (*āśaya*). DSBC = "udāra-āśaya-adhimukti-dhātu-vicaraṇāloka-praveśena.")
94. "māhātmya-āśaya-adhimukti-dhātu-vicaraṇāloka-praveśena."
95. "jñānaparipācakairdharma."
96. "tadātmakadharmā."
97. "saṃprajāna."
98. These contemplations are anchored to the four stations of mindfulness focusing on the body, feelings, thought / mind, and dharmas (*catuḥ-smṛty-upasthāna*).
99. This is a summation of the bodhisattva's exercise of the four right efforts (*samyak-pradhāna*).
100. "vivekaniśritaṃ virāganiśritaṃ nirodhaniśritaṃ vyavasargaparīnataṃ."
101. This is a summation of the bodhisattva's practice of the four foundations of psychic power.
102. This is a summation of the bodhisattva's practice of the five root faculties.
103. This is a summation of the bodhisattva's practice of the five powers.
104. This is a summation of the bodhisattva's practice of the seven limbs of enlightenment.
105. This is a summation of the bodhisattva's practice of the eight-fold right path, hereby concluding the narration of the bodhisattva's practice of the thirty-seven enlightenment factors.
106. "In order to further his quest to acquire the most especially supreme path" (*uttarottara-vaiśeṣika-dharma-parimārgaṇatayā*) is found here in SA as well as in BR, SD, and the DSBC Sanskrit, but it is not found in the three earliest extant editions of this scripture: DR, KB, and BB.
107. This short section of the text regarding aligning practice with whatsoever the Tathāgata censures or praises is not found in KB and BB). The corresponding DSBC text is: "sa yānīmāni karmāṇyakaraṇīyāni samyaksaṃbuddhaviṅṇitāni saṃkleśopasaṃhitāni, tāni sarveṇa sarvaṃ prajāhāti / yāni cemāni karmāni karaṇīyāni samyaksaṃbuddhaprasastāni bodhimārgasaṃbhārānukūlāni, tāni samādāya vartate !"
108. "bodhimārgasaṃbhāra."
109. In this ten-fold list, SA, BR, SD, and the Sanskrit are very close, whereas KB and BB's lists are nine-fold and slightly variant. DSBC's tenfold list gives us: "snigdha-cittaśca bhavati, maducittaśca karmaṇyacittaśca hitasukhāvahacittaśca aparikliṣṭacittaśca uttarottaravaiśeṣaparimārgaṇacittaśca jñānaviśeṣaṇābhilāśacittaśca sarvajagatparitrāṇacittaśca gurugauravānukūlacittaśca yathāśrutadharmapratipatticittaśca."

110. SA, BR, SD, and the Sanskrit are all quite mutually consistent as reflected here in DSBC's tenfold list: "... *sa kṛtajñāśca bhavati, kṛtavedī ca sūrataśca sukhasaṃvāśca rjuśca mṛduśca agahanacārī ca nirmāyanirmāṇāśca suvacāśca pradakṣiṇagrāhī ca.*" KB and BB include "implementation of the practice of right concentration."
111. The lists of ten types of vigor are generally quite consistent in all six extant editions with the sole exception of BB's non-inclusion of the final member of all other lists: "The vigor that distinguishes what is and is not the Path." DSBC gives us: "*aprasrabdhavīryaśca bhavati aparikliṣṭaḥ / apratyudāoartyavīryaśca vipulavīryaśca anantavīryaśca uttaptavīryaśca asamavīryaśca asaṃhāryavīryaśca sarvasattoaparipācanavīryaśca nayānaya vibhaktavīryaśca bhavati.*"
112. It is clear from comparing all the editions and the Sanskrit that the first three elements referenced here, although differing somewhat in order from the Sanskrit, are higher aspirations (*adhyāśaya*), resolute intentions (*āśaya*), and resolute convictions (*adhimukti*).
113. "*apramāṇacittāśayatā ca samudāgacchāti.*"
114. "*āśayādhyāśayādhimuktisamatā viśudhyati*" Most of the other editions (BB, KB, SD, DSBC) have not only SA's "resolute intentions" (*āśaya*) and "resolute faith" (*adhimukti*) but also include "higher aspirations" (*adhyāśaya*) and "impartiality" (*samatā*), thus producing a list of four elements. BR is slightly ambiguous and appears to include all but "higher aspirations."
115. DSBC: "*satkāyadrṣṭi.*"
116. This first quatrain condenses the first ten-fold list ("the ten gateways to Dharma illumination") that opens the initial discussion of this ground.
117. This quatrain along with the quatrain immediately preceding it are a condensation of the second ten-fold list set forth earlier in the discussion of this *bhūmi*, "the ten kinds of knowledge-maturing dharmas."
118. This quatrain together with the one immediately preceding it summarize the earlier discussion of the bodhisattva's cultivation of the thirty-seven enlightenment factors.
119. This quatrain together with the immediately preceding quatrain summarize the ten aims behind cultivation of the thirty-seven enlightenment factors that were brought up earlier in the discussion of this fourth ground.
120. Beginning here, these introductory verses to the fifth ground do not track well with the Sanskrit which itself is missing the ninth verse (that does survive in the Tibetan and in other Chinese editions). It appears from the Sanskrit that SA is missing the first line ("After

such a long time, the Great Muni is now met.”) and the fourth line (“The Great Śrāmaṇa, worthy of reverence, is revered.”) of the sixth verse, which according to DSBC is:

*sucireṇa saṃgamu mahāmuniṇā  
saṃprāpta sarvagūṇapāramitaḥ |  
mada māna darpa prajahitva tamaṃ  
pūjārhu pūjima mahāśramaṇam || 6 ||*

What’s more, SA seems to present verses seven and eight in reverse order.

121. “*āśayaviśuddhisamatā*.”
122. HH explains this equally regarding pure mental disposition “toward the mind” as primarily meaning “toward the minds of beings.”
123. Although DSBC gives us “*adhyāśaya*” here (“higher aspirations”), this is not supported by any other of the Chinese editions except the very latest one done by Śīladharma in 790 CE who renders this as “especially supreme dispositions / aspirations” (增上意樂). BB, KB, BR, and SA are all clearly translating simply “*āśaya*,” (“resolute intentions” or “intentions”).
124. “*saṃvṛtisatya*.”
125. “*paramārthasatya*.”
126. “*lakṣaṇasatya*.”
127. “*vibhāgasatya*.”
128. “*nistīraṇasatya*.”
129. *vastusatya*.
130. *prabhavasatya*.
131. *kṣayānutpādasatya*.
132. *mārgajñānavatārasatya*.
133. *sarvabodhisattvabhūmikramānusaṃdhiniṣpādanatayā yāvāt  
tathāgatajñānasamudayasatya*.
134. “*sa parasattoānāṃ yathāśayasamtoṣaṇātsaṃvṛtisatyaṃ prajānāti*.”
135. “*ekanayasamavasaraṇātparamārthasatyaṃ prajānāti*.”
136. “*svasāmanyalakṣaṇānubodhāllakṣaṇasatyaṃ prajānāti*.”
137. “*dharmavibhāgavyavasthānānubodhādvibhāgasatyaṃ prajānāti*.”
138. “*skandhadhātāvāyatanavyavasthānānubodhānnistīraṇasatyaṃ prajānāti*.”
139. “*cittaśarīraprapīḍanopanipātitaṭvādvastusatyam*.”
140. “*gatisaṃdhisaṃbandhanatvātpabhavasatyam*.”
141. “*sarvajvaraparidāhātyantopaśamātkṣayānutpādasatyam*.”

142. For this passage, DSBC gives us the following: “*advayānutpādasatyam, advayābhīrīhāranmārgajñānāvātārasatyam.*”
143. DSBC:  
*“sarvākārābhisam̐bodhīsarvabodhisattvabhūmikramānusaṁdhiniṣpādan  
 atayā yāvattathāgatajñānasamudayasatyam prajānāti.”*
144. “*adhimukti.*”
145. “*mārāśayagahana.*”
146. Although the extant Sanskrit refers here only to *akuśalavitarka* (“bad initial ideation”), the Chinese text of most editions (BB, KB, SA, and SD) uses the translation for both *vitarka* and *vicāra* (“ideation and mental discursion”).
147. Most editions seem to vary somewhat, but only slightly. DSBC has:  
*tatsarvasattoaparitrāṇāyārabhate, sarvasattvohitīya,  
 sarvasattvasukhāya, sarvasattvānukampāyai, sarvasattvānupadravāya,  
 sarvasattvaparimocanāya, sarvasattvānukarṣāya,  
 sarvasattvaprāsādanāya, sarvasattvavinayāya, sarvasattvaparinirvāṇāy  
 ārabhate.*
148. “*buddhi.*”
149. “*jñāna.*”
150. “*prajñā.*”
151. “*pun̐yasaṁbhāra.*”
152. “*jñānasam̐bhāra.*”
153. “*mahāmaitrīkṛpāsam̐bhāra.*”
154. MW defines *musāragalva* as “a kind of coral.” Other definitions state that it is a kind of shell or mother-of-pearl.
155. As is often the case with these radically and tersely condensed verse lines, this one can only be made fully sensible by referring back to information solely available in the main text of this *bhūmi*. For comparison here, we have the following:  
 DSBC and KB are equally terse, both literally translated more or less as: “... on up to the truth associated with what is unimpeded,” (*yāvantanāvaraṇasatyā samasaranti* [Rahder footnotes a variant ending the line as “*samāsaranti*”]).  
 SD: “... on up to truth associated with the unimpeded knowledge of the Buddha,” (乃至無礙佛智諦). SD is the only truly clear edition here, for only it can stand on its own without reference to information found in the main fifth ground text.  
 BB is a complete outlier barely relating in these verse lines to most of the other editions. And of course BR has no verses at all, only the main text of the Sutra itself.

156. As in the main text, the Sanskrit verse refers again to “*musāraḡalva.*”
157. “Knowing *dharmas as by nature transcendent*” (知法性離) corresponds to DSBC’s “*sarvadharmāviviktāḥ!*” which infers that all dharmas “are beyond distinctions or discriminations,” hence my translation of the Chinese as “transcendent.”
158. “*dharmasamatā.*”
159. Most extant editions are quite similar but slightly variant in a few list components. The DSBC Sanskrit gives us: *animitta; alakṣaṇa; anutpāda; ajāta; vivikta; adivīśuddhi; niṣprapañca; anāvvyūhānirvōyūha; māyāsavapnaprati-bhāsapratiśrutkodakacandrapratibimbanirmāṇa; bhāvābhāvādvaya.*
160. Nāgārjuna provides an extensive discussion of these similes in his Mppu (T25.1509.101c6-105c18 [fasc. 6]).
161. DSBC: “*tikṣṇayā ānulomikyā kṣāntyā.*” (In MDPL, Conze suggests “adaptable patience” for *ānulomikī kṣānti.*)
162. The rather long (6 pages) ensuing discussion of causality more or less follows the listing of “the ten types of sequential and counter-sequential contemplation of the factors involved in conditioned arising” with which the discussion ends.
163. In the following discussion of origination through causes and conditions (*pratitya-samutpāda*), each of the characteristic features associated with the twelve links is italicized to enhance the reader’s ease of understanding.
164. DSBC: “*puṇyāpuṇyāneñjyānabhisaṃskāra.*” Regarding the third of these three types of actions, QL interprets “actions leading to imperishable states” as referring to the pure karma of the eight levels of *dhyāna* (which, of course would refer not only to abiding in those levels of meditative absorption, but also would refer to taking rebirth in the corresponding heavens). He also notes that this “pure karma of the eight *dhyānas* also qualifies as being a function of delusion,” the rationale for that statement being that, rarified as these modes of existence are, as an end in themselves, they still do not constitute or conduce to liberation from cyclic existence and hence function as erroneous karmic paths.
165. The SA Chinese is mildly ambiguous here. Compare Buddhahadra, Kumārajīva, and Bodhiruci, as below:  
 BB: “Because of prior and subsequent continuity, these three paths are not severed. These three paths occur apart from a self or possessions of a self, and yet production and extinction [continue to] occur.” (No mention in BB of the “reeds” analogy)

KB: "On account of past and future continuity, these three paths are not cut off. These three paths exist apart from any self or possessions of a self and yet there exists this production and extinction. This is analogous to [the mutual dependence occurring in] two stalks of bamboo that, through leaning on each other, are thus able to stand up. Although they are not solidly established, it still appears as if they are solidly established."

BR: "On account of the ceaseless continuity of past and future, these three paths are not cut off. These three paths exist apart from any self or possessions of a self. Because they only occur as a process of production and extinction, their existence is analogous to a bundle of bamboo stalks."

166. *Shulu* (東蘆) here translates the Sanskrit *naḍa-kalāpa*, standing sheaves of reeds (as, for instance, *Phragmites karka india*), wherein, whether as they grow in naturally-occurring stands, or as they may be deliberately bundled together in the construction of shelters and such in order to remain upright, each reed serves to support the others while simultaneously relying entirely upon the support of the others to keep from collapsing. Hence we have in this phenomenon an analogy for the utter codependence of these three subsets of "links" comprising the twelve-fold chain of serially-unfolding conditioned coproduction. This is of course equally true of the mutually supporting and sustaining nature of all twelve of the links *individually* as well.

Bhikkhu Bodhi points out a scriptural citation for the "sheaves of reeds" causality analogy as *Samyutta Nikāya* 12-67: "The Sheaves of Reeds."

167. "Suffering associated with the karmic formative factors" = *xingku* (行苦) = *saṃskāraduḥkhatā*.
168. *Suffering of suffering* = *kuku* (苦苦) = *duḥkhaduḥkhatā*.
169. *Suffering associated with deterioration* = *huaiku* (壞苦) = *pariṇāmaduḥkhatā*.
170. "sa evaṃ dvādaśākāraṃ pratītyasamutpādaṃ pratyavekṣate 'nulomapratiromaṃ."
171. All editions are fairly consistent throughout this list of ten contemplations with the exception of a possible textual corruption in the second contemplation in the KB edition wherein "body" is included as a fundamental basis for the twelve causal links.

DSBC gives the list as follows:

*bhavāṅgānusaṃdhitaśca;*  
*ekacittasamavasaraṇataśca;*  
*svakarmāsaṃbhedataśca;*  
*avinirbhāgataśca;*



*trivartmānuvartanataśca;*  
*pūrvāntapratyutpannāparāntāvekṣaṇataśca;*  
*triduhkhatāsamudayataśca;*  
*hetupratyayaprabhavataśca;*  
*utpādayayavinibandhanataśca;*  
*abhāvākṣayatāpratyavekṣaṇataśca.*

172. HH identifies these as the three paths discussed earlier in this passage on conditioned origination: the path of afflictions, the path of karmic actions, and the path of suffering.
173. “*sūnyatāvimokṣamukha.*”
174. “*ānimittavimokṣamukha.*”
175. “*apraṇihitavimokṣamukha.*”
176. These ten emptiness samādhis, per DSBC: *avatārasūnyatā;* *svabhāvaśūnyatā;* *paramārthaśūnyatā;* *paramasūnyatā;* *mahāśūnyatā;* *saṃprayogaśūnyatā;* *abhinirhāraśūnyatā;* *yathāvavadavikalpaśūnyatā;* *sāpekṣaśūnyatā;* *vinirbhāgāvinirbhāgaśūnyatā.*
177. ThesetentypesofresoluteintentionsperDSBC: *abhedyāśaya;* *niyatāśaya;* *kalyāṇāśaya;* *gambhīrāśaya;* *apratyudāvartyāśaya;* *apratiprasabdāśaya;* *vimalāśaya;* *anantāśaya;* *jñānābhilāṣāśaya;* *upāyaprajñāsaṃprayogaśaya.*
178. Context often requires a somewhat adaptive translation of *āśaya* that otherwise may mean “mental intention,” “mental disposition,” “intent,” “resolution,” or “mentality.” Here I prefer Conze’s (MDPL) “resolute intention.”
179. “Acquiescent patience” = *ānulomikī kṣānti*. In his XHYJL, LTX points out that this “acquiescent patience” is the third of “the five types of patience” and the second of “the ten types of patience” and that in both cases, it is the level of patience acquired just before realizing “the unproduced-dharmas patience” (*anutpattika-dharma-kṣānti*). (T36n1739\_p0899b7-12)
180. “King of the Fine Transformations Heaven” (善化天王) = *sunirmita-deva-rāja*. Bodhiruci translates this as “King of the Delight in Transformations Heaven” (化樂天王). This is a clear reference to the Nirmāṇa-rati Heaven, the heaven just above the Tuṣita Heaven within the six desire-realm heavens.
181. None of the Chinese editions (DR, BB, BR, KB, SA, SD) agree with the Sanskrit’s inclusion of three instead of two factors here: skillful means, wisdom, and knowledge (*upāyaprajñājñāna*).
182. All other editions (BB, KB, BR, SD, and the Sanskrit) refer instead to the penetrating comprehension of dharmas’ differences. DSBC: “*apramāṇaṃ ca dharmanānātvamavatarati.*”

183. “*apramāṇaṃ ca buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ jñānābhisambodhimavatarati.*”
184. SA, BR, and SD all specify “name-and-form bodies,” whereas BB, KB, and the Sanskrit all refer only to “form bodies” (*rūpakāya*).
185. The four types of retention: dharmas, meanings, mantras, and patience.
186. “*bodhyaṅga.*”
187. All other editions specify entry into both knowledge / wisdom and spiritual superknowledges (*jñānābhijñānacaryākramaṇī*).
188. All editions are fairly consistent here with the exception that BB and KB list eleven samādhis here, whereas most of the other editions collapse the final two list members in BB and KB into a single samādhi. DSBC provides the following list: *svucitavicayaṃ; svucintitārthaṃ; viśeṣamatiṃ; prabhedārthakośaṃ; sarvārthavicayaṃ; supraṭiṣṭhitadr̥ḍhamūlaṃ; jñānābhijñānamukhaṃ; dharmadhātu(peri) karmaṃ; tathāgatānuśaṃsaṃ; vicitrārthakośasaṃsāranirovāṇamukhaṃ.*
189. “*prajñājñānavicāraṇābhūme!*” (“The ground of contemplating wisdom and knowledge.”)
190. DSBC: “*na punaḥ svabuddhivicāreṇa.*”
191. The Sanskrit text makes it clear that SA’s “ultimate reality” (實際) apparently refers here not to its usual Sanskrit antecedent (*bhūta-koṭi*), but rather to *nirodha*, i.e. to a state of quiescent cessation synonymous with *nirvāṇa*.
192. DSBC: “*buddhajñānaviśayakośa.*”
193. There are four types of *māras* (*catur-māra*) that are often translated elsewhere as “demons” when not directly referencing the celestial *māras*. Those four types of *māras* are: affliction *māras* (*kleśa-māra*), the *māras* of the aggregates (*skandha-māra*), the *māras* of death (*mṛtya-māra*), celestial *māras* (*deva-putra-māra*).
194. HH clarifies that these “adorning phenomena” refer to the bodhisattva’s cultivation and accumulation of many different sorts of roots of goodness and meritorious qualities with which he, figuratively speaking, “adorns” buddha lands: “菩薩以他修積的種種善 根功德，莊嚴佛的國土，無不超過天、龍，及八部神祇、帝釋、梵王、四大天王等所有的莊嚴之事。”
195. Although *huo* (惑) is often legitimately translated as “delusion” in these sorts of texts, it is also very often a translation of “afflictions” (*kleśa*), for which the Chinese translation is more ordinarily *fannaο* (煩惱). The preceding text (at the end of Section F) and the DSBC Sanskrit both make it clear that SA is actually translating *kleśa* (“afflictions”) here even though he switches to the more standard Chinese

- translation (煩惱) in the very next verse line. One obvious reason has to do with the need for economy in composing seven-character verse lines in sino-Buddhist Classical Chinese.
196. Vasubandhu correlates this with the bodhisattva's first ground practice.
  197. Vasubandhu correlates this with the bodhisattva's second ground practice.
  198. Vasubandhu correlates this with the bodhisattva's third ground practice.
  199. Vasubandhu correlates this with the bodhisattva's fourth ground practice.
  200. Vasubandhu correlates this with the bodhisattva's fifth ground practice. DSBC: "*supariśodhitādhyāśayasamkalpa.*"
  201. Vasubandhu correlates this with the bodhisattva's sixth ground practice.
  202. Vasubandhu correlates this with the bodhisattva's seventh ground practice and also mentions that it is on account of his encounters with measurelessly many realms of beings that the bodhisattva "enters the path of measureless knowledge."
  203. All editions' lists vary somewhat. DSBC has: *ajātatām ca; alakṣaṇatām ca; asaṃbhūtatām ca; avināśitām ca; aniṣṭhitatām ca; apravṛttitām ca; anabhiniṣṛttitām ca; abhāvasvabhāvatām ca; ādimadhyaparyavasānasamatām ca; tathatāvikalpasarvajñajñānapraveśatām ca.*
  204. Vasubandhu notes that this refers to "skillful abiding in the *ālayavijñāna*'s dharma of true suchness" (善住阿梨耶識真如法中).
  205. *The four floods* (四流) refer to beings' submersion in the floods of: views (見流), desire (欲流), becoming (有流), ignorance (無明流).
  206. "*sarvadharmāṇām dharmatā.*"
  207. BB (圓光), BR (光輪), KB (圓光), SD (光輪), and the Sanskrit (*prabhāmaṇḍala*) all specify "aura."
  208. "*dharmāloka.*"
  209. "*sarvadharmānirvikalpālokaḥ.*"
  210. It is apparent from the Sanskrit (*adhimukti*) as well as from DR, BB, KB, SD, and QLSC that SA's *jie* (解) is abbreviating *xinjie* (信解), "resolute faith."
  211. "*āśayabala.*"
  212. "*kumārabhūmi.*"

213. At this point in the text BB (566a10), KB (522b28), Bodhiruci (184c28), SD (561c08), and the Sanskrit all state that “He is able to receive measurelessly many predictions.”
214. Neither the preceding prose text nor the Sanskrit support “meritorious qualities” here, but rather “merit and knowledge” (*punya-jñāna*). Perhaps “meritorious qualities” here was the result of a scribal or SA translation error.
215. “*āśaya*.”
216. KB and BB ( both have: 能得於十種 / 妙大自在智) as well as the Sanskrit (*vaśitā daśo vimāla-jñāna-vicāra-prāptā*) clarify that this “ten *ārya* knowledges” refers to the ten types of “sovereign mastery” (*vaśitā*) listed earlier in the description of this eighth ground (sovereign mastery with regard to lifespan, mind, wealth, karmic deeds, rebirths, vows, understanding, utilization of psychic power, knowledge, and the Dharma).
217. “*praśamita*.”
218. Although, due to the need for economy in composing 7-character lines, the Chinese does not specify “vehicle,” the Sanskrit does specify “*yāna*”: “*yatra sattva tīkṣṇacitta pratyayānanīratā*.”
219. “Effects of practicing” (lit. “actions”) = Skt. *abhisamkāra*. (BHSD foregrounds “performance,” “accomplishment,” and “accumulation.”) The intended reference here is to this bodhisattva’s knowing in accordance with reality the karmic effects of implementing the various categories of dharmas arrayed in this list.
220. “Entangling thicket” = Skt. *gahana*. SA, BR, and SD all translate this as *choulin* (稠林) which means “thicket,” whereas KB and BB translate it as “difficulty” (難).
221. Each of these “entangling thickets” (*gahana*) is explored in greater detail below in the subsections corresponding to the Sanskrit text’s sections “E” through “K.”
222. It is apparent from the Sanskrit (*adhimukti*) that SA’s *jie* (解) is abbreviating *xinjie* (信解), “resolute beliefs.”
223. “Sense realms” = Skt. *dhātu*. This refers to the eighteen sense realms: the six sense faculties, the six sense objects, and the six sense consciousnesses.
224. “Resolute intentions” = “*āśaya*.”
225. “Latent tendencies” = “*anuśaya*.”
226. “*upapatti*.”
227. “*vāsana-anusamdhī*.”

228. These “three groups” (三聚) refer to: 1) those fixed in their adherence to what is wrong; 2) those fixed in their adherence to what is right; 3) those who are “unfixed” as to their adherence to either what is wrong or what is right.
229. “Devoid of physical form” = Rahder Skt. *aśarīratām*. (There is an error in DSBC which has *śarīratām*.)
230. Bhikkhu Bodhi points out that this is a reference to the Buddha’s statements on the boundlessness of consciousness found in DN 11 and MN 49 wherein “consciousness” there may be equated with “mind” as intended here. See *Long Discourses*, Walshe, p. 179 and *The Middle Length Discourses*, Bhikkhus Ñāṇamoli & Bodhi, p. 428.
231. Bhikkhu Bodhi points out that this is an allusion to a fourfold classification of karma at AN 4:232-233 for which see *The Numerical Discourses of the Buddha*, Bhikkhu Bodhi, p.601. KB, Bodhiruci, BB, and SD all break these out as four clearly stated items, for instance KB, as follows:  
 “Their characteristic of rewarding black actions with black retributions; their characteristic of rewarding white actions with white retributions; their characteristic of rewarding a combination of black and white actions with a combination of black and white retributions; their characteristic of being amenable to ending through actions that are neither black nor white....”
232. SA is very close to the Sanskrit (*karmakṣetrāpramāṇatām ca*).  
 DR has “[The characteristic of having] farm fields of karmic offense and merit that are measureless” (罪福田地，則無有量).  
 Both KB and BB have: “He knows karmic actions’ characteristic of involving countless causes and conditions in their arising” (知無量因緣起業相).  
 BR has “karmic actions’ characteristic of involving measureless causes” (業因無量相).  
 SD has: “the field of karmic actions’ nature of measurelessness” (業田無量性).  
 Hence we see that four editions (including the Sanskrit) involve a metaphor, whereas KB, BB, and BR all skip the metaphor entirely, preferring a brief explanation of the concept. For instance BR (very similar to KB and BB whose translations here are identical) has: “karmic actions’ characteristic of involving measureless causes” (業因無量相).
233. “resolute beliefs” = “*adhimukti*.”
234. “Sense realms” = “*dhātu*.”
235. “Resolute intentions” = “*āśaya*.”

236. "Latent tendencies" = "*anuśaya*"
237. It is apparent from the Sanskrit that SA switched here to a different Chinese rendering for *āśaya* (深心 [*shenxin*]), a binome that literally means "resolute intentions."
238. "Habitual karmic propensities" = "*vāsanā*."
239. Again, this listing refers to the "three groups" of beings mentioned above as the last of the "entangling thickets" in Sanskrit section C above.
240. "Five heinous karmic offenses" refers to patricide, matricide, killing an arhat, spilling the blood of a buddha, and causing a sectarian schism in the monastic community.
241. As in the last of the "entangling thickets" in Sanskrit section C and as in the immediately preceding discussion that refers back to that particular "entangling thicket," "groups" here most likely refers to: 1) those fixed in their adherence to what is wrong; 2) those fixed in their adherence to what is right; 3) those who are "unfixed" as to their adherence to either what is wrong or what is right.
242. "*adhimukti*."
243. "Expounder" = "*dharmabhāṇaka*."
244. "Four unimpeded knowledges" = "*catuḥpratiṣaṃvid*." These are: *dharmapratīṣaṃvid*, *arthapratīṣaṃvid*, *niruktiṣaṃvid*, and *pratibhānapratīṣaṃvid*.
245. "*sarvadharmaprajñāptyacchedanadharmāṃ deśayati*." DSBC, BB, Bodhiruci, KB, and SD *all* specify what I insert in brackets here and hereafter: "conventional designations" (*prajñāpti*). (SA only implies it obliquely.)
246. "*pratibhānapratīṣaṃvidā ekaikaṃ yānamaparyantadharmābhāṣeṇa deśayati*." BB, Bodhiruci, KB, and SD also corroborate this bracketed insertion of "light."
247. "*āśaya*."
248. "*adhimukti*."
249. "*adhimukti*."
250. "*āśaya*."
251. "The realm in which the Buddha courses" = Skt. *buddhagocara*.
252. "Mental dispositions" = "*āśaya*"
253. These three categorical types (三聚) refer to: 1) those fixed in their adherence to what is wrong; 2) those fixed in their adherence to what is right; 3) those who are "unfixed" as to their adherence to either what is wrong or what is right.

254. Neither BB nor KB include this first list component found in SA, BR, SD, and the Sanskrit (*svavitavicayaḥ*).
255. This is clearly a reference to the ten types of “entangling thickets” (*gahana*) discussed at some length in relation to the ninth ground in a section beginning with their listing at 202a23–26.
256. Both BB and KB make the acquisition of the “stainless samādhi” a preliminary step before entering the ten samādhis listed immediately thereafter.
257. The Sanskrit samādhi designation per the DSBC text: “*sarvajñajñānaviśeṣābhiṣekavatannāma bodhisattvasamādhirāmukhībhavati.*”
258. In this case, “the beings residing in them” refers to the hungry ghosts (*pretas*).
259. I emend the reading of the Taisho text at 206a18 to correct a graphic-similarity scribal error that erroneously recorded *ge* (各) instead of *ming* (名). The emendation is supported by BB, QLSC, KB, BR, SD, the Sanskrit, one other edition of the SA text, and the requirements of sensibility.
260. Although the entire ensuing section of the Chinese text employs the Chinese character most commonly associated in Buddhist doctrinal discussions with the second of the four truths, i.e. “accumulation” or “origination” of suffering (集 [*ji*] = Skt. *samudaya*), as context demonstrates and the Sanskrit text corroborates, that is *not* the concept intended here. In this instance, the Sanskrit antecedent term is not *samudaya* but rather *samudāgama* which refers instead to “attainment.” (MW = “Full or complete knowledge.” BHSD = “*approach [to], arrival [of], attainment [of], a religious goal, esp. enlightenment, which is to be understood when no goal is specifically named.*”) This being the case, I translate this character in this context as “attainment.”
261. “Sustaining Bases” (持) = *adhiṣṭhāna*. Although this technical term is often translated as “empowerment,” that would not be an appropriate rendering here as many of the members of this list may or may not be sustained through empowerments as they are for the most part causally sustained by past karmic actions.
262. Bhikkhu Bodhi points out that one example of this may be the bodhisattva’s power to consciously pass away in the Tuṣita Heaven before taking his last birth in the human realm.
263. “Penetrating knowledge” = “*avatārajñāna.*”
264. “Ordinary common people,” on the face of it, might appear to be a mistranslation of the Chinese term recorded here as 毛道, i.e. “hair path.” But, as it turns out, this in fact is Śikṣānanda’s very literal translation of the Sanskrit *vāla-patha*, lit. “hair path,” apparently a

traditional Sanskrit corruption of *bāla* that is in turn an abbreviation for *bāla-prthagjana*, literally “foolish common person.”

265. “*buddhakṣetrakāyābhisaṃbodhyavatārajñānaṃ.*”
266. “*mahāvijayo bhikṣu.*”
267. “*vajrapadmottarasya tathāgata.*”
268. An “ineffable” (*anabhilāpya*) is the name of one of a long series of extremely large numbers described in this scripture’s “Asaṃkhyeya” chapter.
269. This samādhi per DSBC: “*sarvabuddhakṣetrakāyasvabhāvasaṃdarśanaṃ nāma bodhisattvasamādhim.*”
270. “*sarvābhijñāmatirājaṃ nāma tathāgataṃ.*”
271. “*vaśavartino devarāja.*”
272. “*mahēśvarasya devarājasya.*”
273. The DSBC edition of the surviving Sanskrit refers to this final section as the “*parīndanāparivartaḥ*” or “bequest.”
274. Bhikkhu Bodhi points out that eight of these comparisons are found in Anguttara Nikāya 8:19 (The Simile of the Ocean).
275. From this point on, the verses in the very late Sanskrit edition diverge entirely from those found in any of the Chinese texts. Because their composition must be of relatively recent origin, there appears to be no clear way to correlate these Sanskrit verses with those of any of the Chinese texts, whether it be DR, BB, SA, KB, or SD, all of which date from a millennium or more earlier than the surviving Sanskrit edition.



## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Bodhi. (2000). *The Connected Discourses of the Buddha: A New Translation of the Saṃyutta Nikāya* ; translated from the Pāli ; original translation by Bhikkhu Bodhi. (Teachings of the Buddha). Somerville, MA: Wisdom Publications.
- Bodhi. (2012). *The Numerical Discourses of the Buddha: A Translation of the Aṅguttara Nikāya* (Teachings of the Buddha). Boston: Wisdom Publications.
- Bodhiruci (c. 508–511 CE). Shidi jing lun (十地經論). T26, no. 1522.
- Buddhabhadra (c. 418–20 CE). Dafanguang fo huayan jing (大方廣佛華嚴經). T10, no. 278.
- Cleary, T. (1984). *The Flower Ornament Scripture: A Translation of the Avatamsaka Sutra*. Boulder : [New York]: Shambhala Publications ; Distributed in the U.S. by Random House.
- Conze, E., & Suzuki Gakujutsu Zaidan. (1967). *Materials for a Dictionary of the Prajñāpāramitā Literature*. Tokyo: Suzuki Research Foundation.
- Dharmarakṣa (c. 297). Pusa shizhu xingdao pin (菩薩十住行道品). T10, no. 283).
- Edgerton, F. (1953). *Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit grammar and dictionary*. (William Dwight Whitney linguistic series). New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Hirakawa, A. (1997). *Buddhist Chinese-Sanskrit Dictionary / Bukkyō Kan-Bon daijiten*. Tokyo]; [Tokyo] :: Reiyūkai : Hatsubaimoto Innātorippusha; 霊友会 : 発売元いんなあととりっぶ社.
- Kumārajīva and Buddhayaśas (c. 408). Shizhu jing (十住經). T10, no. 286.
- Ñānamoli, & Bodhi. (1995). *The Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha: A New Translation of the Majjhima Nikāya* (Teachings of the Buddha). Boston: Wisdom Publications in association with the Barre Center for Buddhist Studies.
- Rahder, J. (1928). *Glossary of the Sanskrit, Tibetan, Mongolian, and Chinese Versions of the Daśabhūmika-Sūtra*. Compiled by J. Rahder. (Buddhica, Documents et Travaux pour l'Étude du Bouddhisme publiés sous la direction de J. Przyluski; Deuxième Série; Documents—Tome I). Paris: Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geuthner, 1928.
- Rahder, J., & Vasubandhu. (1926). *Daśabhūmikasūtra*. Leuven: J.B. Ista.

- Robinson, R. (1967). *Early Mādhyamika in India and China*. Madison: University of London.
- Śīladharma (c. 790 CE) - T 287. *Foshuo shidi jing* (佛說十地經). T10, no. 287.
- Sinor, D., Raghu Vira, Honda, Megumu, & Permanent International Altaistic Conference. (1968). *Studies in South, East, and Central Asia: Presented as a memorial volume to the late Professor Raghu Vira* (Śata-piṭaka series ; v. 74). New Delhi: International Academy of Indian Culture.
- Rahder, J. (1928). *Glossary of the Sanskrit, Tibetan, Mongolian, and Chinese Versions of the Daśabhūmika-Sūtra*. Compiled by J. Rahder. (Buddhica, Documents et Travaux pour l'Étude du Bouddhisme publiés sous la direction de J. Przyluski; Deuxième Série; Documents—Tome I). Paris: Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geuthner, 1928.
- Rahder, J., & Vasubandhu. (1926). *Daśabhūmikasūtra*. Leuven: J.B. Ista.
- Śikṣānanda (c. 695–699 CE). *Dafangguang fo huayan jing* (大方廣佛華嚴經). T10, no. 279.
- Takakusu, J., & Watanabe, Kaigyoku. (1924). *Taishō shinshū Daizōkyō*. Tōkyō; 東京 :: Taishō Issaikyō Kankōkai; 大正一切經刊行會.
- Vaidya, P. L., ed. *Daśabhūmikasūtram*. Darbhanga: The Mithila Institute of Post-Graduate Studies and Research in Sanskrit Learning, 1969.
- Walshe, M. (2012). *The Long Discourses of the Buddha: A Translation of the Dīgha Nikāya* (Teachings of the Buddha). Boston: Wisdom Publications.
- Williams, M. Monier, Sir. (n.d.). *A Sanskrit-English Dictionary*. Delhi: Sri Satguru.
- Zhonghua dian zi fo dian xie hui. (2004). *CBETA dian zi fo dian ji cheng* = CBETA Chinese electronic Tripitaka collection (Version 2004. ed.). Taipei; 台北 :: Zhonghua dian zi fo dian xie hui; 中華電子佛典協會.

## APPENDIX: THE P.L. VAIDYA SANSKRIT TEXT<sup>1</sup>

|| DAŚABHŪMIKASŪTRAM ||

1 pramuditā nāma prathamā bhūmiḥ |

A

evaṃ mayā śrutam | ekasmin samaye bhagavān paranirmitavaśa-  
vartiṣu devabhuvaneṣu viharati sma acirābhisambuddho dvitīye  
saptāhe vaśavartino devarājasya vimāne maṇiratnagarbhe prabhā-  
svare prāsāde mahatā bodhisattvagaṇena sārddham sarvairavai-  
vartikairekajātipratibaddhaiḥ | yaduta anuttarāyāṃ samyaksam-  
bodhāvanyonyalokadhātusamnipatitaiḥ | sarvaiḥ sarvabodhisattva-  
jñānaviṣayagocarapratilabdhavihāribhiḥ sarvatathāgatājñānaviṣaya-  
praveśāvatārāpratiprasrabdhagocaraiḥ sarvajagatparipācanavinaya-  
yathākālakṣaṇādhiṣṭhānasarvakriyāsaṃdarśanakuśalaiḥ sarvabodhi-  
sattvaprañidhānābhinirhārāpratiprasrabdhagocaraiḥ kalpārtha-  
kṣetracaryāsaṃvāsibhiḥ sarvabodhisattvapuṇyajñānārddhisam-  
bhārasupariṣṭāksayasarvajagadupajīvyatāpratipannaiḥ sarva-  
bodhisattvaprañopāyaparamapāramitāprāptaiḥ saṃsāranirvāṇa-  
mukhasaṃdarśanakuśalaiḥ bodhisattvacaryopādānāvyaavacchinnaiḥ  
sarvabodhisattvadhyānavimokṣasamādhisamāpatyabhijñānānavikrī-  
ḍitābhijñāsarvakriyāsaṃdarśanakuśalaiḥ sarvabodhisattvarddhibala-  
vaśitāprāptānabhisamskāracittakṣaṇasarvatathāgataparśanmaṇḍalop-  
asaṃkramaṇapūrvamaṃgamaḥkathāpuruṣaiḥ sarvatathāgatadharmā-  
cakrasaṃdhāraṇavipulabuddhapūjopasthānābhyyutthitaiḥ sarva-  
bodhisattvakarmasamādānasamatāprayogasarvalokadhātukāyapra-  
tibhāsaprāptaiḥ sarvadharmadhātvasaṅgasvararutaghoṣānuravita-  
sarvatryadhvāsaṅgacittājñānaviṣayaspharaṇaiḥ sarvabodhisattva-  
guṇapratipattisupariṣṭānābhilāpyakalpādhiṣṭhānasamprakāśan-  
āparikṣiṇaguṇavarṇanirdeśakaiḥ | yadidamvajragarbheṇa ca  
bodhisattvena mahāsattvena | ratnagarbheṇa ca | padmagarbheṇa ca  
| śrīgarbheṇa ca | padmaśrīgarbheṇa ca | āḍityagarbheṇa ca | sūrya-  
garbheṇa ca | kṣīṭigarbheṇa ca | śaśivimalagarbheṇa ca | sarvavyūh-  
ālaṃkārapratibhāsaṃdarśanagarbheṇa ca | jñānavairocana-  
garbheṇa ca | ruciraśrīgarbheṇa ca | candanaśrīgarbheṇa ca | puṣpa-  
śrīgarbheṇa ca | kusumaśrīgarbheṇa ca | utpalaśrīgarbheṇa ca |  
devaśrīgarbheṇa ca | puṇyaśrīgarbheṇa ca | anāvāraṇajñānavi-  
suddhigarbheṇa ca | guṇaśrīgarbheṇa ca | nārāyaṇaśrīgarbheṇa ca |

amalaḡarbheṇa ca | vimalaḡarbheṇa ca | vicitrapratibhānālamkāra-  
 ḡarbheṇa ca | mahāraśmijālāvabhāsaḡarbheṇa ca | vimalaprabhāsa-  
 śrītejorāḡarbheṇa ca | sarvalakṣaṇapratimaṇḡitaviśuddhīśrī-  
 ḡarbheṇa ca | vajrārciḡśrīvatsālamkāraḡarbheṇa ca | jyotirjvalan-  
 ārciḡśrīḡarbheṇa ca | nakṣatrarāḡaprabhāvabhāsaḡarbheṇa ca |  
 ḡaganakośānāvarenaḡājñānaḡarbheṇa ca | anāvarenaśvaramaṇḡala-  
 madhuranirḡoṣaḡarbheṇa ca | dhāraṇīmukhasarvajagatpraṇidhi-  
 saṇdhāraṇaḡarbheṇa ca | sāḡaravyūhaḡarbheṇa ca | meruśrī-  
 ḡarbheṇa ca | sarvaḡuṇaviśuddhiḡarbheṇa ca | tathāḡataśrīḡarbheṇa  
 ca | buddhaśrīḡarbheṇa ca | vimukticanḡreṇa ca bodhisattvena  
 mahāsattvena | evaṇḡpramukhairaparimāṇāḡprameyāsaṇkhyey-  
 ācintyātulyāmāpyānantāḡparyantāśimāḡprāptānabhilāpyānabhilāpyair  
 bodhisattvairmahāsattvaiḡ sārḡdhaṇḡ nānābuddhakṣetraśaṇḡnipatitair-  
 vajraḡarbhabodhisattvapūrvamaḡgaiḡ ||

**B**

atha khalu vajraḡarbho bodhisattvayāṇḡ velāyāṇḡ buddhānubhāvena  
 mahāyānaprabhāsaṇḡ nāma bodhisattvasamāḡdhimḡ samāḡpadyate sma  
 |

**C**

samanantarasamāḡpannaśca vajraḡarbho bodhisattva imaṇḡ mahā-  
 yānaprabhāsaṇḡ nāma bodhisattvasamāḡdhimḡ,atha tāvadeva daśasu  
 dikṡu daśabuddhakṣetrakoḡḡiparamāṇurajaḡsamānāṇḡ lokadhātūnām-  
 apareṇa daśabuddhakṣetrakoḡḡiparamāṇurajaḡsamāstathāḡatā  
 mukhānyupardaśayāmāsumḡ yadidaṇḡ vajraḡarbhasamanāmākā eva |  
 te cainaṇḡ buddhā bhagavanta evamūcuḡ-sāḡdhu sāḡdhu bho jinaputra,  
 yastvamimaṇḡ mahāyānaprabhāsaṇḡ bodhisattvasamāḡdhimḡ samā-  
 padyase | api tu khalu punastvaṇḡ kulaputra, amī daśasu dikṡu daśa-  
 buddhakṣetrakoḡḡiparamāṇurajaḡsamānāṇḡ lokadhātūnāmapareṇa  
 daśabuddhakṣetrakoḡḡiparamāṇurajaḡsamāstathāḡatā adhiḡiṡṡhanti  
 sarve vajraḡarbhasamanāmānaḡ asyaiva bhagavato vairocanaśya  
 pūrvapraṇidhānāḡdhiṡṡhānena tava ca puṇyājñānaviśeṡeṇa sarva-  
 bodhisattvānāṇḡ ca acintyabuddhadharmālokaprabhāvanājñāna-  
 bhūmyavatāraṇāya |

**D**

sarvakuśalamūlasaṇḡgrahaṇāya | sarvabuddhadharmanirdeśāya |  
 asaṇbhinnajñānavyavadānāya | sarvalokadharmānupaleḡāya |  
 lokottarakuśalamūlapariśodhanāya | acintyājñānaviṡayaḡdhigamāya

l yāvatsarvajñānaviṣayādhiḡamāya | yadidaṃ daśānāṃ bodhisattva-  
bhūmīnāmārambhapratilambhāya | yathāvadbodhisattvabhūmi-  
vyavasthānanirdeśāya | sarvabuddhadharmādhyālambanāya |  
anāsravadharmapravibhāgavibhāvanāya | suvicitavicayamahā-  
prajñālokakauśalyāya | sunistīritakauśalyajñānamukhāvātāraṇāya |  
yathārhassthānāntaraprabhāvanāmandapratibhānālokāya | mahā-  
pratisaṃvidbhūministīraṇāya | bodhicittasmṛtyasaṃpramoṣāya |  
sarvasattvadhātuparipācanāya | sarvatrānugatavinīścayakauśalya-  
pratilambhāya |

**E**

api tu khalu punaḥ kulaputra pratibhātu te'yaṃ dharmālokamukha-  
prabhedakauśalyadharmaparyāyo buddhānubhāvena tathāgata-  
jñānālokādhiṣṭhānena svakuśalamūlapariśodhanāya dharmadhātu-  
suparyavadāpanāya sattvadhātvanugrahāya dharmakāyajñāna-  
śārīrāya sarvabuddhābhiṣekasaṃpraticchanāya sarvalokābhyudgat-  
ātmabhāvasaṃdarśanāya sarvalokagatisamatikramāya lokotta-  
dharmagatipariśodhanāya sarvajñajñānaparipūraṇāya ||

**F**

atha khalu te buddhā bhagavanto vajragarbhasya bodhisattvasya  
anabhibhūtātmabhāvatāṃ copasaṃharanti sma | asaṅgapratibhāna-  
nirdeśatāṃ ca suviśobhitajñānavibhaktipraveśatāṃ ca smṛtyasaṃ-  
prabhoṣādhiṣṭhānatāṃ ca suvinīścitamatikauśalyatāṃ ca sarvatrānu-  
gatabuddhyanutsargatāṃ ca samyaksambuddhabalānavamṛdyatāṃ  
ca tathāgatavaiśāradyānavalīnatāṃ ca sarvajñajñānapratisaṃvid-  
vibhāgadharmanayanistīraṇatāṃ ca sarvatathāgatasuvibhaktā-  
kāyavākciṭṭālaṃkārabhinirhāratāṃ copasaṃharanti sma |

**G**

tatkasmāddhetoḥ? yathāpi nāma asyaiva samādherdharmatā-  
pratilambhena pūrvam prañidhānābhīrāreṇa ca supariśodhitā-  
dhyāśayatayā ca svavadātajñānamaṅḡalatayā ca susambhṛta-  
sambhāratayā ca sukṛtaparikarmatayā ca apramaṇasṃtibhājanatayā  
ca prabhāsvarādhimuktiviśodhanatayā ca supratividvadhāraṇi-  
mukhāsaṃbhedanatayā ca dharmadhātujñānamudrāsūmudritatayā  
ca ||

**H**

atha khalu te buddhā bhagavantastatrasthā eva ṛddhyanubhāvena  
dakṣiṇān pāṇīn prasārya vajragarbhasya bodhisattvasya śīrṣaṃ

saṃpramāṛjayanti sma |

**I**

samanantarasprṣṭaśca vajragarbho bodhisattvastairbuddhair-  
bhagavadbhiḥ, atha tāvadeva samādhestasmād vyutthāya tān  
bodhisattvānāmantrayate sma - suviniścitamidaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā  
bodhisattvapraṇidhānamasaṃbhinnamanavalokyaṃ dharmadhātu-  
vipulaṃ ākāśadhātuparyavasānamaparāntakoṭiṇiṣṭhaṃ sarvasattva-  
dhātuparitrāṇam | yatra hi nāma bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvā  
atītānāmapi buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ jñānabhūmimavataranti,  
anāgatānāmapi buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ jñānabhūmimavataranti  
pratyutpannānāmapi buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ jñānabhūmim-  
avataranti, tatra bhavanto jinaputrā daśa bodhisattvabhūmayo  
buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ jñānabhūmimavataranti, tatra bhavanto  
jinaputrāśca daśa bodhisattvabhūmayo'tītānāgatapratyutpannair-  
buddhairbhagadbhirbhāṣitāśca bhāṣiṣyante ca bhāṣyante ca, yāḥ  
saṃdhāya ahaṃ evaṃ vadāmi | katamā daśa ? yaduta pramuditā ca  
nāma bodhisattvabhūmiḥ | vimalā ca nāma | prabhākari ca nāma |  
arciṣmatī ca nāma | sudurjayā ca nāma | abhimukhī ca nāma | dūr-  
aṃgamā ca nāma | acalā ca nāma | sādhumatī ca nāma | dharm-  
meghā ca nāma bodhisattvabhūmiḥ | imā bhavanto jinaputrā daśa  
bodhisattvānāṃ bodhisattvabhūmayāḥ, yā atītānāgatapratyut-  
pannairbuddhairbhagavadbhirbhāṣitāśca bhāṣiṣyante ca bhāṣyante  
ca | nāhaṃ bhavanto jinaputrāstaṃ buddhakṣetraprasaraṃ samanu-  
paśyāmi, yatra tathāgatā imā daśa bodhisattvabhūmīrna pra-  
kāśayanti | tatkasya hetoḥ ? sāmuktkaṣikoḥyaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā  
bodhisattvānāṃ mahāsattvānāṃ bodhi(sattva)mārgapariśodhana-  
dharmamukhāloko yadidaṃ daśabhūmiprabhedavyavasthānam |  
acintyamidaṃ bhavanto jinaputrāḥ sthānaṃ yadidaṃ bhūmi-  
jñānamiti ||

**K**

atha khalu vajragarbho bodhisattva āsāṃ daśānāṃ bodhisattva-  
bhūmīnāṃ nāmadheyamātraṃ parikīrtya tūṣṇīṃ babhūva, na  
bhūyaḥ prabhedaśo nirdiśati sma | atha khalu sā sarvāvati bodhi-  
sattvaparaṣat paritṛṣṭitā babhūva āsāṃ daśānāṃ bodhisattva-  
bhūmīnāṃ nāmadheyamātraśravaṇena bhūmivibhāgānudīraṇena ca  
| tasyā etadabhavat-ko nu khalvatra hetuḥ kaśca pratyayaḥ, yad-

vajragarbho bodhisattva āsām bodhisattvabhūmīnām nāmadheya-  
mātram parikīrtya tūṣṇīmbhāvena atināmayati, na bhūyaḥ  
prabhedaśo nirdiśatīti ?

tena khalu punaḥ samayena tasminneva bodhisattvaparśatsaṃnipāte  
vimukticandro nāma bodhisattvastasyā bodhisattvaparśadaścittā-  
śayavicāramājñāya vajragarbham bodhisattvaṃ gāthābhigītena  
parigṛcchati sma -

kimarthaṃ śuddhasaṃkalpasmṛtijñānaguṇānrita |  
samudīryottamā bhūmīrna prakāśayase vibho || 1 ||

viniścītā ime sarve bodhisattvā mahāyaśaḥ |  
kasmādudīrya bhūmīśca(stvaṃ) pravibhāgaṃ na bhāṣase || 2 ||

śrotukāmā ime sarve jinaputrā viśāradaḥ |  
vibhājyārthagatiṃ samyaragbhūmīnām samudāhara || 3 ||

parśadvi viprasanneyaṃ kausīdyāpagatā śubhā |  
śuddhā pratiṣṭhitā sāre guṇajñānasamanvitā || 4 ||

nirīkṣamāṇā anyonyaṃ sthitāḥ sarve sagauravāḥ |  
kṣaudraṃ hyaneḍakaṃ yadvatkāñkṣanti tvamṛtopamam || 5 ||

tasya śrutvā mahāprajño vajragarbho viśāradaḥ |  
parśatsaṃtoṣānārthaṃ hi bhāṣate sma jinātmajaḥ || 6 ||

duṣkaraṃ paramametadadbhutaṃ  
bodhisattvacaritapradarśanam |  
bhūmikāraṇavibhāga uttamo  
buddhabhāvasamudāgamo yataḥ || 7 ||

sūkṣma durdṛśa vikalpavarjita-  
ścittabhūmivigato durāsadaḥ |  
gocaro hi viduṣāmanāsravo  
yatra muhyati jagacchave sati || 8 ||

vajropamaṃ hṛdayaṃ sthāpayitvā  
 buddhajñānaṃ paramaṃ cādhimucya |  
 anātmānaṃ cittabhūmiṃ viditvā  
 śakyaṃ śrotaṃ jñānametatsusūkṣmam || 9 ||

antarīkṣa iva raṅgacitraṇā  
 mārutaḥ khagapathāsrito yathā |  
 jñānamevamiha bhāgaśaḥ kṛtaṃ  
 durdṛśaṃ bhagavatāmanāsravam || 10 ||

tasya me bhavati buddhirīdṛśī  
 durlabho jagati yo'sya vedakaḥ |  
 śraddhadhīta ca ya etaduttamaṃ  
 na prakāśayitumutsahe yataḥ || 11 ||

**L**

evamukte vimukticandro bodhisattvo vajragarbhaṃ bodhisattvam-  
 etadavocat - supariśuddho batāyaṃ bho jinaputra parṣatsaṃnipātaḥ  
 supariśodhitādhyāśayānāṃ bodhisattvānāṃ supariśodhita-  
 saṃkalpānāṃ sucaritacaraṇānāṃ suparyupāsitabahubuddhakoṭi-  
 śatasahasrānāṃ susaṃbhṛtasambhārāṇāmaparimitaḡaṇajñāna-  
 samanvāgatānāmapagatavimatisaṃdehānāmanaṅgaṇānāṃ supra-  
 tiṣṭhitādhyāśayādhimuktīnāmaparapratyayānāmeṣu buddha-  
 dharmeṣu | tatsādhu bho jinaputra, prabhāśasva | pratyakṣavihāriṇo  
 hyate bodhisattvā atra sthāne ||

**M**

vajragarbha āha - kiṃcāpi bho jinaputra ayaṃ bodhisattvaparṣat-  
 saṃnipātaḥ supariśuddhaḥ | peyālaṃ | atha ca punarye'nye  
 imānyevamrūpāṇyacintyāni sthānāni śṛṇuyuḥ, śrutvā ca  
 vimatisaṃdehamutpādayeyuḥ, teṣāṃ tatsyāddirgharātramanarthāya  
 ahitāya duḥkhāya | iyaṃ me kāruṇyacittatā, yena  
 tūṣṇīmabhāvamevābhirocyāmi ||

**N**

atha khalu vimukticandro bodhisattvaḥ punareva vajragarbhaṃ  
 bodhisattvametamevārthamadhyeṣate sma - tatsādhu bho jinaputra,  
 prabhāśasva | tathāgatasyaivānubhāvena imānyevamrūpāṇy-  
 acintyāni sthānāni svārakṣitāni śraddheyāni bhaviṣyanti | taskasya  
 hetoḥ? tathā hi bho jinaputra asmin bhūminirdeśe bhāṣyamāṇe



dharmatāpratilambha eṣa yatsarvabuddhasamanvāhāro bhavati |  
 sarve bodhisattvāśca asyā eva jñānabhūmerārakṣārthamautsukyam-  
 āpadyante | tatkāśya hetoḥ? eṣā hyādicaryā | eṣa samudāgamo  
 buddhadharmāṇām | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra sarva-  
 lipyakṣarasamkhyānirdeśo mātṛkāpūrvamgamō mātṛkāpary-  
 avasānaḥ nāsti sa lipyakṣarasamkhyānirdeśo yo vinā mātṛkānir-  
 deśam, evameva bho jinaputra sarve buddhadharmā bhūmipūrvam-  
 gamāśca caryāpariniṣpattito bhūmiparyavasānaḥ svayambhūjñān-  
 ādhigamatayā | tasmātarhi bho jinaputra, prabhāśasva | tathāgatā  
 eva arhantaḥ samyakṣambuddhā ārakṣāmadhiṣṭhāsyanti ||

**O**

atha khalu te sarve bodhisattvā ekasvarasamgītena tasyāṃ velāyāṃ  
 vajragarbhaṃ bodhisattvaṃ gāthābhigītenaiva tamartham-  
 adhyeṣante sma -

pravaravaravimalabuddhe svabhīdhānānantaghaṭitapratibha |  
 pravayāhara madhuravarāṃ vācam paramārthasamuktām || 12 ||

smṛtidhṛtviśuddhabuddhe daśabalabalābhamaśayaviśuddhim |  
 pratisamviddaśavicayaṃ bhāśasva daśottamā bhūmīḥ || 13 ||

śamaniyamanibhṛtasumanāḥ prahīṇamadamānadṛṣṭisamkleśā |  
 niṣkāṅkṣā parśadiyaṃ prārthayate bhāṣitāni tava || 14 ||

tṛṣṭita iva śītamudakaṃ bubhukṣito'nnam subheśajamivārtaḥ |  
 kṣaudramiva sa madhukaragaṇastava vācamudīkṣate parṣat || 15 ||

tatsādhu vimalabuddhe bhūmiviśeṣān vadasva virajaskān |  
 daśabalayuktāsaṅgāṃ sugatagatimudīrayannikhilām || 16 ||

**P**

atha khalu tasyāṃ velāyāṃ bhagavataḥ śākyamunerūrṇakośād  
 bodhisattvabalāloko nāma raśmirniścācāra samkhyeyāsamkhyeya-  
 raśmiparivārā | sā sarvāsu daśasu dikṣu sarvalokadhātupra-  
 sarānavabhāśya sarvāpāyaduḥkhāni pratiprasrabhya sarvamāra-  
 bhavanāni dhyāmīkṛtya aparimitāni buddhapaṛśanmaṇḍalāny-  
 avabhāśya acintyaṃ buddhaviśayākāraprabhāvaṃ nidarśya sarvāsu  
 daśasu dikṣu sarvalokadhātuprasareṣu sarvatathāgatapaṛśan-

maṅḍaleṣu dharmadeśanādhiṣṭhānādhiṣṭhitān bodhisattvān-  
 avabhāsyā acintyaṃ buddhavikurvaṇaṃ saṃdarśya uparyantarikṣe  
 mahāraśmighanābhrajālakūṭāgāraṃ kṛtvā tasthau | teṣāmapī  
 buddhānāṃ bhagavatāmūrṇākośebhya evameva bodhisattvabalālokā  
 nāma rāsmayo niśceraḥ | niścarya asaṃkhyeyāsaṃkhyeyarāsmi-  
 parivārāstāḥ sarvāsu....pe...buddhavikurvaṇamādarśya idaṃ  
 bhagavataḥ śākyamuneḥ parśanmaṅḍalaṃ vajragarbhasya bodhi-  
 sattvasyātmabhāvamavabhāsyā uparyantarikṣe evameva mahāraśmi-  
 ghanābhrajālakūṭāgāraṃ kṛtvā tasthuḥ | iti hi ābhiśca bhagavataḥ  
 śākyamunerūrṇākośaprasṛtābhī rāsmibhiste lokadhātavastāni ca  
 buddhapaṛśanmaṅḍalāni teṣāṃ ca bodhisattvānāṃ kāyā āsanāni ca  
 sphuṭānyavabhāsītāni saṃdṛśyante sma | teṣāṃ ca aparimāṇeṣu  
 lokadhātuṣu buddhānāṃ bhagavatāmūrṇākośaprasṛtābhī rāsmi-  
 bhirayaṃ trisāhasramahāsāhasralokadhāturidaṃ ca bhagavataḥ  
 śākyamuneḥ parśanmaṅḍalaṃ vajragarbhasya ca bodhisattvasya  
 kāyā āsanaṃ sphuṭamavabhāsitaṃ saṃdṛśyante sma | atha khalu  
 tato mahāraśmighanābhrajālakūṭāgārādvuddhānubhāvena ayam-  
 evaṃrūpaḥ śabda niścaraṭi sma –

asamasamākāśamairdaśabalavṛṣabhairanantamukhyaguṇaiḥ |  
 śākyakulajasya dharmairdevamanuṣyottamaiḥ kṛtamadhiṣṭhānam ||  
 17 ||

anubhāvātsugatānāṃ kośaṃ vivṛṇuṣva dharmarājānām |  
 caryāvarāmudārāṃ prabhedaśo jñānabhūmiṃ ca || 18 ||

adhiṣṭhitāste sugatairdhāritā bodhisattvaiśca |  
 yeṣāṃ śrotapathāgataḥ śreṣṭho yo dharmaparyāyaḥ || 19 ||

daśa bhūmīrvirajasah pūrayitvānupūrveṇa |  
 balāni daśa ca prāpya jinatāmarpayiṣyanti || 20 ||

sāgarajale nimagnāḥ kalpoddāheṣu prakṣiptāḥ |  
 bhavyāste dharmaparyāyamimaṃ śrotumasamdigdhāḥ || 21 ||

ye tu vimatisaktāḥ saṃśayaiścābhyupetāḥ |  
 sarvaśo na hi teṣāṃ prāpsyate śrotametata || 22 ||

bhūmijñānāpathaṃ śreṣṭhaṃ praveśasthānasamkramam |  
anupūrveṇa bhāṣasva caryāviṣayameva ca || 23 ||

Q

atha khalu vajragarbho bodhisattvo daśa diśo vyavalokya bhūyasyā  
mātrayā tasyāḥ parśadaḥ samprasādarnārthaṃ tasyāṃ velāyāmimā  
gāthā abhāṣata -

sūkṣmaṃ durājñeyapadaṃ maharṣiṇā-  
makalpapakalpāpagataṃ suduḥsprṣam |  
anāvilaṃ paṇḍitavijñāveditaṃ  
svabhāvasāntaṃ hyanirodhasambhavam || 24 ||

svabhāvasūnyaṃ praśamādvayakṣayaṃ  
gatyā vimuktaṃ samatāptinirvṛtam |  
anantamadhyam vacasānudīritaṃ  
triyaghvavimuktaṃ nabhasā samānakam || 25 ||

sāntaṃ praśāntaṃ sugatapraveditaṃ  
sarvairudāhārapadaḥ sudurvacam |  
bhūmiśca caryāpi ca tasya tādrṣī  
vaktuṃ suduḥkhaḥ kuta eva śrotum || 26 ||

taccintayā cittapathaiśca varjitaṃ  
jñānābhinirhāramunīndraveditam |  
na skandhadhātāvātanaprabhāvitam  
na cittagamyam na manovicintitam || 27 ||

yathāntarīkṣe śakuneḥ padaṃ budhai-  
rvaktuṃ na śakyaṃ na ca darśanopagam |  
tathaiva sarvā jinaputra bhūmayo  
vaktuṃ na śakyāḥ kuta eva śrotum || 28 ||

pradeśamātraṃ tu tato'bhidhāsyē  
maitrīkrpābhyāṃ praṇidhānataśca |  
yathānupūrvaṃ na ca cittagocaram  
zñānena tāḥ pūrayatāṃ yathāśayam || 29 ||

etādṛśo gocara durdṛśo'sya  
vaktuṃ na śakyaḥ sa hi svāśayasthaḥ |  
kiṃ tu pravakṣyāmi jinānubhāvataḥ  
śṛṇvantu sarve sahitāḥ sagauravāḥ || 30 ||

jñānapraveśaḥ sa hi tādṛśo'sya  
vaktuṃ na kalpairapi śakyaḥ yat |  
samāsatastacchṛṇuta bravīmyahaṃ  
dharmārthatattvaṃ nikhilaṃ yathāsthitaṃ || 31 ||

sagauravāḥ santa(h) sajjā bhavanto  
vakṣyāmyahaṃ sādhu jinānubhāvataḥ |  
udīrayiṣye varadharmaghoṣaṃ  
dṛṣṭāntayuktaṃ sahitaṃ samākṣaram || 32 ||

suduṣkaraṃ tadvacasāpi vaktuṃ  
yaścāprameyaḥ sugatānubhāvaḥ |  
mayi praviṣṭaḥ sa ca raśmimūrti-  
ryasyānubhāvena mamāsti śaktiḥ || 33 ||

**R**

tatra bhavanto jinaputrāḥ sūpacitakuśalamūlānāṃ sucarita-  
caraṇānāṃ susambhṛtasambhārānāṃ suparyupāsitaḥ  
otpadānāṃ superiṇḍitaśukladharmānāṃ superiḡhītakalyāṇa-  
mitrānāṃ suviśuddhāśayānāṃ vipulāghyāśayopagatānāṃ udārādhi-  
muktisamanvāgatānāṃ kṛpākaruṇābhīmukhānāṃ (bodhi)sattvānāṃ  
bodhāya cittamutpādyate |

**S**

buddhajñānābhilāṣāya daśabalabalādhigamāya mahāvaiśāradya-  
ādhigamāya samatābuddhadharmapratilambhāya sarvajagatpari-  
trāṇāya mahākṛpākaruṇāviśodhanāya daśadigaśeṣajñānādhigamāya  
sarvabuddhakṣetrāsaṅgapariśodhanāya tryadhvaikakṣaṇavibodhāya  
mahādharmaçakrapravartanavaiśāradyāya ca taccittamutpādyate  
bodhisattvānāṃ

**T**

mahākaruṇāpūrvamaṅgaṃ prajñājñānādhīpateyamupāyakausālya-  
pariḡhītamāśayādhyāśayopastabdhaṃ tathāgatabalāprameyaṃ

sattvabalabuddhibalasuvcitavicayamasambhinnajñānābhimukhaṃ  
svayaṃbhūjñānānukūlaṃ sarvabuddhadharmaprajñājñānāvavā-  
dasampratyeṣakaṃ dharmadhātuparamamākāśadhātusthita-  
kamaparāntakoṭiṇiṣṭham ।

**U**

yena cittotpādena sahotpannaena bodhisattvo'tikrānto bhavati, pṛtha-  
gñānabhūmīmavakrānto bhavati, bodhisattvaniyāmaṃ jāto bhavati,  
tathāgatakule'navadyo bhavati, sarvajātivādena vyāvṛtto bhavati,  
sarvalokagatibhyo'vakrānto bhavati, lokottarāṃ gatiṃ sthito bhavati,  
bodhisattvadharmatāyāṃ suvyavasthito bhavati, bodhisattvāva-  
sthānena samatānugato bhavati, tryaghvatathāgatavaṃśaniyato  
bhavati saṃbodhiparāyaṇaḥ । evaṃrūpadharmavyavasthito  
bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvaḥ pramuditāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau  
vyavasthito bhavatyacalanayogena । ।

**V**

atra bhavanto jinaputrāḥ pramuditāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito  
bodhisattvaḥ prāmodyabahulo bhavati prasādabahulaḥ prītibahula  
utplāvanābahula udagrībahula utsībahula utsāhabahulo'saṃ-  
rambhabahulo'vihimsābahulo'krodhabahulo bhavati ।

**W**

iti hi bhavanto jinaputrāḥ pramuditāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito  
bodhisattvan pramudito bhavati, buddhān bhagavato'nusmaran  
buddhadharmān bodhisattvān bodhisattvacaryāḥ pāramitāvi-  
śuddhiṃ bodhisattvabhūmiviśeṣān bodhisattvāsamhāryatāṃ tathā-  
gatāvavādānuśāsanīṃ sattvārthasamprāpaṇam । pramudito bhavati  
sarvatathāgatajñānapraveśaprayogamanusmaran । bhūyaḥ prāmod-  
yavān bhavati –

**X**

vyāvṛtto'smi sarvajagadviṣayāt, avatīrṇo'smi buddhabhūmisamīpam,  
dūrībhūto'smi bālapṛthagjanabhūmeḥ, āsanno'smi jñānabhūmeḥ,  
vyavacchinno'smi sarvāpāyadurgativinipātāt, pratiśaraṇabhūto'smi  
sarvasattvānām, āsannadarśano'smi sarvatathāgatānām, saṃ-  
bhūto'smi sarvabuddhaviṣaye, sarvabodhisattvasamatām-  
upagato'smi । vigatāni me sarvabhayatrāsacchambhitatvānīti  
prāmodyamutpādayati ।

**Y**

tatkasya hetoḥ ? tathā hi bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasya asyāḥ

pramuditāyā bodhisattvabhūmeḥ sahapratilambhena yānīmāni bhayāni bhavanti - yadidamājīvikābhayaṃ vā aślokabhayaṃ vā maraṇabhayaṃ vā durgatibhayaṃ vā parśacchāradyabhayaṃ vā, tāni sarvāṇi vyapagatāni bhavanti | tatkasya hetoḥ ? yathāpi idam-ātmasaṃjñāpagamādātmasneho'sya na bhavati, kutaḥ punaḥ sarvopakaraṇasnehaḥ ? ato'sya ājīvikābhayaṃ na bhavati | na ca kaṃcit-satkāraṃ kasyacitsakāśātpratīkāṅkṣati, anyatra mayaiva teṣāṃ sattvānāṃ sarvopakaraṇabhūlyamupanāmayitavyamiti, ato'sya aślokabhayaṃ na bhavati | ātmadr̥ṣṭivigamācca asyātmasaṃjñā na bhavati, ato'sya maraṇabhayaṃ na bhavati | mṛtasyaiva me niyatam buddhabodhisattvairna virahito bhaviṣyāmīti, ato'sya durgatibhayaṃ na bhavati | nāsti me kaścidāśayena sarvaloke samasamaḥ, kutaḥ punaruttara ityato'sya parśacchāradyabhayaṃ na bhavati | evaṃ sarvabhayaatrāsacchambhitatvaromaharṣāpagataḥ | |

**Z**

atha khalu punarbhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvo mahākaruṇāpuraskṛtatvādanupahatena aprākṛtenādhyāśayena bhūyasyā mātrayā prayujyate sarvakuśalamūlamudāgamāya |

**AA**

sa śraddhādhipateyatayā prasādabahulatayā adhimuktiviśuddhyā avakalpanābahulatayā kṛpākaruṇābhīnirhāratayā mahāmaitryupetatayā aparikhinnamānasatayā hryapatrāpyālamkāratayā kṣāntisauratyopetatayā tathāgatārhatasamyaksambuddhasāsana-gauravacitrīkaraṇatayā

**BB**

rātriṃdivātrptakuśalamūlopacayatayā kalyāṇamitraniṣevānatayā dharmārāmābhiratatayā atṛptabāhuśrutyaparyeṣaṇatayā yathāśrutadharmayoniśaḥpratyavekṣaṇatayā aniketamānasatayā anadhya-vasitalābhasatkāraślokatayā anabhinanditopakaraṇasnehatayā ratn-opamacittotpādātṛptābhīnirhāratayā

**CC**

sarvajñabhūmyabhilāṣaṇatayā tathāgatabalavaiśāradyaṅvāṇika-buddhadharmādhyālambanatayā pāramitāsaṅgaparyeṣaṇatayā māyāśāṭhyaparivarjanatayā yathāvāditathākāritayā satatasamitam satyavacanānurakṣaṇatayā tathāgatakulabhūṣaṇatayā bodhisattva-śikṣānutsarjanatayā mahāśailendrārājopamasarvajñatācittā-prakampanatayā sarvalokakriyānābhilakṣaṇatayā utsargalokottara-

pathopetatayā atṛptabodhyaṅgasam̐bhāropacayatayā satatasamita-  
muttarottaraviśeṣaparimārgaṇatayā | evaṃrūpairbhavanto jinaputrā  
bhūmipariśodhakairdharmaiḥ samanvāgato bodhisattvaḥ supra-  
tiṣṭhito bhavati pramuditāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau | |

**DD**

so'syāṃ pramuditāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitaḥ san imānyevaṃ-  
rūpāni mahāpraṇidhānāni mahāvyaśāsāyān mahābhinirhārāna-  
bhinirharati - yaduta aśeṣaniḥśeṣānavaśeṣasarvabuddhapūjo-  
psthāpanāya sarvākāraṇopetamudārādhimuktiviśuddhaṃ  
dharmadhātuvipulamākāśadhātuparyavasānamaparāntakotiṣṭhaṃ  
sarvakalpasam̐khyābuddhotpādaṃsam̐khyāpratiprasrabdhaṃ  
mahāpūjopasthānāya prathamam̐ mahāpraṇidhānamabhinirharati |

**EE**

yaduta sarvatathāgatabhāṣitadharmanetrīsaṃdhāraṇāya sarva-  
buddhabodhisattvasuparigrahāya sarvasamyaksam̐buddha-  
śāsanaparirakṣaṇāya....buddhotpādasaddharmaparigrahāya  
dvitīyam |

**FF**

yaduta sarvabuddhotpādaniravaśeṣasarvalokadhātuprasareṣu tuṣita-  
bhavanavāsamādim̐ kṛtvā cyavanāsam̐kramaṇagarbha-  
sthitijanmakumārakṛīdāntaḥpuravāsābhiniṣkramaṇaduṣkaracaryābo-  
dhimaṇḍopa-sam̐kramaṇamāragharṣaṇābhisaṃbodhyadhyeṣaṇa-  
mahādharmacakrapravartanamahāparinirvāṇopasam̐kramaṇāya  
pūjādharmaṣaṃgrahaprayogapūrvam̐gamam̐ kṛtvā sarvatraikakāla-  
vivartanāya...buddhotpāda....yāvanmahāparinirvāṇopasam̐kramaṇā  
ya tṛtīyam |

**GG**

yaduta sarvabodhisattvacaryāvīpulamahadgatāpramāṇasam̐bhinna-  
sarvapāramitāsam̐grhītasarvabhūmipariśodhanam̐ sāṅgopāṅga-  
nirhārasalakṣaṇasam̐vartavivartasarvabodhisattvacaryābhūtayathāva  
dbhūmipathopadeśapāramitāparikarmāvavādānuśāsanyanupradāno  
pastabdhattotpādābhinirhārāya...caryā...cittotpādābhinirhārāya  
caturtham |

**HH**

yaduta niravaśeṣasarvasattvadhāturūpyarūpisaṃjñāsam̐jñānaiva-  
sam̐jñānāsam̐jñāṇḍajajarāyujasaṃsvedajaupapāduka-... traidhātuka-  
paryāpannaṣaḍgatisamavasṛtasarvopapattiparyāpannanāmarūpasam̐

gr̥hītāśeṣasarvasattvadhātuparipācanāya sarvabuddhadharm-  
 āvatāraṇāya sarvagatisaṃkhyāvyavacchedanāya sarvajñāñānaprati-  
 ṣṭhāpanāya...sattvadhātu...sarvasattvadhātuparipācanāya pañcamam  
 |

## II

yaduta niravaśeṣasarvalokadhātuvipulasamkṣiptamahadgatāpramā-  
 ṇa-  
 sūkṣmaudārikavyatyastāvamūrdhasamatalapraveśasamavarasaraṇā  
 nugatendrajālavibhāgadaśadigaśeṣavimātratāvibhāgapraveśajñānān  
 ugamapratyakṣatāyai...lokadhātu...lokadhātuvaimātryāvātāraṇāya  
 ṣaṣṭham |

## JJ

yaduta sarvakṣetraikakṣetraikakṣetrasarvakṣetrasamavasaraṇapariśod-  
 hana  
 mapramāṇabuddhakṣetraprabhāvvyūhālamkārapratimaṇḍitaṃ sarva-  
 kleśāpanayanapariśuddhapathopetamapramāṇajñānākarasattvapari-  
 pūrṇamudārabuddhaviśayasamavasaraṇaṃ yathāśayasarvasattva-  
 saṃdarśanasamtoṣaṇāya...buddhakṣetra...sarvabuddhakṣetrapariśod-  
 hanāya saptamam |

## KK

yaduta sarvabodhisattvaikāśayaprayogatāyai niḥsapatnakuśalamūl-  
 opacayāya ekālambanasarvabodhisattvasamatāyai avirahitasatatasā-  
 mitabuddhabodhisattvasamavadhānāya yatheṣṭabuddhotpādasam-  
 darśanāya svacittotpādatathāgataprabhāvajñānānugamāya acyut-  
 ānugāminyabhijñāpratilambhāya sarvalokadhātvanuvicaraṇāya  
 sarvabuddhapaṇṣanmaṇḍalapratibhāsaprāptaye sarvopapattisva-  
 śarīrānugamāya acintyamahāyānopetatāyai bodhisattvacaryā-  
 caraṇāvyavacchedāya...caryā...mahāyānāvātāraṇāya aṣṭamam |

## LL

yaduta avivartyacakrasamārūḍhabodhisattvacaryācaraṇāya amogha-  
 kāyavānmanaskarmaṇe sahadarśananiyatabuddhadharmatvāya  
 sahaḥhoṣodāhārajñānānugamāya sahaprasādakleśavinivartanāya  
 mahābhaisajyarājopamāśrayapratilambhāya cintāmaṇivat-  
 kāyapratilambhāya sarvabodhisattvacaryā-  
 caraṇāya...caryā...amoghasarvaceṣṭatāyai navamam |

## MM

yaduta sarvalokadhātuṣvanuttarasamyaksambodhyabhisambodhāya



ekavālapathāvyativṛttasarvabālapṛthagjanajanmopapatyabhiniṣkram  
 aṇavikurvaṇabodhimaṇḍadharmacakrapravartanamahāparinirvāṇop  
 adarśanāya mahābuddhaviṣayaprabhāvajñānānugamāya sarva-  
 sattvadhātuyathāsāyabuddhotpādakṣaṇakṣaṇavibhaṅgavibodhaprasā  
 amaprāṇasaṃdarśanāya ekābhisam̐bodhisarvadharmānirmāṇa-  
 spharaṇāya ekaghoṣodāhārasarvasattvacittāsāyasaṃtoṣaṇāya mahā-  
 parinirvāṇopadarśanacaryābalāvyavacchedāya mahājñānabhūmi-  
 sarvadharmavyavasthāpanasaṃdarśanāya dharmajñānārddhim-  
 āyābhijñāsarvalokadhātuspharaṇāya abhisam̐bodhimahājñānābhijñ-  
 ābhinirhārāya daśamam | iti hi bhavanto jinaputrā imānyevaṃ-  
 rūpāṇi mahāpraṇidhānāni mahāvyavasāyān mahābhinirhārān daśa  
 praṇidhānamukhāni pramukhaṃ kṛtvā paripūrṇāni daśapraṇidhān-  
 āsaṃkhyeyaśatasahasrāṇi yāni bodhisattvaḥ pramuditāyāṃ bodhi-  
 sattvabhūmau sthito'bhinirharati pratilabhate ca ||

**NN**

tāni ca mahāpraṇidhānāni daśabhirniṣṭhāpadairabhinirharati |  
 katamairdaśabhiḥ? yaduta sattvadhātuniṣṭhaya ca lokadhātuniṣṭhaya  
 ca ākāśadhātuniṣṭhaya ca dharmadhātuniṣṭhaya ca nirvāṇadhātu-  
 niṣṭhaya ca buddhotpādadhātuniṣṭhaya ca tathāgatajñānadhātu-  
 niṣṭhaya ca cittālambanadhātuniṣṭhaya ca buddhaviṣayajñāna-  
 praveśadhātuniṣṭhayaḥ ca lokavartanīdharmavartanijñāna-  
 vartanīdhātuniṣṭhaya ca | iti hi yā niṣṭhā sattvadhātuniṣṭhāyāḥ, sā  
 me niṣṭhā eṣāṃ mahāpraṇidhānānāṃ bhavatu | yā niṣṭhā  
 yāvajñānavartanīdhātuniṣṭhāyāḥ, sā me niṣṭhā eṣāṃ mahāpraṇi-  
 dhānānāṃ bhavatu | iti hyaniṣṭhā sattvadhātuniṣṭhā | aniṣṭhānīmāni  
 me kuśalamūlāni bhavantu | aniṣṭhā yāvajñānavartanīdhātuniṣṭhā |  
 aniṣṭhānīmāni me kuśalamūlāni bhavantviti ||

**OO**

sa evaṃ svabhiniḥṛtapraṇidhānaḥ karmaṇyacitto mṛducitto'saṃ-  
 hāryaśraddho bhavati | so'bhiśraddadhāti tathāgatānāmarhatāṃ  
 samyaksambuddhānāṃ pūrvāntacaryābhinirhārapraveśaṃ pāramit-  
 āsamudāgamāṃ bhūmipariniṣpattim vaiśeṣikatāṃ balapariṣpattim  
 vaiśārdyaparipūrimāveṇikabuddhadharmāsaṃhāryatāmacintyāṃ  
 buddhadharmatāmanantamādhyāṃ tathāgataviṣayābhinirhārama-  
 parimāṇajñānānugataṃ tathāgatagocarānupraveśaṃ phalapari-  
 niṣpattimabhiśraddadhāti | samāsataḥ sarvabodhisattvacaryāṃ  
 yāvattathāgatabhūmijñānanirdeśādhiṣṭhānamabhiśraddadhāti ||

**PP**

tasyaivaṃ bhavati - evaṃ gambhīrāḥ khalu punarime buddha-dharmāḥ evaṃ viviktāḥ evaṃ śāntāḥ evaṃ śūnyāḥ evamānimitāḥ evamapraṇihitāḥ evaṃ nirupalepāḥ evaṃ vipulāḥ evamaparimāṇāḥ evamudārāḥ evaṃ durāsadāśceme buddhadharmāḥ |

**QQ**

atha ca punarime bālapṛthagjanāḥ kudrṣṭīpatitayā saṃtatyā avidyāndhakārapayarvanaddhamānasena mānadhvajasamucchritāḥ saṃkalpaistṛṣṇājālābhilaṣitairmanasikāraimāyāsāṭhyagahanānucaritaiścittāśayairiṣyāmātsaryasaṃprayuktairgatyupapattiprayogai rāga-dveṣamohaparicittaiḥ karmopacayaiḥ krodhopanāhasaṃdhuḥṣitābhīścittajvālābhirviparyāsaṃprayuktaiḥ karmakriyābhinirhāraiḥ kāmabhavāvidyāsravānubaddhaiścittamanovijñānabījais

**RR**

traidhātuke punarbhavāṅkuramabhinirvartayanti yadidaṃ nāmarūpasahajāvinirbhāgagatam | tenaiva ca nāmarūpeṇa vivardhitena eṣāṃ ṣaḍāyatanagrāmaḥ saṃbhavati | saṃbhūtesvāyataneṣv-anyonyasparśanipātato vedanā saṃbhavati | tāmeva vedanāṃ bhūyo bhūyo'bhinandatām tṛṣṇopādānaṃ vivardhate | vivṛddhe tṛṣṇopādāne bhavaḥ saṃbhavati | saṃbhūte ca bhava jātijārāmarāṇasokaparidevaduḥkhadaurmanasyopāyāsāḥ prādurbhavanti | evameteṣāṃ sattvānāṃ duḥkhaskandho'bhinirvartate ātmātmīyavigato riktastucchaḥ śūnyo nirīho niśceṣṭo jaḍastrṇakāṣṭhakuḍyavartmapratibhāsopamaḥ | na caivamavabudhyanta iti |

**SS**

teṣāmevaṃrūpeṇa sattvānāṃ duḥkhaskandhāvīpramokṣaṃ dṛṣṭvā sattveṣu mahākaruṇonmiñjaḥ saṃbhavati - eteśmābhiḥ sattvāḥ paritrātavyāḥ parimocayitavyā ato mahāsaṃmohāt, atyantasukhe ca nirvāṇe pratiṣṭhāpayitavyāḥ iti | ato'sya mahāmaityunmiñjaḥ saṃbhavati ||

**TT**

evaṃ kṛpāmaitryanugatena khalu punarbhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvo'dhyāsayena prathamāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau vartamānaḥ sarvavastuṣu sāpekṣacittaṃ parivarjya buddhajñāne ca udāraspṛhābhilāṣabuddhirmahātyāgeṣu prayuñjate | sa ya ime tyāgāḥ - yaduta dhanadhānyakośakoṣṭhāgaraparityāgo vā hiraṇyasuvarṇamaṇimuktāvaiddūryasaṅkhaṣīlāpravālaajātarūparajataparityāgo vā ratnābharaṇa-

vibhūṣaṇaparityāgo vā hayarathagajapativāhanaparityāgo vā  
 udyānatapovanavihāraparityāgo vā dāsīdāsakarmakarapauruṣeya-  
 parityāgo vā grāmanagaranigamajanapadarāṣṭrarājadhānīparityāgo  
 vā bhāryāputraduhitrparityāgo vā sarvapriyamanāpavastuparityāgo  
 vā śīraḥkarṇanāsākaraçaraṇanayanāsvamāṃsaṇitāsthimajjā-  
 medaśchavicarmahṛdayasarvātmabhāvaparityāgo vā, teṣvanapekṣo  
 bhūtvā sarvavastuṣu buddhajñāne ca udāraspṛhābhilāṣabuddhiḥ  
 parityajati | evaṃ hyasya prathamāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau  
 sthitasya mahātyāgaḥ saṃbhavati ||

**UU**

sa evaṃ karuṇāmaitrītyāgāsāyo bhūtvā sarvasattvaparityāgānāthaṃ  
 bhūyo bhūyo laukikalokottarānāthaṃ parimārgate parigaveṣate |  
 parimārgamāṇaḥ parigaveṣamāṇaśca aparikhedacittamutpādayati |  
 evamasyāparikhedaḥ saṃbhavati | aparikhinnaśca sarvasāstra-  
 viśārado bhavati | ato'sya śāstrajñatā saṃbhavati | sa evaṃ śāstr-  
 opetaḥ kriyākriyāvicāritayā buddhyā hīnamadhyapraṇīteṣu sattveṣu  
 tathatvāya pratipadyate yathābalaṃ yathābhajamānam | ato'sya  
 lokajñatā saṃbhavati | lokajñāśca kālavelāmātracārī hryapatrāpyavi-  
 bhūṣitayā saṃtatyā ātmārthaparārtheṣu prayujyate | ato'sya  
 hryapatrāpyaṃ saṃbhavati | teṣu ca prayogeṣu naiṣkramyācārī  
 avivartyāpratyudāvartyabalādhānaprāpto bhavati | evamasya  
 dhṛtibalādhānamājataṃ bhavati | dhṛtibalādhānaprāptaśca  
 tathāgatapūjopasthāneṣu prayujyate, śāsane ca pratipadyate | evaṃ  
 hyasyeme daśa bhūmipariśodhakā dharmā ājātā bhavanti | tadyathā  
 - śraddhā karuṇā maitrī tyāgaḥ khedasahiṣṇutā śāstrajñatā lokajñatā  
 hryapatrāpyaṃ dhṛtibalādhānam tathāgatapūjopasthānamiti ||

**VV**

tasya asyāṃ pramuditāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhi-  
 sattvasya bahavo buddhā ābhāsamāgacchanti audārikadarśanena  
 praṇidhānabalena ca | bahūni buddhaśatāni bahūni buddha-  
 sahasrāṇi bahūni buddhaśatasahasrāṇi bahūni buddhanayuta-  
 śatasahasrāṇi bahavo buddhakoṭyo bahūni buddhakoṭīśatāni bahūni  
 buddhakoṭīśahasrāṇi bahūni buddhakoṭīśatasahasrāṇi bahūni  
 buddhakoṭīnayutaśatasahasrāṇyābhāsamāgacchanti audārika-  
 darśanena praṇidhānabalena ca | sa tāṃstathāgatānarhataḥ samyak-  
 saṃbuddhān dṛṣṭvā udārādhyāśayena satkaroti gurukaroti mānayati  
 pūjayati, cīvarapiṇḍapātraśayānāsanaglānapratyayabhaiṣajya-

pariṣkāraīśca pratipādayati | bodhisattvasukhopadhānaṃ copa-  
 saṃharati | saṃghagaṇasaṃmānatāṃ ca karoti | tāni ca kuśala-  
 mūlānyanuttarāyāṃ samyaksambodhau pariṇāmayati | tāṃśca asya  
 buddhān bhagavataḥ pūjayataḥ sattvapariṣkā ājāto bhavati | sa  
 sattvāṃśca pariṣkāyati dānena priyavadyena ca adhimuktibalena ca  
 | asyopari dve arthasaṃgrahavastūnyājāyete na tu khalvaśeṣajñāna-  
 prativedhapratilambhena | tasya daśabhyāḥ pāramitābhyo dāna-  
 pāramitā atiriktatamā bhavati, na ca pariśeṣāsu na samudāgacchati  
 yathābalaṃ yathābhajamānam | sa yathā yathā buddhāṃśca  
 bhagavataḥ pūjayati, sattvapariṣkāyā ca prayujya tānimān daśa  
 bhūmipariśodhakān dharmān samādāya vartate, tathā tathāśya tāni  
 kuśalamūlāni sarvajñatāpariṇāmitāni bhūyasyā mātrayottapyante,  
 pariśuddhyanti, karmaṇyāni ca bhavanti yathākāmatayā | tad-  
 yathāpi nāma bhavanto jinaputrā jātarūpaṃ kuśalena karmāreṇa  
 yathā yathāgnau prakṣipyate, tathā tathā pariśuddhyati karmaṇyaṃ  
 ca bhavati vibhūṣaṇālaṃkāravidhiṣu yathākāmatayā, evameva  
 bhavanto jinaputrā yathā yathā bodhisattvo-  
 ...peyālaṃ...yathākāmatayā ||

**WW**

punaraparaṃ bhavanto jinaputra bodhisattvena asyāṃ  
 prathamāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitena asyā eva prathamāyā  
 bodhisattvabhūmerākārapratilambhaniṣyandāḥ parimārgitavyāḥ  
 parigaveṣitavyāḥ paripraṣṭavyāḥ | buddhabodhisattvānāṃ kalyāṇa-  
 mitrāṇāṃ ca sakāśādatṛptena ca bhavitavyaṃ bhūmyaṅgapariniṣ-  
 pādanāya | evaṃ yāvaddaśamyā bodhisattvabhūmeraṅgapariniṣ-  
 pādanāya | tena bhūmipakṣapratipakṣakuśalena ca bhavitavyaṃ  
 bhūmisaṃvartavartakuśalena ca bhūmyākāraniṣyandakuśalena ca  
 bhūmipratilambhavibhāvanākuśalena ca bhūmyaṅgaparīśodhana-  
 kuśalena ca bhūmerbhūmisaṃkramaṇakuśalena ca bhūmibhūmi-  
 vyavasthānakuśalena ca bhūmibhūmiviśeṣajñānakuśalena ca bhūmi-  
 bhūmipratilambhāpratyudāvartyakuśalena ca sarvabodhisattva-  
 bhūmipariśodhanatayā tathāgatajñānabhūmyākramaṇakuśalena ca  
 bhavitavyaṃ | evaṃ bhūmyākārābhīnirhārakuśalasya hi bhavanto  
 jinaputrā bodhisattvasya prathamāyā bodhisattvabhūmer-  
 ucchalitasya niṣṭhānaṃ na saṃbhavati yāvaddaśabhūmibhūmy-  
 ākramaṇamiti | mārgādhiṣṭhānāgamena ca bhūmejñānālokena ca  
 buddhajñānālokaṃ prāpnoti | tadyathāpi nāma bhavanto jinaputrāḥ

kuśalaḥ sārthavāho mahāsārthaparikaṣaṇābhiprāyo mahānagara-  
manuprāpayitukāmaḥ ādāveva mārgaguṇāṃśca mārgavivarta-  
doṣāṃśca mārgasthānāntaraviśeṣāṃśca mārgasthānāntaravivarta-  
doṣāṃśca mārgakriyāpathyodanakāryatāṃ ca parimārgayati pari-  
gaveṣayate | sa yāvanmahānagarānuprāptaye kuśalo bhavaty-  
anuccalita eva prathamānmārgāntarasthānāt | sa evaṃ jñāna-  
vicāritayā buddhyā mahāpathyodanasamṛddhyā anupūrveṇa mahā-  
sārthena sārtham yāvanmahānagaramanuprāpnoti, na cāṭavīkānt-  
āradoṣaiḥ sārthasya vā ātmano vāsyopaghātaḥ saṃpadyate | evam-  
eva bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvaḥ kuśalo mahāsārthavāho yadā  
prathamāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito bhavati, tadā bhūmipakṣa-  
pratipakṣakuśalo bhavati, bhūmiśaṃvartavivartakuśalo bhavati,  
bhūmyākāraṇiṣyandakuśalo bhavati, bhūmipratilambhavibhāvan-  
ākuśalo bhavati, bhūmyaṅgaparīśodhanakuśalo bhavati, bhūmer-  
bhūmiśaṃkramaṇakuśalo bhavati, bhūmibhūmivyavasthānakuśalo  
bhavati, bhūmibhūmiviśeṣajñānakuśalo bhavati, bhūmibhūmiprati-  
lambhāpratyudāvartyakuśalo bhavati, sarvabodhisattvabhūmi-  
parīśodhanatayā tathāgatajñānabhūmyākramaṇakuśalaśca bhavati |  
tadā bodhisattvo mahāpuṇyasambhārapathyodanasusamgṛhito  
jñānasambhārasukṛtavīcayo mahāsattvasārthaparikaṣaṇābhiprāyaḥ  
sarvajñatāmahānagaramanuprāpayitukāmaḥ ādāveva bhūmimārga-  
guṇāṃśca bhūmimārgavivartadoṣāṃśca bhūmimārgasthānāntara-  
viśeṣāṃśca bhūmimārgasthānāntaravivartadoṣāṃśca mahāpuṇya-  
jñānasambhārapathyodanakriyākāryatāṃ ca parimārgate pari-  
gaveṣate buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ bodhisattvānāṃ kalyāṇamitrāṇāṃ  
ca sakāśāt | sa yāvatsarvajñatāmahānagarānuprāptikuśalo bhavaty-  
anuccalita eva prathamānmārgāntarasthānāt | sa evaṃ jñāna-  
vicāritayā buddhyā mahāpuṇyajñānasambhārapathyodanasam-  
ruddhayā mahāntam sattvasārtham yathāparipācitam saṃsāraṭavīkā-  
ntāradurgādatikramya yāvatsarvajñatāmahānagaramanuprāpayati  
| na saṃsāraṭavīkāntāradōṣaiḥ sattvasārthasya vā ātmano vā asy-  
opaghātaḥ saṃpadyate | tasmāttarhi bhavanto jinaputrā bodhi-  
sattvena aparikhinnena bhūmiparikarmaparikarmaviśeṣābhiyuktēna  
bhavitavyam | ayaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasya  
prathamāyāḥ pramuditāyā bodhisattvabhūmermukhapraveśaḥ  
samāsato nirdiśyate ||

yo'syāṃ pratiṣṭhito bodhisattvo bhūyastvena jambūdvīpeśvaro  
 bhavati mahaiśvaryādhipatyapratilabdho dharmānurakṣī kṛtī  
 prabhuh sattvān mahātyāgena saṃgrahītukuśalaḥ sattvānāṃ  
 mātsaryamalavinivṛttaye'paryanto mahātyāgārambhaiḥ | yacca kiṃ-  
 citkarmārabhate dānena vā priyavadyatayā vā arthakriyayā vā sam-  
 ānārthatayā vā, tatsarvamavirahitaṃ buddhamanasikārairdharma-  
 manasikāraiḥ saṃghamanasikārairbodhisattvamanasikārairbodhi-  
 sattvacaryāmanasikāraiḥ pāramitāmanasikārairbhūmimanasikārair-  
 balamanasikārairvaiśāradyanasikārairāveṇikabuddhadharma-  
 manasikārairyāvatsarvākāraropetasarvajñajñānamanasikaraiḥ |  
 kimiti ? sarvasattvānāmagryō bhaveyaṃ śreṣṭho jyeṣṭho varaḥ  
 pravara uttamo'nuttamo nāyako vināyakaḥ pariṇāyako yāvatsarva-  
 jñajñānapraṭisāraṇo bhaveyam iti | ākāṅkṣaṃśca tathārūpaṃ  
 vīryamārabhate yathārūpeṇa vīryārambheṇa sarvagṛhakalatra-  
 bhogānutsṛjya tathāgataśāsane pravrajati | pravrajitaśca san eka-  
 kṣaṇalavamuhūrtena samādhiśataṃ ca pratilabhate samāpadyate ca  
 | buddhaśataṃ ca paśyati, teṣāṃ cādhiṣṭhānaṃ saṃjñānīte | loka-  
 dhātuśataṃ ca kampayati | kṣetraśataṃ cākramati | lokadhātuśataṃ  
 cāvabhāsayati | sattvaśataṃ ca paripācayati | kalpaśataṃ ca tiṣṭhati |  
 kalpaśataṃ ca pūrvāntāparāntataḥ praviśati | dharmamukhaśataṃ  
 ca pravacinoti | kāyaśataṃ cādarśayati | kāyaṃ kāyaṃ ca bodhi-  
 sattvaśataparivāramādarśayati |

**YY**

tathā uttare praṇidhānabalikā bodhisattvāḥ praṇidhānaviśeṣikatayā  
 vikurvanti yeṣāṃ na sukarā saṃkhyā kurtuṃ kāyasya vā prabhāyā  
 vā ṛdvervā cakṣuṣo vā gocarasya vā svarasya vā caryāyā vā vyūhasya  
 vā adhiṣṭhānasya vā adhimuktervā abhisamskāraṇāṃ vā yāva-  
 devatāvadbhirapi kalpakotiṇiyutaśatasahasrairiti ||

pramuditā nāma prathamā bhūmiḥ ||

[Beginning of first bhūmī's final gathas]

1 pramuditā nāma prathamā bhūmiḥ |

upakramaḥ |

te śukladharmupacitāḥ kuśalopapetāḥ  
paryupāsītāḥ sugatamaitrakṛpānukūlāḥ |  
adhimuktyudāra kuśalāśaya śuddhabhāvā-  
ścittaṃ janenti atulaṃ jinajñānahetoḥ || 1 ||

sarvajñabuddhabalaśodhanavīryasthāmā  
jinadharmaniṣpattijagatparitrāyaṅārthāḥ |  
mahākṛpocayavartanadharmacakraṃ  
jinakṣetraśodhamupapadyati cittaśreṣṭham || 2 ||

tryadhvaikavīkṣaṇavibuddhananirvikalpā  
nānāvidhe jagati kālaviśodhanārtham |  
saṃkṣepasarvaguṇa eṣitu nāyakānām  
ākāśatulya samudeti udāracittam || 3 ||

prajñādhipatya kṛpapūrvamupāyayuktam  
adhimukti - āśaya - viśuddha - balāpramāṇam |  
āsaṅgatābhīmukhatā - aparapraṇeyaṃ  
samatopapeta - sugataṃ varacittajātam || 4 ||

sahajāticittaratanaṃ sugatātmajānām  
atīkrānta bālacari buddhacari hyupetaḥ |  
jātaḥ kule daśabalāna anodyapadyaḥ  
samatāṃ jine anugato niyatāgrabodhiḥ || 5 ||

ekasmi citta upapadyati bhūmilābho  
bhavate acalyu girirājasamāśayaśca |  
prāmodyapṛitibahulaśca prasādavāṃśca  
utsāhavegavipulaḥ sadudagrācittaḥ || 6 ||

saṃrambhahiṃsavigataśca akrodhanaśca  
 hrīgauravārjavataraśca susaṃvṛtaśca |  
 jagatāyaṇaṃ smarati apratimānājñānaṃ  
 prītiṃ janetyupagataspr̥hameta sthānaṃ || 7 ||

pañcā bhayā apagatāḥ sahabhūmilābho  
 ājivikā maraṇa kīrtyatha durgatiśca |  
 parṣadbhayaṃ ca vigataṃ tatha chambhitvaṃ  
 kiṃ kāraṇaṃ tatha hi ātmaniketu nāsti || 8 ||

te chambhitavavigatāḥ kṛpamaitrayuktāḥ  
 śraddhāsaḡauravahriyopagatā guṇādhyāḥ |  
 rātriṃdivaṃ kuśalapakṣa niṣevamāṇāḥ  
 satyārtha dharmaniratā na tu kāmabhogaīḥ || 9 ||

śrutadharmacintakuśalā aniketacittā  
 lābhādaśīcittagatā uta bodhicittāḥ |  
 jñānābhilāṣi balaśodhanabuddhadharmā  
 eṣanti pāramita varjitamāyaśāṭhyāḥ || 10 ||

yathāvādinastathakriyāḥ sthitasatyavākya  
 na tu dūṣaṇā jīnakule cari bodhiśikṣām |  
 lokakriyāya vigatā niratā jagārthaṃ  
 śuklairatṛpta bhūmayottarimārabhante || 11 ||

te eva dharmaniratā guṇārthayuktā  
 abhinirharanti prañidhiṃ jīnadarśanāya |  
 saddharmadhāraṇa upasaṃkramaṇā ṛṣiṇām  
 abhinirharanti prañidhiṃ varacārikāyām || 12 ||

paripākasattvapariśodhanabuddhakṣetraṃ  
 te cāsya kṣetra sphuṭikā jīnaaurasehi |  
 ekāśayā jīnasutehi amoghatāyāḥ  
 sarvatra bālapathi buddhiya hetumarthe || 13 ||

etāṃśca naikaprañidhīnabhinirharanti  
 te co anantavipulāya anantatāyai |



ākāśadhātusattvadharmatanirvṛtaṃ ca  
loko hyaniṣṭha jinamutpadi jñānabhūmī || 14 ||

cittasya no viṣayajñānapraveśaniṣṭhā  
yā vartani trividhaniṣṭha jagatyanantā |  
prañidhānaniṣṭhitu bhavenna mamaivarūpā  
yatha eta niṣṭha tatha carya samā labheyam || 15 ||

evaṃ sunirhṛtasumārdavasnigdhacittāḥ  
śraddheta buddhaguṇa sattva vilokayantaḥ |  
prītyāntulambhupagataḥ kṛpamaitratāṃ ca  
paritāyitavya maya sattva dukhārditāni || 16 ||

teṣārthi tyāga vividhaṃ puna ārabhante  
rājyaṃ varaṃ vividharatnahayān gajāṃśca |  
śirahastapādanayanā svakamātmamāṃsaṃ  
sarvaṃ tyajanti na ca dīnāmanā bhavanti || 17 ||

eṣanti śāstra vividhāna ca khedamenti |  
śāstrajña lokacaritānyanuvartayanti |  
lokajñātāmupagatā hriyatā dhṛtiṃ ca  
pūjyanti cāpratisamān gurugauraveṇa || 18 ||

eṣābhiyuktavidunā divarātri nityam  
uttapyate kuśala svarṇa yathaiva agnau |  
so cāpi eva parikarma daśāna bhūmī  
kṛtvā asaṅgatamupeti aviṣṭhihantā || 19 ||

yatha sārthavāha mahasārthahitāya yukto  
pucchitva mārgaguṇa kṣematamabhyupeti |  
emeva bhūmi prathamā sthita bodhisattvaḥ  
kṛtaniṣkramo daśabhibodhimupetyasaṅgaḥ || 20 ||

atra sthitā guṇadharā nṛpatī bhavanti  
dharmānuśāsaka ahiṃsaka maitrayuktāḥ |  
jambudhvajaṃ sakalarājya praśāsayantaḥ  
sthāpentī tyāgi janatāṃ varabuddhajñāne || 21 ||

ākāṅkṣamāṇa vṛṣabhā vijahitva rājyaṃ  
 jinaśāsane upagatāścari ārabhantaḥ |  
 labdhvā samādhiśata buddhaśataṃ ca paśyī  
 kampaṅti kṣetraśatu bhāsi atikramanti || 22 ||

śodhyanti sattvaśata dharmamukhān viśanti  
 praviśanti kalpaśatakāyaśataṃ nidarśī |  
 pūrṇaṃ śataṃ jinasutāna nidarśayanti  
 bhūyottari praṇidhiśreṣṭhabalāpramāṇāḥ || 23 ||

ityeṣā prathamā bhūmirnidiṣṭā sugatātmaajāḥ |  
 sarvalokahitaiṣīṇāṃ bodhisattvānanutamā || 24 ||

[End of first bhūmi's final gathas]

[Beginning of second bhūmī's initial gathas]

2 vimalā nāma dvitīyā bhūmiḥ ।

upakramagāthāḥ ।

śrutvaitaduttamaṃ sthānaṃ bhūmyāḥ śreṣṭhaṃ manoramam ।  
prasannamanasaṃkalpahaṣṭitaḥ sugatātmajāḥ ॥ 1 ॥

abhyutthitā āsanebhya abhyudgama khagapathe ।  
abhyokiranti kusumaiḥ sādhviti vyāharī girā ॥ 2 ॥

sādhu sādhu mahāprājña vajragarbha viśārada ।  
yannirdiṣṭā tvayā bhūmi bodhisattvāna yā carī ॥ 3 ॥

parṣaddhi viprasannā tu vimukticandraḥ pṛcchati ।  
uttariṃ kīrtiyā bhūmiṃ dvitīyāṃ sugatātmajāḥ ॥ 4 ॥

kīḍṛsā manasaṃkalpā dvitīyāmbhilakṣataḥ ।  
pravyāhara mahāprājña śrotukāmā jinātmajāḥ ॥ 5 ॥

[End of second bhūmī's initial gathas]

2 vimalā nāma dvitīyā bhūmiḥ |

**A**

vajragarbho bodhisattva āha—yo’yaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvaḥ prathamāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau superikarmakṛto dvitīyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmimabhilaṣati, tasya daśa cittāśayāḥ pravartante | katame daśa? yaduta ṛjvāśayatā ca mṛdvāśayatā ca karmaṇyāśayatā ca damāśayatā ca śamāśayatā ca kalyāṇāśayatā ca asaṃsṛṣṭāśayatā ca anapekṣāśayatā ca udārāśayatā ca mähātmyāśayatā ca | ime daśa cittāśayāḥ pravartante | tato dvitīyāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau vimalāyāṃ pratiṣṭhito bhavati ||

**B**

tatra bhavanto jinaputrā vimalāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito bodhisattvaḥ prakṛtyaiva daśabhiḥ kuśalaiḥ karmaṣaṅgairiḥ samanvāgato bhavati | katamairdaśabhiḥ? yaduta prāṇātipātātpativirato bhavati | nihataḍaṇḍo nihataśastro nihatavairo lajjāvān dayāpannaḥ sarvaprāṇibhūteṣu hitasukhānukampī maitracittaḥ | sa saṃkalpāpī prāṇivihimsāṃ na karoti, kaḥ punarvādaḥ parasattveṣu sattva-saṃjñīnaḥ saṃcintyaudārikakāyaviheṭhanayā ||

**C**

adattādānātpativirataḥ khalu punarbhavati svabhogasaṃtuṣṭaḥ parabhogānabhilāṣī anukampakaḥ | sa paraparigṛhītebhyo vastubhyaḥ paraparigṛhītasamjñī steyacittamupasthāpya antaśaṣṭṛṇaparṇamapi nādattamādātā bhavati, kaḥ punarvādo’nyebhyo jīvitopakaraṇebhyaḥ ||

**D**

kāmamithyācārātpativirataḥ khalu punarbhavati svadārasaṃtuṣṭaḥ paradārānabhilāṣī | sa paraparigṛhītāsu strīṣu parabhāryāsu gotradhvajadharmarakṣitāsu abhidhyāmapi notpādayati, kaḥ punarvādo dvīndriyasamāpatyā vā anaṅgavijñāptyā vā ||

**E**

anṛtavacanātpativirataḥ khalu punarbhavati satyavādī bhūtavādī kālavādī, yathāvādī tathākārī | so’ntaśaḥ svapnāntaragato’pi vini-dhāya dṛṣṭiṃ kṣāntiṃ ruciṃ matiṃ prekṣāṃ viśaṃvādanābhiprāyo nānṛtāṃ vācaṃ niścārayati, kaḥ punarvādaḥ samanvāhṛtya |

**F**

piśunavacanātpativirataḥ khalu punarbhavati abhedāvihēṭh-

āpratipannaḥ sattvānām | sa netaḥ śrutvā amutrākhyātā bhavatyam-  
iṣāṃ bhedāya | na amutaḥ śrutvā ihākhyātā bhavatyēṣāṃ bhedāya |  
na saṃhitān bhinatti, na bhinnānāmanupradānaṃ karoti | na  
vyagrārāmo bhavati na vyagrarato na vyagrakaraṇīm vācaṃ bhāṣate  
sadbhūtāmasadbhūtām vā ||

**G**

paruṣavacanātpativirataḥ khalu punarbhavati | sa yeyaṃ vāgadeśā  
karkaśā parakaṭukā parābhisaṃjananī anvakṣānvakṣapragbhārā  
grāmyā pārthagjanakī anelā akarṇasukhā krodharoṣanīścāritā  
hṛdayaparidahānī manaḥsaṃtāpakarī apriyā amanaāpā amanojñā  
svasaṃtānaparasaṃtānavināśinī | tathārūpām vācaṃ prahāya  
yeyaṃ vāk snigdā mṛdvī manojñā madhurā priyakaraṇī mana-  
āpakaraṇī hitakaraṇī nelā karṇasukhā hṛdayaṃgamā premaṇiyā  
paurī varṇavispaṣṭā vijñeyā śravaṇiyā niśritā bahujaneṣṭā bahujana-  
kāntā bahujanapriyā bahujanamanaāpā vijñāpannā sarvasattvahita-  
sukhāvahā samāhitā manautplāvanakarī manaḥprahlādanakarī sva-  
saṃtānaparasaṃtānaprasādanakarī tathārūpām vācaṃ niścārayati ||

**H**

saṃbhinnapralāpātpativirataḥ khalu punarbhavati suparihārya-  
vacanaḥ kālavādī bhūtavādī arthavādī dharmavādī nyāyavādī  
vinayavādī | sa nidānavatīṃ vācaṃ bhāṣate kālena sāvadānam | sa  
cāntāsa itihāsapūrvakamapi vacanaṃ parihārya pariharati, kaḥ  
punarvādo vāgvikṣepeṇa ||

**I**

anabhidhyāluḥ khalu punarbhavati parasveṣu parakāmeṣu para-  
bhogeṣu paravittopakaraṇeṣu | paraparigṛhīteṣu spṛhāmapi n-  
otpādayati, kimiti yatpareṣāṃ tannāma syāditi nābhidhyām-  
utpādayati, na prārthayate na praṇidadhāti, na lobhacittam-  
utpādayati ||

**J**

avyāpannacittaḥ khalu punarbhavati | sarvasattveṣu maitracitto  
hitacitto dayācittaḥ sukhacittaḥ snigdhaḥ sarvajaganugraha-  
cittaḥ sarvabhūtahitānukampācittaḥ | sa yānīmāni krodhopanāha-  
khilamalavyāpādaparidāhasaṃdhukṣitapratighādyāni tāni prahāya  
yānīmāni hitopasaṃhitāni maitryupasaṃhitāni sarvasattvahita-  
sukhāya vitarkitavicāritāni, tānyanuvitarkayitā bhavati ||

**K**

samyagdr̥ṣṭiḥ khalu punarbhavati samyakpathagataḥ kautuka-  
maṅgalanānāprakāraakuśīladr̥ṣṭivigataḥ juddr̥ṣṭiraśaṭho'māyāvī  
buddhadharmasamghaniyatāsayaḥ | sa imān daśa kuśalān  
karmapathān satatasamitamanurakṣan

**L**

evaṃ cittāśayamabhinirharati - yā kācitsattvānāmapāyadurgati-  
vinipātaprajñaptiḥ sarvā sā eṣāṃ daśānāmakuśalānāṃ karma-  
pathānāṃ samādānahetoḥ | hanta ahamātmanaiva samyakprati-  
pattisthitaḥ parān samyakpratipattau sthāpayiṣyāmi | tatkasya  
hetoḥ? asthānametadanavakāśo yadātmā vipratipattisthitaḥ parān  
samyakpratipattau sthāpayet, naitasthānaṃ vidyata iti |

**M**

sa evaṃ pravacinoti - eṣāṃ daśānāṃ akuśalānāṃ karmapathānāṃ  
samādānahetornirayatiryagyonyamalokagatayaḥ prajñāyante |  
punaḥ kuśalānāṃ karmapathānāṃ samādānahetormanuṣy-  
opapattimādiṃ kṛtvā yāvadbhavāgramityupapattayaḥ prajñāyante |  
tata uttamra ta eva daśa kuśalāḥ karmapathāṃ prajñākāreṇa pari-  
bhāvyamānāḥ prādeśikacittatayā traidhātukotrastamānasatayā  
mahākaruṇāvikalatayā parataḥ śravaṇānugamena ghoṣānugamena  
ca śrāvakayānaṃ saṃvartayanti |

**N**

tata uttarataraṃ pariśodhitā aparapraṇeyatayā svayaṃbhūtv-  
ānukūlatayā svayamabhisam̐bodhanatayā parato'parimārgaṇatayā  
mahākaruṇopāyavikalatayā gambhīredaṃpratyayānubodhanena  
pratyekabuddhayānaṃ saṃvartayati |

**O**

tata uttarataraṃ pariśodhitāvīpulāpramāṇatayā mahākaruṇopetatayā  
upāyakauśalasam̐gr̥hitatayā saṃbaddhamahāprañidhānatayā sarva-  
sattvāparityāgatayā buddhajñānavīpuladhyālanbanatayā bodhi-  
sattvabhūmipariśuddhyai pāramitāpariśuddhyai caryāvīpulatvāya  
saṃvartante |

**P**

tata uttarataraṃ pariśodhitāḥ sarvākārapariśodhitatvādyāvaddaśa-  
balabalatvāya sarvabuddhadharmāḥ samudāgamāya saṃvartante |  
tasmāt tarhyasmābhiḥ samābhinirhāre sarvākārapariśodhanābhi-  
nirhāra eva yogaḥ karaṇīyaḥ ||

**Q**

sa bhūyasyā mātrayā evaṃ pratisaṃśīkṣate - ime khalu punardaśā-  
kuśalāḥ karmapathā adhimātratvādāsevītā bhāvitā bahulikṛtā nir-  
ayaheturmadhyatvāt tiryagyoniheturmṛduttvādyamalokahetuḥ |  
tatra prāṇātipāto nirayamupanayati tiryagyonimupanayati, yama-  
lokamupanayati | atha cetpunarmanuṣyeṣu upapadyate, dvau  
vipākāvabhinirvartayati alpāyuskatām ca bahuglānyatām ca |  
adattādanam...peyālam...paritabhogātām ca sādharmaṇabhogātām ca |  
kāmamithyācāro...anājāneyaparivāratām ca sasapatnadāratām ca |  
mṛṣāvādo...abhyākhyānabahulatām ca parairviśaṃvādanatām ca |  
pāisunyaṃ...bhinnaparivāratām ca hīnāparivāratām ca | pārūṣyaṃ-  
...amanāpaśravaṇatām ca kalahavacanātām ca | saṃbhinnāpralāpo-  
...anādeyavacanātām ca anīścitapratibhānatām ca | abhidhyā-  
...asaṃtuṣṭitām ca mahecchatām ca | vyāpādo...ahitaiṣitām ca  
parotpīḍanatām ca | mityādṛṣṭiḥ...kudṛṣṭipatitaśca bhavati śaṭhaśca  
māyāvī | evaṃ khalu mahato'parimāṇasya duḥkḥaskandhasya ime  
daśākuśalāḥ karmapathāḥ samudāgamāya saṃvartante |

**R**

hanta vyaṃ imān daśākuśalān karmapathān vivarjya dharmārāma-  
ratiratā viharāma |

**S**

sa imān daśākuśalān karmapathān prahāya daśākuśalakarmapatha-  
pratiṣṭhitāḥ parāṃsteṣveva pratiṣṭhāpayati |

**T**

sa bhūyasyā mātrayā sarvasattvānāmantike hitacittatāmutpādayati |  
sukhacittatām maitracittatām kṛpācittatām dayācittatāmanugraha-  
cittatāmāraṅgācittatām samacittatāmacāryacittatām śāstrīcittatām-  
utpādayati |

**U**

tasyaivaṃ bhavati - kudṛṣṭipatitā bateme sattvā viśamamatayo  
viśamāśayā utpathagahanacāriṇaḥ | teśmābhīrḥbhūtapathasamyag-  
dṛṣṭimārgayāthātathye pratiṣṭhāpayitavyāḥ |

**V**

bhinnavigṛhītacittavivādupapannā bateme sattvāḥ satatasamitam  
krodhohanāhasaṃdhuṅṅitāḥ | teśmābhiranuttare mahāmaity-  
upasaṃhāre pratiṣṭhāpayitavyāḥ |

**W**

atṛptā bateme sattvāḥ paravittābhilāṣiṇo viṣamājīvānucaritāḥ |  
teśmābhiḥ pariśuddhakāyavānmanaskarmāntājīvikāyāṃ prati-  
ṣṭhāpayitavyāḥ |

**X**

rāgadveṣamohatrinidānānugatā bateme sattvā vividhakleśāgni-  
jvālābhiḥsatatasamitaṃ pradīptāḥ | na ca tato'tyantaniḥsaraṇopāyaṃ  
parimārgayanti | teśmābhiḥ sarvakleśaprasāme nirupadrave nirvāṇe  
pratiṣṭhāpayitavyāḥ |

**Y**

mahāmohatamastimirapaṭalāvidyāndhakārāvṛtā bateme sattvā mah-  
āndhakāragahanānupraviṣṭāḥ prajñālokasudūrībhūtā mahāndha-  
kārapraskannāḥ kudṛṣṭīkāntārasamavasṛtāḥ | teṣāmasmābhir-  
anāvaraṇaṃ prajñācakṣurviśodhayitavyaṃ yathā sarvadharmā-  
yāthātathyāparapraṇayatāṃ pratilapsyante |

**Z**

mahāsaṃsārāṭavīkāntāramārgaprapannā bateme sattvā ayoga-  
kṣemiṇo' nāśvāsaprāptā mahāprapātapatitā nirayatiryagyoniyam-  
alokagatiprapātābhīmukhāḥ kudṛṣṭiviṣamajālānuparyavanaddhā  
mohagahanasaṃchannā mithyāmārgavipathaprayatā jātyandhī-  
bhūtāḥ pariṇāyakavikalā aniḥsaraṇe niḥsaraṇasaṃjñīno namucipāśa-  
baddhā viśayataskaropagrhitāḥ kuśalapariṇāyakavirahitā mārāśaya-  
gahanānupraviṣṭā buddhāśayadūrībhūtāḥ | teśmābhirevaṃvidhāt  
saṃsārāṭavīkāntāradurgāduttārayitavyā abhayapure ca sarvajñatā-  
nagare nirupadrave nirupatāpe pratiṣṭhāpayitavyāḥ |

**AA**

mahaughormyāmathairnimagnā bateme sattvāḥ kāmabhavāvidyā-  
drṣṭyoghasamavasṛṣṭāḥ saṃsārasrotonuvāhinastṛṣṇānadīprapannā  
mahāvegagrastā avilokanasamarthāḥ kāmavyāpādavihiṃsāvītarka-  
pratānānucaritāḥ satkāyadrṣṭyudakarākṣasagrhitāḥ kāmagan-  
āvartānupraviṣṭā nandīrāgamadhyasaṃchannā asmimānasthal-  
otsannā dauḥśīlyaviṣamācārāntaḥpuṭībhūtāḥ ṣaḍāyatanagrāma-  
bhayatīramanuccalitāḥ kuśalasaṃtārakavirahitā anāthā aparāyaṇā  
aśaraṇāḥ | teśmābhirmahākaraṇākuśalamūlabalenoddhṛtya nirupa-  
drave'rajasi kṣeme śive'bhaye sarvabhayatrāsāpagate sarvajñatā-  
ratnadvīpe pratiṣṭhāpayitavyāḥ |

**BB**

ruddhā bateme sattvā bahuduḥkhadaurmanasyopāyāsabahule-



‘nunayapratighapriyāprijayavinibandhane saśokaparidevānucarite  
tṛṣṇānigaḍabandhane māyāśāṭhyāvidyāgahanasaṃchanne trai-  
dhātukacārake | teśmābhiḥ sarvatraidhātukaviveke sarvaduḥkh-  
opaśame’nāvaraṇanirvāṇe pratiṣṭhāpayitavyāḥ |

**CC**

ātmātmīyābhiniṣṭā bateme sattvāḥ skandhālayānuccalitās-  
caturviparyāsānuprayātāḥ ṣaḍāyatanaśūnyagrāmasaṃnīśritās-  
caturmahābhūtoragābhidrūtāḥ skandhavadhakataskarābhīghātītā  
aparimānaduḥkhapratisaṃvedinaḥ | teśmābhiḥ paramasukhe sarva-  
niketavigame pratiṣṭhāpayitavyā yaduta sarvāvaraṇaprahāṇanirvāṇe  
|

**DD**

hīnalīnadīnādhimuktā bateme sattvā agryasarvajñajñānacittavikalāḥ  
sati niḥsaraṇe mahāyāne śrāvakaḥpratyekabuddhayanāvatīrṇam-  
atayaḥ | teśmābhirudārabuddhadharmamativipulādhyālabhena  
sarvajñajñānalocanataḥ anuttare mahāyāne pratiṣṭhāpayitavyāḥ ||

iti hi bhavanto jinaputrā evaṃ śīlabalādhānānugatasya bodhi-  
sattvasya kṛpākaruṇāmaitryabhinirhārakuśalasya sarvasattvān-  
avadhiṣṭakalyāṇamitrasyaḥparityaktasarvasattvasya kriyākriyābhi-  
nirhārakuśalasya

**EE**

vimalāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau pratiṣṭhitasya bahavo buddhā  
ābhāsabhāgacchānti...audārika...peyālaṃ...pariṇāmayati | tāṃśca  
tathāgatānarhataḥ samyaksambuddhān paryupāsate, teṣāṃ ca  
sakāśebhyo gauraveṇemāneva daśa kuśalān karmapathān prati-  
grhṇāti, yathāpratigrhītāṃśca nāntarā praṇāśayati | so’nekān kalpān-  
anekāni kalpaśatāni anekāni kalpasahasrāṇi anekāni kalpaśata-  
sahasrāṇi anekāni kalpaniyutaśatasahasrāṇi anekakalpakoṭīranekāni-  
kalpakoṭīśatāni anekāni kalpakoṭīśatasahasrāṇi anekāni kalpakoṭi-  
niyutaśatasahasrāṇi mātsaryadauḥśīlyamalāpanītatayā tyāgāśīla-  
viśuddhau samudāgacchati | tadyathāpi nāma bhavanto jinaputr-  
āstadeva jātarūpaṃ kāsīsaprakṣiptaṃ bhūyasyā mātrayā sarvamal-  
āpagataṃ bhavati, evameva bhavanto jinaputrāstadeva jātarūpaṃ  
kāsīsaprakṣiptaṃ bhūyasyā mātrayā sarvamalāpagataṃ bhavati,  
evameva bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvo’syāṃ vimalāyāṃ bodhi-  
sattvabhūmau sthito’nekān kalpān yāvadanekāni kalpakoṭīniyuta-

śatasahasrāṇi mātsaryadauḥśīlyamalāpanītatayā tyāgaśīlaviśudvau  
 samudāgacchati | tasya caturbhyaḥ saṅgrahavastubhyaḥ priya-  
 vadyatā atiriktatamā bhavati | daśabhyaḥ pāramitābhyaḥ śīla-  
 pāramitā atiriktatamā bhavati | na ca pariśeṣāsu na samudāgacchati  
 yathābalaṃ yathābhajamānam ||

iyam bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasya vimalā nāma dvitīyā  
 bodhisattvabhūmiḥ samāsanirdeśataḥ, yasyām pratiṣṭhito bodhi-  
 sattvo bhūyastvena rājā bhavati cakravartī caturdvīpādhipatidharm-  
 ādhipatyapratilabdhaḥ saptaratnasamanvāgataḥ kṛtī prabhuḥ  
 sattvānām dauḥśīlyamalavinivartanāya kuśalaḥ sattvān daśasu  
 kuśaleṣu karmapathēsu pratiṣṭhāpayitum | yacca kiṃcit karm-  
 ārabhate...peyālam ||

vimalā nāma dvitīyā bhūmiḥ ||

[Beginning of 2<sup>nd</sup> bhūmī's final gathas]

upasaṃhāragāthāḥ |

te mārḍavārjavamṛdūkarmaṇīyacittāḥ  
kalyāṇaāsāya damāśayatābhyupetāḥ |  
saṃsargapekṣavigatāśca udārabuddhi  
māhātmya āśayavid dvitīyākramanti || 6 ||

atra sthitā guṇadharāḥ kuśalopapetāḥ  
prāṇātipātavigatā avihimsacittāḥ |  
adattadānapagatāḥ paradāratām ca  
satyānvitā apīśunaḥ puruṣapradhānāḥ || 7 ||

parabhogabhidyavigatā vidu maitracittāḥ  
samyakpathe upagatā aśaḥhajñakāśca |  
nirmāṇakāyagrahaṇāśca supeśalāśca  
rakṣanti śāstusaraṇaṃ sada apramattāḥ || 8 ||

duḥkhāni yāni niraye tatha tiryagyonau  
yamaśāsane jvalitaāśrayanīyupetāḥ |  
sarve ti pāpapatitākṣalāḥ prabhonti  
hantā vivarjīya upemahi satyadharmam || 9 ||

āḍau ca kṛtva manujānupapattimiṣṭām  
yāvadbhavāgramaraṇāśayadhyānu śikṣām |  
pratyekayānamatha śrāvakabuddhayānaṃ  
sarve ito daśabhi śuklapathaiḥ prabhūtam || 10 ||

evaṃ viditva satataṃ vidu apramattāḥ  
śīleṣu saṃsthita parānapi sthāpayanti |  
bhūyottare karuṇaāsāyatābhyupetāḥ  
sattvān viditva dukhitān kṛpa saṃjanenti || 11 ||

hanto vidṛṣṭipatitā imi bālabuddhī  
krodhopanāhadrutacitta vivādaprāptāḥ |

satataṃ atrpta viṣaye bhuyu prārthayanti  
trinidāna sattva parimocayitavya ete || 12 ||

mahaandhakāratamasāvṛta mohachannāḥ  
kāntāramārgapatitā mahadṛṣṭijāle |  
saṃsārapañjaragatā ripu dharṣayanti  
mokṣāmyahaṃ namucipañjaramadhyaprāptān || 13 ||

kleśormibhahriyata oghacaturnimagnā  
traidhātuke dukhaśataiḥ paripīḍyamānāḥ |  
skandhālayābhyupagatā vṛtaātmasaṃjñā  
teṣārthi yujyami ahaṃ dukhamocanārtham || 14 ||

avasṛjya śreṣṭhapravaraṃ ima buddhajñānaṃ  
sati eva niḥsaraṇi hīnamatiṃ janenti |  
sthāpemi tān vimalajñāni tathāgatānāṃ  
vīryārabhanti atulaṃ vidu bodhihetoḥ || 15 ||

atra sthitā guṇasātopacitā maharṣi  
paśyanti naikasugatānapi pūjayanti |  
teṣāṃ śubhaṃ bhuyu uttapyati kalpakotyaṃ  
kāśisakāñcanavaraṃ ca yathā nikṣiptam || 16 ||

atra sthitā jinasutā nṛpacakravarti  
bhūtvā praṇenti daśabhiḥ kuśalebhi sattvān |  
yaccaiva saṃci śubhasaṃcaya saṃcinanti  
trātā bhavema jagato daśabhirbalāḍhyaiḥ || 17 ||

ākāṅkṣamāṇa vijahitva ca rajabhogān  
pravrajya śāsanavare upagamyā dhīrāḥ |  
vīryānvitā labhiya śreṣṭhavaṃsaṃ samādhiṃ  
buddhā sahasra paripūrṇa kṣeṇe dṛśanti || 18 ||

evaṃvidhā gaṇanayā bhuyu anya nekā  
ādarśayanti vṛṣabhī sthita atra bhūmau |  
ata uttari praṇidhijñānavarābhyupetā  
naikā vikurvitavidhau vinayanti sattvān || 19 ||

ityeṣā dvitīyā bhūmīrṇirdiṣṭā sugatātmajāḥ ।  
sarvalokahitaiṣiṅṅāṃ bodhisattvānanuttamā ॥ 20 ॥

[End of 2<sup>nd</sup> bhūmī's final gathas]



[Beginning of third bhūmī's initial gathas]

3 prabhākārī nāma tṛtīyā bhūmīḥ ।

upakramagāthāḥ ।

evaṃ śruṇitva caribhūmimuttamāṃ  
bodhisattvaviṣaye acintiyāṃ ।  
harṣita jinasutāḥ sagauravāḥ  
puṣpamegha nabhataḥ pramuñciṣuḥ ॥ 1 ॥

sādhu sādhu girisārasākaya (?)  
deśito viduna śīlasaṃvaraḥ ।  
sarvasattvakaruṇāya āśayo  
bhūmīśreṣṭha dvitīyāya gocaraḥ ॥ 2 ॥

bhūtatattva vitathāmananyathā  
bodhisattvacaraṇaṃ manoramam ।  
sarvalokahitaśaukhyacintanā  
deśitaṃ tu paramaprabhāsvaram ॥ 3 ॥

bhūyu bhūyu naradevapūjitāṃ  
bhūmīśreṣṭha tṛtīyāmudāhara ।  
dharmajñānakriyamukti sūcaya  
yādṛśo'nubhava tādṛ(śo) gocaraḥ ॥ 4 ॥

dānaśīlacaraṇaṃ maharṣiṇāṃ  
kṣāntivīryaśamaprajñūpāyatām ।  
maitraśreṣṭha karuṇāya mārgaṇaṃ  
bhāṣadhvaṃ jinacarīviśodhanam ॥ 5 ॥

vimukticandra uvāca vajragarbhaviśāradam ।  
tṛtīyā saṃkramantānāmāśayaṃ bhaṇa sūraṇa ॥ 6 ॥

[End of third bhūmī's initial gathas]

3 prabhākārī nāma tṛtīyā bhūmiḥ |

**A**

vajragarbho bodhisattva āha - yo'yaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvo dvitīyāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau supariśodhitādhyāsayastṛtīyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmimākramati, sa daśabhiścittāsayamanaskārairākramati | katamairdaśabhiḥ ? yaduta śuddhacittāsayamanaskāreṇa ca sthiracittāsayamanaskāreṇa ca nirviccittāsayamanaskāreṇa ca avirāgacittāsayamanaskāreṇa ca avinivartacittāsayamanaskāreṇa ca dṛḍhacittāsayamanaskāreṇa ca uttaptacittāsayamanaskāreṇa ca atṛptacittāsayamanaskāreṇa ca udāracittāsayamanaskāreṇa ca mātmyacittāsayamanaskāreṇa ca | ebhirdaśabhiścittāsayamanaskārairākramati |

**B**

sa khalu punarbhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvastṛtīyāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito'nityatāṃ ca sarvasaṃskāragatasya yathābhūtaṃ pratyavekṣate, duḥkhatāṃ ca aśubhatāṃ ca anāśvāsikatāṃ ca vipralopatāṃ ca acirasthīkatāṃ ca kṣaṇikotpādanīrodhatāṃ ca pūrvantāsaṃbhavatāṃ ca aparāntāsaṃkrāntitāṃ ca pratyutpannāvya-vasthitatāṃ ca sarvasaṃskāragatasya pratyavekṣate |

**C**

sa evaṃbhūtaṃ sarvasaṃskāragataṃ saṃpaśyannanabhisaraṃ nirākrandaṃ saśokaṃ saporidevaṃ sopāyāsaṃ priyāpriyavīnibaddha duḥkhadaurmanasyopāyāsābahulamasamnicayabhūtaṃ rāga-dveṣa-mohāgnīsaṃpradīptamanekavyādhivivardhitāṃ ca ātma-bhāvaṃ saṃpaśyan

**D**

bhūyasyā mātrayā sarvasaṃskārebhyaścittamuccālayati, tathāgatajñāne ca saṃpreśayati | sa tathāgatajñānasyācintyatāṃ ca samanupaśyati, atulyatāṃ ca aprameyatāṃ ca durāsadatāṃ ca asaṃsprṣṭatāṃ ca nirupadravatāṃ ca nirupāyāsātāṃ ca abhayapuragamanīyatāṃ ca apunarāvṛttitāṃ ca bahujanaparitrāṇatāṃ ca samanupaśyati |

**E**

sa evamapramāṇatāṃ ca tathāgatajñānasya samanupaśyan evaṃ bahūpadravatāṃ ca sarvasaṃskāragatasya vyupaparīkṣamāṇo bhūyasyā mātrayā sattvānāmantike daśa cittāsayānupasthāpayati |



katamān daśa? yaduta anāthātrāṇāpratiśaraṇacittāśayatām ca nitya-  
daridrapratiśaraṇacittāśayatām ca rāgadveṣamohāgnisaṃpradīpta-  
pratiśaraṇacittāśayatām ca bhavacārakāvaruddhapratiśaraṇa-  
cittāśayatām ca satatasamitaklaśagahenāvṛtaprasuptapraśaraṇa-  
cittāśayatām ca vilokanasamarthapraśaraṇacittāśayatām ca kuśala-  
dharmacchandarahitapraśaraṇacittāśayatām ca buddhadharma-  
pramuṣitapraśaraṇacittāśayatām ca saṃsārasrotonuvāhipra-  
śaraṇacittāśayatām ca mokṣopāyapraṇaṣṭapraśaraṇacittāśayatām ca  
| imān daśa cittāśayanupasthāpayati ||

**F**

sa evaṃ bahūpadravaṃ sattvadhātuṃ samanupaśyan evaṃ vīryam-  
ārabhate - mayaivaite sattvāḥ paritrātavyāḥ parimocayitavyāḥ pari-  
toṣayitavyāḥ saṃropayitavyā vinetavyāḥ parinirvāpayitavyā iti |

**G**

sa evaṃ nirvidanugataśca sarvasaṃskāragatyā upekṣānugataśca  
sarvasattveṣu anuśaṃsānugataśca sarvajñajñāne tathāgatajñāna-  
pratiśaraṇaḥ sarvasattvapariṭrāṇyābhiyuktaḥ evaṃ vyupaparīkṣate  
- katamena khalu upāyamārgeṇa śakyā ime sattvā evaṃ bahuduḥ-  
khopakleśaprapatitā abhyuddhartum, atyantasukhe ca nirvāṇe prati-  
ṣṭhāpayitum, sarvadharmāṇiḥsaṃśayatām cānuprāpayitumiti?

**H**

tasya bodhisattvasyaivaṃ bhavati - nānyatra anāvaraṇavimokṣa-  
jñānasthānāt | tacca anāvaraṇajñānavimokṣasthānam nānyatra sarva-  
dharmayathāvadavabodhāt | sa ca sarvadharmayathāvadavabodho  
nānyatra apracārānutpādacāriṇyāḥ prajñāyāḥ | sa ca prajñāloko  
nānyatra dhyānakauśalyaviniścayabuddhipratyavekṣaṇāt | tacca  
dhyānakauśalyaviniścayabuddhipratyavekṣaṇam nānyatra śrūta-  
kauśalyāditi ||

**I**

sa evaṃ pratyavekṣitajñāno bhūyasyā mātrayā saddharmaparyeṣaṇ-  
ābhiyukto viharati | rātridivaṃ dharmāśravaṇārthiko dharmakām-  
āṭṛptāpratiprasabdho buddhardharmaparyeṣṭihetoḥ | dharmārāmo  
dharmarato dharmapraśaraṇo dharmanimno dharmapraṇaṇo  
dharmaprāgbhāro dharmaparāyaṇo dharmalayano dharmatrāṇo  
dharmānudharmacārī |

**J**

sa evaṃ buddhadharmaparyeṣaṇābhiyukto nāsti tatkiṃcid dravya-

vittajātaṃ vā dhanadhānyakośakoṣṭhāgārajātaṃ vā hiranyasuvarṇa-  
 maṇimuktāvajravaiḍūryaśaṅkhaśilāpravālaajarūparajatajātaṃ vā  
 yāvatsarvāṅgapratyaṅgaparityāgo vā yanna parityajati tayā dharmā-  
 kāmatayā | na ca tasmādduṣkarasaṃjñī bhavati anyatra tasminneva  
 dharmabhāṅgapudgale duṣkarasaṃjñī bhavati yo'syaikadharma-  
 padamapi deśayati | sa dharmahetornāsti tatkiṃcidupātaṃ bāhyaṃ  
 vastu yanna parityajati | nāsti tatkiṃcidādhyātmikaṃ vastu yanna  
 parityajati | nāsti tatkiṃcidguruparicaryopasthānaṃ yannopādatte |  
 nāsti sā kācid mānābhīmānotsarganirmāṇopacāratā yāṃ nopādatte |  
 nāsti sā kācītkāyikī pīḍā yāṃ nopādatte | sa citro bhavatyāśruta-  
 dharmapada śravaṇena, na tveva trisāhasramahāsāhasralokadhātu-  
 pratimena ratnarāśīpratīlambhena | sa citro bhavatyekasubhāṣita-  
 gāthāśravaṇena na tveva cakravartirājyapratīlambhena | sa citro  
 bhavatyāśrutadharmapadaśravaṇena bodhisattvacaryāpari-  
 śodhanena na tveva śakratvabrahmatvapratīlambhena bahukalpa-  
 śatasahasraparyavasānena | sacedidaṃ kaścidevaṃ brūyāt – evam-  
 ahaṃ tulyamidaṃ dharmapadaṃ samyaksambuddhohanītaṃ bodhi-  
 sattvacaryāpariśodhanaṃ saṃśrāvayeyam, sacettvaṃ mahatyām-  
 agnikhadāyāṃ saṃprajalitāyāmekajvālībhūtāyāmātmānaṃ pra-  
 pātayeḥ, mahāntaṃ ca duḥkhavedanopakramaṃ svaśarīreṇ-  
 opādadyā iti | tasyaivaṃ bhavati - utsahe' hamekasyāpi dharmā-  
 padasya samyaksambuddhohanītasya bodhisattvacaryāpari-  
 śodhanasyārthāya trisāhasramahāsāhasralokadhātāvagniparipūrṇe  
 brahmalokādātmānamutsraṣṭum, kiṃ punaḥ prakṛtāyāṃ agni-  
 khadāyāṃ | api tu khalu punaḥ sarvairnirayāpāyaduḥkhasaṃvāsair-  
 apyasmābhirbuddhadharmāḥ paryeṣitavyāḥ, kiṃ punarmanuṣya-  
 duḥkhasaṃvāsairiti | sa evaṃrūpeṇa vīryārambheṇa dharmān  
 paryeṣate | yathāśruteṣu dharmeṣu ca yoniśaḥ pratyavakṣeṇajātīyo  
 bhavati |

**K**

tāṃśca dharmān śrutvā svacittanidhyaptyā eko rahogata evaṃ  
 mīmāṃsate - dharmānudharmapratipattyā ime buddhadharmā anu-  
 gantavyā na kevalaṃ vākkarmapariśuddhyeti | so'syāṃ prabhā-  
 karyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito bodhisattvo dharmānudharma-  
 pratipattihetorviviktaṃ kāmairviviktaṃ pāpakairakuśaladharmaiḥ  
 savitarkaṃ savicāraṃ vivekajaṃ prītisukhaṃ prathamāṃ dhyānam-  
 upasaṃpadya viharati | sa vitarkavicārāṇaṃ vyupaśamādadhyaṭma-

saṃprasādācchetasa ekotibhāvādavitarkamavicāraṃ samādhijam  
 prītisukhaṃ dvitīyaṃ dhyānamupasaṃpadya viharati | sa prīter-  
 virāgādupekṣako viharati smṛtimān saṃprajānan | sukhaṃ ca  
 kāyena pratisaṃvedayati yattadāryā ācakṣante - upekṣakaḥ  
 smṛtimān | sukhavihārī niṣprītikaṃ tṛtīyaṃ dhyānamupasaṃpadya  
 viharati | sa sukhasya ca prahāṇādduḥkhasya ca prahāṇātpūrvam-  
 eva ca saumanasyadaurmanasyayorastaṃgamādaduḥkhāsukham-  
 upekṣāsmṛtipariśuddhaṃ caturthaṃ dhyānamupasaṃpadya viharati  
 | sa sarvaśo rūpasamjñānām samatikramāt pratighasamjñānām-  
 astaṃgamānnānātvasamjñānāmamanasikārādanantakamākāśamityā  
 kāśānantyāyatanamupasaṃpadya viharati | sa sarvaśa ākāśānanty-  
 āyatanasamatikramādanantaṃ vijñānamiti vijñānānantyāyatanam-  
 upasaṃpadya viharati | sa sarvaśo vijñānānantyāyatanasamati-  
 kramānnāsti kiṃcidityākiṃcanyāyatanamupasaṃpadya viharati | sa  
 sarvaśa ākiṃcanyāyatanasamatikramānnaivasamjñānāsamjñ-  
 āyatanamupasaṃpadya viharati tenānabhiratipadasthānena n-  
 ānyatra dharmānudharmapratipattimupādāya |

**L**

sa maitrīśahagatena cittena vipulena mahadgatenādvayenāpra-  
 māñenāvaireṇāsapatnenānāvarenaṇenāvāyābādhenā sarvatrānugatena  
 dharmadhātuparame loke ākāśadhātuparyavasāne sarvāvantaṃ  
 lokaṃ spharitvopasaṃpadya viharati | evaṃ karuṇāśahagatena  
 cittena | muditāśahagatena cittena | upekṣāśahagatena cittena  
 viharati ||

**M**

so'nekavidhāṃ ṛddhividhiṃ pratyanubhavati | pṛthivīmapi  
 kampayati | eko'pi bhūtvā bahudhā bhavati | bahudhāpi bhūtvaiako  
 bhavati | āvirbhāvaṃ tirobhāvamapi pratyanubhavati | tiraḥ-  
 kuḍyaṃ tiraḥprākāraṃ parvatamapyasajjan gacchati tadyathāpi  
 nāma ākāśe | ākāśe'pi paryaṅkena krāmati tadyathāpi nāma pakṣi-  
 śakuniḥ | pṛthivyāmapyunmajjananimajjanam karoti tadyathāpi  
 nāma udake | udake'pyamañjan gacchati tadyathāpi pṛthivyām |  
 dhūmayati prajvalati, tadyathāpi nāma mahānagniskandhaḥ | sva-  
 kāyādapi mahāvāridhārā utsrjati tadyathāpi nāma mahāmeghaḥ |  
 yābhīrvāridhārābhīrayaṃ trisāhasramahāsāhasro lokadhāturādīptaḥ  
 pradīptaḥ saṃprajvalito'gninā ekajvālībhūto nirvāpyate | imāvapi  
 candrasūryāvevaṃmaharddhikau evaṃmahānubhāvau pāninā

parāmrṣati parimārṣti yāvadbrahmalokamapi kāyena vaśaṃ  
vartayati ||

sa divyena śrotradhātunā [viśuddhenā]tikrāntamānuṣyakena  
ubhayān śabdān śrṇoti divyān mānuṣyākān, sūkṣmānaudārikāṃśca |  
ye dūre'ntike vā antaśo daṃśamaśakakīṭamakṣikāṇāmapi śabdān  
śrṇoti | [eṣā divyaśrotrābhijñā] ||

sa parasattvānāṃ parapudgalānāṃ cetasaiva cittaṃ yathābhūtaṃ  
prajānāti | sarāgaṃ cittaṃ sarāgacittamiti yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti |  
virāgaṃ cittaṃ virāgacittamiti prajānāti | sadoṣaṃ...vigatadoṣaṃ...  
samohaṃ...vigatamohaṃ...sakleśaṃ...niḥkleśaṃ...parītaṃ...  
vipulaṃ...mahadgataṃ...apramāṇaṃ...saṃkṣiptaṃ...[vistīrṇaṃ]...  
samāhitaṃ...asamāhitaṃ...vimuktaṃ...avimuktaṃ...sāṅganam...  
anaṅgam...audārikaṃ cittamaudārikacittamiti yathābhūtaṃ  
prajānāti | anaudārikaṃ cittamaudārikaṃ cittamiti yathābhūtaṃ  
prajānāti | iti parasattvānāṃ parapudgalānāṃ cetasaiva cittaṃ  
yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | [ityeṣā paracittajñānamijñā] ||

so'nekavidhaṃ pūrvanivāsamanusmarati | ekāmapi jātīmanusmarati  
| dve tisraścataśraḥ pañca daśa viṃśatiḥ triṃśataṃ catvāriṃśataṃ  
pañcāśataṃ jātiśatamanusmarati | anekānyapi jātiśatāni | anekāny-  
api jātiśatasahasrāṇi | saṃvartakalpamapi vivartakalpamapi | anek-  
ānapi saṃvartavivartakalpānāpyanusmarati | kalpaśatamapi kalpa-  
sahasramapi kalpakotīmapi kalpakotīśatamapi kalpakotīśahasramapi  
kalpakotīśatasahasramapi yāvadanekānyapi kalpakotīniyutaśata-  
sahasrāṇyanusmarati - amutrāhamāsaṃ evaṃnāmā | evaṃgotraḥ  
evaṃjātiḥ evamāhāra evamāyuhpramāṇaḥ evaṃ cirasthitiḥ evaṃ  
sukhaduḥkhapratiśaṃvedī | so'haṃ tataścyuto'tropapannaḥ | tataś-  
cyuta ihopapannaḥ | iti sākāraṃ soddeśaṃ sanimittamanekavidhaṃ  
pūrvanivāsamanusmarati | [eṣā pūrvanivāsānusmṛtyabhijñā] ||

sa divyena cakṣuṣā viśuddhenātikrāntamānuṣyakeṇa sattvān paśyati  
cyavamānānupapadyamānān suvarṇān durvarṇān sugatān durgatān  
praṇītān hīnān | yathākarmopagān sattvān yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti -  
ime bhavantaḥ sattvāḥ kāyaduścaritena samanvāgatā vāgduścaritena  
samanvāgatā [manoduścaritena samanvāgatāḥ] | āryāṇāmapavādakā

mithyādr̥ṣṭayaḥ mithyādr̥ṣṭīkarmasamādānahetostaddhetuṃ tat-  
 pratyayaṃ kāyasya bhadātparaṃ maraṇādapāyadurgativinipātanir-  
 ayeṣūpapadyante | ime punarbhavantaḥ sattvāḥ kāyasucaritena  
 samanvāgatā [vāksucaritena samanvāgatā manaḥsucaritena  
 samanvāgatā] āryānāmanapavādakāḥ | samyagdr̥ṣṭīkarmasam-  
 ādānahetostaddhetuṃ tatpratyayaṃ kāyasya bhedāt paraṃ maraṇ-  
 ātsugatau svarge devalokeṣūpapadyanta iti |[prajānāti | evaṃ]  
 divyena cakṣuṣā viśuddhenātikrāntamanuṣyeṇa sākāraṃ soddeśaṃ  
 sanimittaṃ sattvān paśyati | cyavamānānupapadyamānān...yathā-  
 bhūtaṃ paśyati ||

sa imāni dhyānāni vimokṣān samādhīn samāpattīśca samāpadyate,  
 vyuttiṣṭhete | na ca teṣāṃ vaśenopapadyate'nyatra yatra bodhyaṅga-  
 paripūriṃ paśyati tatra saṃcintya prañidhānavaśenopapadyate | tat-  
 kasya hetoḥ? tathā hi tasya bodhisattvasyopāyakausalyābhinirhatā  
 cittasamṭatiḥ ||

N

tasya asyāṃ prabhākaryāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhi-  
 sattvasya bahavo buddhā ābhāsamāgacchanti | peyālaṃ | pari-  
 ṇāmayati | tāṃśca tathāgatānarhataḥ samyaksambuddhān pary-  
 upāste | teṣāṃ ca dharmadeśanāṃ satkṛtya śrṇoti udgr̥hṇāti  
 dhārayati | śrutvā ca yathābhajamānaṃ pratipattiyā samādayati | sa  
 sarvadharmānāmasaṃkrāntitāṃ ca avināśitāṃ ca pratītya praty-  
 ayatayā vyavalokayati ||

O

tasya bhūyasyā mātrayā sarvāṇi kāmabandhanāni tanūni bhavanti |  
 sarvāṇi rūpabandhanāni sarvāṇi bhavabandhanāni sarvāṇyavidyā-  
 bandhanāni tanūni bhavanti | dr̥ṣṭīkṛtabandhanāni ca pūrvameva  
 prahīnāni bhavanti | tasya asyāṃ prabhākaryāṃ bodhisattva-  
 bhūmau sthitasya bodhisattvasya...peyālaṃ...anupacayaṃ mithy-  
 ārāgaḥ prahāṇaṃ gacchati anupacayaṃ mithyādoṣaḥ prahāṇaṃ  
 gacchati, anupacayaṃ mithyāmohaḥ prahāṇaṃ gacchati | tāni cāsyā  
 kuśalamūlānyuttapyante paśisuddhyanti karmaṇyāni ca bhavanti |  
 tadyathāpi nāma bhavanto jinaputrāstadeva jātarūpaṃ kuśalasya  
 karmārasya hastagataṃ tulyadharaṇameva pramāṇenāvatiṣṭhate,  
 evameva bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasya asyāṃ prabhākaryāṃ  
 bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya anekān kalpān yāvadanekāni kalpa-

koṭīniyutaśatasahasrāṇi....prahāṇaṃ gacchanti | tasya bhūyasyā mātrayā kṣāntisauratyāśayatā ca pariśuddhyati, sākhyamādhuryāśayatā ca akopyāśayatā ca akṣubhitāśayatā ca alubhitāśayatā ca anunnāmavanāmāśayatā ca sarvakṛtapratikṛtānāṃ niḥkāṅkṣāśayatā ca sattvakṛtapratikṛtānāṃ kāṅkṣāśayatā ca asāṭhyamāyāvītāśayatā ca agahanāśayatā ca pariśuddhyati | tasya caturbhyaḥ saṃgraha-vastubhyo'rthacaryā atiriktatamā bhavati | daśabhyaḥ pāramitābhyaḥ kṣāntipāramitā atiriktatamā bhavati | na ca pariśeṣāsu na samudāgacchati yathābalaṃ yathābhajamānam | iyaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasya prabhākarī nāma tṛtīyā bodhisattvabhūmiḥ samāsanirdeśataḥ,

**P**

yasyāṃ pratiṣṭhito bodhisattvo bhūyastvena indro bhavati devarājas-tridaśādhipatiḥ kṛtī prabhuḥ sattvānāṃ kāmarāgavinivartanopāy-opasaṃhārāya kuśalaḥ sattvān kāmapaṅkādabhyuddhartum, yacca kiṃcit...peyālaṃ...yathārūpeṇa vīryārambheṇa ekakṣaṇalava-muhūrtena samādhiśatasahasraṃ ca pratilabhate... | |

prabhākarī nāma tṛtīyā bhūmiḥ | |

[Beginning of third bhūmī's final gathas]

upasamhāragāthāḥ |

te śuddhaśāya guṇākara tīkṣṇacittā  
nirviṇṇa rāgavigatā anivartiyāśca |  
dṛḍhacitta taptadhṛtiyukti udāravegā  
māhātmyatāśayavidū tṛtiyākramanti || 7 ||

atra sthitā vidu prabhākaribhūmideśe  
duḥkhaṃ anityamaśuciṃ ca pralopadharmam |  
acirasthitāka kṣaṇikaṃ ca nirodhakaṃ ca  
vicinanti saṃskṛtagatīkamanāgatīkam || 8 ||

te rogabhūtasahaśokaparadevanam ca  
sopāyasaṃ ca priya apriyatānubaddham |  
duḥkhadaurmanasyanilayaṃ jvalitāgnikalpaṃ  
paśyanti saṃskṛtamananta samujjvalanti || 9 ||

udvigna sarva tribhave anapekṣacittā  
jñānābhilāṣa sugatānamananyabuddhiḥ |  
avicintiyaṃ atuliyam asamantapāram  
saṃpaśyate nirupatāpa jināna jñānam || 10 ||

te buddhajñāna nirupadravamīkṣamāṇā  
atrāṇa nātharahitā vrajate caranti |  
nityam daridra tribhiragnibhi saṃpradīptā  
bhavacārake dukhaśatairvinibaddhacittāḥ || 11 ||

kleśāvṛtāśca avilokana chandahīnāḥ  
sugatāna dharmaratanānupranaṣṭa bālāḥ |  
saṃsārasrotaanuvāhina mokṣatrastā  
me trāyitavya dṛḍha vīrya samārabhante || 12 ||

jñānābhilāṣa anapekṣa jagārthacārī  
vyuparīkṣate katama hetu jagasya mokṣe |

nānyatra nāvaraṇajñāna tathāgatānām  
jñānaṃ ca prajñāprabhavaṃ sugatānanantam || 13 ||

prajñā śrutāttu iti cintayi bodhisattvo  
jñātvā tamārabhati vīrya śrutārthacārī |  
rātriṃdivaṃ śravaṇahetu ananyakarmā  
arthārthiko bhavati dharmaparāyaṇaśca || 14 ||

maṇimuktiratnanilayān priyabāndhavāṃśca  
rājyaṃ ananta vividhān pura sthānaśreṣṭhān |  
bhāryāsutāṃśca parivāra manonukūlān  
anapekṣacittu tyajate vidu dharmahetoḥ || 15 ||

śira hastapāda nayana svakamātmamāṃsaṃ  
jihvā ca daṃṣṭra śrava nāsika śoṇitaṃ ca |  
hṛdayaṃ tupādya priya majja parityajanti  
nā duṣkaretamatha duṣkara yacchṛṇoti || 16 ||

yadi kaścidenamupagamya vadeyya evaṃ  
yadi agnigarbha prapate jvalitāpi ghoram |  
prāpiṣya dharmaratanaṃ sugatopanītaṃ  
śrutvā adīnamanasaḥ prapate guṇārthī || 17 ||

ekasya dharmapada artha sumerumūrdhnā  
trisahasra agnirucitaṃ api brahmalokāt |  
sūdūrlabhā imi jinasya udārabodhiḥ  
ye mānuṣyeṇa sukha labhyati evarūpam || 18 ||

yāvattareṇa pavararṣiṇa jñānalābha-  
stāvattaraṃ dukhamavīcikamutsahyami |  
kiṃ vā punarvividhamānuṣaduḥkhaskandhaṃ  
hantābhyupemi varadharmipadārthiduḥkham || 19 ||

dharmaṃ ca śrutva puna yoniṣu cintayāti  
dhyānāpramāṇa caturaśca tathā arūpyā |  
pañcāpyabhijñā pravarā abhinirharanti  
nā cāpi teṣu vaśitā upapadya yāti || 20 ||



atra sthitā guṇadharā bahubuddhakoṭyaḥ  
 pūjyanti niścitanā śṛṇuvanti dharmam ।  
 tanubhūtvā mithyapagatāḥ pariśuddhayanti  
 svarṇe yathā vigatadoṣa pramāṇatulyam ॥ 21 ॥

atra sthitā guṇadharāstridaśādhipatyam  
 kārenti īśvara nivartitu kāmāragāḥ ।  
 marusaṃgha nekavividhān kuśalāna mārge  
 sthāpentyananyamana buddhaguṇābhilāṣe ॥ 22 ॥

atra sthitā jinasutā viriyārabhante  
 labdhvā samādhina sahasraśataṃ anūnam ।  
 paśyanti buddhavara lakṣaṇacitrigātrām  
 bhūyo ataḥ praṇidhiśreṣṭha guṇāpramāṇāḥ ॥ 23 ॥

ityeṣā tṛtiyā bhūminirdiṣṭā sugatātmajāḥ ।  
 sarvalokahitaiṣiṇām bodhisattvānanuttamā ॥ 24 ॥

[End of third bhūmī's final gathas]



[Beginning of fourth bhūmī's initial gathas]

4 arciṣmatī nāma caturthī bhūmiḥ ।

upakramagāthāḥ ।

evaṃ śrūṇitva caraṇaṃ vipulaṃ  
bhūmyuttamaṃ manuramaṃ pravaram ।  
saṃharṣitā jinasutāttamanā  
abhyokiranti kusumbhi jinam ॥ 1 ॥

saṃkampitā lavaṇatoyadharā  
iha dharmadeśanamudīrayatām ।  
marukanyakā abhimanorucirāḥ  
saṃgītyukta varadharmaratāḥ ॥ 2 ॥

vaśavarti devapatirāttamanā  
maṇiratna divya sugatasya kṣipī ।  
vācaṃ abhāṣi atha eva jino  
utpanna artha guṇapāragato ॥ 3 ॥

kiṃ kāraṇaṃ tatha hi dharmavaraṃ  
saṃbodhisattvacaraṇaṃ paramam ।  
bhūmirvidū na iyamadya śrutā  
yasyāśravo durlabha kalpaśataiḥ ॥ 4 ॥

bhūyaḥ prabhāṣa naradevahitā  
caryāvarāṃ jinasutān vidū ।  
śroṣyanti te marutasamghagaṇā  
bhūtaṃ viniścayamananyapadam ॥ 5 ॥

vimukticandraḥ punarvīro ālapī sugatātmajam ।  
caturthī saṃkramantānāṃ gocaraṃ bhaṇa uttamam ॥ 6 ॥

[End of fourth bhūmī's initial gathas]

4 arciṣmatī nāma caturthī bhūmiḥ |

**A**

vajragarbha āha - yo'yaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvastrīyāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau supariśuddhālokaścaturthī bodhisattvabhūmim-ākramati, sa daśabhirdharmālokapraveśairākramati | katamair-daśabhiḥ? yaduta sattvadhātuvicāraṇālokapraveśena ca lokadhātuvicāraṇālokapraveśena ca dharmadhātuvicāraṇālokapraveśena ākāśadhātuvicāraṇālokapraveśena ca vijñānadhātuvicāraṇālokapraveśena ca kāmadhātuvicāraṇālokapraveśena ca rūpadhātuvicāraṇālokapraveśena ca ārūpyadhātuvicāraṇālokapraveśena udārāśayādhimuktidhātuvicāraṇālokapraveśena ca mātmyāśayādhimuktidhātuvicāraṇālokapraveśena | ebhirdaśabhirdharmālokapraveśairākramati ||

**B**

tatra bhavanto jinaputrā arciṣmatyā bodhisattvabhūmeḥ sahapratilambhena bodhisattvaḥ saṃvṛtto bhavati tathāgatakule tadātmakadharmapratilambhāya daśabhirjñānaparipācakairdharmaiḥ | katamairdaśabhiḥ? yaduta apratyudāvartyāśayatayā ca triratnābhedyaprasādaniṣṭhāgamanatayā ca saṃskārodavavyaya-vibhāvanatayā ca svabhāvanutpattyāśayatayā ca lokapavṛttinivṛttyāśayatayā ca karmabhavopapattyāśayatayā ca saṃsāranirvāṇāśayatayā ca sattvakṣetrakarmāśayatayā ca pūrvāntāparāntāśayatayā abhāvakṣayāśayatayā ca | ebhirdbhavanto jinaputrā daśabhirjñānaparipācakairdharmaiḥ samanvāgato bodhisattvaḥ saṃvṛtto bhavati tathāgatakule tadātmakadharmapratilambhāya |

**C**

sa khalu punarbhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvo'syāmarciṣmatyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau pratiṣṭhitoḍhyātmaṃ kāye kāyānudarśī viharati ātāpī saṃprajānaṃ smṛtimān vinīya loke'bhidyādaurmanasye bahirdhā kāye...adhyātmaṃ bahirdhā kāye | evamevādhyātmaṃ vedanāsu bahirdhā vedanāsu adhyātmaṃ bahirdhā vedanāsu | evamadhyātmaṃ citte bahirdhā cittedhyātmaṃ citte | adhyātmaṃ dharmeṣu dharmānudarśī...bahirdhā dharmeṣu dharmānudarśī...evamadhyātmaṃ bahirdhā dharmeṣu... | so'nutpannānāṃ pāpakānāmakuśalānāṃ dharmāṇāmanutpādāya cchandaṃ janayati vyāyacchate vīryamārabhate cittam pragṛhṇāti samyakpraṇidadhāti

| utpannānām pāpakānāmakuśalānām dharmānām prahāṇāya... |  
 anutpannānām kuśalānām dharmānām utpādāya... | utpannānām  
 kuśalānām dharmānām sthitayeśampramoṣāya vaipulyāya  
 bhūyobhāvāya bhāvanāya paripūraye... | chandasamādhiprahāṇa-  
 saṃskārasamanvāgataṃ ṛddhipādaṃ bhāvayati vivekaniśritaṃ  
 virāganiśritaṃ nirodhaniśritaṃ vyavasargaparīṇataṃ vīrya-  
 parīṇataṃ cittaparīṇataṃ mīmāṃsāparīṇataṃ | sa śraddhendriyaṃ  
 bhāvayati vivekaniśritaṃ...vīryendriyaṃ...smṛtīndriyaṃ...-  
 samādhiṇdriyaṃ...prajñendriyaṃ...sa | śraddhābalaṃ  
 bhāvayati...vīryabalaṃ...smṛtibalaṃ...samādhibalaṃ...prajñābalaṃ... |  
 smṛtisaṃbodhyaṅgaṃ bhāvayati dharmapravicaya...vīrya...prīti-  
 ...prasrabdhi...samādhi...upekṣā... | samyakdṛṣṭiṃ bhāvayati-  
 ...samyaksaṃkalpaṃ...samyagvācaṃ...samyakkarmāntaṃ...samyagājī-  
 vaṃ...samyagvyāyāmaṃ...samyaksmṛtiṃ...samyaksamādhiṃ... | |

**D**

tacca sarvasattvasāpekṣatayā ca pūrvapraṇidhānābhinirhār-  
 opastabdhatayā ca mahākaruṇāpūrvavaṅgamatayā ca mahāmaitry-  
 upetatayā ca sarvajñajñānādhyālambanatayā ca buddhakṣetraviṭha-  
 panālaṃkārabhinirhāratayā ca tathāgatabalavaiśāradyāveṇika-  
 buddhadharmalakṣaṇānuvyañjanasvaraghoṣasaṃpadabhinirhāratayā  
 ā ca uttarottaravaiśeṣikadharmaparimārgaṇatayā ca gambhīra-  
 buddhadharmavimokṣaśravaṇānugamanatayā ca mahopāya-  
 kauśalyabalavicāraṇatayā ca |

**E**

tasya khalu punarbhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasya asyām-  
 arcīṣmatyām bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya yānīmāni  
 satkāyadṛṣṭipūrvavaṅgamāni ātmasattvajīvapoṣapudgalaskandha-  
 dhātuvāyatanābhiniveśasamucchritāni unmiñjitāni nimiñjitāni  
 vicintitāni vitarkitāni kelāyitāni mamāyitāni dhanāyitāni niketa-  
 sthānāni, tāni sarvaṇi vigatāni bhavanti sma |

**F**

sa yānīmāni karmāṇyakaraṇīyāni samyaksambuddhavivarṇitāni  
 saṃkleśopasaṃhitāni, tāni sarveṇa sarvaṃ prajāhāti | yāni cemāni  
 karmāṇi karaṇīyāni samyaksambuddhaprasastāni bodhimārga-  
 saṃbhārānukūlāni, tāni samādāya vartate |

**G**

sa bhūyasyā mātrayā yathā yathopāyaprajñābhinirhṛtāni mārgasam-

udāgamāya mārḡāṅgāni bhāvayati, tathā tathā snigdha-cittaśca bhavati, maducittaśca karmaṇyacittaśca hitasukhāvahacittaśca aparikliṣṭacittaśca uttarottaraviśeṣaparimārgaṇacittaśca jñāna-viśeṣaṅbhilāṣacittaśca sarvajagatparitrāṇacittaśca gurugauravānukūlacittaśca yathāśrutadharmapratipatticittaśca bhavati |

**H**

sa kṛtajñāśca bhavati, kṛtavedī ca sūrataśca sukhasaṃvāśca ṛjuśca mṛduśca agahanacārī ca nirmāyanirmāṇaśca suvacāśca pradakṣiṇagrāhī ca bhavati | sa evaṃ kṣamopeta evaṃ damopeta evaṃ śamopeta evaṃ kṣamadamaśamopeta uttarāṇi bhūmipariśodhakāni mārḡāṅgāni manasi kurvāṇaḥ samudācaran

**I**

aprasabdhavīryaśca bhavati aparikliṣṭaḥ | apratyudāvartyavīryaśca vipulavīryaśca anantavīryaśca uttaptavīryaśca asamavīryaśca asaṃhāryavīryaśca sarvasattvapariṇāpanavīryaśca nayānaya vibhaktavīryaśca bhavati |

**J**

tasya bhūyasyā mātrayā āśayadhātuśca viśuddhyati, adhyāśayadhātuśca na vipravasati, adhimuktidhātuścotpadyate, kuśalamūlavivṛddhiścopajāyate, lokamalakaśāyatā cāpagacchati, sarvasaṃśayavimatisaṃdehāścāsyocchidyante, niṣkāṅkṣābhimukhatā ca paripūryate, prītiprasabdhī ca samudāgacchati, tathāgatādhiṣṭhānaṃ cābhimukhībhavati, apramāṇacittāśayatā ca samudāgacchati ||

**K**

tasya asyāmarciṣmatyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhisattvasya...peyālam... | bhūyastvena ca teṣāṃ tathāgatānāṃ śāsane pravrajati | tasya bhūyasyā mātrayā āśayādhyāśayādhimuktisamatā viśudhyati | tasya asyāmarciṣmatyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhisattvasya...āśayādhyāśayādhimuktisamatāviśuddhiḥ stīṣṭhati, tāni cāsyā kuśalamūlāni sūttaptāni prabhāsaratarāṇi ca bhavanti | tadyathāpi nāma bhavanto jinaputrāstadeva jātarūpaṃ kuśalena karmāreṇābharaṇīkṛtamasāṃhāryaṃ bhavati tadanyairakṛtābharaṇairjātarūpaiḥ, evameva bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasya asyāmarciṣmatyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya tāni kuśalamūlānyasaṃhāryāṇi bhavanti tadanyeṣāmadharabhūmisthitānāṃ bodhisattvānāṃ kuśalamūlaiḥ |

tadyathāpi nāma bhavanto jinaputrā maṇiratnaṃ jātaprabhaṃ pariśu-  
 ddharaśmimaṅḍalamālokapramuktamasamhāryaṃ bhavati tadanyai-  
 rapī śuddhaprabhai ratnajātaiḥ, anācchedyaprabhaṃ ca  
 bhavati sarvamārutodakapravarṣaiḥ, evameva bhavanto jinaputrā  
 bodhisattvośyāmarciṣmatyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitaḥ sanna-  
 samhāryo bhavati tadanyairadharabhūmisthitairbodhisattvaiḥ,  
 anācchedyajñānaśca bhavati sarvamāraśasamudācāraiḥ | tasya  
 caturbhyaḥ saṃgrahavastubhyaḥ samānārthatā atiriktatamā bhavati  
 | daśabhyaḥ pāramitābhyo vīryapāramitā atiriktatamā bhavati, na ca  
 pariśeṣāsu na samudāgacchati yathābalaṃ yathābhajamānam | iyaṃ  
 bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasyārciṣmatī nāma caturthī bhūmiḥ  
 samāsanirdeśataḥ, yasyāṃ pratiṣṭhito bodhisattvo bhūyastvena  
 suyāmo bhavati devarājaḥ kṛtī prabhuḥ sattvānāṃ satkāyadrṣṭi-  
 samuddhātāya kuśalaḥ sattvān samyagdarśane pratiṣṭhāpayitum |  
 yacca kiṃcit..... ||

arciṣmatī nāma caturthī bhūmiḥ ||

[Beginning of fourth bhūmi's final gathas]

upasamhāragāthāḥ |

parikarmitā tṛtīyabhūmiprabhaṃkarāya  
sattvacaryaloka tatha dharma vicāryamāṇaḥ |  
ākāśadhātu manadhātu trayaśca dhātu  
adhimukti āśaya viśuddhi samākramanti || 7 ||

sahaprāptu arciṣmati bhūmi mahānubhāvaḥ  
saṃvṛttu śāstu kulu bhūyu vivartiyatve |  
abhedy buddharatane tatha dharmasaṃghe  
udayavyayasthiti nirihaka prekṣamāṇaḥ || 8 ||

lokapravṛtti kriyakarma bhavopapattiṃ  
saṃsāranirvṛtivibhāvana kṣetrasattvān |  
dharmāñca pūrvamaparānta kṣayānutpādaṃ  
saṃvṛttu bhāvayati śāstu kulānuvartī || 9 ||

so eṣu dharmu samupetu hitānukampī  
bhāveti kāyamapi vedana cittadharmān |  
adhyātmabāhyubhayathā vidu bhāvayāti  
smṛtyopasthānabhāvana nicketavarjitā || 10 ||

pāpakṣayātkuśaladharmavivardhitā ca  
samyakprahāṇa caturo vidu bhāvayanti |  
catuṣddhipāda bala indriya bhāvayanti  
bodhyaṅgaratna ruciraṃ tatha mārga śreṣṭham || 11 ||

bhāventi tān janayatāṃ samavekṣya buddhim  
upastambhayanti praṇidhiṃ kṛtapūrvamaitrāḥ |  
sarvajñajñānamabhiprārthana buddhakṣetraṃ  
balaśreṣṭhamuttamapathaṃ anucintayantaḥ || 12 ||

vaiśāradaṃ api ca dharma ahārya śāstuḥ  
varavuddhaghoṣamabhiprārthayamāna dhīrāḥ |  
gambhīramārgaratanam ca vimokṣasthānam



mahatāmupāya samudāgama bhāvayanti || 13 ||

satkāyadr̥ṣṭivigatāśca dviṣaṣṭidr̥ṣṭī  
attāttamīyavigatāstatha jīvalābham |  
skandhāstu dvāra tatha dhātuniketasthānaṃ  
sarvaprāhāṇa viduṣaṃ catuthāya bhūmyām || 14 ||

so yānimāni sugatena vivarṇitāni  
karmāṇi kleśasahajāni anarthakāni |  
tāni prahāya vidu āśayato viśuddhā  
dharmārabhanti kuśalaṃ jaga-tāyaṅārtham || 15 ||

susnigdhaçitta bhavati vidu apramatto  
mṛducittu sārjava hitāsukhaāvahaśca |  
aparikliṣṭaśca parimārgati uttamārtham  
jñānābhiṣekamābhilāṣi jagārthacārī || 16 ||

gurugauraveṣupagataḥ pratipattikāmo  
bhavate kṛtajña sumanāśca akūhakāśca |  
nirmāyatāgahana āśayasūrataśca  
avivartyavīryu bhavate samudānayantaḥ || 17 ||

tasyātra bhūmi rucirāya pratiṣṭhitasya  
adhyāśayaṃ api ca śuddhamupeti dharmam |  
adhimukti tapyati vivardhati śukladharmo  
malakalmaṣaṃ vimati śaṃśaya sarva yānti || 18 ||

atra sthitā naravararṣabha bodhisattvāḥ  
sugatānanekanayutānabhipūjayanti |  
śṛṅvanti dharmā yatha śāsani pravrajanti  
asaṃhārya śakya kṛtakāñcanabhūṣaṇaṃ vā || 19 ||

atra sthitāna vidunā guṇamāśayaṃ ca  
jñānaṃ upāya caraṇaṃ ca viśuddhimārgaḥ |  
no śakya māranayutebhi nivartanāya  
ratnaprabheva yatha varṣajalairahāryā || 20 ||

atra sthitā naramarudgaṇapūjanārḥā  
 bhontī suyāmapatirīśvara dharmacārī |  
 sattvāni dṛṣṭigahanādvinivartayanti  
 saṃbhārayanti kuśalā jinajñānahetoḥ || 21 ||

viryopapeta śatakoṭi mararṣabhāṇāṃ  
 paśyantyananyamanasaḥ susamāhitatvāt |  
 tata uttarim bahukalpamabhinirharanti  
 jñānākārā prañidhiśreṣṭha guṇārthacārī || 22 ||

caturthī itiyaṃ bhūmirviśuddhā śubhacāriṇī |  
 guṇārthajñānayuktānāṃ nirdiṣṭā sugatātmañāḥ || 23 ||

[End of fourth bhūmī's final gathas]

[Beginning of fifth bhūmī's initial gathas]

5 sudurjayā nāma pañcamī bhūmiḥ ।

upakramagāthāḥ ।

caraṇamatha śruṇitvā bhūmīśreṣṭhāṃ vidūnāṃ  
jinasuta parituṣṭā harṣitā dharmahetoḥ ।  
gagani kusumavarṣaṃ utsrjantī udagrāḥ  
sādhu sugataputra vyāhṛtaṃ te mahātmā ॥ 1 ॥

marupati vaśavartī sārdha devāgaṇena  
svagata sugatasya pūjanārthaṃ udagrā ।  
vividharucirameghāḥ snigdhaābhā manojñāḥ  
abhikira sugatasya harṣitāḥ prīṇitāśca ॥ 2 ॥

gītaruta manojñā vādyatūryābhinādā  
devavadhuprayuktāḥ śāstu saṃpūjanārtham ।  
jina puna tatharūpaṃ darśayanti sma sthānaṃ  
sarvarutasvarebhī eva śabdaḥ prayuktāḥ ॥ 3 ॥

sucireṇa āśayu prapūrṇa muneḥ  
sucireṇa bodhi śīva prāpta jinaḥ ।  
sucireṇa drṣṭa naradevahitaḥ  
saṃprāpta devapuri śākyamuniḥ ॥ 4 ॥

sucireṇa sāgarajalāḥ kṣubhitāḥ  
sucireṇa ābha śubha munni jane ।  
sucireṇa sattva sukhitāḥ -  
sucireṇa śāsu śruta kāruṇikaḥ ॥ 5 ॥

sucireṇa saṃgamu mahāmuninā  
saṃprāpta sarvagūṇapāramitaḥ ।  
mada māna darpa prajahitva tamaṃ  
pūjārhu pūjima mahāśramaṇam ॥ 6 ॥

(iha pūji kṛtva khagamārgagatā)  
 iha pūji kṛtva sukha nekavidham |  
 iha pūji kṛtva dukhasarvakṣaye  
 iha pūji kṛtva jina jñānavaram || 7 ||

gaganopamaḥ paramuśuddhu jinu  
 jagatī aliptu yatha padmu jale |  
 abhyudgato udadhi meruriva  
 harṣitva cittu jina pūjayathā || 8 ||

athābravīdvajragarbhaṃ vimukticanthro viśāradaḥ |  
 pañcamyā bhūmya ākarān nirdiśasva viśārada || 10 ||

[End of fifth bhūmi's initial gathas]

5 sudurjayā nāma pañcamī bhūmiḥ ।

**A**

vajragarbha āha - yo'yaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvaś-  
caturthyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau suparipūrṇamārgaḥ pañcamīm  
bodhisattvabhūmimavatarati, sa daśabhiścittāśayaviśuddhi-  
samatābhiravatarati । katamābhirdaśabhiḥ? yaduta atītabuddha-  
dharmaviśuddhyāśayasamatayā ca anāgatabuddhadharmaviśuddhy-  
āśayasamatayā ca pratyutpannabuddhadharmaviśuddhyāśaya-  
samatayā ca śīlaviśuddhyāśayasamatayā ca cittaviśuddhyāśaya-  
samatayā ca dṛṣṭikāṅkṣāvimativilekhāpanayanaviśuddhyāśaya-  
samatayā ca mārgāmārgajñānaviśuddhyāśayasamatayā ca pratipat-  
prahāñajñānaviśuddhyāśayasamatayā ca sarvabodhipakṣyadharm-  
ottarottaravibhāvanaviśuddhyāśayasamatayā ca sarvasattvapari-  
pācanaviśuddhyāśayasamatayā ca । ābhirdaśabhiścittāśayaviśuddhi-  
samatābhiravatarati ।

**B**

sa khalu punarbhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvaḥ pañcamīm bodhi-  
sattvabhūmimanuprāptaḥ eṣāmeva bodhipakṣyāñāṃ mārgāṅgānāṃ  
suparikarmakṛtatvāsupariśodhitādhyāśayatvācca bhūya uttarakāla-  
mārgaviśeṣamabhiprārthayamānastathatvānupratipannaśca pra-  
ñidhānabalādhanataśca kṛpāmaitrībhyāṃ sarvasattvāparityāgataśca  
puṇyavijñānasambhāropacayataśca apratiprasabdhitāśca upāya-  
kauśalyābhinirhārataśca uttarottarabhūmyavabhāsālocanataśca  
tathāgatādhiṣṭhānasampratyesañataśca smṛtimatigatibuddhibal-  
ādhanataśca apratyudāvartanīyamanasikāro bhūtvā

**C**

idaṃ duḥkhamāryasatyamiti yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti । ayaṃ duḥkha-  
samudayaḥ āryasatyamiti yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti । ayaṃ duḥkha-  
nirodhaḥ āryasatyamiti yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti । iyaṃ duḥkha-  
nirodhagāminī pratipadāryasatyamiti yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti । sa  
saṃvṛtisatyakuśalaśca bhavati । paramārthasatyakuśalaśca bhavati ।  
lakṣaṇasatyakuśalaśca bhavati । vibhāgasatyakuśalaśca bhavati । ni-  
stīraṇasatyakuśalaśca bhavati । vastusatyakuśalaśca bhavati । pra-  
bhavasatyakuśalaśca bhavati । kṣayānutpādasatyakuśalaśca bhavati  
। mārgajñānāvatarāsatyakuśalaśca bhavati । sarvabodhisattvabhūmi-  
kramānusamdhiniṣpādanatayā yāvattathāgatajñānasamudayasatya-

kuśālaśca bhavati | sa parasattvānāṃ yathāśayasamtoṣaṇātsamvṛti-  
satyam prajānāti | ekanayasamavasaraṇātparamārthasatyam pra-  
jānāti | svasāmanyalakṣaṇānubodhāllakṣaṇasatyam prajānāti |  
dharmavibhāgavyavasthānānubodhādvibhāgasatyam prajānāti |  
skandhadhātṅvāyanavyavasthānānubodhānistīraṇasatyam pra-  
jānāti | cittaśarīraprapīḍānopanipātītatvādvastusatyam, gati-  
samdhisambandhanatvātprebhavasatyam, sarvajvaraparidāhāty-  
antopāśamātkṣayānutpādasatyam, advayānutpādasatyam, advay-  
ābhinirhāranmārgajñānāvātārasatyam, sarvākārābhisaṃbodhitsu-  
sarva-  
bodhisattvabhūmikramānusamdhiniṣpādanatayā yāvattathāgata-  
jñānasamudayasatyam prajānāti adhimuktijñānabalādhānāna khalu  
punarniravaśeṣajñānāt ||

**D**

sa evaṃ satyakausālyajñānābhinirhṛtayā buddhyā sarvasaṃskṛtaṃ  
riktaṃ tucchaṃ mṛṣā moṣadharmā avisaṃvādakaṃ bālālāpanamiti  
yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | tasya bhūyasyā mātrayā sattveṣu mahā-  
karuṇā abhimukhībhavati, mahāmaitryālokaśca prādurbhavati ||

**E**

sa evaṃ jñānabalāadhanaprāptaḥ sarvasattvasāpekṣo buddhajñān-  
ābhilāṣī pūrvāntāparāntaṃ sarvasaṃskāragatasya pratyavekṣate  
yathā pūrvāntato'vidyābhavatrṣṇāprasṛtānāṃ sattvānāṃ saṃsāra-  
sroto'nuvāhināṃ skandhālayānucchalitānāṃ duḥkhaskandho vi-  
vardhate, nirātmā niḥsattvo nirjīvo niṣpoṣo niṣpudgala ātmātmīya-  
vigataḥ, taṃ yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | yathā ca anāgatasyaiva asat-  
saṃmohābhilāṣasya vyavacchedaḥ paryanto niḥsaraṇaṃ nāstyasti  
ca, tacca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti ||

**F**

tasyaivaṃ bhavati - āścaryaṃ yāvadañānasamūḍhā bateme bāla-  
pṛthagjanāḥ, yeśāmasaṃkhyeyā ātmabhāvā niruddhāḥ, nirudhyante  
nirotsyante ca | evaṃ ca kṣīyamānāḥ kāye na nirvidamutpādayanti |  
bhūyasyā mātrayā duḥkhayantraṃ vivardhayanti | saṃsārasrotasaś-  
ca mahābhayāna nivartante | skandhālayaṃ ca notsrjanti | dhātūr-  
agebhyāśca ga nirvidyante | nandīrāgataścāraṇaṃ ca nāvabudhyante  
| ṣaḍāyatanaśūnyagrāmaṃ ca na vyavalokayanti | ahaṃkāramama-  
kārahiniveśānuśayaṃ ca na prajahanti | mānadṛṣṭīśalyaṃ ca n-  
oddharanti | rāgadveśamohajvalanaṃ ca na praśamayanti | avidyā-  
mohāndhakāraṃ ca na vidhamayanti | tṛṣṇāṇavaṃ ca n-

occhoṣayanti | daśabalasārthavāhaṃ ca na paryeṣante | mārāsaya-  
gahanānugataśca saṃsārasāgare vividhākuśalavitarkagrāhākule  
pariplavante |

**G**

apratīśaraṇāstathā saṃvegamāpadyante, bahūni duḥkhāni  
pratyanubhavanti yaduta jātijarāvyaḍhimaraṇaśokaparidevaduḥkha-  
daurmanasyopāyāsān | hanta ahameṣāṃ sattvānāṃ duḥkhārt-  
ānāmanāthānāmatrāṇānāmaśaraṇānāmalayanānāmaparāyaṇānāman  
dhānānavidyāṇḍakośapaṭalaparyavanaddhānāṃ tamobhi-  
bhūtānāmarthāya ekoḍvitīyo bhūtvā tathārūpaṃ puṇyajñānasam-  
bhāropacayaṃ bibharmi, yathārūpeṇa puṇyajñānasambhār-  
opacayena saṃbhṛtena ime sarvasattvā atyantaviśuddhim-  
anuprāpnuyuḥ, yāvaddaśabalabalatāmasaṅgajñānaniṣṭhām-  
anuprāpnuyuriti ||

**H**

sa evaṃ suvilokitajñānābhinirhṛtayā buddhyā yatkiṃcit kuśalamūla-  
bhārabhate, tatsarvasattvaparitrāṇyārabhate | sarvasattvahitāya  
sarvasattvasukhāya sarvasattvānukampāyai sarvasattvānupadravāya  
sarvasattvaparimocanāya sarvasattvānukarṣāya sarvasattvaprasād-  
anāya sarvasattvavinayāya sarvasattvaparinirvāṇyārabhate ||

**I**

sa bhūyasyā mātrayā asyāṃ pañcamyāṃ sudurjayāyāṃ bodhisattva-  
bhūmau sthito bodhisattvaḥ smṛtimāṃśca bhavati, asaṃpramoṣa-  
dharमतayā matimāṃśca bhavati, suviniścītajñānatayā gatimāṃśca  
bhavati, sūtrārthagatisaṃdhāyabhāṣītāvabodhatayā hrīmāṃśca  
bhavati, ātmaparānurakṣaṇatayā dhṛtimāṃśca bhavati, saṃvara-  
cāritrānutsargatayā buddhimāṃśca bhavati, sthānāsthānakauśalya-  
suvicāritatayā jñānānugataśca bhavati, aparapraṇeyatayā prajñānu-  
gataśca bhavati, arthānarthasaṃbhēdapaḍakuśalatayā abhijñānir-  
hāraprāptaśca bhavati, bhāvanābhinirhārakuśalatayā upāyakuśalaśca  
bhavati lokānūvartanatayā |

**J**

atṛptaśca bhavati puṇyasaṃbhāropacayatayā | apratiprasabdha-  
vīryaśca bhavati jñānasambhāraparyeṣaṇatayā | aparikhinnāśayaśca  
bhavati mahāmaitrīkrpāsambhārasambhṛtatayā | aśīthilaparyeṣaṇ-  
ābhiyuktaśca bhavati tathāgatabalavaiśāradyāveṇīkabuddhadharma-  
paryeṣaṇatayā | svabhinirhṛtamanasikārānugataśca bhavati buddha-

kṣetraviṭhapanālaṃkārābhinirhṛtatayā | vicitrakuśalakriyābhiyuktaś-  
ca bhavati lakṣaṇānuvyañjanasamudānayanatayā | satatasamitaṃ  
svabhiyuktaśca bhavati tathāgatakāyavākittālaṃkāraparyeṣanatayā  
| mahāguravopasthānaśīlaśca bhavati sarvabodhisattvadharmā-  
bhañkākaśūsrūṣanatayā | apratihatacittaśca bhavati bodhicittamah-  
opāyakauśalyasaṃdhyupasaṃhitalokapracāratayā | rātriṃdiva-  
manyacittaparivarjitaśca bhavati sarvasattvapariṣānābhiyogatayā  
||

**K**

sa evamabhiyukto dānenāpi sattvān paripācayati, priyavadyatayāpi,  
arthakriyayāpi, samānārthatayāpi, rūpakāyasaṃdarśanenāpi,  
dharmadeśanayāpi, bodhisattvacaryāprabhāvanayāpi, tathāgata-  
māhātmyaparakāśanatayāpi, saṃsāradoṣasaṃdarśanenāpi, buddha-  
jñānānuśaṃsāparikīrtanenāpi, maharddhivikurvaṇābhinirhāraṇ-  
ānopacārakriyāprayogairapi sattvān paripācayati | sa evaṃ sattva-  
pariṣānābhiyukto buddhajñānānugatacittasaṃtāno' pratyud-  
āvartanīyakuśalamūlaprayogo vaiśeṣikadharmaparimārgaṇābhi-  
yuktaḥ

**L**

yānīmāni sattvahitāni loke pracaranti, tadyathā –  
lipiśāstramudrāsaṃkhyāgaṇanānikṣepādīni nānādhātutantracikitsā-  
tantrāni śoṣāpasmārabhūtagrahapraṭiṣedhakāni viṣavetālaprayoga-  
pratighātakāni kāvyanāṭakākhyānagāndharvetihāsasaṃprahaṣaṇāni  
grāmanagarodyānanadisarastaḍāgapuṣkarīṇīpuṣpaphalauśadhivana  
ṣaṇḍābhinirhārāni suvarṇarūpyamaṇimuktāvaiḍūryaśaṅkhaśīlā-  
pravālaratnākaranidarśanāni candrasūryagrahajyotirnakṣatrabhūmi-  
cālamṛgaśakunisvapnanimittāni pradeśapraveśāni sarvāṅgapraty-  
aṅgalakṣaṇāni cārānucāraprayoganimittāni saṃvaracāritrasthāna-  
dhyānābhijñāpramāṇārūpyasthānāni, yāni cānyānyapi aviheṭhan-  
āvihimsāsaṃprayuktāni sarvasattvahitasukhāvahāni, tānyapyabhi-  
nirharati kāruṇikatayā anupūrvabuddhadharmapraṭiṣṭhāpanāya ||

**M**

tasya asyāṃ sudurjayāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhi-  
sattvasya....peyālaṃ...pariṇāmayati | tāṃśca tathāgatānarhataḥ  
samyaksaṃbuddhān paryupāsate, teṣāṃ ca sakāśād gaurava-  
citrīkāreṇa satkṛtya dharmadeśanāṃ śṛṇoti udgrhṇāti dhārayati |  
śrutvā ca yathābalaṃ yathābhajamānaṃ pratipatyā saṃpādayati |



bhūyastvena ca teṣāṃ tathāgatānāṃ śāsane pravrajati | pravrajitaśca  
 śrutadhārī dharmabhāṅako bhavati | sa bhūyasyā mātrayā śrutācāra-  
 dhāraṇīpratīlabdho dharmabhāṅako bhavati anekeṣāṃ ca buddha-  
 koṭīniyutaśatasahasrāṇāmantike anekakalpakoṭīniyutaśatasahasrāṅy-  
 asaṃpramoṣatayā | tasya asyāṃ sudurjayāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau  
 sthitasya anekān kalpāmstāni kuśalamūlānyuttapyante pari-  
 śudhyanti prabhāsvaratarāṇi ca bhavanti, anekāni kalpaśatāni... |  
 tasya tāni kuśalamūlānyuttapyante pariśuddhyanti prabhāsva-  
 ratarāṇi ca bhavanti | tadyathāpi nāma bhavanto jinaputrāstadeva  
 jātārūpaṃ musārgalvasrṣṭaṃ bhūyasyā mātrayottapyate pari-  
 śudhyati prabhāsvarataraṃ bhavati, evameva bhavanto jinaputrā  
 bodhisattvasya asyāṃ sudurjayāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya  
 tāni kuśalamūlānyupāyaprajñāvicāritāni bhūyasyā mātrayottapyante  
 pariśuddhyanti, prabhāsvaratarāṇi ca bhavanti, jñānaprayogaguṇ-  
 ābhinirhārādasaṃhāryavicāritatamāni ca bhavanti | tadyathāpi nāma  
 bhavanto jinaputrāścandrasūryagrahājyotirnakṣatrāṇāṃ vimānālōka-  
 prabhavātamaṅgalībhiraṣaṃhāryā bhavati mārutāsādhāraṇā ca,  
 evameva bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasya asyāṃ sudurjayāyāṃ  
 bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya tāni kuśalamūlānyupāyaprajñājnāna-  
 cittavicāraṇānugatānyasaṃhāryāṇi bhavanti, sarvaśrāvakaḥpratyeka-  
 buddhairlaukikāsādhāraṇāni ca bhavanti | tasya daśabhyaḥ pāra-  
 mitābhyo dhyānapāramitā atiriktatamā bhavati, na ca pariśeṣāsu na  
 samudāgacchati yathābalaṃ yathābhajamānam | iyaṃ bhavanto  
 jinaputrā bodhisattvasya sudurjayā nāma pañcamī bodhisattva-  
 bhūmiḥ samāsanirdeśataḥ, yasyāṃ pratiṣṭhito bodhisattvo  
 bhūyastvena saṃtuṣito bhavati, devarājaḥ kṛtī prabhuḥ sattvānāṃ  
 sarvatīrthyāyanavinivartanāya kuśalaḥ sattvān satyeṣu prati-  
 ṣṭhāpayitum | yatkiṃcit..... ||

sudurjayā nām pañcamī bhūmiḥ ||

[Beginning of fifth bhūmi's final gathas]

upasamhāragāthāḥ |

evaṃ viśodhita caturṣu jinacarīṣu  
buddhayā triyādhdvasamatā anucintayanti |  
śīlaṃ ca cittapratipattitu mārgasuddhiḥ  
kāṅkṣāvinīta vidu pañcami ākramanti || 11 ||

smṛti cāpa indriya iṣu anivartitāśca  
samyakprahāṇa haya vāhana ṛddhipādāḥ |  
pañca balāḥ kavaca sarvapipūabhebyāḥ  
sūrāṇivarti vidu pañcami ākramanti || 12 ||

hyapatrāpyavastravidunāṃ śuciśīlagandho  
bodhyaṅgamālyavaradhyānavilepanaṃ ca |  
prajñāvicāraṇavibhūṣaṇupāyaśreṣṭham  
udyānadhāraṇita pañcamimākramanti || 13 ||

catuṛddhipādacaraṇāḥ smṛtisuddhigrīvāḥ  
kṛpamaitraśreṣṭhanayanā varaprajñadaṃṣṭrā |  
nairātmyanāda ripukleśa pradharṣamāṇā  
naraśiṃha samya vidu pañcamimākramanti || 14 ||

te pañcamīmupagatā varabhūmiśreṣṭhāṃ  
parisuddhamārga śubhamuttari bhāvayanti |  
śuddhāśayā vidu jinatvanuprāpaṇārthī  
kṛpamaitrakhedavigatā anucintayanti || 15 ||

saṃbhārapuṇyupacayā tatha jñāna śreṣṭham  
naikā upāya abhirocanabhūmya bhāsān |  
buddhadhiṣṭhāna smṛtimāṃ matibuddhiprāptā  
cattvāri satya nikhilānucintayanti || 16 ||

paramārthasatyamapi saṃvṛtilakṣaṇaṃ ca  
satyavibhāgamatha satyanitīraṇaṃ ca |

tatha vastu sāsraṇa kṣayaṃ api mārgasatyam  
yāvantanāvaraṇasatya samosaranti || 17 ||

evaṃ ca satya parimārgati sūkṣmabuddhiḥ  
na ca tāvadanāvaraṇaprāptu vimokṣaṃ śreṣṭham |  
jñānādhimuktivipulāttu guṇākaraṇām  
atibhonti sarvajagato arhapratyayānām || 18 ||

so eva satyaabhinirhṛta tattvabuddhiḥ  
jānāti saṃskṛta mṛṣāprakṛti asāram |  
kṛpamaitraābha labhate sugatāna bhūyaḥ  
sattvārthikaḥ sugatajñāna gaveṣamāṇaḥ || 19 ||

pūrvāpare vidu nirikṣatu saṃskṛtasya  
mohāndhakāratamasāvṛta duḥkhalagnā |  
abhyuddharoti jagato dukhaskandhavṛddhān  
nairātmyajīvarahitāmstrṇakāṣṭhatulyān || 20 ||

kleśādvayena yugapatpunarbhāsi tryadhvaṃ  
chedo dukhasya na ca anta samosarantaḥ |  
hanto praṇaṣṭa jana te'tidayābhijātā  
saṃsārasrota na nivartati niḥsvabhāvam || 21 ||

skandhālayā uragadhātu kudṛṣṭisālyāḥ  
saṃtapta agnihṛdayāvṛta andhakāre |  
tṛṣṇāṇavaprapatitā avalokanatvāt  
jinasārthavāhavirahā dukhaarṇavasthāḥ || 22 ||

evaṃ viditva punarārabhate'pramatto  
taccaiva ārabhati sarvajagadvimokṣī |  
smṛtimantu bhonti matimān gatimān dhṛtīm ca  
hrīmāṃśca bhonti tatha buddhina prajñavāṃśca || 23 ||

avitṛptu puṇyupacaye tatha jñāna śreṣṭham  
no khedavāna śīthilo balameṣamāṇaḥ |  
kṣetraṃ vidhāya jinalakṣaṇabuddhaghoṣam  
avitṛptasarvakriya sattvahitārthayuktaḥ || 24 ||

paripācanāya jagato vidu śilpasthānān  
lipimudrasaṃkhyagaṇadhātucikitsatantrān |  
bhūtagrahāviṣamaroganivartanārthaṃ  
sthāpenti śāstra rucirān kṛpamaitrabuddhī || 25 ||

varakāvyanāṭakamatiṃ vividhapraharṣān  
nadyodiyānaphalapuṣpanipadyasthānān |  
sthāpenti nekakriya sattvasukhāpanārthaṃ  
ratnākaraṃśca upadarśayi naikarūpān || 26 ||

bhūmīcalaṃ ca graha jyotiṣa candrasūryau  
sarvāṅgalakṣaṇavicāraṇarājyasthānam |  
ārūpyadyāna tathabhijña athāpramāṇā  
abhinirharanti hitasaukhyajagārthakāmāḥ || 27 ||

iha durjayāmupajatā varaprajñacārī  
pūjenti buddha nayutā śrṅṅvanti dharmam |  
teṣāṃ śubhaṃ punaruttapyati āśayaśca  
svarṇaṃ yathā musaragalvayasaṃvimṛṣṭam || 28 ||

ratnāmayā grahavimān vahanti vātā  
te yehi tehi tu vahanti asaṃhṛtāśca |  
tatha lokadharmi caramāna jagārthacārī  
asaṃhārya bhonti yatha padma jale aliptam || 29 ||

atra sthitā tuṣita īśvara te kṛtāvī  
nāśenti tīrthyacaraṇān pṛthudṛṣṭisthānān |  
yaccācaranti kuśalaṃ jinajñānahetoḥ  
sattvāna trāta bhavamo daśabhirbalādhyaiḥ || 30 ||

te vīryamuttari samārabhi aramattāḥ  
koṭisahasra sugatānabhipūjayanti |  
labdhvā samādhi vidu kampayi kṣetrakoṭī  
prañidhīviśeṣu anubhūya guṇākaraṇām || 31 ||

ityeṣā pañcamī bhūmirvicitropāyakoṭibhiḥ |  
nirdiṣṭā sattvasārāṇāmuttamā sugatātmajāḥ || 32 ||

[End of fifth bhūmī's final gathas]



[Beginning of sixth bhūmī's initial gathas]

6 abhimukhī nāma ṣaṣṭhī bhūmīḥ ।

upakramagāthāḥ ।

caraṇavara śruṇitvā bhūmīśreṣṭhaṃ vidūnāṃ  
gagani sugataputrā harṣitāḥ puṣpavarṣī ।  
maṇiratana udārā ābhayuktā viśuddhā  
abhikira sugatasya sādhviti vyāharantaḥ ॥ 1 ॥

maruta śatasahasrā harṣitā antarīkṣe  
diviya rucira citrā ratnacūrṇā udārāḥ ।  
abhikira sugatebhyo gandhamālyānulepān  
chatradhvajāpatākāhāracandrārdhahārān ॥ 2 ॥

marupati vaśavartī sarvadevagaṇena  
upari khaga paṭhitvā megha ratnāmāyāni ।  
abhikiriṣu prasannaḥ pūjanārthaṃ jinasya  
sādhu sugataputrā vyāharī hṛṣṭacittāḥ ॥ 3 ॥

amaravadhusahasrāṅyantarīkṣe sthitāni  
gīta ruta manojñā vādyasaṃgītiyuktā ।  
sarvarutasvarebhyo eva śabdā ravante  
jina kṛtu sumanojñaiḥ kleśatāpasya hantā ॥ 4 ॥

śūnya prakṛtiśāntā sarvadharmānimittāḥ  
khagapathasamatulyā nirvikalpā viśuddhāḥ ।  
gatisthitivinirvṛttā niṣprapañcā aśeṣā  
tathatasama tathatvāddharmatā nirvikalpā ॥ 5 ॥

yaiḥ punaranubuddhāḥ sarvadharme va teṣāṃ  
bhāvi tatha abhāve iñjanā nāsti kācit ।  
kṛpa karuṇa jage ca mocanārthaṃ prayuktā-  
ste hi sugataputrā aurasā dharmajātāḥ ॥ 6 ॥

dānacari carante sarva hitvā nimittam  
 śīlasudhṛtacittam ādisāntā prasāntāḥ |  
 jagati kṛta kṣamante akṣayā dharmajñānī  
 viriyabalaupetāḥ sarvadharmāviviktāḥ || 7 ||

dhyānanayapraviṣṭā jīṛṇakleśā viśuddhāḥ  
 sarvaviditavastū ādisūnyādhimuktāḥ |  
 jñānakriyabalāḍhyā nityayuktā jagārtham  
 te hi sugataputrāḥ śāntapāpā mahātmāḥ || 8 ||

īdṛśā rutasahasra bhaṇitvā  
 khe sthitāḥ sumadhurā surakanyāḥ |  
 tūṣṇibhūta jinamīkṣi prasannā  
 dharmagauravaratā marukanyāḥ || 9 ||

vimukticandra abravīdvajragarbham viśāradam |  
 kīdṛśākāraṇiṣpattiḥ pañcamāyāmanantaram || 10 ||

[End of sixth bhūmī's initial gathas]



6 abhimukhī nāma ṣaṣṭhī bhūmiḥ ।

**A**

vajragarmo bodhisattva āha - yo'yaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvaḥ pañcamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau supariṣṭāṃ mārgaḥ ṣaṣṭhīm bodhisattvabhūmimavatarati । sa daśabhirdharma-samatābhiravatarati । katamābhirdaśabhiḥ? yaduta sarvadharm-ānimittasamatayā ca sarvadharmākṣaṇasamatayā ca sarvadharm-ānutpādasamatayā ca sarvadharmājātayā ca sarvadharmaviviktasamatayā ca sarvadharmādiviśuddhisamatayā ca sarvadharmāniṣṭhānasamatayā ca sarvadharmānāvīryūhanirvyūhasamatayā ca sarvadharmamāyāsvapnapratibhāsapratīśrutkodakacandrapratibimb-anirmāṇasamatayā ca sarvadharmabhāvābhāvādvayasamatayā ca । ābhirdaśabhirdharmasamatābhiravatarati ॥

sa evaṃsvabhāvān sarvadharmān pratyavakṣemāṇo'nusṛjan anulomayan avilomayan śraddadhan abhiyan pratiyan avikalpayan anusaran vyavalokayan pratipadyamānaḥ ṣaṣṭhīm abhimukhīm bodhisattvabhūmimanuprāpnoti tīkṣṇayā ānulomikyā kṣāntyā । na ca tāvadanutpattikadharmakṣāntimukhamanuprāpnoti ॥

**B**

sa evaṃsvabhāvān sarvadharmānanugacchan bhūyasyā mātrayā mahākaruṇāpūrvaṃgamatvena mahākaruṇādhipateyatayā mahākaruṇāpariṣṭānārthaṃ lokasya saṃbhavaṃ ca vibhavaṃ ca vyavalokayate ।

**C**

tasya lokasya saṃbhavaṃ ca vibhavaṃ ca vyavalokayata evaṃ bhavati - yāvatyō lokasamudācāropapattayaḥ sarvāḥ, tā ātmābhīniveśato bhavanti । ātmābhīniveśavigamato na bhavanti lokasamudācāropapattaya iti । tasyaivaṃ bhavati - tena khalu punarime bālabuddhya ātmābhīniviṣṭā ajñānatimirāvṛtā bhāvābhāvābhilāṣiṇo-yoniśomanasikāraprasṛtā vipathaprayātā mithyānucāriṇaḥ puṇyāpuṇyāneṣṭhānabhisamśkāranupacinvanti । teṣāṃ taiḥ saṃskārairavaropitaṃ cittabījaṃ sāsravaṃ sopādānamāyatyāṃ jātijarāmaraṇa-punarbhavābhīnirvṛttisaṃbhavopagataṃ bhavati । karmakṣetr-ālayamavidyāndhakāraṃ tṛṣṇāsnehamasmimānapariṣyandanataḥ । dṛṣṭikṛtājālapravṛddhyā ca nāmarūpānkuraḥ prādurbhavati । prā-

durbhūto vivardhate | vivṛddhe nāmarūpe pañcānāmindriyāṇaṃ  
 pravṛttirbhavati | pravṛttānāmindriyāṇamanyonya(saṃ)nipātataḥ  
 sparśaḥ | sparśasya saṃnipātato vedanā prādurbhavati | vedan-  
 āyāstata uttare'bhinandanā bhavati | tṛṣṇābhinandanata upādānaṃ  
 vivardhate | upādāne vivṛddhe bhavaḥ saṃbhavati | bhava  
 saṃbhūte skandhapañcakamunmajjati | unmagnaṃ skandha-  
 pañcakaṃ gatipañcake'nupūrvaṃ mlāyati | mlānaṃ vigacchati |  
 mlānavigamājjvaraparidāhaḥ | jvaraparidāhanidānāḥ sarvaśoka-  
 paridevaduḥkhadaurmanasyopāyāsāḥ samudāgacchanti | teṣāṃ na  
 kaścitsamudānetā | svabhāvānābhogābhyāṃ ca vigacchanti | na  
 caiśāṃ kaścidvigamayitā | evaṃ bodhisattvo'nulomākāraṃ pratītya-  
 samutpādaṃ pratyavekṣate ||

**D**

tasyaivaṃ bhavati - satyeṣvanabhijñānaṃ paramārthato'vidyā |  
 avidyāprakṛtasya karmaṇo vipākaḥ saṃskārāḥ | saṃskārasaṃ-  
 niśritaṃ prathamam cittaṃ vijñānaṃ | vijñānasahajāścātvāra up-  
 ādānaskandhā nāmarūpam | nāmarūpavivṛddhiḥ ṣaḍāyatanam |  
 indriyaviśayavijñāgatrayasamavadhānaṃ sāsravaṃ sparśaḥ |  
 sparśasahajā vedanā | vedanādhyavasānaṃ tṛṣṇā | tṛṣṇāvivṛddhir-  
 upādānaṃ | upādānaprasṛtaṃ sāsravaṃ karma bhavaḥ | karma-  
 niṣyando jātiḥ skandhonmajjanam | skandhaparipāko jarā | jīrṇasya  
 skandhabhedo maraṇam | mriyamāṇasya vigacchataḥ saṃmūḍhasya  
 sābhiṣvaṅgasya hṛdayasaṃtāpaḥ śokaḥ | śokasamutthitā vākpra-  
 lāpāḥ paridevaḥ | pañcendriyanipāto duḥkham | manodṛṣṭīnipāto  
 daurmanasyam | duḥkhadaurmanasyabahulatvasaṃbhūtā upāyāsāḥ  
 | evamayam kevalo duḥkhaskandho duḥkhavṛkṣo'bhinirvartate  
 kārakavedakavirahita iti ||

tasyaivaṃ bhavati - kārakābhiniveśataḥ kriyāḥ prajñāyante | yatra  
 kārako nāsti, kriyāpi tatra paramārthato nopalabhyate |

**E**

tasyaivaṃ bhavati - cittamātramiḍaṃ yadidaṃ traidhātukam |

**F**

yānyapīmāni dvādaśa bhavāṅgāni tathāgatena prabhedaśo vyā-  
 khyātāni, api sarvāṅyeva tāni cittasamāśritāni | tatkaśya hetoḥ?  
 yasmin vastuni hi rāgasamyuktaṃ cittamutpadyate tadvijñānaṃ |  
 vastusaṃskāreśmimoho'vidyā | avidyācittasahajaṃ nāmarūpam |

nāmarūpavivṛddhiḥ ṣaḍāyatanam | ṣaḍāyatanabhāgīyaḥ sparśaḥ |  
 sparśasahajā vedanā | vedayato'vitṛptiṣṭṛṣṇā | ṭṛṣṇārtasya saṃgraho-  
 'parityāga upādānam | eṣāṃ bhavāṅgānāṃ saṃbhavo bhavaḥ |  
 bhavonmajjanam jātiḥ | jātiparipāko jarā | jarāpagamo maraṇamiti  
 ||

**G**

tatra avidyā dvividhakāryapratyupasthānā bhavati | ālambanataḥ  
 sattvān saṃmohayati, hetuṃ ca dadāti saṃskārābhinirvṛttaye | saṃ-  
 skārā api dvividhakāryapratyupasthānā bhavanti | anāgatavipāk-  
 ābhinirvṛtti ca kurvanti, hetuṃ ca dadāti vijñānābhinirvṛttaye |  
 vijñānamapi dvividhakāryapratyupasthānam bhavati | bhavapra-  
 ti-saṃdhiṃ ca karoti, hetuṃ ca dadāti nāmarūpābhinirvṛttaye | nāma-  
 rūpamapi dvividhakāryapratyupasthānam bhavati | anyonyopa-  
 stambhanam ca karoti, hetuṃ ca dadāti ṣaḍāyatanābhinirvṛttaye |

ṣaḍāyatanamapi dvividhakāryapratyupasthānam bhavati | sva-  
 viśayavibhaktitām cādarśayati, hetuṃ ca dadāti sparśābhinirvṛttaye |  
 sparśo'pi dvividhakāryapratyupasthāno bhavati | ālambana-  
 sparśanam ca karoti, hetuṃ ca dadāti vedanābhinirvṛttaye |  
 vedanāpi dvividhakāryapratyupasthānā bhavati | iṣṭāniṣṭobhayavi-  
 muktānubhavanam ca karoti, hetuṃ ca dadāti ṭṛṣṇābhinirvṛttaye |  
 ṭṛṣṇāpi dvividhakāryapratyupasthānā bhavati | saṃrajanīyavastu-  
 saṃrāgam ca karoti, hetuṃ ca dadāti upādānābhinirvṛttaye |  
 upādānamapi dvividhakāryapratyupasthānam bhavati | saṃkleśa-  
 bandhanam ca karoti, hetuṃ ca dadāti bhavābhinirvṛttaye |

bhavo'pi dvividhakāryapratyupasthāno bhavati | anyabhavagati-  
 pratyadhiṣṭhānam ca karoti, hetuṃ ca dadāti jātyabhinirvṛttaye |  
 jātirapi dvividhakāryapratyupasthānā bhavati | skandhonmajjanam  
 ca karoti, hetuṃ ca dadāti jarābhiniṃvṛttaye | jarāpi dvividhakārya-  
 pratyupasthānā bhavati | indriyapariṇāmam ca karoti, hetuṃ ca  
 dadāti maraṇasamavadhānābhinirvṛttaye | maraṇamapi dvividha-  
 kāryapratyupasthānam bhavati - saṃskāravidhvaṃsanam ca karoti,  
 aparijñānānucchedam ceti ||

**H**

tatra avidyāpratyayāḥ saṃskārā ityavidyāpratyayatā saṃskārāṅām-  
 anucchedo'nupastambhaśca | saṃskārapratyayam vijñānamiti

saṃskārapratyayatā vijñānānāmanucchedo'nupastambhaśca |  
 peyālaṃ...jātipratyayatā jarāmaraṇasyānucchedo'nupastambhaśca |  
 avidyānirodhātsaṃskāranirodha ityavidyāpratayatābhāvāt-  
 saṃskārāṇaṃ vyupaśamo'nupastambhaśca | peyālaṃ...jāti-  
 pratyayatābhāvājjarāmaraṇasya vyupaśamo'nupastambhaśca ||

**I**

tatra avidyā tṛṣṇopādānaṃ ca kleśavartmano'vyavacchedaḥ |  
 saṃskārā bhavaśca karmavartmano'vyavacchedaḥ | pariśeṣaṃ  
 duḥkhavartmano'vyavacchedaḥ | pravibhāgataḥ pūrvāntāparānta-  
 nirodhavartmano vyavacchedaḥ | evameva trivartma nirātmakam-  
 ātmātmīyarahitaṃ saṃbhavati ca asaṃbhavayogena, vibhavati ca  
 avibhavayogena svabhāvato naḍakalāpasadṛśam ||

**J**

api tu khalu punaryaducyate - avidyāpratyaḥ saṃskārā ityeṣā  
 paurvāntikyapekṣā | vijñānaṃ yāvadvedanetyeṣā pratyutpann-  
 āpekṣā | tṛṣṇa yāvadbhava ityeṣā aparāntikyapekṣā | ata urdhva-  
 masya pravṛttiriti | avidyānirodhātsaṃskāranirodha ityapekṣā-  
 vyavaccheda eṣaḥ ||

**K**

api tu khalu punastriduḥkhatā dvādaśa bhavāṅgānyupādāya | tatra  
 avidyā saṃskārā yāvatsaḍāyatanamityeṣā saṃskāraduḥkhatā |  
 sparśo vedanā caiśā duḥkhaduḥkhatā | pariśeṣāṇi bhavāṅgānyeṣā  
 pariṇāmaduḥkhatā | avidyānirodhātsaṃskāranirodha iti triduḥkhatā-  
 vyavaccheda eṣaḥ ||

**L**

avidyāpratyaḥ saṃskārā iti hetupratyayaprabhavatvaṃ  
 saṃskārāṇāṃ | evaṃ pariśeṣāṇāṃ | avidyānirodhātsaṃskāra-  
 nirodha ityabhāvaḥ saṃskārāṇāṃ | evaṃ pariśeṣāṇāṃ ||

avidyāpratyaḥ saṃskārā ityutpādavinibandha eṣaḥ | evaṃ pari-  
 śeṣāṇāṃ | avidyānirodhātsaṃskāranirodha iti vyayavinibandha  
 eṣaḥ | evaṃ pariśeṣāṇāṃ ||

avidyāpratyaḥ saṃskārā iti bhāvānulomaparīkṣā | evaṃ pari-  
 śeṣāṇāṃ | avidyānirodhātsaṃskāranirodha iti kṣayavyāvini-  
 vandha eṣaḥ | evaṃ pariśeṣāṇāṃ ||

**M**

sa evaṃ dvādaśākāraṃ praṭītyasamutpādaṃ pratyavekṣate'nuloma-  
pratilomaṃ yaduta bhavāṅgānusaṃdhitaśca ekacittasamava-  
saraṇataśca svakarmāsaṃbhedataśca avinirbhāgataśca trivartm-  
ānuvartanataśca pūrvāntapratyutpannāparāntāvekṣaṇataśca tri-  
duḥkhatāsamudayataśca hetupratyayaprabhavataśca utpāda-  
vyayavinibandhanataśca abhāvākṣayatāpratyavekṣaṇataśca ||

**N**

tasyaivaṃ dvādaśākāraṃ praṭītyasamutpādaṃ pratyavekṣamāṇasya  
nirātmato niḥsattvato nirjīvato niṣpudgalataḥ kārakavedakarahitato-  
śvāmikato hetupratyayādīnataḥ svabhāvasūnyato viviktatośva-  
bhāvataśca prakṛtyā pratyavekṣamāṇasya sūnyatāvimokṣamukham-  
ājātaṃ bhavati ||

tasyaivaṃ bhavāṅgānāṃ svabhāvanirodhātyantavimokṣapraty-  
upasthānato na kiṃcidharmanimittamutpadyate | atośya ānimitta-  
vimokṣamukhamājātaṃ bhavati ||

tasyaivaṃ sūnyatānimittamavatīrṇasya na kaścidabhilāṣa utpadyate  
anyatra mahākaruṇāpūrvakātsattvapariṇāpanāt | evamasya apraṇi-  
hitavimokṣamukhamājātaṃ bhavati ||

ya imāni trīṇi vimokṣamukhāni bhāvayan ātmaparasamjñāpagato  
kārakavedakasamjñāpagato bhāvābhāvasamjñāpagato

**O**

bhūyasyā mātrayā mahākaruṇāpuraskṛtaḥ prayujyate'pariniṣ-  
pannānāṃ bodhyaṅgānāṃ pariniṣpattaye, tasyaivaṃ bhavati –  
saṃyogātsaṃskṛtaṃ pravartate | viśaṃyogāna pravartate |  
sāmagryā saṃskṛtaṃ pravartate | viśaṃmagryā na pravartate | hanta  
vayamevaṃ bahudoṣaduṣṭaṃ saṃskṛtaṃ viditvā asya saṃyogasya  
asyaḥ sāmagryā vyavacchedaṃ kariṣyāmaḥ, na cātyantopāśamaṃ  
sarvasaṃskārānānavirāgayiṣyāmaḥ sattvapariṇāpanatāyai ||

evamasya bhavanto jinaputrāḥ saṃskāragataṃ bahudoṣaduṣṭaṃ  
svabhāvarahitamanutpannāniruddhaṃ prakṛtyā pratyav-  
ekṣamāṇasya mahākaruṇābhinirhārataśca sattvakāryānūtsargataśca  
saṅgajñānābhimukho nāma prajñāpāramitāvihāro'bhimukhībhavaty-

avabhāsayogena | sa evaṃ jñānasamanvāgataḥ prajñāpāramitāvihār-  
āvabhāsito bodhyaṅgāhārakāṃśca pratyayānupasaṃharati | na ca  
saṃskṛtasaṃvāseṇa saṃvasati | svabhāvopaśamaṃ ca saṃskārāṇaṃ  
pratyavekṣate | na ca tatrāvatiṣṭhate bodhyaṅgāparityaktatvāt ||

**P**

tasya asyāmabhimukhyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhi-  
sattvasya avatārasūnyatā ca nāma samādhirājāyate | svabhāva-  
śūnyatā...paramārthaśūnyatā...paramaśūnyatā...mahāśūnyatā...saṃpr-  
ayogaśūnyatā...abhinirhāraśūnyatā yathāvadavikalpaśūnyatā  
sāpekṣaśūnyatā vinirbhāgvinirbhāgaśūnyatā nāma samādhirājāyate  
| tasyaivaṃpramukhāni daśa śūnyatāsamādhimukhaśatasahasrāṇy-  
āmukhībhavanti | evamānimittasamādhimukhaśatasahasrāṇi apra-  
ṇihitasamādhimukhaśatasahasrāṇyāmukhībhavanti |

**Q**

tasya bhūyasyā mātrayā asyāmabhimukhyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau  
sthitasya bodhisattvasyabhedyāśayatā ca paripūryate | niyatāśayatā-  
...kalyāṇāśayatā...gambhīrāśayatā...apratyudāvartyāśayatā...apratipra-  
strabdhaśayatā...vimalāśayatā...anantāśayatā...jñānābhilāṣāśayatā...u-  
pāyaprajñāsaṃprayogaśayatā ca paripūryate ||

**R**

tasyaite daśa bodhisattvāśayāḥ svanugatā bhavanti tathāgatabodhau  
| apratyudāvartanīyavīryaśca bhavati sarvaparapravādibhiḥ | sam-  
avasṛtaśca bhavati jñānabhūmau | vinivṛttaśca bhavati śrāvakaḥpraty-  
ekabuddhabhūmibhyaḥ | ekāntikaśca bhavati buddhajñānābhi-  
mukhatāyām | asaṃhāryaśca bhavati sarvamāraḥśasamudācāraiḥ |  
supratiṣṭhitaśca bhavati bodhisattvajñānālokatāyām | supari-  
bhāvitaśca bhavati śūnyatānimittāpraṇihitadharmasamudācāraiḥ |  
saṃprayuktaśca bhavatyupāyaprajñāvicāraiḥ | vyavakīrṇaśca  
bhavati bodhipākṣikadharmābhinirhāraiḥ | tasya asyāmabhi-  
mukhyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya prajñāpāramitāvihāro'ti-  
riktatara ājāto bhavati, tīkṣṇā cānulomikī ṛṭṭiyā kṣāntireṣāṃ  
dharmāṇaṃ yathāvadanulomatayā na vilomatayā ||

**S**

tasya asyāmabhimukhyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhi-  
sattvasya yathāvatsamāpattiprajñājñānālokatayā prayujyate, prati-  
pattitaścādhārayati | sa bhūyasyā mātrayā tathāgatadharmakośa-  
prāpto bhavati | tasya asyāmabhimukhyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau

sthitasya anekān kalpāṃstāni kuśalamūlāni bhūyasyā mātrayā  
uttaptaprabhāsvaratarāṇi bhavanti | anekāni kalpaśatāni.... | tāni  
kuśalamūlāni bhūyasyā mātrayottaptaprabhāsvaratarāṇi bhavanti |  
tadyathāpi nāma bhavanto jinaputrāstadeva jātarūpaṃ vaiḍūryapari-  
sṛṣṭaṃ bhūyasyā mātrayottaptaprabhāsvaratarāṃ bhavati, evameva  
bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasya asyāmbhimukhyāṃ bodhisattva-  
bhūmau sthitasya tāni kuśalamūlānyupāyaprajñāñānavicāritāni  
bhūyasyā mātrayottaptaprabhāsvaratarāṇi bhavanti, bhūyo bhūyaśca  
praśamāsaṃhāryatāṃ gacchanti | tadyathāpi nāma bhavanto  
jinaputrāścandrābhā sattvāśrayāṃśca prahlādayati asaṃhāryā ca  
bhavati catasṛbhīrvātamaṇḍalībhiḥ, evameva bhavanto jinaputra  
bodhisattvasya asyāmbhimukhyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya  
tāni kuśalamūlānyanekeṣāṃ sattvakoṭīnayutaśatasahasrāṇāṃ kleśa-  
jvālāḥ praśamayanti, prahlādayanti, asaṃhāryāṇi ca bhavanti  
caturbhirṃmārāvacaraiḥ | tasya daśabhyaḥ pāramitābhyaḥ prajñā-  
pāramitā atiriktatamā bhavati, na ca pariśeṣā na samudāgacchati  
yathābalaṃ yathābhajamānam | iyaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhi-  
sattvasya abhimukhī nāma ṣaṣṭhī bodhisattvabhūmiḥ samāsa-  
nirdeśataḥ, yasyāṃ pratiṣṭhito bodhisattvo bhūyastvena sunirmito  
bhavati devarājaṃ kṛtī prabhuḥ sattvānāmbhimānapratipra-  
srabdhaye kuśalaḥ sattvānyābhimānikadharmebhyo vinivartayitum  
| asaṃhāryāśca bhavati sarvaśrāvaka-paripṛcchāyāṃ kuśalaḥ sattvān  
pratītyasamutpāde'vatārayitum | yacca kiṃcit.... ||

abhimukhī nāma ṣaṣṭhī bhūmiḥ ||

[Beginning of sixth bhūmi's final gathas]

upasaṃhāragāthāḥ |

paripūrṇamārgacaraṇā vidu pañcamāyāṃ  
dharmānimittata alakṣaṇatā ajātā |  
anutpāda ādipariśuddhyatiniṣprapañcā  
bhāvetva jñānamati ṣaṣṭhi samākramanti || 11 ||

dharmā vivikta apratigraha nirvikalpā  
māyāsvabhāva dvayabhāvatu viprayuktā |  
anulomayanta avilomanta dharmanetrī  
jñānānvitāḥ pravara ṣaṣṭhi samākramanti || 12 ||

tikṣṇānulomasthita jñānabalopapetāḥ  
samudāgamaṃ vibhavu prekṣiṣu sarvaloke |  
mohāndhakāraprabhavaṃ jagasaṃbhavātmā  
tasyaiva mohavigamena pravṛti nāsti || 13 ||

vicinanti pratyayakṛtiṃ paramārthaśūnyāṃ  
kriya hetupratyayasamajña kriyāvirodhau |  
yāthāvataḥ karakapetakriyāṃ viditvā  
vicinanti saṃskṛta ghanābhrasamaṃ nirīham || 14 ||

satyeṣu'jñānu paramārthatu sā avidyā  
karmā ca cetanabalena vibhāgaprāptam |  
cittam niśritya sahajaṃ puna nāmarūpam  
evaṃmukhā bhavati yāva dukhasya skandhaḥ || 15 ||

te cittamātra ti traidhātukamotaranti  
api cā bhavāṅga iti dvādaśa ekacitte |  
saṃrāgu jātu api cittu prabhāvitastu  
evaṃ ca saṃbhavakṣayaṃ puna cittabhāgam || 16 ||

kāryaṃ avidyadvaya kurvati mohabhāve  
mohebhi hetu vahate puna cetanāyāḥ |



evaṃ ca yāva jaradhvaṃsanaskandhabhedam  
anu sarva duḥkhaprabhavaṃ kṣayataḥ abhāvaḥ || 17 ||

ucchedu no bhavati pratyayatāmavidyā  
nocchedyatāpi kara prahāya saṃnirodham |  
moho teṣu ca upādānaṃ kleśavartma  
karma bhavaṃ ca api cetana śeṣa duḥkhā || 18 ||

mohaṃ tu āyatana saṃskṛtaduḥkha teṣāṃ  
sparśaṃ ca vedana sukhādukhatāya duḥkhā |  
śeṣānamaṅganapariṇāmaduḥkhavṛddhiḥ  
vyuccheda tasya duḥkhatā na hi ātmamasti || 19 ||

adhveṣu pūrvam tamacetanasamskṛtasya  
vijñāna vedana vivartati pratyutpannam  
aparāntu teṣu prabhavo dukhasambhveyam  
āpekṣa cchedu prasaraṃ ca nirīkṣayantaḥ || 20 ||

mohasya pratyayatu sambhavate vibandhā  
vinibandhanavyayakṣaye sati pratyayānām |  
hetośca mūlaprabhavaṃ na tu hetubhedam  
vyuparīkṣate ca jina jñāna svabhāvasūnyam || 21 ||

anuloma mohaprabhavaṃ ca prabhāvataśca  
pratilomahetu kṣayato bhava sarvacchedyam |  
gambhīrapratyayatamasya satośataśca  
vyuparīkṣate daśavidham aniketabuddhiḥ || 22 ||

saṃdhī bhavāṅgatu tathāpi ca karmasthānam  
avibhāgatastrividhu vartmani pūrvataśca |  
triyahetu duḥkhavibhavā udaya vyayaṃ ca  
abhāvato'kṣayata pratyaya anulomam || 23 ||

evaṃ pratīyasamutpāda samotaranti  
māyopamaṃ vitatha vedakarmāpanītam |  
svapnopamaṃ ca tathatā pratibhāsa caiva  
bālāna mohana marīcisamasvabhāvam || 24 ||

yā eva bhāvana sa sūnyata paṇḍitānām  
 rati pratayāna bhavate idamānimittam |  
 jānitva jātu vitatham praṇidhātu nāsti  
 anyatra sattvakṛpayā upapadyanti || 25 ||

evaṃ vimokṣamukha bhāvayi te mahātmā  
 kṛpabuddhi bhūya tatha buddhaguṇābhilāṣī |  
 saṃyogasamskṛtikṛta vyuparīkṣamāṇo  
 niyatāsāyo bhavati naikaguṇopapetaḥ || 26 ||

pūrṇā sahasra daśa sūnyataye samādhi  
 tatha ānimittavaradaṃ ca vimokṣa tāyī || 27<sup>2</sup> ||

pralhādayanti jagadāsaya candraābhā  
 vahamānu vāta caturo asaṃhāryaprāptā |  
 atikramya mārapathamābha jinaurasānām  
 praśamenti kleśaparitāpa dukhārditānām || 28 (29) ||

iha bhūmideśupagatā marutādhipāste  
 bhontī sunirmita kṛtāvadhimānaghātī |  
 yaṃ caiva ārabhiṣu jñānapathopapetā  
 asaṃhārya śrāvakagatī atikrānta dhīrāḥ || 29 (30) ||

ākāṅkṣamāṇu sugatātmaja vīryaprāptāḥ  
 koṣīśatasahasrapūrṇa samādhi labdhāḥ |  
 paśyanti ekakṣaṇi buddha daśaddiśāsu  
 pratapanti sūrya eva madhyagu grīṣmakāle || 30 (31) ||

gambhīra durdṛśā sūkṣma durjñeyā jinaśrāvakaiḥ |  
 ṣaṣṭhi bhūmirmahātmānāmākhyātā sugatātmajāḥ || 31 (32) ||

[End of sixth bhūmī's final gathas]

[Beginning of seventh bhūmī's initial gathas]

7 dūraṅgamā nāma saptamī bhūmiḥ ।

upakramagāthāḥ ।

atha vividharucirameghān marudgaṇo'bhikiriṣu vegaprāptāḥ ।  
pravyāharanti madhurā girivara śubha prītisaṃpūrṇāḥ ॥ 1 ॥

sādhu varatīkṣṇacittā guṇaśatasamupetajñānavaśavartim ।  
varacaraṇaṃ parituṣṭaṃ jagahitavarapuṇḍarikāṇām ॥ 2 ॥

tada pravaramatulamābhā maheśvarāḥ khegatā naravarasya ।  
vararuciragandhameghānabhikiri kleśaughamapahartum ॥ 3 ॥

pravyāharanti madhuraṃ marudgaṇā harṣakararuciraghoṣāḥ ।  
paramasulabdhalābhāḥ śrutu yairayu bhūminirdeśāḥ ॥ 4 ॥

tūrya madhuraḥṣayukta marukanyāḥ prīṇitamanobhiḥ ।  
sucarasugatānubhāvādvacaririyamīdrśī proktā ॥ 5 ॥

sumanī sucaraṇaśreṣṭhāḥ sudānta damakāna lokamahitānām ।  
atikramya sarvalokaṃ lokacarim darśayī sūkṣmām ॥ 6 ॥

darśenti kāya vividhān kāyākāyāṃśca dharmatopetāḥ ।  
śamathāḥ samitivibhakto bhaṇati ghoṣaṃ na cākṣaraṃ ravati ॥ 7 ॥

kṣetraśatamākramante pūjenti nāyakān paramapūjīyān ।  
ātmajanitakṣetrasaṃjñā vidhunitvā jñānavaśavartī ॥ 8 ॥

paripācayanti sattvānna cātmaparasaṃjñā sarvaśa upenti ।  
śubha saṃcinanti pravaraṃ na cāpi śubhasaṃcayaniketāḥ ॥ 9 ॥

rāgarajadoṣamohaiḥ paśyitva sarvaloka jvalamānān ।  
varjeti sarvasaṃjñā vīryaṃ varamārabhī kṛpayā ॥ 10 ॥

marukanyā devasaṃghāśca pūjentā varasvaram |  
tūṣṇīmbhāvaratāḥ sarve prekṣante puruṣarṣabham || 11 ||

pariṣadviprasanneyamavocat sugatātmajam |  
saptamyā bhūmerākārān nirdīśasva guṇākara || 12 ||

[End of seventh bhūmī's initial gathas]

7 duramgamā nāma saptamī bhūmiḥ ।

**A**

vajragarbha āha - yo'yaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvaḥ ṣaṣṭhyāṃ  
 bodhisattvabhūmau supariṇābodhisattvamārgaḥ saptamīm  
 bodhisattvabhūmimākrāmati, sa daśabhirupāyaprajñājnānābhi-  
 nirrṣṭairmārgāntarārambhaviśeṣairākramati । katamairdaśabhiḥ ?  
 yaduta śūnyatānimittāpraṇihitasamādhisuparibhāvitamānaśca  
 bhavati, mahāpuṇyajñānasambhāropacayaṃ ca sambibharti ।  
 nairātmyaniḥsattvanirjīvaniṣpudgalatām ca sarvadharmāṇā-  
 mavatarati, caturapramāṇābhinirhāraṃ ca notsrjati । puṇyadharm-  
 occhrayapāramitābhisaṃskāraṃ cābhisaṃskaroti, na ca kiṃcid-  
 dharmamabhiniviśate । sarvatraidhātukavivekaprāptaśca bhavati,  
 traidhātukaviṭhapanālaṃkārabhinirhāraṃ cābhinirharati । atyanta-  
 śāntopaśāntaśca sarvakleśajvālāpagamādbhavati, sarvasattvarāga-  
 veśakleśajvālāpraśānābhinirhāraṃ cābhinirharati । māyāmarīci-  
 svapnapratibhāsapratīśrutkodakacandrapratibimbānirmāṇābhāvābh-  
 āvasvabhāvādvayānugataśca bhavati, karmakriyāvibhaktiāpramāṇā-  
 śayatām cābhinirharati । ākāśasamakṣetrapathasubhāvitamanāśca  
 bhavati, buddhakṣetraviṭhapanālaṃkārabhinirhāraṃ cābhinirharati ।  
 prakṛtidharmakāyatām ca sarvabuddhanāmavatarati, rūpakāya-  
 lakṣaṇānuvyañjanaviṭhapanālaṃkārabhinirhāraṃ cābhinirharati ।

anābhilāpyarutaghoṣāpagataṃ ca prakṛtiśāntaṃ tathāgataghoṣam-  
 adhimucyate, sarvasvarāṅgavibhaktiśuddhyalaṃkārabhinirhāraṃ  
 cābhinirharati । ekakṣaṇatryadhvānubodhaṃ ca buddhānāṃ  
 bhagavatāmavatarati, nānālakṣaṇākalpasamkhyāvibhāvanāṃ cānu-  
 praviśati sattvāśayavibhāvanāya । evirbhavanto jinaputrā daśabhir-  
 upāyaprajñājnānābhinirrṣṭibhirmārgāntarārambhaviśeṣairbodhisattv-  
 aḥ ṣaṣṭhyā bodhisattvabhūmeḥ saptamīm bodhisattvabhūmim-  
 ākrānta ityucyate ॥

**B**

sa saptamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito bodhisattvo'pramāṇ-  
 āsattvadhātumavatarati । apramāṇaṃ ca buddhānāṃ bhagavatām  
 sattvapariṇāpanavinayakarmāvatarati । apramāṇaṃ lokadhātum-  
 avatarati । apramāṇaṃ ca buddhānāṃ bhagavatām kṣetrapari-  
 śuddhimavatarati । apramāṇaṃ ca dharmanānātvamavatarati ।

apramāṇaṃ ca buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ jñānābhisambodhim-  
 avatarati | apramāṇaṃ ca kalpasamkhyāpraveśamavatarati |  
 apramāṇaṃ ca buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ tryadhvānubodham-  
 avatarati | apramāṇaṃ ca sattvānāmadhimuktinānātvaviśeṣam-  
 avatarati | apramāṇaṃ ca buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ rūpakāyan-  
 ānātvadarśanamavatarati | apramāṇaṃ ca sattvānāmāsāyendriya-  
 nānātvamavatarati | apramāṇaṃ ca buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ ghoṣ-  
 odāhārasattvasamtoṣaṇamavatarati | apramāṇaṃ sattvānāṃ citta-  
 caritanānātvamavatarati | apramāṇaṃ ca buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ  
 jñānaprasarānugamamavatarati | apramāṇaṃ śrāvākayāna-  
 niryānādhimuktinānātvamavatarati | apramāṇaṃ ca buddhānāṃ  
 bhagavatāṃ mārgadeśanāvatāramavatarati | apramāṇaṃ pratyeka-  
 buddhayānasamudāgamaniṣpattimavatarati | apramāṇaṃ ca  
 buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ jñānamukhapraveśanirdeśamavatarati |  
 bodhisattvānāṃ bodhisattvacaryāprayogamavatarati | apramāṇaṃ  
 ca buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ mahāyānasamudāyāvatāranirdeśanām-  
 avatarati ||

### C

tasyaivaṃ bhavati - evamapramāṇaḥ khalu punastathāgatānām-  
 arhatāṃ samyaksambuddhānāṃ viśayo yasya na sukarā samkhyā  
 kartuṃ kalpakoṭīśatasahasrairyāvadetāvadbhirapi kalpakoṭīniyuta-  
 śatasahasraiḥ | sarva...viśayo'smābhiḥ samupasthāpayitavyo-  
 'nābhogato'kalpāvikalpataśca paripūrayitavya iti | sa evaṃ  
 supratyavekṣitajñānābhijñāḥ satatasamitamabhiyuktopāyaprajñā-  
 paribhāviteṣu mārgāntarārambhaviśeṣeṣu supraṭiṣṭhito bhavaty-  
 avicālyayogena ||

### D

sa ekakṣaṇamapi mārgābhinirhārānna vyuttiṣṭhate | sa gacchanneva  
 jñānābhinirhārayukto bhavati | tiṣṭhannapi niṣaṇṇo'pi śāyāno'pi  
 svapnāntaragato'pyapagatanīvaraṇaḥ sarveryāpathe sthito'virahito  
 bhavati ebhirevaṃrūpailiḥ samjñāmanasikāraiḥ | tasya sarvacitt-  
 otpāde daśānāṃ bodhisattvapāramitānāṃ samudāgamaparipūriḥ  
 samudāgacchati | tatkaśmāddhetoḥ? tathā hi sa bodhisattvaḥ sarv-  
 āṃścittotpādānutpannotpannān mahākāruṇāpūrvakān buddha-  
 dharmasamudāgamāya tathāgatajñānāya pariṇāmayati | tatra yaḥ  
 kuśalamūlasya sattvebhya utsargo buddhajñānaṃ paryeṣamāṇasya,  
 iyamasya dānapāramitā | yaḥ praśamaḥ sarvakleśaparidāhānām,

iyamasya śīlapāramitā | yā kṛpāmaitrīpūrvagamā sarvasattveṣu  
 kṣāntiḥ, iyamasya kṣāntipāramitā | ya uttarottarakuśaladharm-  
 ātṛptatayārambhaḥ parākramaḥ, iyamasya vīryapāramitā | yā  
 vipratīśāryavisṛtamārgatā sarvajñajñānābhīmukhatā, iyamasya  
 dhyānapāramitā | yā sarvadharmāṇāṃ prakṛtyanutpādābhīmukhī  
 kṣāntiḥ, iyamasya prajñāpāramitā | yo'pramāṇajñānābhīnirhāraḥ,  
 iyamasyopāyakauśalapāramitā | yā sarvaparapravādimārasaṃghair-  
 mārgānācchedyatā, iyamasya balapāramitā | yadyathāvatsarva-  
 dharmajñānanatīraṇam, iyamasya jñānapāramitā | evamasya  
 bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasya dūraṅgamāyāṃ bodhisattva-  
 bhūmau sthitasya imā daśa pāramitāḥ kṣaṇe kṣaṇe paripūryante |  
 evaṃ catvāri saṅgrahavastūni paripūryante, catvāri ca adhiṣṭhānāni,  
 saptatṛiṃśad bodhipakṣyāśca dharmāḥ, trīṇi ca vimokṣamukhāni,  
 samāsataḥ sarvabodhyaṅgikā dharmāḥ kṣaṇe kṣaṇe paripūryante ||

**E**

evamukte vimukticanthro bodhisattvo vajragarbhaṃ bodhisattvam-  
 etadavocāt - kiṃ punarbho jinaputrā asyāmeva saptamyāṃ bodhi-  
 sattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhisattvasya sarvabodhyaṅgikā dharmāḥ  
 kṣaṇe kṣaṇe paripūryante, āhosvitsarvāsu daśasu bodhisattva-  
 bhūmiṣu? vajragarbha āha - sarvāsu bho jinaputrā daśasu bodhi-  
 sattvabhūmiṣu bodhisattvasya sarvabodhyaṅgāni kṣaṇe kṣaṇe  
 paripūryante, tadatirekeṇa punarasyāmeva saptamyāṃ bodhisattva-  
 bhūmau | tatkāsyā hetoḥ? iyaṃ bho jinaputrā bodhisattvabhūmiḥ  
 prāyogikacaryāparipūraṇī ca jñānābhijñānacaryākramaṇī ca | api tu  
 khalu punarbho jinaputrāḥ prathamāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sarva-  
 praṇidhānādhyālabhena bodhisattvasya sarvabodhyaṅgāni kṣaṇe  
 kṣaṇe paripūryante | dvitīyāyāṃ cittamalāpanayanena | tṛtīyāyāṃ  
 praṇidhānavivardhanatayā dharmāvabhāsapratilambhena ca |  
 caturthyāyāṃ mārgāvātāreṇa | pañcāmyāṃ lokatrayānuvṛtyā | ṣaṣṭhyāṃ  
 gambhīradharmamukhapraveśena | asyāṃ tu saptamyāṃ bodhi-  
 sattvabhūmau sarvabuddhadharmasamutthāpanatayā kṣaṇe kṣaṇe  
 sarvabodhyaṅgāni paripūryante |

**F**

tatkāsyā hetoḥ? yāni bodhisattvena prathamāṃ bodhisattvabhūmim-  
 upādāya yāvatsaptamī bodhisattvabhūmiritiyabhīnirhṛtāni jñānābhi-  
 nirhāraprayogaṅgāni, imānyaṣṭamī bodhisattvabhūmimārabhya  
 yāvadyantaparyavasānamityanābhogena pariniṣpadyante | tad-

yathāpi nāma bho jinaputrā dvayorlokadhātvoḥ saṃklišṭavīśuddh-  
 āśayaśca lokadhātorekāntapariśuddhāśayaśca lokadhātorlokāntarikā  
 duratikramā na śakyā yathātathātikramitumanyatra mahābhijñā-  
 balādhānāt, evameva bho jinaputra vyāmiśrapariśuddhā bodhi-  
 sattvacaryāntarikā duratikramā na śakyā yathātathātikramitum-  
 anyatra mahāprañidhānopāyaprajñābhijñābalādhānāt | vimukti-  
 candra āha - kiṃ punarbho jinaputra saptasu bodhisattvabhūmiṣu  
 kleśacaryāsaṃklišṭā bodhisattvacaryā pratyetyavā ? vajragarbha āha  
 - prathamāmeva bho jinaputra bodhisattvabhūmimupādāya sarvā-  
 bodhisattvacaryāpagatakleśakalmāṣā bodhipariñāmanādhipatyena  
 pratyetyavā | yathābhāgimārgasamatayā, (na ca) tāvatsaptasu bodhi-  
 sattvabhūmiṣu samatikrāntā kleśacaryetyavācanīyā | tadyathāpi  
 nāma bho jinaputra rājā cakravartī divyaṃ hastiratnamabhirūḍhaś-  
 caturo dvīpānākramati, manuṣyaduḥkhadāridryasaṃkleśadoṣāṃśca  
 prajānāti, na ca tairdoṣairlipyate | na ca tāvatsamatikrānto manuṣya-  
 bhāvaṃ bhavati | yadā punarmanuṣyāśrayaṃ hitvā brahmalokopa-  
 panno bhavati brāhmyavimānamabhirūḍhaḥ, sahasralokadhātum-  
 alpaḥcchreṇa paśyatyanuvicarati, brahmapratibhāsaṃ cādarśayati,  
 na ca manuṣya iti prabhāvīyate, evameva bhoḥ prathamāṃ bhūmim-  
 upādāya bodhisattvaḥ pāramitāyānābhirūḍhaḥ sarvajagadanu-  
 vicaran saṃkleśadoṣān prajānāti, na ca tairdoṣairlipyate samyag-  
 mārgābhirūḍhatvāt | na ca tāvatsamatikrāntaḥ sarvajagatsaṃkleśa-  
 doṣān vaktavyaḥ | saptasu bhūmiṣu sarvaprāyogikacaryāṃ vihāya  
 saptamyā bhūmeraṣṭamīm bodhisattvabhūmimavakrānto bhavati,  
 tadā pariśuddhaṃ bodhisattvayānamabhirūḍhaḥ sarvajagadanu-  
 vicaran sarvajagatsaṃkleśadoṣān prajānāti, na ca tairdoṣairlipyate  
 samatikrāntatvād lokatriyābhyaḥ | asyāṃ punarbho jinaputra  
 sapyamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito bodhisattvo bhūyastvena  
 rāgādīpramukhaṃ sarvakleśagaṇaṃ samatikrānto bhavati | so'syāṃ  
 dūraṅgamāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau caran bodhisattvo'saṃkleś-  
 āniṣkleśa iti vaktavyaḥ | tatkaśmāt? asamudācārātsarvakleśānāṃ na  
 saṃkleśa iti vaktavyaḥ | tathāgatajñānābhiḥśādapariṣūddhābhi-  
 prāyatvācca na niṣkleśa iti vaktavyaḥ ||

**G**

so'syāṃ saptamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito bodhisattvo'dhy-  
 āśayapariśuddhena kāyakarmaṇā samanvāgato bhavati | adhyāśaya-  
 pariśuddhena vākkarmaṇā adhyāśayapariśuddhena manaskarmaṇā



samanvāgato bhavati | ye ceme daśākuśalāḥ karmapathāstathāgata-  
vivarṇitāḥ, tān sarveṇa sarvaṃ samatikrānto bhavati | ye ceme daśa  
kuśalāḥ karmapathāḥ samyaksambuddhānubhāvitāḥ, tān satata-  
samitamānuvartate | yāni laukikāni śilpasthānakarmasthānāni  
yānyabhinirhṛtāni pañcamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau, tānyasya  
sarvāṅyanābhogata evaṃ pravartante | sa ācāryaḥ saṃmato bhavati  
trisāhasra mahāsāhasralokadhātau, sthāpayitvā tathāgatānarhataḥ  
samyaksambuddhān, aṣṭamīm bhūmimupādāya ca bodhisattvān |  
nāsyā kaścitsamo bhavatyāśayena vā prayogeṇa vā | yāni cemāni  
dhyānāni samādhyāḥ samapattayo'bhijñā vimokṣāśca, tānyasya  
sarveṇa sarvamāmukhībhavanti bhāvanābhinirhārākāreṇa | na ca  
tāvadvipākataḥ pariniṣpannāni bhavanti tadyathāpi nāma aṣṭamyāṃ  
bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhisattvasya | asyāṃ saptamyāṃ  
bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhisattvasya sarvacittotpādeṣu  
prajñopāyabhāvanābalaṃ paripūryate | bhūyasyā mātrayā sarva-  
bodhyaṅgaparipūriṃ pratilabhate ||

**H**

sośyāṃ saptamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitaḥ san suvicitavicayaṃ  
ca nāma bodhisattvasamādhi samāpadyate | suvicintitārthaṃ ca  
nāma... | viśeṣamatim ca nāma... | prabhedārthakośaṃ ca... |  
sarvārthavicayaṃ ca... | supraṭiṣṭhitadṛḍhamūlaṃ ca... |  
jñānābhijñānamukhaṃ ca... | dharmadhātu(pari)karmaṃ ca... |  
tathāgatānuśaṃsaṃ ca... | vicitrārthakośasaṃsāranirvāṇamukhaṃ ca  
bodhisattvasamādhiṃ samāpadyate | sa evaṃpramukhāni mahā-  
bhijñājñānamukhāni paripūrṇāni daśa samādhiśatasahasrāṇi bhūmi-  
pariśodhikāni samāpadyate ||

**I**

sa eṣāṃ samādhināmupāyaprajñāsupariśodhitānāṃ pratilambhān-  
mahākaruṇābaleṇa cātikrānto bhavati śrāvakaḥpratyekabuddha-  
bhūmim, abhimukhaśca bhavati prajñājñānavicāraṇābhūmeḥ ||

**J**

tasya asyāṃ saptamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhi-  
sattvasya apramāṇaṃ kāyakarma nimittāpagataṃ pravartate |  
apramāṇaṃ vākkarma...manaskarma nimittāpagataṃ pravartate  
suviśodhitamanutpattikadharmakṣāntyavabhāsitam | vimukticandra  
āha - nanu bho jinaputra, prathamāyāmeva bodhisattvabhūmau  
sthitasya bodhisattvasya apramāṇaṃ kāyavānmanaskarma sarva-

śrāvaka-pratyekabuddhacaryāṃ samatikrāntaṃ bhavati? vajragarbha āha - bhavati bho jinaputra | tatpunar-buddhadharmādhyālam-bana-māhātmyena, na punaḥ svabuddhivicāreṇa | asyāṃ tu punaḥ saptamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau svabuddhigocaravicāraprati-lambhādasamhāryaṃ śrāvaka-pratyekabuddhairbhavati | tadyathāpi nāma bhavanto jinaputrā rājakulaprasūto rājaputro rājalakṣaṇa-samanvāgato jātamātra eva sarvāmātyagaṇamabhibhavati rāj-ādhipatyena, na punaḥ svabuddhivicāreṇa | yadā punaḥ sa saṃvṛddho bhavati tadā svabuddhibalādhanataḥ sarvāmātyakriyā-samatikrānto bhavati, evameva bho jinaputrā bodhisattvaḥ saha-citt-otpādena sarvaśrāvaka-pratyekabuddhānabhibhavatyadhyāśaya-māhātmyena, na punaḥ svabuddhivicāreṇa | asyāṃ tu saptamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito bodhisattvaḥ svaviśayajñānaviśeṣa-māhātmyāvasthitatvāsarvaśrāvaka-pratyekabuddhakriyāmatikrānto bhavati ||

**K**

sa khalu punarbho bodhisattvo'syāṃ saptamyāṃ bodhisattva-bhūmau sthito gambhīrasya vivittasyāpracārasya kāyavānmanas-karmaṇo lābhī bhavati | na cottaraṃ viśeṣaparimārgaṇābhīyogam-avasṛjati | [yena parimārgaṇābhīyogena nirodhaprāptaśca bhavati, na ca nirodhaṃ sākṣātkaroti || ]

**L**

vimukticandra āha - katamāṃ bhūmimupādāya bodhisattvo nirodhaṃ samāpadyate? vajragarbha āha - ṣaṣṭhīm bho jinaputra bodhisattvabhūmimupādāya bodhisattvo nirodhaṃ samāpadyate | asyāṃ punaḥ saptamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau pratiṣṭhito bodhi-sattvaścittakṣaṇe cittakṣaṇe nirodhaṃ samāpadyate ca vyuttiṣṭhate ca | na ca nirodhaḥ sākṣātkṛta iti vaktavyaḥ | tena so'cintyena kāyavānmana skarmaṇā samanvāgata ityucyate | āścaryaṃ bho yatra hi nāma bodhisattvo bhūtaakoṭivihāreṇa ca viharati, na ca nirodhaṃ sākṣātkaroti | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra puruṣaḥ kuśalo mahāsāgare vārilakṣaṇābhijñāḥ paṇḍito vyakto medhāvī tatr-opagatayā mīmāṃsayā samanvāgato mahāsāgare mahāyāna-pātrābhiruḍḍho vahanakuśalaśca bhavati, vārikuśalaśca bhavati, na ca mahāsamudre vāridoṣairlipiyate, evameva bho jinaputra asyāṃ saptamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau pratiṣṭhito bodhisattvaḥ sarva-jñajñānamahāsāgarāvātīrṇaḥ pāramitāmahāyānapātrābhiruḍḍho

bhūtakoṭivihāreṇa ca viharati, na ca nirodham sākṣātkaroti, (na ca sasmṅkṛtātyantavyupāśamavitarkadoṣairlipyate) ||

**M**

sa evaṃ jñānabalādhānāprāptaḥ samādhijñānabalabhāvanābhini-  
nirhr̥tayā buddhyā mahatopāyaprajñābalādhānena saṃsāramukhaṃ  
cādarśayati | nirvānasatātāśayaśca bhavati | mahāparivāraparivṛtaś-  
ca bhavati | satatasamitaṃ ca cittavivekapratilabdho bhavati | trai-  
dhātukopapattiṃ ca prañidhānavaśēnābhinirharati sattvapari-  
pācanārtham | na ca lokadoṣairlipyate | śāntaprasāntopāśāntaśca  
bhavati | upāyena ca jvalati | jvalaṃśca na dahate | saṃvartate ca  
buddhajñānena | vivartate ca śrāvakaḥpratyekabuddhabhūmibhyāṃ  
| buddhajñānaviśayaakośaprāptaśca bhavati | māraḥviśayaḥgataśca  
dṛśyate | caturmārapathasamatikrāntaśca bhavati | māraḥviśaya-  
gocaraṃ cādarśayati | sarvatīrthyāyatanopagataśca dṛśyate |  
buddhatīrthyāyatanānūtsṛṣṭāśayaśca bhavati | sarvalokakriyānu-  
gataśca dṛśyate | lokottaradharmagatisamavasaraṇaśca bhavati |  
sarvadevanāgayakṣagandharvāsuraḥgaruḍakinnaramahoragamanuṣy  
āmanuṣyaśakrabrahmalokapālātirekavyū-hālaṃkāraviṭhapan-  
āprāptaśca bhavati | sarvabuddhadharmatimanasikāraṃ ca na  
vijahāti ||

**N**

tasyaivaṃ jñānasamanvāgatasya asyāṃ saptasyāṃ dūraṃgamāyāṃ  
bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhisattvasya bahavo buddhā ābhā-  
samāgacchanti... | tāṃśca tathāgatānarhataḥ samyaksambuddhān  
paryupāsate | teṣāṃ ca sakāśādgaṇavacitrikāreṇa satkṛtya dharmā-  
deśanāṃ śṛṇoti, udgr̥hṇāti dhārayati | śrutvā ca yathāvatsamāpatti-  
prajñājñānālokena prayujyate | pratipattitaścādhārayati | śāsana-  
saṃdhārakaśca bhavati teṣāṃ buddhānāṃ mahātmanāṃ | asaṃ-  
hāryaśca sarvaśrāvakaḥpratyekabuddhābhisamayapariṣchāsu |  
tasya bhūyasyā mātrayā sattvānugrahāya gambhīradharmakṣāntir-  
viśuddhyati | tasya...anekān kalpāṃstāni kuśalamūlānyuttapyante,  
pariśuddhyanti, karmaṇyāni ca bhavanti, paryavadānaṃ cāgacchanti  
| anekāni kalpaśatāni...anekāni kalpakoṭīniyutaśatasahasrāni tāni  
kuśalamūlānyuttapyante, pariśuddhyanti, karmaṇyāni ca bhavanti,  
paryavadānaṃ cāgacchanti | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputrāḥ tadeva  
jātarūpaṃ sarvaratnapratyuyptaṃ bhūyasyā mātrayottaptataraṃ  
bhavati, prabhāsvarataraṃ bhavati, asaṃhāryataraṃ ca bhavaty-

anyābhyo bhūṣaṇavikṛtibhyaḥ, evameva bho jinaputrāḥ...tāni kuśalamūlānyupāyaprajñājñānābhinirhṛtāni bhūyasyā mātrayottaptatarāṇi bhavanti prabhāsvaratarāṇi, paryavadātatarāṇi asaṃhāryatarāṇi ca bhavanti sarvaśrāvaka-pratyekabuddhaiḥ | tad-yathāpi nāma bho jinaputrāḥ sūryābhā asaṃhāryā bhavanti sarvajyotirgaṇacandrābhābhīscaturṣu mahādvīpeṣu, sarvasnehagatāni bhūyastvena pariśoṣayanti, sarvaśasyāni paripācayanti, evameva bho jinaputrā...tāni kuśalamūlānyasaṃhāryāṇi bhavanti sarvaśrāvaka-pratyekabuddhaiḥ, caturviparyāsagatāni ca sarvakleśa-snehagatāni bhūyastvena pariśoṣayanti | kleśāvilāni ca sarvasaṃtānāni paripācayanti | tasya daśabhyaḥ pāramitābhya upāyaukāśalyapāramitā atiriktatamā bhavati, na ca pariśeṣā na samudāgacchati yathābalaṃ yathābhajamānam | iyaṃ bho jinaputrā bodhisattvasya dūraṃgamā nāma saptamī bodhisattvabhūmiḥ samāsānirdeśataḥ, yasyāṃ pratiṣṭhito bodhisattvo bhūyastvena vaśavartī bhavati devarājaḥ kṛtī prabhuḥ sattvānāmabhisamayajñānopasaṃhāreṣvaparyantaḥ sarvaśrāvaka-pratyekabuddhapariṣcchāsu kuśalaḥ sattvānniyāmamavakrāmayitum | yacca kicit...||

dūraṃgamā nāma saptamī bhūmiḥ ||

[Beginning of seventh bhūmī's final gathas]

upasaṃhāragāthāḥ ।

gambhīrajñāna paramārthapadānusārī  
 ṣaḍbhūminiścitamatīḥ susamāhitātmā ।  
 prajñāmupāya yugapadyabhinirharanto  
 bhūmyākramanti vidu saptami caryaśreṣṭhām ॥ 13 ॥

śūnyānimittaprañidhīkṛpamaitrayuktā  
 buddhānudharma sugatānuga pūjayantaḥ ।  
 jñānena śubhamahapūṇyabalebhyatṛptā-  
 stāmākramanti vidu saptami bhūmideśam ॥ 14 ॥

traidhātukena adhvīśa vivekaprāptāḥ  
 śāntaśca kleśabalaśāntijagābhikāṅkṣī ।  
 pratibhāsa māya supinādvayadharmacārī  
 kṛpa darśayanti vidu saptamimākramanti ॥ 15 ॥

śodhenti kṣetra khasamāśaya nirvikalpā  
 jinalakṣanairupāgato'caladharmatāyām ।  
 abhilāpyaghoṣavigatā jagatoṣaṅārthaṃ  
 kṣaṇajñāna cittasya jināna samosaranti ॥ 16 ॥

abhāsaprāpta iti dharma vicārayanti  
 ākrānta bhūmipravarāṃ jagadarthakārāḥ ।  
 te atra bhūmyasthita sattvacarī anantān  
 vicinanti karma sugatān niyutāpramāṇān ॥ 17 ॥

kṣetrāṃśca naikavidhadharmatha kalpasamkhyān  
 adhīmuktiāśaya ca cittavicitradhārān ।  
 triyāṇadeśanamananta samosaranti  
 asmābhi sattva paripācayitavyametat ॥ 18 ॥

ye te jñānānīcītā varamārgaprāptā  
 īryāpathaiścaturbhi prajñāmupāyamuktāḥ ।

sarvasmi cittakṣaṇi bodhiguṇānuprāptāḥ  
paripūrayanti daśa pāramitāpradeśān || 19 ||

sarveṣu mārḡakuśalasya ya eṣa dānaṃ  
śīlaṃ ca kleśapraśamaṃ kṣamamakṣatitvam |  
vīryaṃ ca bhūyu anu uttari ārabhante  
mārḡe acalyataya dhyānaguṇānvitānām || 20 ||

anutpādakṣānti virajā varaprajña śreṣṭhā  
parṇāmupāya praṇidhī bhuyu kāṅkṣi lakṣmī |  
ato'mardayitva balajñānanifiraṇatvād  
evaṃ khu bodhiguṇa sarvakṣaṇenuṇenti || 21 ||

ālambanātu prathamā guṇapāripūri  
dvitīyā malāpanaya ūrdhva vibandhacchedam |  
caturthāya mārḡu samatākriya pañcamāya  
anutpāda āhvaya viduḥ puna ṣaṣṭhavṛttiḥ || 22 ||

iha saptamīmupagatāḥ sakalaṃ guṇāni  
praṇidhāna naikavidhānabhinirharanti |  
kiṃ kāraṇaṃ yaduta jñānakriyābhyuṇenti  
sā aṣṭamīprabhṛti sarvaviśuddhyuṇenti || 23 ||

duratikramā dūraṃgamā bahusthānakarmā  
kṣetrāntaradvipathameva yathottaranti |  
vicaranti saptasu alipta nṛpo yathaiva  
mārḡasthitā na puna sarvatikrānta dhīrāḥ || 24 ||

yada aṣṭamīmupagatāḥ puna jñānabhūmim  
atikrānta cittaviṣaye sthita jñānakarme |  
brahmā na pekṣati jagannaramānuṣātmā  
evaṃ caranti vidu padmamivā aliptāḥ || 25 ||

atra sthitā vividhakleśamatikramanti  
teṣāṃ na kleśacari no ca kṣayo'nuprāptiḥ |  
mārḡasthitā na tada kleśacariṃ caranti  
saṃpūrṇa āśaya jinajña kṣayo na tāvat || 26 ||

ye laukikā vividhaśilpakriyāprayogā  
 ājāti sarvavidunā sthita śāstrajñāne |  
 dhyānā abhijña bala bhāvayanto'bhuyupenti  
 bhūyaḥ samādhi vividhānabhinirharanti || 27 ||

atikrānta śravakacarim̐ tatha pratyayānām  
 sthita bodhisattvacaraṇe vidu apramāṇam |  
 pūrve hi āśayatayā iha jñānatāyā  
 nr̥patīsuto yatha vivṛddhabalopapetaḥ || 28 ||

gāmbhīryatāmupagatā bhuyu ārabhanti  
 cittam̐ nirodhupagatā na ca sākṣikriyāḥ |  
 yathā sāgare upagatāḥ sthita yānapātre  
 pratyakṣa sarva udake na ca yānahāniḥ || 29 ||

bhūyo upāyabalaprajñavarābhyupetā  
 durjñeyasarvajagajñānakriyāguṇāḍhyāḥ |  
 pūjenti buddha niyutā bhuyu śuddhibhāvā  
 yathā tadvibhūṣaṇavicitritu naikaratnaiḥ || 30 ||

atra sthitāna vidunām̐ varaprajña ābhā  
 śoṣenti tṛṣṇasalilam̐ yatha bhāskārābhāḥ |  
 te atra bhūmyupagatā vaśavartinaśca  
 bhonti kṛti kuśala jñānaphalodeśaiḥ || 31 ||

ākāṅkṣamāṇa dṛḍhavīryabalābhyupetāḥ  
 koṭīnayūtaśata buddhasahasra pūrṇān |  
 paśyanti sarvadiśatāsu samāhitatvād  
 bhūyo'pyataḥ praṇidhiśreṣṭha guṇāprameyāḥ || 32 ||

durjñeyā sarvalokena vaśipratyekacāribhiḥ |  
 ityeṣā saptamī bhūmirupāyaprajñaśodhanā || 33 ||

[End of seventh bhūmī's final gathas]





[Beginning of eighth bhūmi's initial gathas]

8 acalā nāma aṣṭamī bhūmiḥ ।

upakramagāthāḥ ।

eva śrutva caraṇaṃ viduna śreṣṭhaṃ  
devasaṃgha muditā marupatiśca ।  
bodhisattva bahavo jagaddhitaiṣi  
pūjayanti sugataṃ jīnasutāṃśca ॥ 1 ॥

puṣpamālya rucirā dhvajāpatākā  
gandhacūrṇa rucirā ratanavastrā ।  
chatra naikarucirān maṇipratyuptān  
hārameghapravarānabhisṛjanti ॥ 2 ॥

manojñaghoṣamadhuraṃ suravandū  
mukta naikaturiyapravarānāṭān ।  
pūjanārthi jīnaputra sugatāṃśca  
varṇaśreṣṭha munino udāharanti ॥ 3 ॥

sarvi darśi vṛṣabhī dvipādaśreṣṭho  
darśi buddhaviṣayaṃ jagaddhitārtham ।  
śabdamegha rucirān pratāḍamānā-  
stūryatāla vividhāstada pramuktāḥ ॥ 4 ॥

vālokoṭi sugatāḥ śatasahasrā  
gaṅgākoṭi nayutā rajaviśiṣṭāḥ ।  
kṣemamapratīsamāḥ pravaraśreṣṭhaṃ  
deśayanti vṛṣabhī virajadharmam ॥ 5 ॥

preta tīrya narakā manujadevāḥ  
yakṣa rakṣa bhujagā asurasamghā ।

.....

nānakarmaviṣaye samanubhonti ॥ 6 ॥

sarvakṣetraviṣaye dhutarajānāṃ  
 cakra śreṣṭhapravaraṃ tadanirvṛttam |  
 deśayanti madhuraṃ sugataghoṣaṃ  
 saṃjñacitta jagatastatha vicāran || 7 ||

sattvakāyi sugatā vividhakṣetrā  
 kṣetri sattvaprarāḥ punavipākāḥ |  
 devamānuṣagatī tatha vicitrā  
 jñātvā sarva sugato bhaṇati dharmam || 8 ||

sūkṣmasaṃjñā bhavati vipulakṣetre  
 vipulasaṃjñā bhavati rajanimitte |  
 evamādi vividhāṃ sugataṛddhiṃ  
 sarvaloka bhaṇato na kṣepayeyuḥ || 9 ||

īddaśaṃ vacamāhātmyaṃ vacitvā madhurasvaram |  
 praśāntā pariṣatprītā prekṣate vadatāṃ varam || 10 ||

praśānta parśadaṃ jñātvā mokṣacandro'bravītpunaḥ |  
 aṣṭamā bhūmiākārāṃ praveśaṃ ca nidarśaya || 11 ||

[End of eighth bhūmi's initial gathas]

8 acalā nāma aṣṭamī bhūmiḥ ।

**A**

vajragarbho bodhisattva āha - yo'yaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvaḥ saptasu bodhisattvabhūmiṣu sukṛtavicyayaḥ prajñopāyābhyāṃ supariśodhitamārgaḥ susaṃbhṛtasam̐bhāraḥ supari-baddhamahāprañidhānaḥ adhiṣṭhitatathāgatādhiṣṭhānaḥ svakuśalamūlabalādhānaprāptaḥ tathāgatabalavaiśāradyaṅnikabuddhadharmānugatasam̐jñāmanasikāraḥ supariśodhitādhyāśayasam̐kalpa puṇyajñānalābhyudgataḥ mahākaraṇākṛpābhyāṃ sarvasattvānusr̥ṣṭaprayogaḥ apramāṇajñānapathānugataḥ,

**B**

sa sarvadharmānāmādyanutpannatām ca yathābhūtamavatarati । ajātātām ca alakṣaṇatām ca asaṃbhūtātām ca avināśitām ca anīṣṭhitātām ca apravṛttitām ca anabhinivṛttitām ca abhāvasvabhāvatām ca ādimadhyaparyavasānasamatām ca tathatāvikalpa-sarvajñajñānapravesātām ca sarvadharmānām yathābhūtamavatarati । sa sarvaśāścittamanovijñānavikalpasam̐jñāpagato'navagṛhītākāśa-samo'bhyavakāśaprakṛtito'vatīrṇo'nutpattikadharmakṣāntiprāpta ityucyate ॥

**C**

tatra bhavanto jinaputrā evaṃ kṣāntisamanvāgato bodhisattvaḥ sahapratilambhādacalāyā bodhisattvabhūmergambhīraṃ bodhisattvavihāramanuprāpto bhavati durājñātamasaṃbhinnam sarvanimittāpagatam sarvasam̐jñāgrahavyāvṛttamapramāṇam-asam̐hāryam sarvaśrāvakaḥpratyekabuddhaiḥ sarvavivekābhīmukhībhūtam । tadyathāpi nāma bhavanto jinaputrā bhikṣur̥ddhimāṃś-cetovaśīpāramitāprāpto'nupūrveṇa navamaṃ nirodham samāpannaḥ sarveñjitamanyanāspanditavikalpāpagato bhavati, evameva bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvo'syā aṣṭamī acalāyā bodhisattvabhūmeḥ sahapratilambhātsarvābhogavigato'nābhogadharmatāprāptaḥ kāyavākittautsukyāpagataḥ sarveñjitamanyanāspanditavikalpāpagato vipākadharmatāvasthito bhavati । tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputrāḥ puruṣaḥ suptaḥ svapnāntaragato mahaughapṛāptamātmānaṃ sam̐jñānīte । sa tatra mahadvyāyāmautsukyamārabhetottaraṇāya । sa tenaiva mahatā vyāyāmautsukyena vibudhyeta । samanantaravibuddhaśca vyāyāmautsukyabhayāpagato bhavet ।

evameva bho jinaputrā bodhisattvaścaturmahaughaprāptaṃ sattva-  
kāyaṃ saṃjānāna uttaraṇābhiprāyaḥ sarvajñajñānābhisam̐bodhāya  
mahadvyāyāmautsukyamārabhate | sa mahāvīryārambhaprāptaḥ  
samanantaramanuprāpta imāmacalāṃ bodhisattvabhūmiṃ sarv-  
ābhogavigato bhavati | tasya sarveṇa sarvaṃ dvayasamudācāro vā  
nimittasamudācāro vā nābhāsībhavati | tadyathāpi nāma bho jina-  
putrā brahmalokopapattisthitaḥ kāmāvacarān kleśān na samud-  
ācarati, evameva bho jinaputrā bodhisattvo'calāyāṃ bodhisattva-  
bhūmau sthitaḥ sarvacittamanovijñānasamudācārāna samudācarati  
| sarvabuddhasamudācāramapi...bodhisamudācāramapi...-  
bodhisattvasamudācāramapi...pratyekabuddhasamudācāramapi...śrā-  
vakasamudācāramapi...nirvāṇasamudācāramapi...arhatsamudācāram-  
api...anāgāmisamudācāramapi...nirvāṇasamudācāramapi...arhatsamu-  
dācāramapi...anāgāmisamudācāramapi...sakṛdāgāmisamudācāramap-  
i...srotaāpannasamudācāramapi na samudācarati | kaḥ punarvādo  
laukikān samudācārān samudācarīṣyatīti | |

**D**

tasya khalu bho jinaputra bodhisattvasya evamimāmacalāṃ  
bodhisattvabhūmimanugatasya pūrvapraṇidhānabalādhānasthitasya  
buddhā bhagavantastasmin dharmamukhasrotasi tathāgatajñān-  
opasaṃhāraṃ kurvanti | evaṃ cainaṃ bruvanti - sādhu sādhu kula-  
putra | eṣā paramārthakṣāntirbuddhadharmānugamāya | api tu  
khalu punaḥ kulaputra yā asmākaṃ daśabalacaturvaiśāradya-  
buddhadharmasam̐ddhiḥ, sā tava nāsti | tasyā buddhadharma-  
sam̐ddheḥ paryeṣaṇāya abhiyogaṃ kuru, vīryamārabhasva |  
etadeva kṣāntimukhaṃ monmoksīḥ |

**E**

api tu khalu punaḥ kulaputra kiṃcāpi tvayaivaṃ śāntavimokṣa-  
vihāro'nuprāptaḥ, imān punaraśāntānaprasāntān bālapṛthagjanān  
nānākleśasamudācāraprāptān vividhavitarkopahatamānasān sam-  
anvāhara, apekṣasva |

**F**

api tu khalu punaḥ kulaputra pūrvapraṇidhānamanusmara sattv-  
ārthasam̐prāpaṇaṃ jñānamukhācintyatāṃ ca |

**G**

api tu khalu punaḥ kulaputra eṣā sarvadharmāṇāṃ dharmatā |  
utpādādvā tathāgatānāmanutpādādvā sthitaivaiśā dharmatā

dharmadhātusthitiḥ yadidaṃ sarvadharmasūnyatā sarvadharm-  
ānupalabdhiḥ | naitayā tathāgatā eva kevalaṃ prabhāvyaṃ, sarva-  
śrāvakaḥ pratyekabuddhā api hyetā mavikalpadharmatām-  
anuprāpnuvanti |

**H**

api tu khalu punaḥ kulaputra prekṣasva tāvat tvamasmākaṃ kāyā-  
pramāṇatām ca jñānāpramāṇatām ca buddhakṣetrāpramāṇatām ca  
jñānābhinirhārāpramāṇatām ca prabhāmaṇḍalāpramāṇatām ca svar-  
āṅgaviśuddhyapramāṇatām ca | tathaiva tvamapyabhinirhāram-  
utpādāya |

**I**

api tu khalu punaḥ kulaputra ekastveṣa āloko yo'yaṃ sarvadharmā-  
nirvikalpālokaḥ | īdṛśāstu kulaputra dharmālokāstathāgatānām-  
aparyantaḥ aparyantakṛtā aparyantabaddhāḥ, yeṣāṃ saṃkhyā  
nāsti, gaṇanā pramāṇamupaniṣadaupamyam nāsti, teṣāṃ-  
adhigamāya abhinirhāramutpādāya |

**J**

api tu khalu punaḥ kulaputra prekṣasva tāvaddaśasū dikṣu  
apramāṇakṣetratām ca apramāṇasattvatām ca apramāṇadharmā-  
vibhaktitām ca | tatsarvamanugaṇaya | yathāvattayā abhinirhāram-  
utpādāya | iti hi bho jinaputra te buddhā bhagavanta evaṃbhūmy-  
anugatasya bodhisattvasya evaṃ pramukhānyaprameyāṅ-  
asaṃkhyeyāni jñānābhinirhāramukhānyupasaṃharanti, yairjñān-  
ābhinirhāramukhairbodhisattvo'pramāṇajñānavibhaktito'bhinirhāra-  
karmābhiniṣpādāyati ||

**K**

ārocayāmi te bho jinaputra, prativedayāmi | te cedbuddhā  
bhagavantastaṃ bodhisattvamevaṃ sarvajñajñānābhinirhāra-  
mukheṣu nāvātārayeyuḥ, tadevāsya parinirvāṇaṃ bhavetsarva-  
sattvakāryapratiprasabdhiśca | tena khalu punarbuddhā  
bhagavantastasya bodhisattvasya tāvadapramāṇaṃ jñānābhinirhāra-  
karmopasaṃharanti, yasyaikakṣaṇābhinirhāraḥ tasya jñānābhinirhāra-  
karmaṇaḥ sa pūrvakaḥ prathamacittotpādāyā yāvāt-  
saptamīm bhūmipratiṣṭhāmupāgata ārambhāḥ śatataṃ nāpi kalām  
nopeti, sahasratamīmapi, śatasahasratamīmapi...peyālaṃ...  
koṭīnyutaśatasahasratamīmapi kalām nopeti, saṃkhyāmapi,  
gaṇanāmapi, upamāmapi, upaniṣāmapi, yāvadaupamyamapi na

kṣamate | tatkasya hetoḥ? tathā hi bho jinaputra pūrvamekakāyābhinirhāratayā caryābhinirhāro'bhūt | imāṃ punarbhūmiṃ samārūḍhasya bodhisattvasya apramāṇakāyavibhaktito bodhisattvacaryābalaṃ samudāgacchati | apramāṇaghoṣābhinirhārataḥ apramāṇajñānābhinirhārataḥ apramāṇopapattiyabhinirhārataḥ apramāṇakṣetrapariśodhanataḥ apramāṇasattvapariṇāmanataḥ apramāṇabuddhapūjopasthānataḥ apramāṇadharmakāyānubodhataḥ apramāṇābhijñābalādhānābhinirhārataḥ apramāṇaparīkṣāmaṇḍalavibhaktiyabhinirhārataśca apramāṇānugatena kāyavāñmanaskarmābhinirhāreṇa sarvabodhisattvacaryābalaṃ samudāgacchatyavicālyayogena | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra mahāsamudragāmī potō'prāpto mahāsamudraṃ sābhogavāhano bhavati | sa eva samanantaramanuprāpto mahāsamudramānābhogavāhano vātamaṇḍalīpraṇīto yadekadivasena mahāsamudre kramate, tatsarvasābhogavāhanatayā na śakyam varṣāsatēnāpi tāvadaprameyamanuprāptum | evameva bho jinaputra bodhisattvaḥ susaṃbhṛtamahākuśalamūlasaṃbhāro mahāyānasamudāgamābhirūḍho mahābodhisattvacaryāsāgaramanuprāpto yadekamuhūrtena jñānānābhogataḥ sarvajñajñānenākramati, tanna śakyam pūrvakeṇa sābhogakarmanā kalpaśatasahasreṇāpi tāvadaprameyamanuprāptum ||

**L**

tatra bho jinaputra bodhisattvo'ṣṭamīṃ bodhisattvabhūmimanuprāpto mahatā upāyakausālyajñānābhinirhārānābhogaprasṛtāyā bodhisattvabuddhyā sarvajñajñānaṃ vicārayan lokadhātusaṃbhavaṃ ca vicārayati, lokadhātuvibhavaṃ ca vicārayati | sa yathā ca lokaḥ saṃvartate, taṃ ca prajānāti | yathā ca loko vivartate,... | yena ca karmopacayena lokaḥ saṃvartate,... | yena ca karmakṣayeṇa loko vivartate,... | yāvatkālaṃ ca lokaḥ saṃvartate, ... | yāvatkālaṃ ca loko vivartate, ... | yāvatkālaṃ ca lokaṃ saṃvṛttastiṣṭhati,... | yāvatkālaṃ ca loko vivṛttastiṣṭhati, taṃ ca prajānāti sarvatra cānavaśeṣataḥ | sa pṛthivīdhātuparīttatāṃ ca prajānāti mahadgatatāṃ ca...apramāṇatāṃ ca...vibhaktitāṃ ca prajānāti | abdhātu... | tejo dhātu... | vāyudhātu... | sa paramāṇurajahāsūkṣmatāṃ ca prajānāti, mahadgatatāṃ ca apramāṇatāṃ ca vibhaktitāṃ ca prajānāti |

apramāṇaparamāṇurajovibhaktikauśalyaṃ ca prajānāti | asyāṃ ca

lokadhātau yāvanti pṛthivīdhātoḥ paramāṇurajāṃsi tāni prajānāti | yāvanti abdhātoḥ... | tejodhātoḥ... | vāyudhātoḥ... | yāvantyo ratnavibhaktayo yāvanti ca ratnaparamāṇurajāṃsi tāni prajānāti | sattvakāya... | kṣetrakāya... | sa sattvānām kāyaudārikatām ca kāyasūkṣmatām ca kāyavibhaktitām ca prajānāti | yāvanti paramāṇurajāṃsi saṃbhūtāni nairayikakāyāśrayatastāni prajānāti | tiryagyonikāyāśrayataḥ... | ...yamalokakāyāśrayataḥ... | ...asuralokakāyāśrayataḥ... | devalokakāyāśrayataḥ .... | manuṣyalokakāyāśrayataḥ... | sa evaṃ paramāṇurajaḥprabhedajñānavatīrṇaḥ kāmadhātusaṃvartam ca prajānāti | rūpadhātuvivartam... | ārūpyadhātuvivartam ca prajānāti | rūpadhātuparīttatām... ārūpyadhātuparīttatām... | āmadhātuparīttatām ca mahadgatatām ca apramānatām ca vibhaktitām ca prajānāti | rūpadhātuparīttatām... ārūpyadhātuparīttatām... | kāmadhātuparīttatām ca mahadgatatām ca apramānatām ca vibhaktitām ca prajānāti | rūpadhātvarūpyadhātuparīttatām... | traidhātukavicārajñānānugame svabhīnirḥtajñānālokaḥ sattvakāyaprabhedajñānakuśalaḥ kṣetrakāyavibhāgjñānakuśalaśca sattvopapattiyātanābhīnirhāre buddhiṃ cārayati | sa yādṛśī sattvānāmupapattiśca kāyasamudāgamaśca, tādṛśameva svakāyamadhitiṣṭhati sattvapariṣānāya | sa ekāmapī trisāhasramahāsāhasrām lokadhātum spharitvā sattvānām svakāyam vibhakti-adhimuktyu tathatvāyopapattaye'bhīnirharati pratibhāsajñānānugamanatayā (yathā sattvāḥ pariṣākaṃ gacchantyanuttarasamyak-saṃbodhivimuktaye) | evaṃ dve vā tisro vā catasro vā pañca vā daśa vā viṃśatirvā triṃśadvā catvāriṃśadvā pañcāśadvā śataṃ vā yāvadanabhīlāpyā api trisāhasramahāsāhasrā lokadhātūḥ spharitvā sattvānām svakāyam...peyālam...pratibhāsajñānānugamanatayā | sa evaṃjñānasamanvāgato'syām bhūmau supratīṣṭhita ekabuddhakṣetrācca na calati, anabhīlāpyeṣu buddhakṣetreṣu tathāgataparṣanmaṇḍaleṣu ca pratibhāsaprāpto bhavati ||

### M

yādṛśī sattvānām kāyavibhaktiśca varṇalīṅgasamsthānārohapariṇāhādhimuktyadhyāśayaśca teṣu buddhakṣetreṣu teṣu ca parṣanmaṇḍaleṣu tatra tatra tathā tathā svakāyamādarśayati | sa śramaṇaparṣanmaṇḍaleṣu śramaṇavarṇarūpamādarśayati | brāhmaṇaparṣanmaṇḍaleṣu brāhmaṇavarṇarūpamādarśayati | kṣatriya... | vaiśya... | śūdra... | gṛhapati... | cāturmahārājika... | trāyastriṃśa... |

evaṃ yāma... | tuṣita... | nirmāṇarati... | paranirmitavaśavarti... | māra... | brahma... | yāvadakaniṣṭha... | śrāvakavaineyikānāṃ sattvānāṃ śrāvakakāyavarṇarūpamādarśayati | pratyekabuddhavaineyikānāṃ sattvānāṃ pratyekabuddhakāyavarṇarūpamādarśayati | bodhisattva... | tathāgata... | iti hi bho jinaputra yāvanto'nabhilāpyeṣu buddhakṣetreṣu sattvānāmupapattyāyatanādhimukti-prasarāsteṣu tathatvāya svakāyavibhaktimādarśayati ||

N

sa sarvakāyavikalpāpagataḥ kāyasamatāprāptaḥ (taccāsyā kāya-saṃdarśanamakṣūṇamavandhyaṃ ca sattvaparipākavinayāya) sa sattvakāyaṃ ca prajānāti | kṣetrakāyaṃ ca... | karmavipākakāyaṃ ca... | śrāvakakāyaṃ ca... | pratyekabuddhakāyaṃ ca ... | bodhisattvakāyaṃ ca... | tathāgatakāyaṃ ca... | jñānakāyaṃ ca... | dharmakāyaṃ ca... | ākāśakāyaṃ ca prajānāti | sa sattvānāṃ cittāśayābhinirhāramājñāya yathākālaparipākavinayānatikramādākāṅkṣan sattvakāyaṃ svakāyamadhitiṣṭhati | evaṃ kṣetrakāyaṃ karmavipākakāyaṃ...ātmakāyamadhitiṣṭhati | sa sattvānāṃ cittāśayābhinirhāramājñāya yaṃ yameva kāyaṃ yasmin yasmin kāye ākāṅkṣati, taṃ tameva kāyaṃ tasmin tasmin kāye (svakāyaṃ) adhitiṣṭhati | sa sattvakāyānāṃ karmakāyatāṃ ca prajānāti | vipākakāyatāṃ ca... | kleśakāyatāṃ ca... | rūpakāyatāṃ ca... | ārūpyakāyatāṃ ca prajānāti | kṣetrakāyānāṃ parītātāṃ ca prajānāti, mahadgatātāṃ ca apramānatāṃ ca saṃkliṣṭātāṃ ca viśuddhatāṃ ca vyatyastātāṃ ca adhomūrdhatāṃ ca samatalātāṃ ca samavasaraṇātāṃ ca digjālavi-bhāgatāṃ ca prajānāti | karmavipākakāyānāṃ vibhaktisaṃketāṃ prajānāti | evaṃ śrāvakakāyānāṃ pratyekabuddhakāyānāṃ bodhisattvakāyānāṃ vibhaktisaṃketāṃ prajānāti | tathāgatakāyānāmabhisambodhikāyatāṃ ca prajānāti | prañidhānakāyatāṃ ca... | nirmāṇakāyatāṃ ca | adhiṣṭhānakāyatāṃ ca | rūpalakṣaṇānuvyañjanavicitrālaṃkārakāyatāṃ ca | prabhākāyatāṃ ca | manomayakāyatāṃ ca | puṇyakāyatāṃ ca | jñānakāyatāṃ ca | dharmakāyatāṃ ca prajānāti | jñānakāyānāṃ suvicāritātāṃ ca prajānāti | yathāvannistiraṇātāṃ ca phalaprayogasaṃgrhītātāṃ ca laukikalokottaravibhāgatāṃ ca triyāṇavyavasthānatāṃ ca sādharma-āsādhāraṇātāṃ ca nairyāṇikānairyāṇikatāṃ ca śaikṣāśaikṣātāṃ ca prajānāti | dharmakāyānāṃ samatāṃ ca prajānāti | avikopanatāṃ ca avasthānasamketasaṃvṛttivyavasthānatāṃ ca sattvāsattvadharmā-



vyavasthānatām ca buddhadharmāryasamghavyavasthānatām ca prajānāti | ākāśakāyānāmapramāṇatām ca sarvatrānugatātām ca aśarīratām ca avitathānantatām ca rūpakāyābhivyaktitām ca prajānāti ||

**O**

sa evaṃ kāyajñānābhinirhāraprāpto vaśavartī bhavati sarvasattveṣu | āyurvaśītām ca pratilabhate'nabhilāpyānabhilāpyakalpāyuh-pramāṇādhiṣṭhānatayā | cetovaśītām ca pratilabhate'pramāṇ-āsamkhyeyasamādhinidhyaptijñānapraveśatayā | pariśkāravaśītām ca sarvalokadhātvanekavyūhālaṃkārapratimaṇḍitādhiṣṭhāna-saṃdarśanatayā | karmavaśītām ca yathākālāṃ karmavipākādhi-ṣṭhānasamdarśanatayā | upapattivaśītām ca sarvalokadhātūpapatti-saṃdarśanatayā adhimuktisamdarśanatayā sarvalokadhātubuddha-pratipūrṇasamdarśanatayā prañidhānasamdarśanatayā yatheṣṭa-buddhakṣetrakālābhisambodhisamdarśanatayā rddhisamdarśanatayā sarvabuddhakṣetraṛddhivikurvaṇasamdarśanatayā dharmasamdarśanatayā anantamadhyadharmamukhāloka-samdarśanatayā jñānasamdarśanatayā tathāgatabalavaiśāradya-āveṇikabuddhadharmalakṣaṇānuvyañjanābhisambodhisamdarśanatayā ||

**P**

sa āsāṃ daśānāṃ bodhisattvavaśītānāṃ sahapratilambhena acintya-jñānī ca bhavati atulyajñānī ca aprameyajñānī ca vipulajñānī ca asaṃhāryajñānī ca bhavati | tasyaivaṃbhūmyanugatasya evaṃ jñānasam-anvāgatasya atyantāgavadyaḥ kāyakarmasamudācāraḥ pravartate, atyantānavadyaśca vāk... | atyantānavadyaśca manaḥsamudācāraḥ pravartate | jñānapūrvaṃgamo jñānānuparivartī prajñāpāramit-ādhipateyo mahākaraṇāpūrvaka upāyakausalyasuvibhaktaḥ prañidhānasvabhinirhṛtastathāgatādhiṣṭhānasvadhiṣṭhito' pratiprasabdha sattvārthaprayogo'paryantalokadhātuvibhaktigataḥ | samāsato bho jinaputra bodhisattvasya imāmacalāṃ bodhisattvabhūmimanu-prāptasya sarvabuddhadharmasamudānayanāya kāyavānmanas-karmasamudācāraḥ pravartate | sa evamimāmacalāṃ bodhisattvabhūmimanuprāptaḥ supraṭiṣṭhitāśayabalaśca bhavati sarvakleśasamudācārāpagatvāt | supraṭiṣṭhitādhyāśayabalaśca bhavati mārgāvi-pravāśitatvāt | mahākaraṇābalasupraṭiṣṭhitaśca bhavati sattvārthān-utsargatvāt | mahāmaitrībala...sarvajagatparitrāṇatvāt | dhāraṇībala-

...asaṃpramoṣadharmatvāt | pratibhānabala...sarvabuddhadharma-  
pravicyavibhāgakuśalatvāt | abhijñābala...aparyantalokadhātu-  
caryāvibhāgakuśalatvāt | prañidhānabala...sarvabodhisattvakriyān-  
utsargatvāt | pāramitābala...sarvabuddhadharmasamudānayanatvāt  
| tathāgatādhiṣṭhānabala...sarvākārasarvajñānābhimukhatvāt | sa  
evaṃbalādhānaprāptaḥ sarvakriyāśca saṃdarśayati, sarvakriyāsu ca  
anavadyo bhavatyānupalīptaśca ||

### Q

iyam̐ bho jinaputra bodhisattvasya aṣṭamī jñānabhūmiracalety-  
ucyateśaṃhāryatvāt | avivartyabhūmirityucyate jñānavivartyatvāt |  
durāsadbhūmirityucyate sarvajagad-durjñānatvāt | kumārabhūmir-  
ityucyate anavadyatvāt | janmabhūmirityucyate yathābhīprāyavaśa-  
vartitvāt | pariniṣpannabhūmirityucyate apunaḥkāryatvāt | pari-  
niṣṭhitabhūmirityucyate | sukṛtajñānavicayatvāt | nirmāṇabhūmir-  
ityucyate svabhinirhṛtaprañidhānatvāt | adhiṣṭhānabhūmirityucyate  
| parāvīkōpanatvāt | anābhogabhūmirityucyate pūrvāntābhinir-  
hṛtatvāt ||

### R

evaṃ jñānasvabhinirhṛtaḥ khalu punarbho jinaputra bodhisattvo  
buddhagoṭtrānugato buddhaguṇaprabhāvabhāsitastathāgat-  
eryāpathacaryācāritrānugato buddhaviśayābhimukhaḥ satata-  
samitam̐ svadhiṣṭhitatathāgatādhiṣṭhānaśca bhavati śakrabrahma-  
lokapālapratyudgataśca vajrapāṇisatātānubaddhaśca samādhibalān-  
utsṛṣṭaśca ca apramāṇakāyavibhaktyabhinirhṛtaśca sarvakāyacaryā-  
balopagataśca mahābhijñāvīpākapariniṣpannaśca anantasamādhi-  
vaśavartī ca apramāṇavyākaraṇapratyēśakaśca yathāparipavakka-  
jagadabhisam̐bodhinidarśakaśca bhavati | sa evaṃ jñānabhūmy-  
anugato mahāyānamaṇḍalānupraviṣṭaḥ suvicāritamahājñānābhijñāḥ  
satatasamitam̐ pramuktaprajñālokaraśmirasaṅgadharmadhātupath-  
āvatīrṇo lokadhātupathavibhaktikovidāḥ sarvākāraguṇasaṃ-  
darśakaḥ svacittotpādavaśavartī pūrvāntāparāntasuvicitajñānaḥ  
sarvamārapathāvartanavivartanañānānugataḥ sarvatathāgata-  
viśayagocarānupraviṣṭo'paryantalokadhātuprasareṣu bodhisattva-  
caryām̐ caratyapratyudāvartyayogena | tata ucyate bodhisattvo-  
'calām̐ bodhisattvabhūmimanuprāpta iti ||

### S

tatra bho jinaputra acalām̐ bodhisattvabhūmimanuprāpto bodhi-

sattvaḥ satatasamitamaparyantatathāgatadarśanāvirahito bhavati samādhibalavabhinirhṛtatvāt | audārikaṃ buddhadarśanapūjopasthānaṃ notsrjati | sa ekaikasmin kalpe ekaikasmin lokadhātuprasare anekān buddhān, anekāni buddhaśatāni...peyālaṃ...anekāni buddhakoṭīnayutaśatasahasrāṇi satkaroti gurukaroti mānayati pūjayati sarvākārapūjābhinirhāraṃ copasaṃharati | tāṃśca tathāgatān paryupāste, lokadhātuvibhaktipūrvakaṃ ca dharmālokopasaṃhāraṃ pratīcchati | sa bhūyasyā mātrayā tathāgatadharmakośapraptoṣaṃhārya bhavati lokadhātupariṣcchānirdeśeṣu | tāni cāsya kuśalamūlānyanekān kalpānuttapyante... | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra tadeva jātarūpaṃ supariniṣṭhitaṃ kuśalena karmāreṇa suparikarmakṛtaṃ jambūdvīpasvāminaḥ kaṅṭhe śīrasi vā ābaddhamasaṃhāryaṃ bhavati sarvajambūdvīpakānāṃ sattvānāmābharaṇavikṛtaiḥ, evameva bho jinaputra asyāmacalāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhisattvasya tāni kuśalamūlānyasaṃhāryāṇi bhavanti sarvaśrāvakaप्रत्येकबुद्धाव्यवसायसप्तमिभूमिस्थिताः बोधिसत्त्वैः | इमं च भूमिमानुगतस्य बोधिसत्त्वस्य महती प्राज्ञज्ञानप्रभं सत्त्वानाम् क्लेशतमाम्सी प्रासमयति सुविभक्तज्ञानामुखं भिनिरहृतयै | तद्यथापि नामो बहो जिनपुत्रो साहस्रिको महाब्रह्मसाहस्रलोकधतुं मत्रियं सफरित्वा प्रभयवभहसयति, एवमेवो बहो जिनपुत्रो बोधिसत्त्वोऽयमालायं बोधिसत्त्वभूमौ स्थितो यवददासबुद्धक्षेत्रसतासहस्रपरामंनुराजसमं लोकधतुं महता मत्रियवभहसेना सफरित्वा सत्त्वानाम् क्लेशपरिदहानानुपुर्वेण प्रासमयति, अश्रयंश्चो प्रह्लादयति | तस्यो दासभयोः परामितभयोः प्राणधनपरामिता अतिरक्ततामो भवति, ना चो परिसेसु ना समुदगच्छति यथालां यथभहजमानं | इयं भवतो जिनपुत्रो बोधिसत्त्वस्यो अला नामो अश्रमि बोधिसत्त्वभूमिं समानिरदेशतः | विसराशं पुनरपर्यन्तकल्पनिरदेशनिष्ठतोऽनुगतव्यं | यस्यं प्रतिष्ठितो बोधिसत्त्वो भूयस्तवेना महाब्रह्मो भवति साहस्ररधिपतिः | अभिभूरानभिभूतोऽनवर्थादरसि वसिप्रप्रातः कृति प्रभुः सत्त्वानाम् सरवाश्रवाकाप्रत्येकबुद्धाबोधिसत्त्वपरामितोपदेशोपसांहरेशु असंहर्यो लोकधतुविवभक्तिपरिषच्छानिरदेशेसु | यच्चो किञ्चित्... ||

acalā nāma aṣṭamī bhūmiḥ ||

[Beginning of eighth bhūmī's final gathas]

upasaṃhāragāthāḥ |

te bhūmya saptasu viśodhita prajñupāyā  
mārgā susaṃbhṛta mahāprañidhānabaddhāḥ |  
supraṭiṣṭhitā naravarāḥ kuśalopapetā  
jñānābhilāṣi vidu aṣṭamimākrānti || 12 ||

te puṇyajñānupagatāḥ kṛpamaitrayuktā  
jñānāpramāṇapathagāḥ khagabuddhikalpāḥ |  
śrutadharma niścitalopagatā maharṣī  
kṣāntiṃ labhanti anutpādaprasāntisūkṣmām || 13 ||

ādāvajāta anutpāda alakṣaṇaṃ ca  
asaṃbhūtataṃvinaṣṭata cāpravṛttam |  
bhāvasvabhāvavigatā tathatāvikalpā  
mama cittacāravigatāḥ khagatulyakalpāḥ || 14 ||

te eva kṣāntisamanvāgata niṣprapañcā  
gambhīracālyā vidu śāntavicāraprāptāḥ |  
durjñeya sarvajagatārahapratyayaiśca  
cittaṃ nimittagrahasaṃjñānavibhāvitatvāt || 15 ||

evaṃ sthitānāmanucintavikalpa nāsti  
bhikṣurnirodhyupagato'paprakalpaprapṛptaḥ |  
svapnoghaprapṛpta pratibuddha tathāvikalpā  
brahmāpure ratisaṅgarahito tathaiiva || 16 ||

pūrvādhiṣṭhāna sugatā puna codayanti  
eṣā sa kṣānti paramā sugatābhiṣeke |  
asmāku jñāna vipulaṃ varabuddhadharmā  
te tubhya nāsti ta hi vīryu samārabhāyam || 17 ||

kiṃcāpi śānta tava sarvakileśajvālā  
jvalitaṃ niśamya puna kleśagatibhya lokam |

prañidhāna pūrva smara sattvahitaṃ vicārya  
jñānārthi prārthita kriyā jagamokṣahetoḥ || 18 ||

sada eṣa dharmata sthitā tathatāvikalpā  
sarveṣu buddhajinaśrāvakaḥpratyayānam |  
na hi etinā daśabalāna prabhāvu loke  
nānyatra jñānavipulam tribhi adhvasaṅgam || 19 ||

evaṃ tamapratismā naradevapūjyā  
upasaṃharanti bahujñānamukhā vicārān |  
jinadharmaniṣpattipraveśamanantapāraṃ  
yasyā kalā na bhavate puna bodhicaryā || 20 ||

etāni prāpta vṛṣabhī varajñānabhūmim  
ekakṣaṇena spharate diśatāḥ samantān |  
jñānapraveśupagatā varabhijñāprāptā  
yatha sāgare vahanu mārutayānaprāptaḥ || 21 ||

sābhogacittavigatāḥ sthitajñānakarma  
vicinanti kṣetraprabhavaṃ vibhavasthitiṃ ca |  
dhātuścatvāri vinibhāgatāna tāmsca  
sūkṣmaṃ mahadgata vibhakti samosaranti || 22 ||

trisahasri sarvaparamāṇurajo taranti  
catvāri dhātu jagakāyi vibhaktitaśca |  
ratnā vibhaktiparamāṇu suvargatīṣu  
bhinditva jñānaviṣayena gaṇentyaśeṣam || 23 ||

jñāne vibhāvitamanā vidu sarvakāyān  
sve kāyi tatra upanenti jagārthahetoḥ |  
trisahasra sarva ca spharitva vicitrarūpān  
darśenti kāya vividhān tathanantaloḥ || 24 ||

sūryaṃ śaśiṃ ca vahni māruta antarīkṣe  
svakamaṇḍalusya udake pratibhāsaprāptā |  
jñānottame sthita tathācaladharmatāyāṃ  
jaga śuddhaāsaya vidū pratibhāsaprāptā || 25 ||

yathaāśayaṃ jagata kāyavibhaktitāṃ ca  
 darśenti sarvapariṣe bhuvi sarvaloke |  
 vaśipratyayāśraya jinātmajaśrāvakanāṃ  
 darśenti te sugatakāya vibhūṣitaṅgān || 26 ||

sattvāṃśca kṣetra tatha karmavipāka kāyān  
 āryāśrayān vividhadharmajñānakāyān |  
 ākāśakāya vṛṣabhī samatāmupetaṃ  
 darśenti ṛddhi vividhān jagatoṣaṅārtham || 27 ||

vaśitā daśo vimalajñānavicāraprāptā  
 anuprāpta jñānakṛta maitrakṛpānukūlāḥ |  
 yāvacca sarvajinadharmamupādakarmā  
 trisaṃvaraiḥ susthitameka acalyakalpāḥ || 28 ||

ye cā balā jinasutāna daśa akṣobhyā  
 tehī upeta avibandhiya sarvamāraiḥ |  
 buddhairadhiṣṭhita namaskṛta śakrabrahmai-  
 statha vajrapāṇibalakaiḥ satatānubaddhāḥ || 29 ||

ima bhūmideśupagatā na guṇānamanto  
 no śakyate kṣayitu kalpasahasrakoṭyaiḥ |  
 te bhūya buddha niyutān samupāsayingante  
 bhonto utapta yatha bhūṣaṇu rājamūrdhni || 30 ||

ima bhūmideśupagatā vidu bodhisattvā  
 mahabrahma bhonti sahasrādhipatī guṇādhyāḥ |  
 trayayānadeśana akṣobhyasaṃhāraprāptā  
 maitrāyanaḥ śubhaprabhā jagakleśaghātī || 31 ||

ekakṣaṇena daśakṣetraśataḥsahasrā  
 yāvā rajodhātu tattaka samādhyupenti |  
 paśyanti tattaka daśadiśi sattvasārān  
 bhūyo ataḥ praṇidhiśreṣṭha vyūha nekāḥ || 32 ||

saṃkṣepa eṣa nirdiṣṭo aṣṭamāyā jinātmajāḥ |

vistarahaḥ kalpakoṭībhira śakyaḥ sarva bhāṣitum || 33 ||

[End of eighth bhūmī's final gathas]





[Beginning of ninth bhūmī's initial gathas]

9 sādhumatī nāma navamī bhūmiḥ ।

upakramagāthāḥ ।

imāṃ bhūmiṃ prabhāṣatā kampitāḥ kṣetrakoṭayah ।  
adhiṣṭhānā narendrasya aprameyā acintiyā ॥ 1 ॥

ābhāsa rucirā muktāḥ kāyataḥ sarvadarśino ।  
tayāvabhāsitāḥ kṣetrāḥ sattvāśca sukhitāstayā ॥ 2 ॥

bodhisattvasahasrāṇi antarikṣe sthitāni ca ।  
divyātikrāntapūjāya pūjyante vadatāṃ varam ॥ 3 ॥

maheśvarā devaputrā vaśavartī praharṣitāḥ ।  
nānāprakārapūjābhiḥ pūjenti guṇasāgaram ॥ 4 ॥

tato'psarahsahasrāṇi harṣitāḥ prīṇitendriyāḥ ।  
divyā suyattā saṃgītāḥ śāstu pūjāmajagrāyam ॥ 5 ॥

tebhyaśca tūryanādebhya anubhāvānmaharṣiṇaḥ ।  
īḍṛṣā rutasahasrā ravantī madhurasvarāḥ ॥ 6 ॥

imi sarve jinasutā khilamalavigatā  
upagata bhuvi varasuruciracaraṇāḥ ।  
jagahita vicarati daśadiśa vṛṣabhī  
darśayi jinacari khagasamamānā ॥ 7 ॥

narapuri marupuri bhujagapativiṣaye  
viyuha daśadiśi puṇyabalamudīritāḥ ।  
tata tu bhuyu jinasuta darśayi atulī  
jinasutaprabhava jinanupathaniratā ॥ 8 ॥

ekakṣetri acalita sarvakṣetravirajā  
anugata jagahita śāśiriva pratibhā ।

sarvaghoṣahānacitta praśamitamanaṣā  
viyahari kṛtāṣataśrutipathagiribhiḥ || 9 ||

yatra sattva hīnacitta dīna mānaniratā-  
statra vidu śrāvakācarī deśeti vṛṣabhī |  
yatra sattva tīkṣṇacitta pratyañāniratā-  
statra jñāna pratyañāna darśayanti virajā || 10 ||

ye tu sattvahitamaitramanaṣā (abhiratās)  
tatra tyaṃ(tvaṃ) jinaputrāna darśayanti caraṇam |  
ye tu sattva agra śreṣṭha matimānaniratā-  
statra amī buddhakāya darśayanti atulam || 11 ||

māyā yathā māyakāro darśeti jagahite  
yāya koṭi naikavidyā sarvabhāvavigatā |  
eva vidū buddhasutā jñānamāyaniratā  
darśayanti sarvacarī sarvabhāvavigatā || 12 ||

etādṛśā rutasahasrān bhaṇitva madhurāṃ-  
stadā marukanyakā jinaṃ dṛṣṭvā tūṣṇīmbhūtāḥ |  
parśadviprasanneyamavocatsugatātmajam  
aṣṭamāyā bhaṇa ūrdhvaṃ carimḥ saddharmarājīnām || 13 ||

[End of ninth bhūmi's initial gathas]

9 sādhumatī nāma navamī bhūmiḥ ।

**A**

vajragarbho bodhisattva āha - yo'yaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattva evamapramāṇajñeyavicāritayā buddhyā bhūyaścottarān śāntān vimokṣānadhyavasyan adhyālabamānaḥ bhūyaścottaraṃ tathāgatajñānaṃ susamāptaṃ vicārayan tathāgataguhyānupraveśaṃ cāvataran acintyajñānamāhātmyaṃ ca pravicinvan dhāraṇīsamādhipravicaayaṃ ca parīśodhayan abhijñāvaipulyaṃ cābhinirharan lokadhātuvibhaktiṃ cānugacchan tathāgatabalavaiśādyāveṇikabuddhadharmāsaṃhāryatāṃ ca parikarmayan tathāgatadharmacakrapravartanavṛṣabhatāṃ cānukramamāṇaḥ mahākaraṇādhiṣṭhānapratilambhaṃ cānutaṣṭjan navamīm bodhisattvabhūmimākramati ।

**B**

so'syāṃ sādhumatyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitaḥ kuśalākuśalāvyākṛtadharmābhisamṣkāraṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti । sāsravānāsradhadharmābhisamṣkāraṃ ca... । laukikalokottaradharmābhisamṣkāraṃ ca... । cintyācintyadharmābhisamṣkāraṃ ca... । niyatāniyatadharmābhisamṣkāraṃ ca... । śrāvakaṃpratyekabuddhadharmābhisamṣkāraṃ ca... । bodhisattvacaryādharmābhisamṣkāraṃ ca... । tathāgatabhūmidharmābhisamṣkāraṃ ca... । saṃskṛtadharmābhisamṣkāraṃ ca.. । asaṃskṛtadharmābhisamṣkāraṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti ।।

**C**

sa evaṃjñānānugatayā buddhyā sattvacittagahanopacāraṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti । kleśagahanopacāraṃ ca... । karmagahanopacāraṃ ca... । indriyagahanopacāraṃ ca ... । adhimuktigahanopacāraṃ ca... । dhātugahanopacāraṃ ca... । āśayānuśayagahanopacāraṃ ca... । upapattigahanopacāraṃ ca... । vāsanānusaṃdhi-gahanopacāraṃ ca... । trirāśīvyavasthānagahanopacāraṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti ।

**D**

sa sattvānāṃ cittavaimātratāṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti । cittavicitratāṃ ca cittakṣaṇalaghuparivartabhaṅgabhaṅgatāṃ ca cittaśārīratāṃ ca cittānantyasarvataḥprabhūtatāṃ ca cittaprabhāsvaratāṃ ca cittasaṃkleśāniḥkleśatāṃ ca cittabandhavimokṣatāṃ ca cittamāyāviṭhapanatāṃ ca cittayathāgatipratyupasthānatāṃ ca yāvadanekāni

cittanānātvasahasrāṇi yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti |

**E**

sa kleśānāṃ dūrānugatatāṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | prayog-  
ānantatāṃ ca... | sahajāvinirbhāgatāṃ ca... | anuśayaparyutthān-  
aikārthatāṃ ca... | cittasaṃprayogāsaṃprayogatāṃ ca... | upapatti-  
saṃdhiyathāgatipratyupasthānatāṃ ca... | traidhātukavibhaktitāṃ  
ca... | tṛṣṇāvidyādṛṣṭiśalyamānamahāsāvadyatāṃ ca... | trividha-  
karmaṇi dānānupacchedatāṃ ca... | samāsato yāvaccaturaśītikleśa-  
caritanānātvasahasrānupaveśatāṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti |

**F**

sa karmaṇāṃ kuśalākuśalāvyākṛtatāṃ ca... | vijñāptyavijñāptitāṃ  
ca... | cittasahajāvinirbhāgatāṃ ca... | svarasakṣaṇakṣiṇabhaṅ-  
opacayāvipraṇāśaphalānusaṃdhitāṃ ca... | vipākavipākatāṃ ca...  
kṛṣṇaśuklākṛṣṇaśuklānekadeśakarmasamādānavaimātratāṃ ca... |  
karmakṣetrāpramānatāṃ ca... | āryalaukikapravibhaktitāṃ ca... |  
lokottaradharmavyavasthānatāṃ ca... | (sopādānānupādānatāṃ  
ca... | saṃskṛtasaṃskṛtatāṃ ca ) | dṛṣṭadharmopapadyāparaparyāya-  
vedanīyatāṃ ca... | yānāyānaniyatānīyatatāṃ ca... | samāsato yāvaccaturaśītikarmanānātvasahasrapravibhaktivicayakauśalyaṃ ca  
yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti |

**G**

sa indriyāṇāṃ mṛdumadhyādhimātratāṃ ca... | pūrvāntāparānta-  
saṃbhedāsaṃbhedatāṃ ca... | udāramadhyānikṛṣṭatāṃ ca... | kleśa-  
sahajāvinirbhāgatāṃ ca... | yānāyānaniyatānīyatatāṃ ca... | yathā-  
paripavkāparipakvavaineyikatāṃ ca... | indriyajālānuparivartana-  
laghubhaṅganimittagrahaṇatāṃ ca... | indriyādhipatyānava-  
mardanīyatāṃ ca... | vivartyāvivartyendriyaprabhāgatāṃ ca... |  
dūrānugatasahajāvinirbhāganānātvasahasrāṇi prajānāti | soḍhimuktīnāṃ mṛdu-  
madhyādhimātratāṃ ca... yāvadanekānyadhimuktīnānātvasahasrāṇi  
prajānāti | sa dhātūnāṃ... | sa āśayānāṃ... |

**H**

so'nuśayānāmāśayasahajacittasahajatāṃ ca... | cittasaṃprayogatāṃ  
ca... | viprayogavibhāgadūrānugatatāṃ ca... | anādikālānud-  
dhaṭitāṃ ca... | sarvadhyanāvimokṣasamādhisamāpattiyabhijñā-  
prasahyatāṃ ca | traidhātukasamādhisunibaddhatāṃ ca | anādikāla-  
cittanibandhasamudācāratāṃ ca | āyatanadvārasamudaya-

vijñaptitām ca | pratipakṣālābhādravyabhūtatām ca | bhūmy-  
āyatanasamavadhānāsamavadhānatām ca | ananyāryamārgasam-  
uddhaṭānatām ca prajānāti |

**I**

sa upapattinānātvatām ca | yathākarmopapattitām ca | niraya-  
tiryagyonipretāsuramanuṣyadevavyavasthānatām ca | rūpārūpy-  
opapattitām ca | saṃjñāsaṃjñopapattitām ca | karmakṣetratṛṣṇā-  
snehāvidyāndhakāravijñānabijapunarbhavapraroḥaṇatām ca |  
nāmarūpasahajāvinirbhāgatām ca | bhavasamṃmohatṛṣṇābhilāsa-  
saṃdhitām ca | bhoktukāmabhavitukāmasattvaratyanavarāgratām  
ca | traidhātukāvagrahaṇasaṃjñāniṣkarṣaṇatām ca prajānāti |

**J**

sa vāsanānāmupacārānupacāratām ca... | yathāgatisaṃbandhavāsan-  
āvāsitatām ca | yathāsattvacaryācaraṇavāsitatām ca | yathākarma-  
kleśābhyāvāsitatām ca | kuśalākuśalāvyaḅkr̥tadharmābhyāsa-  
vāsitatām ca | punarbhavagamanādhivāsitatām ca... | anupūrvādhī-  
vāsitatām ca | dūrānugatānupacchedakleśopakarṣaṇavikārānud-  
dharānavāsitatām ca | dravyabhūtādravyabhūtāvāsitatām ca |  
śrāvakaḅpratyekabuddhabodhisattvatathāgatadarśanaśravaṇasaṃvās  
avāsitatām ca prajānāti |

**K**

sa sattvarāśīnām samyaktvaniyatātām ca prajānāti mithyātva-  
niyatātām ca | ubhayatvāniyatātām ca... | samyagdr̥ṣṭisamyagni-  
yatātām ca mithyādr̥ṣṭimithyā...niyatātām ca | tadubhayavigamā-  
daniyatātām ca pañcānantaryānyatamamithyādr̥ṣṭīniyatātām ca... |  
pañcendriyasamyagniyatātām ca... | aṣṭamithyātvamithyāniyatātām  
ca... | samyaktvasamyagniyatātām ca... | apunaḅkāritātām ca... |  
mātsaryerṣyāghṛṇopacārāvinivṛtṭyā mithyāniyatātām ca... | āryān-  
uttaramārgabhāvanopasaṃhārasamyaktvaniyatātām ca... | tad-  
ubhayavigamādaniyatārāśyupadeśātām ca prajānāti | iti hi bho  
jīnaputra evaṃjñānānugato bodhisattvaḅ sādhumatyām bodhisattva-  
bhūmau pratiṣṭhita ityucyate ||

**L**

sośyām sādhumatyām bodhisattvabhūmau sthita evaṃ caryāvi-  
mātratām sattvānāmajñāya tathaiva mokṣopasaṃhāramupa-  
saṃharati | sa sattvaparipākaṃ prajānāti | sattvavinayaṃ ca... |  
śrāvakayānadeśanām ca | pratyekabuddhayānadeśanām ca | bodhi-

sattvayānadeśanām ca | tathāgatabhūmideśanām ca prajānāti | sa  
evam jñātvā tathatvāya sattvebhyo dharmam deśayati |

yathāśayavibhaktito yathānuśayavibhaktito yathendriyavibhaktito  
yathādhimuktivibhaktito yathāgocaravibhāgjñānopasamhārataḥ  
sarvagocarajñānānugamanato yathādhātugahanopacārānugamanato  
yathāgatyupapattikleśakarmavāsanānūvartanato yathārāśivya-  
sthānānugamanato yathāyānādhimokṣavimuktiprāptito'nantavarṇa-  
rūpakāyasaṃdarśanataḥ sarvalokadhātumanojñasvaraviññāpanataḥ  
sarvarutaravitaparijñānataḥ sarvapratisaṃvidviniścayakauśalyataśca  
dharmam deśayati ||

**M**

sośyām sādhumatyām bodhisattvabhūmau sthitaḥ san bodhisattvo  
dharmabhāṇakatvaṃ kārayati, tathāgatadharmakośam ca rakṣati |

**N**

sa dharmābhāṇakagatimupagato'pramāṇajñānānugatena kauśalyena  
catuḥpratisaṃvidabhinirhr̥tayā bodhisattvavācā dharmam deśayati |  
tasya satatasamītamasaṃbhinnāścatasro bodhisattvapratisaṃvido-  
'nupravartante | katamāścatasraḥ? yaduta dharmapratisaṃvit artha-  
pratisaṃvit niruktipratisaṃvit pratibhānapratisaṃvit ||

**O**

sa dharmapratisaṃvidā svalakṣaṇam dharmāṇam prajānāti |  
arthapratisaṃvidā vibhaktim dharmāṇam prajānāti | niruktiprati-  
saṃvidā asaṃbhedadeśanām dharmāṇam prajānāti | pratibhāna-  
pratisaṃvidā anuprabandhānupacchedatām dharmāṇam prajānāti ||

**P**

punaraparam dharmapratisaṃvidā abhāvaśarīram dharmāṇam pra-  
jānāti | arthapratisaṃvidā udayāstagamaṇam dharmāṇam prajānāti  
| niruktipratisaṃvidā sarvadharmaprajñāptyacchedanadharmam  
deśayati | pratibhānapratisaṃvidā yathāprajñāptyavikopanatāpary-  
antatayā dharmam deśayati ||

**Q**

punaraparam dharmapratisaṃvidā pratyutpannavibhaktim  
dharmāṇam prajānāti | arthapratisaṃvidā atītānāgatavibhaktim  
dharmāṇam prajānāti | niruktipratisaṃvidā atītānāgapratyutpann-  
āsaṃbhedato dharmam deśayati | pratibhānapratisaṃvidā ekaika-  
madhvānamārabhya aparyantadharmālokatayā dharmam deśayati

||

**R**

punaraparaṃ dharmapratisaṃvidā dharmaprabhedam praḥānāti |  
arthapratisaṃvidā arthaprabhedam praḥānāti | niruktipratisaṃvidā  
yathārutadeśanatayā dharmam deśayati | pratibhānapratisaṃvidā  
yathānuśayajñānam deśayati ||

**S**

punaraparaṃ dharmapratisaṃvidā dharmajñānavibhaktya-  
saṃbhedakauśalyam praḥānāti | arthapratisaṃvidā anvayajñāna-  
tathātvyavasthānam praḥānāti | niruktipratisaṃvidā saṃvṛtījñāna-  
saṃdarśanāsaṃbhedatayā nirdiśati | pratibhānapratisaṃvidā para-  
mārthajñānakauśalyena dharmam deśayati ||

**T**

punaraparaṃ dharmapratisaṃvidā ekanayāvīkopaṃ dharmāṇam  
praḥānāti | arthapratisaṃvidā skandhadhātvyātanasatyapratītya-  
samutpādakauśalyānugamamavatarati | niruktipratisaṃvidā sarva-  
jagadabhiḡamanīyasumadhuragirinirghoṣākṣarairnirdiśati | prati-  
bhānapratisaṃvidā bhūyo bhūyo'paryantadharmāvabhāsatayā  
nirdiśati ||

**U**

punaraparaṃ dharmapratisaṃvidā ekayānasamavasaraṇānātvaṃ  
praḥānāti | arthapratisaṃvidā pravibhaktayānavimātratam praḥānāti  
| niruktipratisaṃvidā sarvayānānyabhedena nirdiśati | pratibhāna-  
pratisaṃvidā ekaikam yānamaparyantadharmābhāsenā deśayati ||

**V**

punaraparaṃ dharmapratisaṃvidā sarvabodhisattvacarijñānacari-  
dharmacarijñānānugamamavatarati | arthapratisaṃvidā daśabhūmi-  
vyavasthānanirdeśapravibhaktimavatarati | niruktipratisaṃvidā  
yathābhūmimārgopasaṃhārasaṃbhedena nirdiśati | pratibhāna-  
pratisaṃvidā ekaikam bhūmimaparyantākāreṇa nirdiśati ||

**W**

punaraparaṃ dharmapratisaṃvidā sarvatathāgataikalakṣaṇānu-  
bodhamavatarati | arthapratisaṃvidā nānākālavastulakṣaṇavibhaṅ-  
gānugamaṃ praḥānāti | niruktipratisaṃvidā yathābhisaṃbodhiṃ vi-  
bhaktinirdeśena nirdiśati | pratibhānapratisaṃvidā ekaikam  
dharmapadamaparyantakalpāvyavacchedena nirdiśati ||

**X**

punaraparaṃ dharmapratiṣaṃvidā sarvatathāgatavāgbalavaiś-  
arādyabuddhadharmamahākaruṇāpratiṣaṃvitprayogadharmacakrān  
upravartamānasarvajñajñānānugamaṃ prajānāti | arthapratiṣaṃvidā  
caturaśītisattvacaritasahasrāṇāṃ yathāśayaṃ yathendriyaṃ yathā-  
dhimuktivibhaktitastathāgataghoṣaṃ prajānati | niruktipratiṣaṃvidā  
sarvasattvacaryāsaṃbhedatastathāgataghoṣānuraveṇa nirdiśati |  
pratibhānapratiṣaṃvidā tathāgatajñānaprabhācaryāmaṇḍal-  
ādhimuktyā dharmaṃ deśayati ||

**Y**

sa evaṃ pratiṣaṃvidā jñānābhinirhārakuśalo bho jinaputra  
bodhisattvo navamīṃ bodhisattvabhūmimanuprāptastathā-  
gatadharmakośaprāpto mahādharmabhāṇakatvaṃ ca kurvāṇaḥ  
arthavatīdhāraṇīpratīlabdhaśca bhavati | dharmavatī... | jñānābhi-  
nirhāravatī... | avabhāsavatī... | vasumatīdhāraṇī... | sumatīdhāraṇī... |  
tejodhāraṇī... | asaṅgamukhadhāraṇī... | ananta... | vicitrārthakośa...  
| sa evamādīnāṃ dhāraṇīpadānāṃ paripūrṇāni daśadhāraṇīmukh-  
āsaṃkhyeyaśatasahasrāṇi pratīlabhate | tathā asaṃkhyeyaśata-  
sahasrānugatenaiiva svarāṅgakaūśalyena tāvadapramāṇānugatenaiiva  
pratibhānavibhaktimukhena dharmaṃ deśayati | sa evam-  
apramāṇairdhāraṇīmukhāsaṃkhyeyaśatasahasrairdaśasu dikṣu  
aprameyāṇāṃ buddhānāṃ bhagavatāṃ sakāśāddharmaṃ śṛṇoti |  
śrutvā ca na vismārayati | yathāśrutāṃ ca apramāṇavibhaktita evaṃ  
nirdiśati ||

**Z**

sa ekasya tathāgatasya sakāśāddaśabhirdhāraṇīmukhāsaṃkhyeya-  
śatasahasrairdharmān paryavāpnoti | yathā caikasya, evamapary-  
antānāṃ tathāgatānāṃ | sa praṇidhānamātreṇa bahutaraṃ samyak-  
saṃbuddhasakāśāddharmamukhālokaṃ saṃpratīcchati, na tveva  
mahābāhuśrutyapraptaḥ śrāvakaḥ śrutodgrahaṇadhāraṇīprati-  
labdhaḥ kalpaśatasahasrodgrahaṇādhiṣṭhānena | sa evaṃ dhāraṇī-  
prāptaśca bhavati pratibhānaprāptaśca dharmasāṃkathyaṃ saṃ-  
niṣaṇṇaḥ sarvāvatiṃ trisāhasramahāsāhasralokadhātuṃ spharivā  
yathāśayavibhaktiḥ sattvebhyo dharmaṃ deśayati dharmāsane  
niṣaṇṇaḥ | dharmāsanaṃ cāsyā tathāgatānabhiṣekabhūmiprāptān  
bodhisattvān sthāpayitvā sarvato viśiṣṭamapramāṇāvabhāsaprāptaṃ  
bhavati | sa dharmāsane niṣaṇṇa ākāṅkṣan ekaghoṣodāhāreṇa



sarvaparśadam nānāghoṣarutavimātratayā saṃjñāpayati | ākāṅkṣan nānāghoṣanānāsvarāṅgavibhaktibhirājñāpayati | ākāṅkṣan raśmi-mukhopasaṃhāraidharmamukhāni niścārayati | ākāṅkṣan sarvaromakūpebhyo ghoṣānniścārayati | ākāṅkṣan yāvattrisāhasramahāsāhasrāyāṃ lokadhātau rūpāvabhāsāstebhyaḥ sarvarūpāva-bhāsebhyo dharmarutāni niścārayati | ākāṅkṣan ekasvararutena sarvadharmadhātuṃ vijñāpayati | ākāṅkṣan sarvarutanirghoṣeṣu dharmarutamadhitiṣṭhati | ākāṅkṣan sarvalokadhātuparyāpannebhyo gītāvādyatūryaśabdebhyo dharmarutaṃ niścārayati | ākāṅkṣan ekākṣararutātsarvadharmapadaprabhedarutaṃ niścārayati | ākāṅkṣan anabhilāpyānabhilāpyalokadhātuparyantataḥ pṛthivyaptejovāyuskandhebhyaḥ sūkṣmaparamāṇurajaḥprabhedata ekaikaparamāṇurajonabhilāpyāni dharmamukhāni niścārayati | sacettaṃ trisāhasramahāsāhasralokadhātuparyāpannaḥ sarvasattvā upasaṃkramya ekakṣaṇalavamuhūrtena praśnān pariṇṛccheyuḥ, ekaikaśca teṣāmapramāṇarutavimātratayā pariṇṛcchet, yaṃ caikaḥ sattvaḥ pariṇṛchenna taṃ dvitīyaḥ, taṃ bodhisattvaḥ sarvasattvarutapadavyaṅjanamudgṛhṇiyāt | udgṛhya caikarutābhivyāhāreṇa teṣāṃ sarvasattvānāṃ cittāśayān paritoṣayet (yāvanabhilāpyalokadhātuparyāpannā vā sattvā upasaṃkramya ekakṣaṇalavamuhūrtena praśnān pariṇṛccheyuḥ, ekaikaśca teṣāmapramāṇarutavimātratayā pariṇṛcchet, yaṃ caikaḥ pariṇṛchenna taṃ dvitīyaḥ, taṃ bodhisattva ekakṣaṇalavamuhūrtenaiva sarvamudgṛhya ekodāhāreṇaiva sarvānājñāpayet | yāvanabhilāpyānapi lokadhātūn spharitvā yathāśayendriyādhimuktitaḥ sattvebhyo dharmam deśayati | dharmasāṃkathyaṃ niṣaṅgaśca tathāgatādhiṣṭhānasampratyēśakaḥ sakalena buddhakāryeṇa sarvasattvānāṃ pratyupasthito bhavati | sa bhūyasyā mātrayā evaṃ jñānāvabhāsapragrahaṇamārabhate | sacedekasmin vālagraprasare yāvantyanabhilāpyeṣu lokadhātuṣu paramāṇurajāṃsi tāvantastathāgatāstāvadapramāṇaprāpteṣeva parśanmaṅḍaleṣu dharmam deśayeyuḥ | ekaikaśca tathāgatāstāvadapramāṇaprāptebhyaḥ sarvasattvebhyo nānātvato dharmam deśayet, ekaikasmiṃśca sattvāśayaśaṃtāne tāvadapramāṇameva dharmopasaṃhāramupasaṃharet | yathā caikastathāgataḥ parśanmaṅḍale tathā te sarve tathāgatāḥ | yathā caikasmin vālagraprasare tathā sarvasmin dharmadhātau | tatrāsmābhīstādṛśaṃ smṛtīvaipulyamabhinirhartavyaṃ yathāikakṣaṇena sarvatathāgatānāṃ sakāśad-

dharmāvabhāsaṃ pratyṣemahi ekarutāvyatirekāt | yāvanti ca tāni  
yathāparikīrtitāni parśanmaṇḍalāni nānānikāyadharmapravaṇaika-  
paripūrṇāni, tatrāsmābhīstādṛśaṃ prajñāvabhāsaviniścayaprati-  
bhānaṃ pariśodhyaṃ yadekakṣaṇena sarvasattvān pariśoṣayet, kiṃ  
punariyatsu lokadhātuṣu sattvāni ||

sa imāṃ sādhumatīṃ bodhisattvabhūmimanuprāpto bodhisattvo  
bhūyasyā mātrayā rātriṃdivamananyamanasikāraprayukto bhūtvā  
buddhagocarānupraviṣṭastathāgatasamavadhānaprāpto gambhīra-  
bodhisattvavimokṣānuprāpto bhavati | sa evaṃjñānānugato bodhi-  
sattvaḥ samāhitastathāgatadarśanaṃ na vijahāti | ekaikāsmiṃśca  
kalpe'nekān buddhān, anekāni buddhaśatāni...anekāni buddhakoṭi-  
nayutaśatasahasrāṇi... | dṛṣṭvā ca satkaroti gurukaroti mānayati  
pūjayati | audārikena buddhadarśanena pūjopasthānaṃ notsrjati |  
tāṃśca tathāgatān praśnān pariṣṛchati | sa dharmadharaṇīnirdeś-  
ābhīnirjāto bhavati | tasya bhūyasyā mātrayā tāni kuśalamūlāny-  
uttaptatamānyasaṃhāryāṇi bhavanti | tadyathāpi nāma bho jina-  
putrāstadeva jātārūpamābharaṇīkṛtaṃ supariniṣṭhitaṃ kuśalena  
karmāreṇa rājñaścakravartina uttamāṅge kaṅthe vā ābaddham-  
asaṃhārya bhavati sarvakoṭṭarājānāṃ cāturdvipakānāṃ ca  
sattvānāmābharaṇavikṛtaiḥ, evameva bho jinaputrā bodhisattvasya  
asyāṃ sādhumatyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya tāni kuśala-  
mūlāni mahājñānāloka suvibhaktānyuttapyante, asaṃhāryāṇi  
bhavanti sarvaśrāvakaṃpratyekabuddhairadharabhūmisthitaśca  
bodhisattvaiḥ | tasya sā kuśalamūlābhā sattvānāṃ kleśacitta-  
gahanānyavabhāsyā tata eva vyāvartate | tadyathāpi nāma bho jina-  
putrā dvisāhasriko mahābrahmā sarvasmin dvisāhasrike lokadhātu  
gahananīnopaṅcārānavabhāsayati, evameva bho jinaputrā bodhi-  
sattvasya asyāṃ sādhumatyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya sā  
kuśalamūlābhā sattvānāṃ kleśacittagahanānyavabhāsyā tata eva  
vyāvartate | tasya daśabhyaḥ pāramitābhyo balapāramitā atirikta-  
tamā bhavati, na ca pariśeṣāsu na samudācarati yathābalaṃ yathā-  
bhajamānam | iyaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattvasya sādhumatī  
nāma navamī bodhisattvabhūmiḥ...mahābrahmā bhavati mahābala-  
sthāmaprāpto dvisāhasrādhipatirabhibhūḥ...pāramitopadeśeṣv-  
asaṃhāryaḥ sattvāśayapariṣṛchānirdeśaiḥ | yacca kiṃcit... ||

sādhumatī nāma navamī bhūmiḥ ||

[Beginning of ninth bhūmī's final gathas]

upasamhāragāthāḥ |

te apramāṇabalabuddhi vicārayantaḥ  
susūkṣmajñānaparamā jagatā durjñeyā |  
tatha guhyasthāna sugatāna samosaranto  
bhūmiṃ kramanti navamiṃ jagato'rthakarim || 14 ||

te dhāraṇīmukhi samādhisamāhitāgrā  
vipulā abhijñā api kṣetrapraveśanantam |  
balajñānaniścayamaḥpi jinu dhairyasthānaṃ  
prañidhīkrpāśayavidū navamotaranti || 15 ||

te atra bhūmyanugatā jinakośadhārī  
kuśalāśca dharmakuśalāśca avyākṛtāśca |  
ye sāsraṇvā api ca laukika ye ca āryā-  
ścintyā acintiya vidū anubuddhyayanti || 16 ||

niyatāmśca dharmaniyatām pravīcārayanti  
trayayānasamṣpadakriyā paritārayanti |  
bhūmidharma yathāadhimukti pracārataśca  
abhisamskaranti yatha lokya tathotaranti || 17 ||

te evajñānanugatā varasūkṣmabuddhī  
sattvāna cittagahanaṃ parimārgayanti |  
(cittaṃ vicitrakṣaṇavartanivartatām ca)  
cittaṃ anantaprabhavaṃ sada otaranti || 18 ||

kleśānanādina prayogasaḥāyatāśca  
ye paryutthānanuśayā gatisamdhitaśca |  
tatha karmaḥpraveśa vicitravibhaktitaśca  
hetū niruddhaphalanāśa samotaranti || 19 ||

indriya yā mṛdukamadhya udārataśca  
samḥbedapūrvamaparānta samotaranti |

adhimukti naika vividhā śubha āśubhataśca  
catvāri āśīti sahasra samotaranti || 20 ||

dhātūpraveśa jaga bhāvitakleśadrṣṭī  
gahanaṃ gatā anavarāgra acchedataśca |  
ye āśayā anuśayā sahaḥajapracārī  
cittāsamorṣṭa nibaddha accheda tanti || 21 ||

cittaṃ yathā anuśayā na ca dravyabhūto  
na ca deśasthā na ca vipravasanti āśayā |  
durheya dhyānaviṣayānabhivartiyāśca  
chedaśca mārga vinayena na cānyamasti || 22 ||

upapatti ṣaḍgati vibhaktipraveśataśca  
snehaṃ ca tṛṣṇamavidyāndhaka karmakṣetrā |  
vijñānabījasahajāṅkuranāmārūpaṃ  
traidhātuke anavarāgra samotaranti || 23 ||

te vāsanāgati kileśa ca karma cittā  
suvihāratāya na punargatisanta kāmā |  
rāśītribhīrniyatatasattva samotaranti  
drṣṭīnimagnamapi jñāna samotaranti || 24 ||

evaṃ visaraṇagatāḥ sthita atra bhūmyāṃ  
sarvasattva āśaya yathendriya yādhimuktiḥ |  
teṣāmarthe dharmavibhakti prakāśayanti  
pratisaṃvidarthakuśalāḥ pratibhā nirukti || 25 ||

te dharmabhāṇaka gatī anuprāpta (sthānaṃ)  
siṃhariṣabhanibhā girirājakalpāḥ |  
abhipravarṣanti madhuramamṛtasya varṣaṃ  
bhujagendrasāgara yathā anupūrayanti || 26 ||

hitārthajñānakuśalāstatha dharmatāyāṃ  
sarvaṃ niruktyanugatāḥ pratibhānaprāptāḥ |  
te dhāraṇī daśa asaṃkhyasahasra labdhā  
dhāraṇti dharmā yatha (sāgara varṣadhārī) || 27 ||

evaṃ ca dhāraṇivīśuddhisamādhiprāptā  
 ekakṣaṇena daśabuddhasahasra dṛṣṭāḥ |  
 śravaṇena dharmaratanaṃ ca nideśayanti  
 (ekaikamaṇḍalavīśuddhisvarāṅgatāḥ) || 28 ||

vyohārate trisahasramahalokadhātum  
 pariśeṣa sattva vividhāstrayaratanebhyaḥ |  
 toṣenti sarva yathaindriyaāśayāśca  
 catudvīpasāgara varṣā sama modayanti || 29 ||

(bhūyottariṃ guṇinu vīrya samārabhante)  
 cittaanti vālaprasara asmi sucetanantāḥ |  
 deśeyu dharmā sugatāḥ puna nānasattvaṃ  
 śrutvā dharema yatha sarvada (bījadhārī) || 30 ||

(yāvatakā) jagadiha praviśanti sattvāḥ  
 (te sarva ekapariśanmaṇḍale niṣaṅṅāśca) |  
 eṣāṃ ca ekakṣaṇi sarvi samotaritvā  
 ekāṃ rutena imi tarpayitavya sarve || 31 ||

(atra sthitā naramaruttama dharmarājā)  
 bhontī dharmairjinasutāḥ paricālayanti |  
 rātriṃdivaṃ sada jinaiḥ śamathānuprāptā  
 gambhīra śānta sthita jñānavimokṣadhīrā || 32 ||

(te'nekabuddhaniyutān paryupāsayante)  
 bhontī uttapta paṇu (pāṇḍu) cakravartaḥprabhāvā |  
 tasya kleśagahanāni prabhā samājya  
 brahmaṇo va dvisahasrikalokadhātuḥ || 33 ||

(atra sthitā guṇadharā) mahabrahmaloke  
 bhontī (triyānadeśanaṃ viditānubhāvā |)  
 yaṃ caivamārabhati sarvajagaddhitāya  
 sarvajñajñānupagatā guṇajñānuprāptā || 34 ||

(kṣetrāpramāṇaparyāpanna) ekā rajāgre

kṣaṇi eki (tattakasamādhi u)pentī dhīrāḥ |  
 (dṛṣṭvā sarve diśi jināṃśca vacaḥ śṛṇonti)  
 tato vikurvi praṇidhānanvitāpramāṇāḥ || 35 ||

ityeṣā navamī bhūmirmahājñānavicāriṇā |  
 gambhīrā durdṛśā sūkṣmā nirdiṣṭā sugatātmaajāḥ || 36 ||

[End of ninth bhūmī's final gathas]

[Beginning of tenth bhūmī's initial gathas]  
10 dharmameghā nāma daśamī bhūmiḥ |

upakramagāthāḥ |

eva śrutva caraṇamanuttamaṃ  
śuddhavāsanayutāḥ praharṣitāḥ |  
antarīkṣasthita prīṇitendriyāḥ  
pūjayanti sugataṃ tathāgatam || 1 ||

bodhisattvanayutā acintiyā  
antarīkṣagatiprāptiharṣitāḥ |  
gandhamegha atulān manomayān  
dhūpayanti sattvakleśaghātināḥ || 2 ||

devarāja vaśavarti prīṇito  
antarīkṣa trisahasrakotībhiḥ |  
vastrakaiḥ samakarī sagauravā  
bhrāmayanti rucirān varān śatam || 3 ||

apsarā bahava prīṇitendriyāḥ  
pūjayanti sugataṃ sagauravāḥ |  
tūryakotīnayutāḥ pravāditā  
evarūpa ravuyukta rāvataḥ || 4 ||

ekakṣetra sugato niṣaṇṇakaḥ  
sarvakṣetri pratibhāsa darśayī |  
kāyakoṭi vividhā manoramā  
dharmadhātuvipulān spharitvana || 5 ||

ekaromu sugatasya raśmayo  
niścaranti jagakleśa śāmyati |  
śakyu (kṣetra-raja-dhātu'pi) kṣayī  
tasya raśmigaṇanā tvajānitum || 6 ||

keci buddhavaralakṣaṇaṃ viduḥ

paśyayanti varacakravartinaḥ |  
 anyakṣetravaracarya uttamāṃ  
 śodhayanti dvipadendra dṛśyate || 7 ||

(tuṣītāyatanaprāpta nāyako)  
 cyavamānu caṃkramāṇa dṛśyate |  
 garbhaprāpta bahukṣetrakoṭiṣu  
 jāyamāna kvaci kṣetra dṛśyate || 8 ||

niṣkramanta jagahetu nāyako  
 budhyamāna puna bodhimuttamām |  
 (dharmacakravartanirvṛtāgato)  
 dṛśyamāna buddhakṣetrakoṭiṣu || 9 ||

māyakāra yatha vidyaśikṣito  
 jīvikārtha bahukāya darśayī |  
 tadva śāstu varaprajñāśikṣito  
 sarvakāyabhinihartu (sattvana) || 10 ||

śūnya śānta gatadharmalakṣaṇā  
 antarīkṣasamaprāptadharmatām |  
 buddhaśāstu paramārthatattvataṃ  
 darśayī pravarabuddhagocaram || 11 ||

yatha svabhāvu sugatānagocarā  
 sarvasattva tatha prāpta dharmatām |  
 lakṣalakṣa samalakṣa tādṛśā  
 sarvadharmā paramārthalakṣaṇāḥ || 12 ||

ye tu jñāna sugatāna arthiṃke  
 kalpakalpaparikalpavarjitam |  
 bhāvabhāvasamabhāvabuddhayaḥ  
 kṣipra bheṣyati nareśa uttamāḥ || 13 ||

īdṛśān rutasahasrān bhaṇitva madhurasvarāḥ |  
 marukanyā jinam lokya tūṣṇībhūtāḥ śame ratāḥ || 14 ||



prasannaṃ parśadaṃ jñātvā mokṣacandro viśāradaḥ |  
vajragarbhaṃ tridhāpṛcchajjinaputraṃ viśāradaṃ || 15 ||

daśamī saṃkramantānāṃ kīdrśaṃ guṇagocaram |  
nimittaprātihāryāṃśca sarvamākhyā(hi) parikrama || 16 ||

atha khalu vajragarbho bodhisattvo daśadiśaṃ vyavalokya  
sarvāvatīṃ parśadaṃ vyavalokya dharmadhātuṃ ca vyavalokayan  
sarvajñatācittotpādaṃ ca saṃvarṇayan bodhisattvaviśayamādarśayan  
caryābalaṃ pariśodhayan sarvākārajñatāsaṃgrahamanuvyāha  
ran sarvalokamalamapakarśayan sarvajñajñānamupasaṃharan  
acintyajñānaniryūhamādarśayan bodhisattvaguṇān prabhāvayan  
evameva bhūmyarthaṃ prarūpayamāṇo buddhānubhāvena tasyāṃ  
velāyāmimā gāthā abhāṣata -

[End of tenth bhūmī's initial gathas]

10 dharmameghā nāma daśamī bhūmiḥ ।

**A**

vajragarbho bodhisattva āha - yo'yaṃ bhavanto jinaputrā bodhisattva evamapramāṇajñeyavicāritayā buddhyā yāvannavamī bodhisattvabhūmiriti suvicitavicayaḥ superipūrṇaśukladharmaḥ paryanta-saṃbhāropacayopacitaḥ superigrhītamahāpuṇyajñānasam̐bhāraḥ mahākaruṇāvaipulyādhighataḥ lokadhātuvibhaktivaimātryakovidāḥ sattvadhātupraviṣṭagahanopacāraḥ tathāgatagocarapraveśānugata-saṃjñāmanasikāraḥ balavaiśāradyabuddhadharmādhyālambanānugataḥ sarvākārasarvajñajñānābhiṣekabhūmiprāpta ityucyate ।।

**B**

tasya khalu punarbhavanto jinaputrā evaṃjñānānugatasya bodhisattvasya abhiṣekabhūmisamāpannasya vimalo nāma samādhirāmukhībhavati । dharmadhātuvibhaktipraveśāśca nāma । bodhimaṇḍālaṃkāravayūhaśca nāma । sarvākāraraśmikusumaśca nāma । sāgaragarbhaśca nāma । sāgarasamṛddhiśca nāma । ākāśadhātuvipulaśca nāma । sarvadharmasvabhāvavicayaśca nāma । sarvasattvacittacaritānugataśca nāma । pratyutpannasarvabuddhasaṃmukhāvasthitaśca nāma bodhisattvasamādhirāmukhībhavati । tasaivaṃpramukhāni daśa samādhyasaṃkhyeyaśatasahasrāṇyāmukhībhavanti । sa tān sarvān samādhīn samāpadyate ca vyutiṣṭhate ca, samādhikauśalyānugataśca yāvatsamādhikāryaṃ tatsarvaṃ pratyanubhavati । tasya yāvaddaśasamādhyasaṃkhyeyaśatasahasrāṇaṃ paryante sarvajñajñānaviśeṣābhiṣekavānnāma bodhisattvasamādhirāmukhībhavati ।।

**C**

yasmin samanantarābhīmukhībhūte daśatrisāhasraśatasahasrāparyantapramāṇaṃ mahāratnarājapadmaṃ prādurbhavati sarvākāraratnatnatpratyarpitaṃ sarvalokaviśayasamatikrāntaṃ lokottarakuśalamūlasaṃbhūtaṃ māyāsvabhāvagocarapariniṣpannaṃ dharmadhātusavyavasthitāvabhāsaṃ divyaviśayasamatikrāntaṃ mahāvaidūryamaṇiratnadaṇḍamatulyacandanarājakaṇikaṃ mahāśmagarbha-kesaraṃ jāmbūnadasuvarṇāvabhāsapatramaparimitaraśmisaṃksumiśārīraṃ sarvapravaratnatnatpratyuptagarbhamaparyantamahāratnajālasaṃchannaṃ paripūrṇadaśatrisāhasraśatasahasraparamāṇurajaḥsamamahāratnapadmaparivāraṃ । tadanugatastadanurūpaśca

tasya bodhisattvasya kāyaḥ saṃtiṣṭhate | sa tasya sarvajñajñāna-  
viśeṣābhīṣekavataḥ samādheḥ sahapratilambhāttasminmahāratna-  
rājapadme niṣaṇṇaḥ saṃdṛśyate | samanantaraniṣaṇṇasca sa bodhi-  
sattvastasmin mahāratnarājapadme, atha yāvanti tasya mahāratna-  
rājapadmasya mahāpadmāni parivāraḥ prādurbhūtaḥ, tāvanto  
bodhisattvā daśadiglokadhātusaṃnipatitāstaṃ bodhisattvamanu-  
parivārya teṣu mahāratnapadmeṣu niṣīdanti | ekaikaśca teṣāṃ daśa  
samādhiśatasahasrāṇi samāpadyate tameva bodhisattvaṃ nirīkṣa-  
māṇaḥ ||

**D**

samanantarasamāpanne ca tasmin bodhisattve teṣu ca bodhisattveṣu  
niravaśeṣam, atha sarvalokadhātusaṃprakamaṇaṃ bhavati | sarv-  
āpāyapratiprasambhaṇaṃ ca, sarvadharmadhātuvabhāsakaraṇaṃ  
ca, sarvalokadhātupariśodhanaṃ ca, sarvabuddhakṣetranāmadheya-  
rutānanuravaṇaṃ ca, sarvasabhāgacaritabodhisattvasaṃnipātanaṃ  
ca sarvalokadhātudevamanuṣyatūryasaṃgītisaṃpravādanaṃ ca  
sarvasattvasukhasaṃjanaṇaṃ ca sarvasamyaksaṃbuddhācintya-  
pūjopasthānapravartanaṃ ca sarvatathāgataparśanmaṇḍala-  
vijñāpanaṃ ca bhavati | tatkasya hetoḥ? tathā hi bho jinaputrāstasya  
bodhisattvasya samanantaraniṣaṇṇasya tasmin mahāratnarājapadme  
adhastāccharaṇatalābhyāṃ daśaraśmyasaṃkhyeyaśatasahasrāṇi  
niścaranti | niścarya daśadiśamavīciparyantān mahānirayān-  
avabhāsayanti | nairayikānāṃ sattvānāṃ sarvaduḥkhāni pratipra-  
srambhayati | jānumaṇḍalābhyāṃ daśa...daśadiśaṃ sarvatiryagyoni-  
bhavanānyavabhāsayanti, sarvatiryagyoniduḥkhāni ca praśamayanti  
| nābhimaṇḍalād daśa...sarvayamalokabhavanāni avabhāsayanti,  
sarvayamalaukikānāṃ sattvānāṃ duḥkhāni ca praśamayanti | vāma-  
dakṣiṇābhyāṃ pārsvābhyāṃ...manuṣyāśrayān...manuṣya... |  
ubhābhyāṃ pāṇibhyāṃ devāsurabhavanāni...devāsura... |  
aṃsābhyāṃ...śrāvākayānīyāśrayānavabhāsayanti, dharmālōka-  
mukhaṃ copasaṃharanti | pṛṣṭhato grīvāyāśca...pratyekabuddh-  
āśrayānavabhāsayanti, śāntisamādhimukhanayaṃ copasaṃharanti |  
mukhadvārād...prathamacittopādamupādāya yāvannavamīm  
bhūmimanuprāptān bodhisattvānavabhāsayanti, prajñōpāya-  
kauśalyanayaṃ copasaṃharanti | ūrṇākośaddaśaraśmyasaṃkhyeya-  
śatasahasrāṇi niścaranti, niścarya daśasu dikṣu sarvamārabhavan-  
ānyavabhāsyā dhyāmīkṛtya abhiṣekabhūmiprāptān bodhisattvān

avabhāsyā tatkāyeṣvevāstaṃ gacchanti | uparyuttamāṅgāt paripūrṇadaśatrisāhasrāsaṃkhyeyaśatasahasraparamānurajaḥsamāraśmayo niścaranti, niścarya daśasu dikṣu dharmadhātupramāṇānyākāśadhātuparyavasānāni sarvatathāgataparśanmaṇḍalānyavabhāsyā daśākāraṃ lokaṃ pradakṣiṇīkṛtya uparikhagapathe sthitvā mahāraśmijālamaṇḍalāni kṛtvā uttaptaprabhāsaṃ nāma mahattathāgatapūjopasthānaṃ sarvatathāgatānāmanupravartayanti | tasya pūjopasthānasya prathamacittotpādamupādāya yāvanavāmībhūmyanupravartitam tathāgatapūjopasthānaṃ... | tataḥ khalvapi mahāraśmijālamaṇḍalādyāvāti daśasu dikṣu niravaśeṣa-sarvadharmadhātvantargatā puṣpaprajñaptirvā gandhadhūpamālyavilepanacūrṇacivaracchatradhvajapatākāvastrābharaṇamaṇiratnaprajñaptirvā, tato'tirikatarāḥ sarvalokaviṣayasamatikrāntā lokottarakuśalamūlasaṃbhārādhipatyābhinirvṛttāḥ sarvākāraguṇasaṃpannā acintyanirvāṇādhiṣṭhānādhiṣṭhitā nānāvūhamahāratnavarṣā iva ekaikatathāgataparśanmaṇḍale mahāmeghā ivābhivarṣanti sma | tāṃ ca ye sattvāḥ pūjāṃ saṃjñante, te sarve niyatā bhavanty-anuttarāyāṃ samyaksambodhau | evaṃrūpaṃ pūjopasthānaṃ pravartya tā raśmayāḥ punareva sarvāvanti tathāgataparśanmaṇḍalānyavabhāsyā daśākāraṃ lokaṃ pradakṣiṇīkṛtya teṣāṃ tathāgatānāmarhatāṃ samyaksambuddhānāmasthātāmataleṣu astaṃ gacchanti | tatasteṣāṃ tathāgatānāṃ teṣāṃ ca bodhisattvānāṃ viditāṃ bhavati - amuṣmin lokadhātuprasare evaṃcaryānugato bodhisattvo'bhiṣekakālaprāpta iti | tatra bho jinaputrā daśabhyo digbhyo'paryantebhyo lokadhātuprasarebhyo'prameyāsaṃkhyeyāparyantā bodhisattvā yāvannavāmībodhisattvabhūmipraṭiṣṭhitā āgatya taṃ bodhisattvamanuparivārya mahatīṃ pūjāṃ kṛtvā tameva bodhisattvaṃ nirīkṣamāṇā daśa samādhiśatasahasrāṇi samāpadyante | abhiṣekabhūmiprāptānāṃ ca bodhisattvānāṃ kāyebhyaḥ śrīvatsālaṃkāradvajrasvastikāt sarvamāraśatruvijayo nāmaikaikā mahāraśmirdaśaraśmyasaṃkhyeyaśatasahasraparivārā niścarati, niścarya daśadiśo'vabhāsyā aparyantāni prātihāryāṇi saṃdarśya tasya bodhisattvasya śrīvatsālaṃkāre vajrasvastika evāstaṃ gacchati | samanantarādastamitāyāśca tasyā raśmyāḥ śatasahasraguṇottarā tasya bodhisattvasya balasthāmābhivṛddhiḥ prajñāyate ||

E

atha khalu bho jinaputrāḥ sarvajñatābhijñāvatyo nāma raśmayas-

teṣāṃ tathāgatānāmarhatāṃ samyaksambuddhānāmūrṅakośebhyo  
 niścarantyaśaṃkhyeyaoparivārāḥ | tāḥ sarvāsu daśasu dikṣu  
 aśeṣataḥ sarvalokadhātūnavabhāsyā daśākāraṃ lokam pradakṣiṇī-  
 kṛtya mahānti tathāgatavikurvitāni saṃdarśya bahūni bodhisattva-  
 koṭīniyutaśatasahasrāṇi saṃcodya sarvabuddhakṣetrāparasarān ṣaḍ-  
 vikāraṃ saṃprakampya sarvāpāyacyutigatyupapattīḥ praśamya  
 sarvamārabhavanāni dhyāmīkṛtya sarvatathāgatābhisambodhi-  
 vibuddhabuddhāsanānyupasaṃdarśya sarvabuddhapaṛṣanmaṇḍala-  
 vyūhāprabhāvaṃ nidarśya dharmadhātuparamānākāśadhātupary-  
 avasānān sarvalokadhātūnavabhāsyā punarevāgatya taṃ sarv-  
 āvantaṃ bodhisattvapaṛṣatsaṃnipātamuparyupariṣadakṣiṇīkṛtya  
 mahāvīyuhānnidarśya tā raśmayastasya bodhisattvasyottamāṅge-  
 'staṃ gacchanti | tatparivāraraśmayaśca tathā saṃnipatitānāṃ teṣāṃ  
 bodhisattvānāṃ śīrasvantardhīyante sma | samanantarasaṃni-  
 patitābhiśca tābhī raśmibhiste bodhisattvā apratīlabdhapūrvāṇi daśa  
 samādhiśatasahasrāṇi pratīlabhante | tāśca raśmayastulyakālaṃ  
 tasya bodhisattvasyottamāṅge nipatitā bhavanti | sa ca bodhisattvo-  
 'bhiṣikta ityucyate samyaksambuddhaviśaye | daśabalaparipūryā tu  
 samyaksambuddha iti saṃkhyāṃ gacchati | tadyathāpi nāma bho  
 jinaputrā yo rājñāścakravartinaḥ putro jyeṣṭhaḥ kumāroḽgryamaḥiṣi-  
 prasūtaścakravartirājalakṣaṇasamanvāgato bhavati, taṃ rājā cakra-  
 vartī divye hastisauvarṇe bhadrapīṭhe niśādyā, caturbhyo mahā-  
 samudrebhyo vāryānīya, upariratnavimānena dhāryamāṇena  
 mahatā puṣpadhūpagandhadīpamālyavilepanacūrṇacīvaracchatra-  
 dhvajapatākātūryatālāvacarasaṃgitivyūhena sauvarṇaṃ bhṛṅgāraṃ  
 gr̥hītvā tena vāriṇā taṃ kumāraṃ mūrdhanyabhiṣiñcati | sam-  
 anantarābhiṣiktaśca rājā kṣatriyo mūrdhabhiṣikta iti saṃkhyāṃ  
 gacchati | daśakuśalakarmāpathaparipūryā tu cakravartīti saṃjñāṃ  
 pratīlabhate | evameva bho jinaputrāḥ samanantarābhiṣikto bodhi-  
 sattvastairbuddhairbhagavadbhirmahājñānābhiṣekābhiṣikta ity-  
 ucyate | samyaksambuddhābhiṣekeṇa daśabalaparipūryā tu samyak-  
 sambuddha iti saṃkhyāṃ gacchati | ayaṃ bho jinaputrā bodhi-  
 sattvasya mahājñānābhiṣeko yasyārthe bodhisattvo'nekāni duṣkara-  
 śatasahasrāṇyārabhate | sa evamabhiṣiktoḽprameyaguṇājñāna-  
 vivardhito dharmameghāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau pratiṣṭhita ity-  
 ucyate ||

## F

so'syāṃ dharmameghāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau pratiṣṭhito bodhisattvo dharmadhātusamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | kāmadhātusamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | rūpadhātusamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | ārūpyadhātusamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | lokadhātusamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | sarvasattvadhātusamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | vijñānadhātusamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | saṃskṛtāsaṃskṛtadhātusamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | ākāśadhātusamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | bhūtābhūtadeśanāṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | nirvāṇaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | dṛṣṭikleśasamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | lokadhātupravṛttinivṛttisamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | śrāvakacaryāsamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | pratyekabuddhacaryāsamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | bodhisattvacaryāsamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti |

tathāgatabalavaiśāradyāveṇikabuddhadharmarūpakāyadharmakāya samudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | sarvākārasarvajñāna-samudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | abhisamṃbodhidharma-ca krapravṛttisaṃdarśanasamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | samāsataḥ sarvadharmapraveśavibhaktiniṣṭīṇasamudāgamaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | sa evaṃjñānānugatayā buddhyā uttari sattvakāyanirmāṇaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | kleśakāyanirmāṇaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | dṛṣṭikṛtanirmāṇaṃ ca... lokadhātunirmāṇaṃ ca...dharmadhātunirmāṇaṃ ca...śrāvakanirmāṇaṃ ca...pratyekabuddhanirmāṇaṃ ca...bodhisattvanirmāṇaṃ ca...tathāgatānirmāṇaṃ ca...sarvanirmāṇakalpākalpatāṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | sarvabuddhādhiṣṭhānaṃ ca...dharmādhiṣṭhānaṃ ca...saṃghādhiṣṭhānaṃ ca...karmādhiṣṭhānaṃ ca kleśādhiṣṭhānaṃ ca...kāladhiṣṭhānaṃ ca...praṇidhānādhiṣṭhānaṃ ca...pūjādhiṣṭhānaṃ ca...caryādhiṣṭhānaṃ ca...kalpādhiṣṭhānaṃ ca...jñānādhiṣṭhānaṃ ca prajānāti | sa yānīmāni tathāgatānāmarhatāṃ samyaksam-buddhānāṃ sūkṣmapraveśajñānāni yaduta caryāsūkṣmapraveśajñānaṃ vā, cyutyupapattisūkṣmapraveśajñānaṃ vā, janmasūkṣmapraveśajñānaṃ vā, abhiniṣkramaṇasūkṣmapraveśajñānaṃ vā, abhisamṃbodhisūkṣmapraveśajñānaṃ vā, vikurvaṇasūkṣmapraveśa-

jñānaṃ vā, dharmacakrapravartanasūkṣmapraveśajñānaṃ vā,  
 dharmadeśanāsūkṣmapraveśajñāna vā, dharmavistarāsūkṣma-  
 praveśajñānaṃ vā, āyuhpramāṇādhiṣṭhānajñānaṃ vā, varṇarūpa-  
 kāyasaṃdarśanajñānaṃ vā, sarvasattvavinayātikramaṇajñānaṃ  
 vā, sarvalokadhātuspharaṇajñānaṃ vā, sarvasattvacittacaritavyava-  
 lokanajñānaṃ vā, ekakṣaṇe tryadhvavyavalokanajñānaṃ vā, pūrv-  
 āntāparāntaniravaśeśajñānaṃ vā, sarvasattvacittacaritanānāv-  
 samantajñānaṃ vā, tathāgatabalavaiśāradya buddhadharmācint  
 ya-  
 jñānaṃ vā, tathāgataparinirvāṇajñānaṃ vā, śāsanādhiṣṭhānasad-  
 dharmasthitijñānaṃ vā, evaṃpramukhānyaprameyāsamkhyeyāni  
 tathāgatānāṃ suksmapraveśajñānāni, tāni sarvāṇi yathābhūtaṃ pra-  
 jānāti | sa yānīmāni tathāgatānāmarhatāṃ samyaksambuddhānāṃ  
 guhyasthānāni yaduta kāyaguhyam vā vāgguhyam vā cittaguhyam  
 vā kālākālavicāraṇāguhyam vā bodhisattvavyākaraṇaguhyam vā  
 sattvasaṃgrahanigrahaṅguhyam vā vineyotsādanāvasānaguhyam vā  
 yathākālāvādānuśāsanādhyupekṣaṇam vā yānanānāvavyava-  
 sthāpanaguhyam vā sattvacaryendriyavibhaktiguhyam vā sattva-  
 karmakriyāvātāraguhyam vā bodhisattvacaryendriyavibhakti-  
 guhyam vā caryābhisambodhisvabhāvaprabhāvānubodhiguhyam vā  
 svabhāvābhisambodhyadhiṣṭhānaguhyam vā avatārottāraṇaguhyam  
 vā ākarṣaṇasaṃpreṣaṇaguhyam vā sthānacaṃkramaṇaniśadyā-  
 śayyāsanasaṃdarśanaguhyam vā āhāraparibhogakāyopakaraṇa-  
 pratisevanaguhyam vā bhāṣitātūṣṇīmbhāvadyānavimokṣasamādhi-  
 samāpattisaṃdarśanaguhyam vā, evaṃpramukhānyapramey-  
 āsamkhyeyāni tathāgatānāṃ guhyasthānāni, tāni sarvāṇi yathā-  
 bhūtaṃ prajānāti | sa yānīmāni tathāgatānāṃ kalpapraveśasamava-  
 saraṇajñānāni yaduta ekakalpāsamkhyeyakalpasamavasaraṇatā |  
 asaṃkhyeyakalpaikalpasamavasaraṇatā | saṃkhyeyakalp-  
 āsaṃkhyeyakalpasamavasaraṇatā | asaṃkhyeyakalpasamkhyeya-  
 kalpasamavasaraṇatā | cittakṣaṇakalpasamavasaraṇatā | kalpa-  
 cittakṣaṇasamavasaraṇatā | kalpākālpasamavasaraṇatā | akalpa-  
 kalpasamavasaraṇatā | sabuddhakakalpābuddhakakalpasamava-  
 saraṇatā | abuddhakakalpasabuddhakakalpasamavasaraṇatā |  
 atītānāgatakalpapratyutpannakalpasamavasaraṇatā | pratyutpanna-  
 kalpātītānāgatakalpasamavasaraṇatā | atītakalpānāgatakalpa-  
 samavasaraṇatā | anāgatakalpātītakalpasamavasaraṇatā | dīrgha-

kalpahrasvakalpasamavasaraṇatā | hrasvakalpadīrghakalpa-  
samavasaraṇatā | sarvakalpeṣu saṃjñākṛtasamavasaraṇatā | sarva-  
saṃjñākṛteṣu kalpasamavasaraṇatā | evaṃ pramukhānyapra-  
meyāṇyasamkhyeyāni kalpapraveśasamavasaraṇāni, tāni sarvāni  
yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | sa yānīmāni tathāgatānāmarhatāṃ samyak-  
saṃbuddhānāmavatārajñānāni yaduta vālapathāvatārajñānaṃ vā  
paramāṇurajovatārajñānaṃ vā buddhakṣetrakāyābhisam̐bodhy-  
avatārajñānaṃ vā sattvakāyacittābhisam̐bodhyavatārajñānaṃ vā  
sarvatṛānugatābhisam̐bodhyavatārajñānaṃ vā vyatyastacarisaṃ-  
darśanāvatārajñānaṃ vā anulomacarisaṃdarśanāvatārajñānaṃ vā  
pratilomacarisaṃdarśanāvatārajñānaṃ cintyācintyalokavijñeya-  
vijñeyaṃ carisaṃdarśanāvatārajñānaṃ vā śrāvakavijñeyapratyeka-  
buddhavijñeyabodhisattvavijñeyatathāgatavijñeyacarisaṃdarśanāvat-  
ārajñānaṃ vā, tāni sarvāni yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti | iti hi bho jinap-  
utrā aprameyaṃ buddhānaṃ bhagavatāṃ jñānavaipulyam-  
apramāṇamevāsyaṃ bhūmau sthitasya bodhisattvasyāvātārajñānaṃ  
||

**G**

sa khalu punarbho jinaputrā bodhisattva evamimāṃ bodhisattva-  
bhūmimanugato'cintyaṃ ca nāma bodhisattvavimokṣaṃ pratilabhate  
| anāvaraṇaṃ ca nāma viśuddhivicayaṃ ca nāma samantamukh-  
āvabhāsaṃ ca nāma tathāgatakośaṃ ca nāma apratihatacakrānu-  
gataṃ ca nāma tryadhvānugataṃ ca nāma dharmadhātugarbhaṃ ca  
nāma vimuktimaṇḍalaprabhāsaṃ ca nāma aśeṣaviśayagamaṃ ca  
nāma bodhisattvavimokṣaṃ pratilabhate | iti hi bho jinaputrā imān  
daśa bodhisattvavimokṣān pramukhān kṛtvā aprameyāsaṃkhyeyāni  
bodhisattvavimokṣamukhaśatasahasrāṇi bodhisattvo'syaṃ  
daśamyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau pratiṣṭhitaḥ pratilabhate | evaṃ  
yāvatsamādhiśatasahasrāṇi dhāraṇīśatasahasrāṇi abhijñābhinirhāra-  
śatasahasrāṇi pratilabhate | jñānālokaśatasahasrāṇi vikurvaṇaśata-  
sahasrāṇi prasaṃvinnirhāraśatasahasrāṇi upāyaprajñāvīkṛḍitaśata-  
sahasrāṇi gambhīradharmanayapraveśaśatasahasrāṇi mahākaraṇ-  
āvegaśatasahasrāṇi bodhisattvavaśītāpraveśaśatasahasrāṇi prati-  
labhate ||

**H**

sa evaṃjñānānugatayā buddhyā apramāṇānugatena smṛtikauśalyena  
samanvāgato bhavati | sa daśabhyo digbhyo'prameyāṇaṃ



buddhānām bhagavatām sakāśādekakṣaṇalavamuhūrtenā  
 apramāṇān mahādharmāvabhāsān mahādharmālokān mahādharmameghān  
 saḥate saṃpratīcchati svīkaroti saṃghārayati | tadyathāpi  
 nāma bho jinaputrāḥ sāgaranāgarājameghavisṛṣṭo mahānapskandho  
 na sukarō'nyena pṛthivīpradeśena soḍhuṃ vā saṃpratyeṣitum vā  
 svīkartum vā saṃdhārayitum vā anyatra mahāsamudrāt, evameva  
 bho jinaputrā ye te tathāgatānām bhagavatām guhyānupraveśā yad-  
 uta mahādharmāvabhāsā mahādharmālokā mahādharmameghāḥ, te  
 na sukarāḥ sarvasattvaiḥ sarvaśrāvakaḥpratyekabuddhaiḥ prathamām  
 bhūmimupādāya yāvannavamībhūmipratīṣṭhitairapi bodhisattvaiḥ,  
 tān bodhisattvo'syām dharmameghāyām bodhisattvabhūmau sthitaḥ  
 sarvān saḥate saṃpratīcchati svīkaroti saṃdhārayati | tadyathāpi  
 nāma bho jinaputrā mahāsamudra ekasyāpi mahābhujagendrasya  
 mahāmeghān saḥate...dvayorapi trayānāmapi yāvadaparimānānām-  
 api bhujagendrānāmekakṣaṇalavamuhūrtenāprameyān mahā-  
 meghān saḥate... | tatkāśya hetoḥ? apramāṇavīpulavistīrṇatvān-  
 mahāsamudrasya | evameva bho jinaputrā asyām dharmameghāyām  
 bodhisattvabhūmau pratīṣṭhito bodhisattva ekasyāpi tathāgatasya  
 sakāśādekakṣaṇa...dvayorapi trayānāmapi yāvadaparimānānāmapi  
 tathāgatānām sakāśādekakṣaṇa... | tata ucyata iyaṃ bhūmirdharma-  
 megheti ||

vimukticanthro bodhisattva āha - śakyam punarbho jinaputra  
 saṃkhyām kartum kiyatām tathāgatānāmantikebhyo bodhisattv-  
 aikakṣaṇa...? vajragarbho bodhisattva āha - na sukarā bho jinaputra  
 saṃkhyā kartu gaṇanānirdeśena - iyatām tathāgatānāmantikebhyo  
 bodhisattvaikakṣaṇa... | api tu khalvaupamyam kariṣyāmi | tadyathā-  
 āpi nāma bho jinaputra daśasu diḥsu daśabuddhakṣetrānabhilāpya-  
 koṭīniyutaśatasahasraparamāṇurajaḥsamāsu lokadhātuṣu yāvat  
 sattvadhātuniravaśeṣayogena saṃvidyate | tata ekaḥ sattvaḥ śrūta-  
 grahaṇadhāraṇīpratīlabdho bhavettathāgatānāmupasthāuyako mahā-  
 āśrāvakoḥgryaḥ śrutadharāṇām | tadyathāpi nāma bhagavato vajra-  
 padmottarasya tathāgatasyārhatāḥ samyaksambuddhasya mahā-  
 vijayo nāma bhikṣurevaṃrūpeṇa śrutakauśalyabalādhānena sa ekaḥ  
 sattvaḥ samanvāgato bhavet | yathā ca sa ekaḥ sattvastathā nirava-  
 śeṣāsu sarvāsu lokadhātuṣu te sarve sattvāḥ samanvāgatā bhavēyuh  
 | yaccaikenodgrhītam syānna dvitīyena | tatkiṃ manyase bho jina-

putra bahutaraṃ teṣāmaprameyāpramāṇaṃ vā śrutakauśalyaṃ bhavet? vimukticandro bodhisattva āha - bahu bho jinaputra apramāṇaṃ tatteṣāṃ sarvasattvānāṃ śrutakauśalyaṃ bhavet | vajragarbho bodhisattva āha - ārocayāmi te bho jinaputra, prati-vedayāmi | yaṃ dharmameghāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau pratiṣṭhito bodhisattva ekakṣaṇalavamuhūrtenaikasyaiva tāvattathāgatasya sakāśāddharmadhātutryadhvakośaṃ nāma mahādharmāvabhās-ālokameghaṃ sahate... | yasya mahādharmāvabhāsālokamegha-saṃdhāraṇakauśalyasya tat pūrvakaṃ śrutakauśalyaṃ...kṣamate | yathā caikasya tathāgatasya sakāśāttathā daśasu dikṣu yāvanti tāsu pūrvikāsu lokadhātuṣu paramāṇurajāṃsi saṃvidyante, tāvatāṃ samyaksambuddhānāṃ tato'pi bhūya uttari aprameyāṇāṃ tathā-gatānāṃ sakāśādekakṣaṇalavamuhūrtena dharmadhātutryadhva-kośaṃ nāma mahādharmāvabhāsālokameghaṃ sahate... | tata ucyata iyaṃ bhūmirdharmamegheti ||

punaraparaṃ bho jinaputra dharmameghāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau pratiṣṭhito bodhisattvaḥ svapraṇidhānabalādhanato mahākṛpākaraṇ-āmeghaṃ samutthāpya mahādharmāvabhāsagarjanamabhijñāvidyā-vaiśāradya vidyudvidyotitaṃ mahāraśmimārutasaṃvīritaṃ mahā-puṇyajñānaghanābhrajālasaṃdarśanaṃ vividhakāyaghanāvarta-saṃdarśanaṃ mahādharmānirnādanaṃ namuciparśadvidrāvaṇaṃ-ekakṣaṇalavamuhūrtena daśasu dikṣu yāvanti tāsu lokadhātuṣu tāni paramāṇurajāṃsi saṃvidyante tāvanti lokadhātukoṭīnāyutaśata-sahasrāṇi spharitvā tebhyo'pi bhūyo'prameyāṇi lokadhātukoti-nayutaśatasahasrāṇi spharitvā mahāmṛtakusāladhārābhipra-varṣaṇena yathāśayataḥ sattvānāmajñānasamutthitāḥ sarvakleśarajo-jvālāḥ praśamayati | tata ucyata iyaṃ bhūmirdharmamegheti ||

punaraparaṃ bho jinaputra dharmameghāyāṃ bodhisattva ekasyāmapī lokadhātau tuṣitavarabhavanavāsamupādāya cyavan-ācaṃkramaṇagarbhasṭhitijaṇmābhiniṣkramaṇābhisambodhyadhyeṣa-ṇamahādharmacakrapravartana-mahāparinirvāṇabhūmiriti sarva-tathāgatakāryamadhiṣṭhatai yathāśayeṣu sattveṣu yathāvaineiyeṣu, evaṃ dvayorapi yāvadyāvanti tāsu lokadhātuṣu paramāṇurajāṃsi saṃvidyante, tato'pi bhūyo'prameyeṣu lokadhātukoṭīnāyutaśata-sahasreṣu tāni paramāṇu... vaineiyeṣu ||

## I

sa evaṃjñānavaśitāprāptaḥ suviniścitamahājñānābhijña ākāṅkṣan  
 saṃkṛṣṭāyā lokadhātoḥ parīsuddhatāmādhitīṣṭhati | parīsuddhāyā  
 lokadhātoḥ saṃkṛṣṭatāmādhitīṣṭhati | saṃkṣiptāyā lokadhātor-  
 vistīrṇatāmādhitīṣṭhati | vistīrṇāyāḥ saṃkṣiptatāmādhitīṣṭhati |  
 evaṃ vipulamahadgatāpramāṇasūkṣmaudārikavyatyastāva-  
 mūrdhamatalādīnām sarvalokadhātūnām vṛṣabhatayānantam-  
 abhinirhāramādhitīṣṭhati | ākāṅkṣan ekasmin paramāṇurajasyekām-  
 api lokadhātuṃ sarvāvatiṃ sacakravālaparikhāmādhitīṣṭhati | tacca  
 paramāṇurajo na vardhayati tāṃ ca kriyāmādarśayati | dve'pi tistro-  
 'pi catasro'pi pañcāpi yāvadanabhilāpyāpi lokadhātūrekasmin  
 paramāṇurajasi sarvāḥ sacakravālaparikhā adhitīṣṭhati | ākāṅkṣan  
 ekasyāṃ lokadhātau dvilokadhātuvyūhamādarśayati | ākāṅkṣan  
 yāvadanabhilāpyalokadhātuvyūhamādarśayati | ākāṅkṣan ekaloka-  
 dhātuvyūhaṃ dvayorlokadhātvorādarśayati | yāvadanabhilāpyāsu  
 lokadhātuṣvādarśayati | ākāṅkṣan yāvadanabhilāpyāsu lokadhātuṣu  
 yaḥ sattvadhātustamekasyāṃ lokadhātau saṃdadhāti, na ca sattvān  
 viheṭhayati | ākāṅkṣan ekasyāṃ lokadhātau yāvān sattvadhātus-  
 tamanabhilāpyāsu lokadhātuṣu saṃdadhāti... | ākāṅkṣan anabhil-  
 āpyalokadhātugatān sattvānekavālapathe saṃdadhāti... | ākāṅkṣan  
 ekavālapathe ekaṃ sarvabuddhaviṣayavyūhamādarśayati |  
 ākāṅkṣan yāvadanabhilāpyān sarvākārabuddhaviṣayavyūhānā-  
 darśayati | ākāṅkṣan yāvantyanabhilāpyāsu lokadhātuṣu paramāṇu-  
 rajāṃsi tāvata ātmabhāvānekakṣaṇalavamuhūrtena nirmimīte |  
 ekaikasmimśca ātmabhāve tāvata eva pāṇin saṃdarśayati | taiśca  
 pāṇibhirdaśasu dikṣu buddhapūjāyāṃ prayujyate | ekaikena ca  
 pāṇinā gaṅgānadīvālikāsamān puṣpapuṭāṃsteṣāṃ buddhānām  
 bhagavatāṃ kṣipati | yathā puṣpāṇāmevaṃ gandhānām mālyānām  
 vilepanānām cūrṇānām cīvarāṇām chatrāṇām dhvajānām  
 patākānāmevaṃ sarvavyūhānām | ekaikasmimśca kāye tāvantyeva  
 śīrāṃsi adhitīṣṭhati | ekaikasmimśca śīrasi tāvatireva jihvā adhi-  
 tiṣṭhati | tābhisteṣāṃ buddhānām bhagavatāṃ varṇaṃ bhāṣate | citt-  
 otpāde ca daśadikpharaṇaṃ gacchāti | cittakṣaṇe cāpramāṇā abhi-  
 saṃbodhīryāvanmahāparinirvāṇavyūhānadhitīṣṭhati | apramāṇa-  
 kāyatāṃ ca trayadhvatāyāmādhitīṣṭhati | svakāye cāpramāṇānām  
 buddhānām bhagavatāmaprameyān buddhakṣetraguṇavyūhān-  
 adhitīṣṭhati | sarvalokadhātusaṃvartavivartavyūhāṃśca svakāye-

dhitiṣṭhati | sarvā vātamaṅḍalīścaikaromakūpādutsṛjati | na ca  
 sattvān viheṭhayati | ākāṅkṣaṃścaikāmapskandhaparyantaṃ loka-  
 dhātumadhitiṣṭhati | tasyāṃ ca mahāpadmamadhitiṣṭhati | tasya ca  
 mahāpadmasya prabhāvabhāsavyūhena anantā lokadhātūḥ spharati  
 | tatra ca mahābodhivṛkṣamādarśayati | yāvatsarvākāraravopetaṃ  
 sarvajñānatvaṃ saṃdarśayati | svakāye daśadiṅmaṇividuyuccandra-  
 sūryaprabhā yāvatsarvāvabhāsaprabhā adhitiṣṭhati | ekamukha-  
 vātena caikaikasāyā diśaḥ pratidiśamanantā lokadhātūḥ kampayati,  
 na ca sattvānuttrāśayati | daśadiśaṃ ca vātasamvartanīṃ tejaśsaṃ-  
 vartanīmapsamvartanīmadhitiṣṭhati | sarvasattvāṃśca ākāṅkṣan  
 yathābhīprāyaṃ rūpāśrayālaṃkṛtānadhitiṣṭhati | svakāye ca tathā-  
 gatakāyamadhitiṣṭhati | tathāgatakāye ca svakāyamadhitiṣṭhati |  
 tathāgatakāye svabuddhakṣetramadhitiṣṭhati | svabuddhakṣetre ca  
 tathāgatakāyamadhitiṣṭhati | iti hi bho jinaputra dharmameghāyāṃ  
 bodhisattvabhūmau pratiṣṭhito bodhisattva imāni cānyāni cāpramey-  
 āsaṃkhyeyāni ṛddhivikurvaṇakoṭinayutaśatasahasrāṇyādarśayati ||

J

atha khalu tasyāḥ parśadaḥ keśaṃcidbodhisattvānāṃ keśaṃcid-  
 devanāgayakṣagandharvāsuraḡarūḍakinnaramahoragaśakrabrahmal  
 okapālamaheśvaraśuddhāvāsānāmetadabhavat - yadi tāvadbodhi-  
 sattvasyaivamapramāṇa ṛddhyabhisamskāragocaraḥ, tathāgatānāṃ  
 punaḥ kiṃrūpo bhaviṣyati ? atha khalu vimukticanthro bodhi-  
 sattvastasyāḥ parśadaścittāśayavicāramājñāya vajragarbhaṃ bodhi-  
 sattvametaadvocat - saṃśayitā bateyaṃ bho jinaputra parṣat | sādhu,  
 asyāḥ saṃśayacchityarthaṃ kiṃcinmātraṃ bodhisattvavyūhaprāti-  
 hāryaṃ saṃdarśaya | atha khalu vajragarbho bodhisattvastasyāṃ  
 velāyāṃ sarvabuddhakṣetrakāyasvabhāvasaṃdarśanaṃ nāma  
 bodhisattvasamādhim samāpadyate | samanantarasaṃpānne  
 vajragarbhe bodhisattve sarvabuddhakṣetrakāyasvabhāva-  
 saṃdarśanaṃ bodhisattvasamādhim, atha tāvadeva sā sarvāvati  
 bodhisattvaparṣat sā ca devanāgayakṣaśuddhāvāsaparśad vajra-gar-  
 hasya bodhisattvasya kāyāntarībhūtamātmānaṃ saṃjānīte sma,  
 tatra ca buddhakṣetramabhinirvṛtaṃ saṃjānīte sma | tasmimśca  
 buddhakṣetre ye ākāravayūhāste na sukarāḥ paripūrṇayāpi kalpa-  
 koṭyā prabhāvayitum | tatra ca bodhivṛkṣaṃ daśatrisāhasraśata-  
 sahasraviṣkambhaskandhaṃ paripūrṇatrisāhasrakoṭivipulāpramāṇa-  
 viṭapodviddhaśikharaṃ tadanurūpaṃ ca tasmin bodhimaṅḍe siṃh-

āsanavaipulyaṃ tatra sarvābhijñāmatirājaṃ nāma tathāgataṃ  
 bodhimaṇḍavaragataṃ samapaśyat | iti hi yāvantaḥ tatra vyūhāḥ  
 saṃdṛśyante te na sukarāḥ paripūrṇayāpi kalpakotyā prabhāvayitum  
 | sa idaṃ mahāprātihāryaṃ saṃdarśya tāṃ sarvāvatiṃ bodhisattva-  
 parśadaṃ tāṃ ca devanāga... śuddhāvāsaparśadaṃ punareva yathā-  
 sthāne sthāpayāmāsa | atha khalu sā sarvāvati parśadāścaryaprāptā  
 tūṣṇīmabhūtā tameva vajragarbhaṃ bodhisattvaṃ nidhyāyanti sthit-  
 ābhūt | atha khalu vimukticandro bodhisattvo vajragarbhaṃ bodhi-  
 sattvametafavocat - āścaryamidaṃ bho jinaputra, adbhutaṃ yāvad-  
 acintyopamasya samādhernimeṣavyūhaprabhāvaḥ | tatko nāmāyaṃ  
 bho jinaputra samādhiḥ? vajragarbho bodhisattva āha – sarva-  
 buddhakṣetrakāyasvabhāvasaṃdarśano nāmāyaṃ bho jinaputra  
 samādhiḥ | vimukticandro bodhisattva āha - kaḥ punarbho jinaputra  
 asya samādhergocaraviṣayavyūhaḥ ? vajragarbho bodhisattva āha –  
 ākāṅkṣan bho jinaputra bodhisattvo'sya samādheḥ superibhāvita-  
 tvādgaṅgānavālikāsamalokadhātuparamaṇurajaḥsamāni daśa  
 buddhakṣetrāṇi svakāye ādarśayet, ato vā bhūya uttari | īdṛśānāṃ  
 bho jinaputra bodhisattvasamādhināṃ dharmameghāyāṃ bodhi-  
 sattvabhūmau sthito bodhisattvo bahūni śatasahasrāṇi pratilabhate |  
 tena tasya bodhisattvasya yāvad yauvarājyaprāptairapi bodhi-  
 sattvaiḥ sādhumatībodhisattvabhūmau pratiṣṭhitairna sukarāḥ kāyaḥ  
 kāyakarma vā jñātum | na sukarā vāgvākkarma vā jñātum | na  
 sukaraṃ mano manaskarma vā jñātum | na sukararddhirjñātum | na  
 sukaraṃ tryadhvavilokitaṃ jñātum | na sukarāḥ samādhigocarānu-  
 praveśo jñātum | na sukaro jñānaviṣayo jñātum | na sukaraṃ  
 vimokṣavikrīḍitaṃ jñātum | na sukaraṃ nirmāṇakarma vā adhi-  
 ṣṭhānakarma vā prabhākarma vā prabhākarma vā jñātum | na  
 sukaraṃ yāvatsamāsataḥ kramotkṣepanikṣepakarmāpi jñātum |  
 yāvāt yauvarājya... | evamapramāṇā bho jinaputra iyaṃ dharmameghā  
 bodhisattvabhūmiḥ samāsanirdeśataḥ | vistaraśaḥ punar-  
 asaṃkhyeyakalpaśatasahasranirdeśāparyantākārato draṣṭavyā ||

vimukticandro bodhisattva āha - kiḍṛśo bho jinaputra tathāgata-  
 gocaraviṣayapraveśo yatredaṃ bodhisattvānāṃ caryāviṣayādhi-  
 ṣṭhānamevamaopramāṇaṃ? vajragarbho bodhisattva āha – tadyathā-  
 āpi nāma syādbho jinaputra kaścideva puruṣaścaturdvīpikāyā loka-  
 dhātordvau trīn vā kolāsthimātrān pāṣāṇān ḡrhitvaivaṃ vadet –

kiyatī nu khalu sā pṛthivīdhāturaparyantāsu lokadhātuṣu itaḥ  
 pāṣāṇebhyo mahadgatatayā vā pramāṇatveneti? idṛśamidaṃ mama  
 tvadvacanaṃ pratibhāti | yastvamapramāṇajñānināṃ tathāgat-  
 ānāmarhatāṃ samyaksambuddhānāṃ dharmatāṃ bodhisattva-  
 dharmatayā tulayasi | api tu khalu punarbho jinaputra yathā cātur-  
 dvīpikāyā lokadhātoḥ paritā pṛthivīdhāturyā udgrhītāpramāṇ-  
 āvaśiṣṭā, evameva bho jinaputra asyā eva tāvaddharmameghāyā  
 bodhisattvabhūmeraprameyān kalpānnirdiśyamānāyāḥ pradeśa-  
 mātraṃ nirdiṣṭaṃ syāt, kaḥ punarvādestathāgatabhūmeḥ |  
 ārocayāmi te bho jinaputra, prativedayāmi | ayaṃ me tathāgataḥ  
 purataḥ sthitaḥ sāksībhūtaḥ | sacedbho jinaputra daśasu dikṣu  
 ekaikasyāṃ diśi aparyantalokadhātuparamānurajaḥsamāni buddha-  
 kṣetrāṇyevambhūmiprāptairbodhisattvaiḥ pūrṇāni bhavyuryath-  
 ekṣuvanaṃ vā naḍavanaṃ vā veṇuvanaṃ vā tilavanaṃ vā śālivanaṃ  
 va, teṣāmaparyantakalpābhinirhr̥to bodhisattvacaryābhinirhāratathā-  
 gatasyaikakṣaṇajñānaprasṛtasya tathāgataviśayasya... | iti hi bho  
 jinaputra evaṃjñānānugato bodhisattvastathāgatādvayakāyavākcitto  
 bodhisattvasamādhibalaṃ ca notsr̥jati buddhadarśanapūjopa-  
 sthānaṃ ca karoti | sa ekaikasmin kalpe'paryantāṃstathāgatān sarv-  
 ākārābhinirhārapūjabhiḥ pūjayati | audārikānugatayā pūjayā teṣāṃ  
 ca buddhānāṃ bhagavatāmadhiṣṭhānāvabhāsaṃ saṃpratīcchati | sa  
 bhūyasyā mātrayā asaṃhārya bhavati dharmadhātuvibhaktipari-  
 pṛcchānirdeśaiḥ | anekān kalpānānekāni kalpaśātāni...anekāni kalpa-  
 koṭinayutaśatasahasrāṇi | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra divya-  
 karmāraḥṣṭaṃ mahābharaṇopacāraṃ mahāmaṇiratnapratyuptaṃ  
 vaśavartino devarājasyottamaṅge kaṅṭhe vā āvaddhamasaṃhāryaṃ  
 bhavati tadanyairdivyamānuṣyakairābharaṇavibhūṣaṇopacāraiḥ,  
 evameva bho jinaputra bodhisattvasyemāṃ daśamīṃ dharmā-  
 meghāṃ bhodhisattvabhūmimanuprāptasya te bodhisattvajñān-  
 opacārā asaṃhāryā bhavanti sarvasattvaiḥ sarvaśrāvakaḥpratyeka-  
 buddhaiḥ prathamāṃ bodhisattvabhūmimupādāya yāvannavamīṃ  
 bodhisattvabhūmimanuprāptairbodhisattvaiḥ | asyāṃ ca bodhi-  
 sattvabhūmau sthitasya bodhisattvasya jñānavabhāsaḥ sattvānāṃ  
 yāvatsarvajñānāvatarāya saṃvartate saṃhāryastadanyair-  
 jñānavabhāσαιḥ | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra maheśvarasya  
 devarājasyābhā atikrāntā bhavati sarvopapattyaṅgātāni, sattvānāṃ  
 ca kāyāśrayān prahlādayati, evameva bho jinaputra bodhisattvasya

asyāṃ daśabhyāṃ dharmameghāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthitasya  
 jñānābhā asaṃhāryā bhavati sarvaśrāvakaḥpratyekabuddhaiḥ  
 prathamāṃ bodhisattvabhūmimupādāya yāvannavamībodhisattva-  
 bhūmipraṭiṣṭhitairbodhisattvairyāvatsarvajñānjñānadharmatāyāṃ ca  
 sattvān praṭiṣṭhāpayati | sa khalu punarbho jinaputra bodhisattva  
 evaṃjñānānugato buddhairbhagavadbhistryadhvajñānaṃ ca  
 saṃśrāvyaṭe | dharmadhātuprabhedajñānaṃ ca sarvalokadhātu-  
 spharaṇaṃ ca sarvalokadhātuvabhāsādhiṣṭhānaṃ ca sarvasattva-  
 kṣetradharmaparijñānaṃ ca sarvasattvacittacaritānupraveśajñānaṃ  
 ca sarvasattvayathākālapariṣṭhānaṃ ca vinayānatikramaṇaṃ ca  
 sarvadharmapracayavibhaktijñānakauśalyaṃ ca samāsato yāvāt-  
 sarvajñānjñānāpramāṇatāṃ ca saṃśrāvyaṭe | tasya daśabhyaḥ pāra-  
 mitābhyo jñānapāramitā atiriktatamā bhavati, na ca pariśeṣāsu na  
 samudāgacchati yathābalaṃ yathābhajamānaṃ | iyaṃ bho jinaputra  
 bodhisattvasya dharmameghā nāma daśamī bodhisattvabhūmiḥ  
 samāsanirdeśataḥ | vistaraśaḥ punarasaṃkhyeyāparyantakalpa-  
 nirdeśaniṣṭhāto' nūgantavyā | yasyāṃ praṭiṣṭhito bodhisattvo  
 bhūyastvena maheśvaro bhavati devarājaḥ kṛtī prabhuḥ sattvānāṃ  
 sarvaśrāvakaḥpratyekabuddhabodhisattvapāramitopadeśeṣvasaṃhār  
 yo dharmadhātuvibhaktipariṣṭhānirdeśaiḥ | yacca kiṃcit... ||

dharmameghā nāma bodhisattvabhūmirdaśamī ||

[Beginning of tenth bhūmi's final gathas]

upasaṃhāragāthāḥ |

śamadamaniratānāṃ śāntadāntāśayānāṃ  
khagapathasādṛśānāmantarīkṣasamānāṃ |  
khilamanavidhutānāṃ mārgajñāne sthitānāṃ  
śrṅguta cariviśeṣān bodhisattvāna śreṣṭhān || 17 ||

kuśalaśatasahasraṃ saṃciyā kalpakotṣyā  
buddhaśatasahasrān pūjayitvā maharṣin |  
pratyayajinavaśīmścāpūjayitvā anantān  
sarvajagatahitāyā jāyate bodhicittam || 18 ||

vratatapatapitānāṃ kṣāntipāraṃgatānāṃ  
hiriśiricaritānāṃ puṇyajñānodgatānāṃ |  
vipulagatimatīnāṃ buddhajñānāśayānāṃ  
daśabalasamatulyaṃ jāyate bodhicittam || 19 ||

yāva jina triyadhvā pūjanārthāya pūjaṃ  
khagapathapariṇāmaṃ śodhanaṃ sarvakṣetram |  
samyaganugatārthe yāvatā sarvadharmān  
mokṣa jagata arthe jāyate bodhicittam || 20 ||

pramuditāsamutīnāṃ dānadharmāratānāṃ  
sakalajagahitārthe nityamevodyatānāṃ |  
jinaguṇaniratānāṃ sattvarakṣāvratānāṃ  
tribhuvanahitākārye jāyate bodhicittam || 21 ||

akuśalaviratānāṃ śuddhaśīlāvratānāṃ  
vratanīyamaratānāṃ śāntasaumyendriyāṇāṃ |  
jinaśaraṇagatānāṃ bodhicaryāśayānāṃ  
tribhuvanahitasādhyāṃ jāyate bodhicittam || 22 ||

anugatakuśalānāṃ kṣāntisauratyabhājāṃ  
viditagūṇarasānāṃ tyaktamānotsavānāṃ |



nihitaśubhamatīnām dāntusaumyāśayānām  
sakalahitavidhāne jāyate bodhicittam || 23 ||

pracalitaśubhakāryā dhīravīryotsahā ye  
nikhilajanahitārthe prodyayāmāna siṃhāḥ |  
avirataguṇasādhyā nirjitakleśasaṃghā  
jhaṭiti manasi teṣāṃ jāyate bodhicittam || 24 ||

susamavahitacittā dhvastamohāndhakārā  
vigalitamadamānā tyaktasaṃkliṣṭamārgāḥ |  
śamasukhaniratā ye tyaktasaṃsārasaṅgā  
jhaṭiti manasi teṣāṃ jāyate bodhicittam || 25 ||

vimalakhasamacittā jñānavijñānavijñā  
nihatanamucimārā vāntakleśābhimānāḥ |  
jinapadaśaraṇasthā labdhatattvārthakā ye  
sapadi manasi teṣāṃ jāyate bodhicittam || 26 ||

tribhuvanaśivasādhyopāyavijñānadhīrāḥ  
kalibalaparihāropāyavidyarddhimantaḥ |  
sugataguṇasamīhā ye ca puṇyānurāgāḥ  
sapadi manasi teṣāṃ jāyate bodhicittam || 27 ||

tribhuvanahitakāmā bodhisambhārapūrye  
praṇihitamānāsā ye duṣkare'pi caranti |  
avirataśubhakarmaprodyatā bodhisattvāḥ  
sapadi manasi teṣāṃ jāyate bodhicittam || 28 ||

daśabalaguṇakāmā bodhicaryānuraktā  
vijitakalibalaughāstyaktamānānuṣaṅgāḥ |  
anugataśubhamārgā labdhadharmārthakāmā  
jhaṭiti manasi teṣāṃ jāyate bodhicittam || 29 ||

iti gaṇitaguṇāṃśā bodhicaryāścarantu  
jinapadapraṇidhānāḥ satsamṛddhiṃ labhantu |  
triguṇaparivīśuddhā bodhicittam labhantu  
triśaraṇaparivīśuddhā bodhisattvā bhavantu || 30 ||

daśa pāramitāḥ pūrya daśabhūmīśvaro bhavet |  
bhūyo'pi kathyate hyetacchruṇūtaivaṃ samāsataḥ || 31 ||

bodhicittaṃ yadāsādyā saṃpradānaṃ karoti yaḥ |  
tadā pramuditāṃ prāpto jambūdvīpeśvaro bhavet || 32 ||

tatrasthaḥ pālayan sattvān yathecchāpratipādanaiḥ |  
svayaṃ dāne pratiṣṭhitvā parāṃścāpi niyojayet || 33 ||

sarvān bodhau pratiṣṭhāpya saṃpūrṇā dānapāragaḥ |  
etaddharmānubhāvena saṃvaraṃ samupācaret || 34 ||

samyakśīlaṃ samādhāya saṃvarakuśalī bhavet |  
tataḥ sa vimalāṃ prāptaścāturdvīpeśvaro bhavet || 35 ||

tatrasthaḥ pālayan sattvān akuśalanivāraṇaiḥ |  
svayaṃ śīle pratiṣṭhitvā parāṃścāpi niyojayet || 36 ||

sarvān bodhau pratiṣṭhāpya saṃpūrṇaśīlapāragaḥ |  
etaddharmavipākena kṣāntivratamupāśrayet || 37 ||

samyakkṣāntivrataṃ dhṛtvā kṣāntibhṛtkuśalī bhavet |  
tataḥ prabhākarīprāptastrayastrīṃśādhipo bhavet || 38 ||

tatrasthaḥ pālayan sattvān kleśamārganivāraṇaiḥ |  
svayaṃ kṣāntivrate sthitvā parāṃścāpi niyojayet || 39 ||

sattvān bodhau pratiṣṭhāpya kṣāntipāraṃgato bhavet |  
etatpuṇyavipākaiḥ sa vīryavratamupāśrayet || 40 ||

samyagvīryaṃ samādhāya vīryabhṛt kuśalī bhavet |  
tataścārciṣmatīprāptaḥ suyāmādhipatirbhavet || 41 ||

tatrasthaḥ pālayan sattvān kudṛṣṭisaṃnivāraṇaiḥ |  
samyagdṛṣṭau pratiṣṭhāpya bodhayitvā prayatnataḥ || 42 ||

svayaṃ vīryavrate sthitvā parāṃścāpi niyojayet |  
sarvān bodhau pratiṣṭhāpya vīryapāraṃgato bhavet || 43 ||

etatpuṇyavipākaiśca dhyānavratam samāśrayet |  
sarvakleśān vinirjitya samādhisuṣṭhito bhavet || 44 ||

samyag dhyānaṃ samādhāya samādhikuśalī bhavet |  
tataḥ sudurjayāprāptaḥ saṃtuṣitādhipo bhavet || 45 ||

tatrasthaḥ pālayan sattvān tīrthyamārganivāraṇaiḥ |  
satyadharmam pratiṣṭhāpya bodhayitvā prayatnataḥ || 46 ||

svayaṃ dhyānavrate sthitvā parāṃścāpi niyojayet |  
sarvān bodhau pratiṣṭhāpya dhyānapāraṃgato bhavet || 47 ||

etatpuṇyavipākaiśca prajñāvratamupāśrayet |  
sarvamārān vinirjitya prajñābhijñāsamṛddhimān || 48 ||

samyakprajñāṃ samādhāya svabhijñākuśalī bhavet |  
tataścābhimukhīprāptaḥ sunirmitādhipo bhavet || 49 ||

tatrasthaḥ pālayan sattvān abhimānanivāraṇaiḥ |  
śūnyatāsu pratiṣṭhāpya bodhayitvā prayatnataḥ || 50 ||

svayaṃ prajñāvrate sthitvā parāṃścāpi niyojayet |  
sarvān bodhau pratiṣṭhāpya prajñāpāraṃgato bhavet || 51 ||

etatpuṇyavipākaiśca sa supāyavratam caret |  
sarvaduṣṭān vinirjitya saddharmakuśalī bhavet || 52 ||

sa supāyavidhānena sattvān bodhau niyojayet |  
tato dūraṃgamāprāpto vaśavartīśvaro bhavet || 53 ||

tatrasthaḥ pālayan sattvānabhisamayabodhanaiḥ |  
bodhisattvaniyāmeṣu pratiṣṭhāpya prabodhayan || 54 ||

tatropāye svayaṃ sthitvā parāṃścāpi niyojayet |

sarvān bodhau pratiṣṭhāpya hyupāyapārāgo bhavet || 55 ||

etatpuṇyānubhāvaiśca supraṇidhimupāśrayet |  
mithyādr̥ṣṭiṃ vinirjitya samyagdr̥ṣṭikṛtī budhaḥ || 56 ||

supraṇihitacittena samyagbodhau pratiṣṭhitaḥ |  
tataścāpyacalāprāpto brahmā sāhasrikādhipaḥ || 57 ||

tatrasthaḥ pālayan sattvān triyānasampraveśanaiḥ |  
lokadhātuparijñāne pratiṣṭhāpya prabodhayan || 58 ||

supraṇidhau svayaṃ sthitvā parāṃścāpi niyojayet |  
sarvān bodhau pratiṣṭhāpya praṇidhipārāgo bhavet || 59 ||

etatpuṇyānusāraiśca balavratamupāśrayet |  
sarvaduṣṭān vinirjitya saṃbodhau kṛtaniścayaḥ || 60 ||

samyagbalasamutsāhaiḥ sarvatīrthyān vinirjayet |  
tataḥ sādhumatīprāpto mahābrahmā bhavet kṛtī || 61 ||

tatrasthaḥ pālayan sattvān buddhayānopadarśanaiḥ |  
sattvāśayaparijñāne pratiṣṭhāpya prabodhayan || 62 ||

svayaṃ bale pratiṣṭhitvā paramāścāpi niyojayet |  
sarvān bodhau pratiṣṭhāpya balapāraṃgato bhavet || 63 ||

etatpuṇyavipākaiśca jñānavratamupāśrayet |  
caturmārān vinirjitya bodhisattvo guṇākaraḥ || 64 ||

samyag jñānaṃ samāsādyā saddharmakuśalī bhavet |  
dharmameghāṃ tataḥ prāpto maheśvaro bhavet kṛtī || 65 ||

tatrasthaḥ pālayan sattvān sarvākārānubodhanaiḥ |  
sarvākāravare jñāne pratiṣṭhāpya prabodhayan || 66 ||

svayaṃ jñāne pratiṣṭhitvā parāṃścāpi niyojayet |  
sarvān bodhau pratiṣṭhāpya jñānapāraṃgato bhavet || 67 ||

etatpuṇyānubhāvaiśca daśabhūmīśvaro jinaḥ |  
sarvākāraguṇādhāraḥ sarvajño dharmarāḍ bhavet || 68 ||

iti matvā bhavadbhiśca saṃbodhipadalabdhave |  
daśapāramitāpūryai caritavyaṃ samāhitaiḥ || 69 ||

tathā bodhiṃ śivāṃ prāpya caturmārān vijitya ca |  
sarvān bodhau pratiṣṭhāpya nirvṛtiṃ samavāpsyatha || 70 ||

etatchrutvā pariñāya caradhvaṃ bodhisādhane |  
nirvighnaṃ bodhimāsādyā labhadhvaṃ saugatāṃ gatim || 71 ||

[End of tenth bhūmīś final gathas]



[Beginning of parīndanāparivartaḥ's gathas]

11 parīndanāparivartaḥ |

upakramaḥ |

etāstāḥ khalu punarbho jinaputrā daśa bodhisattvabhūmayāḥ  
samāsato nirdiṣṭāḥ sarvākāravāropetasarvajñajñānānugatā  
draṣṭavyāḥ | tasyāṃ velāyāmayaṃ trisāhasramahāsāhasro loka-  
dhātuh ṣaḍvikāraṃ prākampat | vividhāni ca puṣpāṇi viyato ny-  
apatan | divyamānuṣyakāni ca tūryāṇi saṃpravāditānyabhūvan |  
anumodanāśabdena ca yāvadakaniṣṭhabhuvanāṃ vijñaptamabhūt ||

atha tasmin samaye bhagavāṃstān vimukticanrapramukhān sarvān  
bodhisattvānāmantrya evamādiṣat - imāmahaṃ mārṣā asaṃkhyeya-  
kalpakoṭīnayutaśatasahasrasamudānītāmanuttarāṃ samyaksaṃ-  
bodhiṃ yuṣmākaṃ haste parindāmi anuparindāmi paramayā pari-  
ndanayā | tadyūyaṃ sarve svayaṃ caivamimaṃ dharmaparyāyaṃ  
dhārayata, parebhyasca vistareṇa saṃprakāśayata | saṃkṣepān-  
mārṣā yadi tathāgataḥ kalpasthitikenāyuhpramāṇena rātriṃdivam-  
adhitiṣṭhamāno'sya dharmaparyāyasya varṇaṃ bhāṣate, naivāsya  
dharmaparyāyasya varṇaparyanto bhavet, na ca tathāgatapratibhān-  
akṣayo bhavet | yathā tathāgataśīlasamādhiprajñāvimuktijñāna-  
darśanamapramāṇamaparyantam, evameva mārṣā ya imaṃ dharma-  
paryāyamudgrahīṣyati dhārayiṣyati vācayiṣyati likhiṣyati  
likhāpayiṣyati paryavāpsyati pravartayiṣyati, parśanmadhye ca  
vistareṇa saṃprakāśayiṣyati - anena cittaena kathamamī sattvā evam-  
udāradharmasya lābhinaḥ syuriti śraddhayā satkṛtya śrāvayiṣyanti  
śroṣyanti ca yoniśo manasi bhāvayiṣyanti ca | pustakalikhitaṃ kṛtvā  
gr̥he dhārayiṣyati satkariṣyati gurukariṣyati mānayiṣyati pūjayiṣyati  
| amātsaryacittatayā asya dharmaparyāyasya varṇaṃ bhāṣitvā  
likhanāya vācanāya svādhyayanāya pūjanāya darśanāya dāsyati,  
teṣāmapī nāsti puṇyaparyantaḥ ||

atha khalu bhagavānasyaiva dharmaparyāyasya bhūyasyā mātrayā  
anuparindanārthaṃ tasyāṃ velāyāmimā gāthā abhāṣata -

sattvā dṛṣṭā ye mayā buddhadṛṣṭyā  
te'rhantaḥ syuḥ śāriputreṇa tulyāḥ |  
tām cetkaścīpūjayetkalpakotyā  
tulyān gaṅgāvālukābhīryathaiva || 1 ||

pratyekabuddhāya tu yaśca pūjām  
kuryādahorātramapi prahrṣṭaḥ |  
mālyaparakāraiśca tathāambaraiśca  
tasmādayaṃ puṇyakṛto viśiṣṭaḥ || 2 ||

sarve'pi pratyekajinā yadi syu-  
stān pūjayet kaścīdihāpramattaḥ |  
puṣpaiśca gandhaiśca vilepanaiśca  
kalpānanekān śayanānnapānaiḥ || 3 ||

ekasya yaścaiva tathāgatasya  
kuryāt praṇāmamapi caikavāram |  
prasannacitto'tha vadennamo'rhan  
tasmādidam śreṣṭhataraṃ ca puṇyam || 4 ||

buddhā bhaveyuryadi sarvasattvā-  
stān pūjayet yaśca yathaiva pūrvam |  
divyaiśca puṣpairatha mānuṣaiśca  
kalpānanekān bahubhiḥ prakāraiḥ || 5 ||

yaścaiva saddharmavilopakāle  
tyaktvā svakāyaṃ ca tathātmajīvam |  
dadyādahorātramidam hi sūtraṃ  
viśiṣyate puṇyamidaṃ hi tasmāt || 6 ||

yasyepsitaṃ pūjayituṃ jinendrān  
pratyekabuddhānapi śrāvakāṃśca |  
dṛḍhaṃ samutpādyā sa bodhicittam  
idaṃ sadā sūtravaraṃ dadātu || 7 ||

rājā hyayaṃ sarvasubhāṣitānām



so'bhudgataḥ sarvatathāgatānāma |  
gṛhe sthitastasya tathāgataḥ sa  
tiṣṭhedidaṃ yatra hi sūtraratnam || 8 ||

prabhāṃ sa prāpnoti śubhāmanantām  
ekaṃ padaṃ vādi śatīhayaśca |  
na vyañjanād grasyati nāpi cārthād  
dadāti yaḥ sūtramidaṃ parebhyaḥ || 9 ||

anuttarāsau naranāyakānāṃ  
sattvo na kaścit sadṛśo'sya vidyate |  
bhavetsamudreṇa samaśca so'kṣayaḥ  
śrutvā hi yo dharmamimaṃ prapadyate || 10 ||

[End of parīndanāparivartaḥ's gathas]

11 parīndanāparivartaḥ |

**A**

imāstāḥ khalu punarbho jinaputrā daśa bodhisattvabhūmayāḥ samāsanirdeśato nirdiṣṭāḥ | vistaraśaḥ punaraparyantakalpa-nirdeśaniṣṭhāto'nugatavyāḥ | yā atītānāgatapratyutpannairbuddhairbhagavadbhirbhāṣitāśca bhāṣiṣyante ca bhāṣyante ca, tāḥ khalu punarbho jinaputra, etā daśa bodhisattvabhūmayāḥ sarvākārasarvajñajñānānugatā draṣṭavyā anupūrvābhimukhatvāt | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra anavataptahradaprabhavaṃ pravahadvāri caturbhirmahānadīśrotomukhairjambūdvīpaṃ saṃtarpya akṣayaṃ bhūyo vivṛddhamaprameyāṇāṃ sattvānāmupakāriḥbhūtaṃ yāvanmahāsamudramarpayati, tacca vāri ādita eva mahāsāgarābhimukham, evameva bho jinaputra bodhicittamahāhradaprabhavaṃ pravahat kuśalamūlavāri mahāprañidhānanadīśrotomukhaiścaturbhiḥ saṃgrahavastubhiḥ sarvasattvadhātu saṃtarpya akṣayaṃ bhūya uttari vivṛddham aprameyāṇāṃ sattvānāmupakāriḥbhūtaṃ yāvatsarvākārasarvajñajñānamahāsamudramarpayati | tacca kuśalamūlavāri ādita eva sarvajñatāmahāsāgarābhimukham ||

**B**

tāḥ khalu bho jinaputra etā daśa bhūmayo buddhajñānaṃ pratītya prajñāyante | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra mahāpṛthivīm pratītya daśa mahāratnaparvatarājāḥ prajñāyante | tadyathā himavān parvatarājo gandhamādano vaidalya ṛṣigiriryugaṃdharo'śvakarṇagirirnimiṃdharaścakravālaḥ ketumān sumeruśca mahāparvatarājāḥ | tara bho jinaputra tadyathāpi nāma himavān parvatarāja ākaraḥ sarvabhaisajyajātīnāmaparyantaḥ sarvabhaisajyajātigrahaṇatayā, evameva bho jinaputra pramuditāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito bodhisattva ākaro bhavati sarvalaukikakāvyaśāstramantravidyāsthānānāmaparyantaḥ sarvalaukikakāvyaśāstramantravidyopāyena | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra gandhamādano mahāparvatarāja ākaraḥ sarvagandhajātīnāmaparyantaḥ sarvagandhajātigrahaṇena, evameva bho jinaputra vimalāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sthito bodhisattva ākaro bhavati sarvabodhisattvaśīlasaṃvaracāritragandhānāmaparyantaḥ sarvabodhisattvaśīlasaṃvaracāritragandhasaṃgrahaṇena | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra vaidalyo mahāparvatarājāḥ śuddho ratnamaya ākaraḥ sarvaratnajātīnāmaparyantaḥ sarvalaukikaratna-

jātigrahaṇena, evameva bho jinaputra prabhākaryāṃ buddhabhūmau sarvalaukikadhyānābhijñāvimokṣasamādhisamāpattinām, aparyantaḥ sarvalaukikadhyānābhijñāvimokṣasamādhisamāpattinām, aparyantaḥ sarvalaukikadhyānābhijñāvimokṣasamādhisamāpattipariṣcchānirdeśaiḥ | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra ṛṣigirirmahāparvatarājaḥ pañcābhijñānāmṛṣiṇāmāparyantaḥ pañcābhijñārṣigaṇanayā, evameva bho jinaputra arciṣmatyāṃ buddhabhūmau sarvamārgāmārgāntarāvātāranirdeśaviśeṣajñānānāmāparyantaḥ sarvamārgāmārgāntaraviśeṣajñānapariṣcchānirdeśaiḥ | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra yugaṃdharo mahāparvatarājaḥ sarvayakṣamaharddhikānāmāparyantaḥ sarvayakṣamaharddhikagaṇanayā, evameva bho jinaputra sudurjayāyāṃ buddhabhūmau sarvābhijñārdhivikurvaṇaprātihāryānāmāparyantaḥ sarvābhijñārdhivikurvaṇaprātihāryapariṣcchānirdeśaiḥ | tadyathāpi nāma bho aśvakarṇagirirmahāparvatarājaḥ sarvaphalajātīnāmāparyantaḥ sarvaphalajātīgrahaṇena, evameva bho jinaputra abhimukhyāṃ buddhabhūmau pratītyasamutpādāvātāranirdeśānāmāparyantaḥ śrāvākaphalābhisamayapariṣcchānirdeśaiḥ | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra nimimḍharo nāma mahāparvatarājaḥ sarvanāgamaharddhikānāmāparyantaḥ sarvanāgamaharddhigaṇanayā, evameva bho jinaputra dūraṃgamāyāṃ buddhabhūmau upāyaprajñānirdeśānāmāparyantaḥ pratyekabuddhaphalābhisamayapariṣcchānirdeśaiḥ | tadyathāpi nāma bho jinaputra cakravālo nāma mahāparvatarājaḥ vaśībhūtānāmāparyanto vaśībhūtagaṇanayā, evameva bho jinaputra acalāyāṃ buddhabhūmau sarvabodhisattvavaśītābhinirhārānāmāparyanto lokadhātuvibhaktipariṣcchānirdeśaiḥ | tadyathāpi bho jinaputra ketumān nāma mahāparvatarājaḥ asuramaharddhikānāmāparyantośuramaharddhikagaṇanayā, evameva bho jinaputra sādhumatyāṃ buddhabhūmau sarvasattvapravṛttinivṛttijñānopacārānāmāparyantaḥ sarvajagatsaṃbhavavibhavapariṣcchānirdeśaiḥ | tadyathāpi bho jinaputra sumerurmahāparvatarājaḥ sarvadevamaharddhikānāmāparyantaḥ sarvadevamaharddhikagaṇanayā, evameva bho jinaputra dharmameghāyāṃ buddhabhūmau tathāgatabalavaiśaradyāveṇikabuddhadharmānāmāparyanto buddhakāyasaṃdarśanapariṣcchānirdeśaiḥ | yathā khalu punarime bho jinaputra daśa mahāratnaparvatā mahāsamudrasaṃbhūtā mahāsamudraprabhāvitāḥ, evameva bho jinaputra imā api daśa bhūmayāṃ

sarvajñatāsaṃbhūtāḥ sarvajñatāprabhāvitāḥ ||

**C**

tadyathāpi bho jinaputra mahāsamudro daśabhirākāraiḥ saṃkhyāṃ  
gacchatyasamhāryatayā | katamairdaśabhiḥ? yaduta anupūrva-  
nimnataśca mṛtakuṇapāsaṃvāsataśca anyavārisaṃkhyātyajanataśca  
ekarasataśca bahuratnataśca gambhīraduravagāhataśca vipul-  
āpramāṇataśca mahābhūtāvāsataśca sthitavelānatikramaṇataśca  
sarvameghavārisaṃpratyēṣaṇāṭṛptitaśca, evameva bho jinaputra  
bodhisattvacaryā daśabhirākāraiḥ saṃkhyāṃ gacchatyasam-  
hāryatayā | katamairdaśabhiḥ ? yaduta pramuditāyāṃ bodhisattva-  
bhūmau anupūrvamahāpraṇidhānābhinirhāranimnataḥ | vimalāyāṃ  
bodhisattvabhūmau dauḥśilyamṛtakuṇapāsaṃvāsataḥ | prabhā-  
karyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau laukikaprajñaptisaṃkhyātyāgataḥ |  
arciṣmatyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau buddhabhedyaprasādaikarasataḥ |  
sudurjayāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau apramāṇopāyābhijñālokakriy-  
ābhinirhārabahuratnataḥ | abhimukhyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau  
pratītyasamutpādapratyavekṣaṇaduravagāhagāmbhīryataḥ | dūr-  
aṅgamāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau buddhipravicyakauśalyavipul-  
āpramāṇataḥ | acalāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau mahāvvyūhābhinirhāra-  
saṃdarśanamahābhūtāvāsataḥ | sādhumatyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau  
gambhīravimokṣajagaccaritayathāvatprativedhasthitavelānatikramaṇ-  
ataḥ | dharmameghāyāṃ bodhisattvabhūmau sarvatathāgatadharm-  
āvabhāsamahāmeghavārisaṃpratyēṣaṇāṭṛptitaḥ ||

**D**

tadyathāpi bho jinaputra mahāmaṇiratnaṃ yadā daśa ratnagoṭrāṅgy-  
atikramya abhyutkṣiptaṃ ca bhavati kuśalakarmārasuparitāpitaṃ ca  
superiṇḍitaṃ ca supariśodhitaṃ ca suparyavadāpitaṃ ca sunir-  
viddhaṃ ca ratnasūtrasvāviddhaṃ ca uccavaidūryamaṇiratnadaṇḍa-  
dhvajāgrāvaropitaṃ ca sarvāvabhāsapramuktaṃ ca rājānujñātaṃ ca  
bhavati, tadā sarvasattvānāṃ sarvaratnasamgrahāya pratyupa-  
sthitāṃ bhavati, evameva bho jinaputra yadā bodhisattvānāṃ sarva-  
jñātāratnacittottpādo daśāryaratnagoṭrāṅgyatikramyotpanno bhavati  
dhūtaguṇasaṃlekhaśīlavratatapaḥsuperitāpitaśca dhyānasamādhi-  
samāpattisuperiṇḍitaśca mārgāṅgākārasupariśodhitaśca upāyābhi-  
jñāsuparyavadāpitaśca pratītyasamutpādasunirviddhaśca upāyapra-  
jñāvicitratatnasūtrasvāviddhaśca vaśitāmahāvaidūryamaṇiratna-  
daṇḍadhvajāgrāvaropitaśca sattvacaritapratyavekṣaṇaśrutajñānāva-

bhāsaṣaṃprayuktaśca tathāgatadharmarājasamyakṣaṃbuddhajñān-  
ābhiṣekānugataśca bhavati, tadā sarvasattvānāṃ sarvabuddhakārya-  
ratnaṣaṃgrahāya pratyupasthito bhavati, tadā ca sarvajña ity-  
ākhyāyate ||

E

ayaṃ khalu punarbho jinaputra bodhisattvacaryāsamudānayanah  
sarvākārasarvajñajñānaguṇasaṃcayo dharmamukhaparivarto  
nānavaropitakuśālamūlānāṃ sattvānāṃ śravaṇāvabhāsam-  
āgamiṣyati || vimukticanthro bodhisattva āha - yeṣāṃ punarbho  
jinaputra ayaṃ sarvākārasarvajñajñānaguṇasaṃcayo dharm-  
mukhaparivartaḥ śravaṇāvabhāsamāgamiṣyati, te kiyatā puṇyopa-  
cayena samanvāgatā bhaviṣyanti? vajragarbho bodhisattva āha –  
yāvān bho jinaputra sarvajñajñānasya prabhāvastāvān sarvajñatācitt-  
otpādasamgrahālambanātpuṇyopacayaḥ syāt | yāvān sarvajñatācitt-  
otpādasamgrahālambanataḥ puṇyopacayastāvānevāsyā dharm-  
mukhaparivartasyābhimukhaḥ puṇyopacayo'nugantavyaḥ | tatkaśya  
hetoḥ? na hi bho jinaputra śakyaṃ anyatra bodhisattvena ayaṃ sarv-  
ākārasarvajñajñānaguṇasaṃcayo dharmamukhaparivartaḥ śrotuṃ  
vā adhimoktuṃ vā pratyetuṃ vā udgrahītuṃ vā dhārayituṃ vā  
saṃdhārayituṃ vā | kaḥ punarvādo bhāvanākāraprayogodyoga-  
niṣpādaneṣu? tasmātarhi bho jinaputra sarvajñajñānamukhānu-  
gatāste saṃdhārayitavyāḥ, ye imaṃ sarvajñajñānaguṇasaṃcaya-  
dharmamukhaparivartaṃ śropyati, śrutvā cādhimokṣyante,  
adhimucya cādharayiṣyanti, bhāvanākāreṇa prayokṣyante || atha  
khalu tasyāṃ velāyāṃ buddhānubhāvena dharmatāpratīlambhena  
ca daśadiglokadaśabuddhakṣetrakoṭīparamānurajaḥsamā loka-  
dhātavaḥ ṣaḍvikāramaṣṭādaśamahānimittamakampanta prā-  
kampanta saṃprākampanta | acalan prācalan saṃprācalan |  
avedhanta prāvedhanta saṃprāvedhanta | araṇan prāraṇan saṃ-  
prāraṇan | akṣumyan prākṣubhyan saṃprākṣumyan | agarjan prā-  
garjan saṃprāgarjan | divyāśca puṣpagandhamālyameghā abhi-  
prāvarṣan | divyāśca vastrameghā divyāścūrṇameghā divyā ratna-  
meghā divyā ābharaṇameghā divyā chatrameghā divyā dhvaja-  
meghā divyā patākāmeghā abhiprāvarṣan | divyaṃ ca sūryacakr-  
ātmabhāvamaṇḍalamaṇirājasumerumeghavarṣamabhiprāvarṣan |  
divyaṃ ca sarvarutaravitavādyamaṇirājasumerumeghavarṣam-  
abhiprāvarṣan | divyaṃ ca jāmbūnadakanakavarṇaprabhāmaṇḍala-

mañirājasumerumeghavarṣamabhiprāvarṣan | divyāśca tūrya-  
 tālāvacaśaṃgītimeghā nadanti sma | divyasamatikrāntāḥ sarva-  
 jñatābhūmyabhiṣṭavasāṃgītimeghā nadanti sma | yathā cāsyāṃ  
 lokadhātau cāturdvīpikāyāṃ paranirmitavaśavartino devarājasya  
 vimāne mañiratnagarbhaprāsāde, tathā sarvalokadhātuṣu daśa diśaḥ  
 spharitvā iyameva dharmadeśanā sarvatraiva pravartate sma  
 | ...daśabhyo digbhyo daśabuddhakṣetrakoṭīparamānuraja-  
 samānāṃ lokadhātūnāṃ pareṇa daśabuddhakṣetrakoṭīparamānu-  
 rajaśsamā bodhisattvā āgacchanti daśadiśaṃ spharantaḥ | te ca  
 āgatyavimānuḥ - sādhu sādhu bho jinaputra, yastvamimāṃ bodhi-  
 sattvabhūmidharmatāṃ sūcayati | vayamapi bho jinaputra sarve  
 vajragarbhasamanāmākā eva vajraśrīnāmikābhyo nānāloka-  
 dhātubhya ihāgatā vajradhvajanāmākānāṃ tathāgatānām-  
 antikebhyaḥ | sarvāsu ca tāsu lokadhātuṣu iyameva dharmadeśanā  
 pravartate buddhānubhāvena evaṃrūpāsveva parṣatsu | ebhireva  
 padairebhireva vyañjanairebhireva niruktairatamevārthamabhi-  
 laṣadbhiranūnamanadhikamanatiriktam, te vyaṃ bho jinaputra  
 sākṣībhūtā buddhānubhāvenemāṃ parśadaṃ saṃprāptāḥ | yathā ca  
 bho jinaputra vyaṃmimāṃ lokadhātum saṃprāptāstathā ca daśasu  
 diśu sarvalokadhātuṣvekaikasyāṃ lokadhātau cāturdvīpikāyāṃ  
 paranirmitavaśavartibhavane vaśavartino devarājasya vimāne mañi-  
 ratnagarbhaprāsāde saṃprāptā iti || idamavocadvajragarbho bodhi-  
 sattvo mahāsattvo'bhyanujñāstathāgatena | āttamanāḥ sā ca sarv-  
 āvatī bodhisattvaparṣat sā ca devanāga...śuddhāvāsaparśad  
 bhagavāṃśca paranirmitavaśavartīṣu deveṣu viharannacirābhi-  
 saṃbuddho dvitīye saptāhe vaśavartino devarājasya vimāne mañi-  
 ratnagarbhe vajragarbhasya bodhisattvasya bhāṣitamabhyānandann-  
 iti || iti parīndanāparivarto nāmaikādaśaḥ || iti śrībodhisattvacaryā-  
 prasthāno daśabhūmiśvaro nāma mahāyānasūtraratnarājaḥ  
 samāptaḥ ||

## Sanskrit Text Endnotes

1. Use of this Sanskrit text here is by the kind permission of Dr. Miroj Shakya, Project Coordinator, Digital Sanskrit Buddhist Canon Project and Rare Buddhist Sanskrit Manuscript Preservation Project, University of the West, Rosemead, CA. Sandhi-compliant line breaks were added in-house by Kalavinka Press.
2. Although not noted in the DSBC text's numbering, apparently the last half of verse 27 and all of verse 28 have been lost from the Sanskrit. I have appended the original numbering of each remaining verse in parentheses.





## ABOUT THE TRANSLATOR

Bhikshu Dharmamitra (ordination name “Heng Shou” – 釋恆授) is a Chinese-tradition translator-monk and one of the earliest American disciples (since 1968) of the late Guiyang Ch’an patriarch, Dharma teacher, and pioneer of Buddhism in the West, the Venerable Master Hsuan Hua (宣化上人). He has a total of 33 years in robes during two periods as a monastic (1969–1975 & 1991 to the present).

Dharmamitra’s principal educational foundations as a translator of Sino-Buddhist Classical Chinese lie in four years of intensive monastic training and Chinese-language study of classic Mahāyāna texts in a small-group setting under Master Hsuan Hua (1968–1972), undergraduate Chinese language study at Portland State University, a year of intensive one-on-one Classical Chinese study at the Fu Jen University Language Center near Taipei, two years of course work at the University of Washington’s Department of Asian Languages and Literature (1988–90), and an additional three years of auditing graduate courses and seminars in Classical Chinese readings, again at UW’s Department of Asian Languages and Literature.

Since taking robes again under Master Hua in 1991, Dharmamitra has devoted his energies primarily to study and translation of classic Mahāyāna texts with a special interest in works by Ārya Nāgārjuna and related authors. To date, he has translated more than fifteen important texts comprising approximately 150 fascicles, including most recently the 80-fascicle *Avataṃsaka Sūtra* (the “Flower Adornment Sutra”), Nāgārjuna’s 17-fascicle *Daśabhūmika Vibhāśa* (“Treatise on the Ten Grounds”), and the *Daśabhūmika Sūtra* (the “Ten Grounds Sutra”), all of which are current or upcoming Kalavinka Press publications



# KALAVINKA BUDDHIST CLASSICS

(WWW.KALAVINKAPRESS.ORG)

## FALL, 2019 TITLE LIST

### Meditation Instruction Texts

#### **The Essentials of Buddhist Meditation**

A marvelously complete classic *śamathā-vipaśyanā* (calming-and-insight) meditation manual. By Tiantai Śramaṇa Zhiyi (538–597).

#### **Six Gates to the Sublime**

The early Indian Buddhist meditation method involving six practices used in calming-and-insight meditation. By Śramaṇa Zhiyi

### Bodhisattva Path Texts

#### **On Generating the Resolve to Become a Buddha**

*On the Resolve to Become a Buddha* by Ārya Nāgārjuna

*Exhortation to Resolve on Buddhahood* by Patriarch Sheng'an Shixian

*Exhortation to Resolve on Buddhahood* by the Tang Literatus, Peixiu

#### **Letter from a Friend - The Three Earliest Editions**

The earliest extant editions of Ārya Nāgārjuna's *Suḥṛlekha*:

Translated by Tripīṭaka Master Guṇavarman (ca 425 CE)

Translated by Tripīṭaka Master Saṅghavarman (ca 450 CE)

Translated by Tripīṭaka Master Yijing (ca 675 CE).

#### **Marvelous Stories from the Perfection of Wisdom**

130 Stories from Ārya Nāgārjuna's *Mahāprajñāpāramitā Upadeśa*.

#### **Nāgārjuna's Guide to the Bodhisattva Path**

The *Bodhisambhāra Treatise* with abridged Vaśitva commentary.

#### **The Bodhisambhāra Treatise Commentary**

The complete exegesis by the Indian Bhikṣu Vaśitva (ca 300–500).

#### **Nāgārjuna on Mindfulness of the Buddha**

Ch. 9 and Chs. 20–25 of Nāgārjuna's *Daśabhūmika Vibhāṣā*

Ch. 1, Subchapter 36a of Nāgārjuna's *Mahāprajñāpāramitā Upadeśa*.

#### **Nāgārjuna on the Six Perfections**

Chapters 17–30 of Ārya Nāgārjuna's *Mahāprajñāpāramitā Upadeśa*.

#### **A Strand of Dharma Jewels (Ārya Nāgārjuna's *Ratnāvalī*)**

The earliest extant edition, translated by Paramārtha: ca 550 CE

#### **The Ten Bodhisattva Grounds**

Śikṣānanda's translation of The Flower Adornment Sutra, Ch. 26

## **The Ten Grounds Treatise**

Nāgārjuna's 35-chapter *Daśabhūmika Vibhāṣā*

## **The Ten Grounds Sutra**

Kumārajīva's translation of the *Daśabhūmika Sūtra*

## **Vasubandhu's Treatise on the Bodhisattva Vow**

By Vasubandhu Bodhisattva (*ca* 300 CE)



PHILOSOPHY & SPIRITUALITY / BUDDHISM / SACRED WRITINGS



---

KALAVINKA PRESS ♦ SEATTLE  
KALAVINKAPRESS.ORG

ISBN 978-1-935413-12-7



9 781935 413127

Dharmamitra

THE TEN BODHISATVA GROUNDS  
*The Avatamsaka Sūtra* – Chapter 26



Kalavinka